

PATENTS

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Patent No.:	7,342,014	Application No.:	10/773,344
Issue Date:	March 11, 2008	Filing Date:	February 9, 2004
First Name Inventor:	Toshiharu Ohta et al.	Attorney Docket No.:	17620-105007
For:	Diamine Derivatives	Confirmation No:	9585

**REQUEST FOR RECONSIDERATION OF DISMISSAL OF PETITION UNDER 37
C.F.R. 1.183 AND OF DISMISSAL OF REQUEST FOR RECONSIDERATION OF
PATENT TERM ADJUSTMENT UNDER 37 CFR 1.705(d)**

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

Petitioner, as the owner of the captioned United States patent 7,342,014 (“the ‘014 patent,” attached as Exhibit A), respectfully requests reconsideration of the Decision on Petitions Under 37 CFR 1.183 and On Request of Reconsideration of Patent Term Adjustment mailed on March 30, 2010 (“March 2010 Decision”) for the reasons detailed herein. In particular, Petitioner has requested reconsideration of the final patent term adjustment for the ‘014 patent of 357 days, which is in error due to a failure to account for the period of time in which the issuance of the ‘014 patent was delayed beyond three years as set forth in 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1)(B). Petitioner requested that the patent term adjustment be changed to the correct 753 days (which reflects an increase of 396 days) as calculated properly under 35 U.S.C. § 154(b) according to the statutory interpretation of the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in Wyeth v. Kappos, 591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (attached as Exhibit B). The USPTO has

denied Petitioner's request because the petition was deemed untimely filed. Petitioner respectfully requests that the USPTO reconsider the dismissal of the petition and recalculate the patent term adjustment of the '014 patent in accordance with the Federal Circuit's ruling in Wyeth.

Background

The '014 patent issued on March 11, 2008. On the face of the '014 patent, the USPTO indicated a patent term adjustment of 357 days. The patent term adjustment was calculated by the USPTO as including a period of 477 days of USPTO delay under 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1)(A) (herein the "A delay") for failure of the USPTO to take action within certain time periods specified by the statute minus 180 days of applicant delay. The calculation did not take into account any USPTO delay under 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1)(B) (herein the "B delay") for failure to issue a patent within three years of the filing date because of the USPTO's misinterpretation of 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(A) regarding accounting for overlap in the A and B delays. Properly taking into account the B delay adds an additional 396 days for the period of three years from the filing date until the patent issuance. Thus, the patent term adjustment for the '014 patent should be the sum of the days of the A delay and the B delay, i.e., 537 days + 396 days, which is 933 days, minus periods of applicant delay, which account for 180 days, and days that are overlapping between the A delay and B delay, which in this case is 0. The total is, thus, 753 days of patent term adjustment.

At the time of the issuance of the '014 patent, the USPTO had a stated policy regarding its interpretation of § 154(b)(2)(A). Section 154(b)(2)(A) is as follows:

To the extent that periods of delay attributable to grounds specified in paragraph (1) overlap, the period of any adjustment granted under this subsection shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed.

In 2004, the USPTO amended its rules, in part, to allegedly clarify what constitutes the “overlap” between the A delay and B delay recited in Section 154(b)(2)(A) and stated in a Federal Register Notice dated April 24, 2004:

Section 1.703(f) is amended to change “[t]o the extent that periods of adjustment attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap” to “[t]o the extent that periods of delay attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap” for consistency with 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A). The language of former § 1.703(f) misled applicants into believing that delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) (§§ 1.702(a) and 1.703(a)) and delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) (§§ 1.702(b) and 1.703(b)) were overlapping only if the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) occurred more than three years after the actual filing date of the application. If an application is entitled to an adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B), the entire period during which the application was pending before the Office (except for periods excluded under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B)(i)–(iii)), and not just the period beginning three years after the actual filing date of the application, is the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) in determining whether periods of delay overlap under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A).

“Revision of Patent Term Extension and Patent Term Adjustment Provisions,” 69 Fed. Reg. 21704 at 21706 (April 24, 2004) (“2004 Notice;” attached as Exhibit C). This passage makes clear that the USPTO interpreted the statute such that the entire period of the A delay “overlaps” with the entire period of the B delay under Section 154(b)(2)(A). Under this rubric, the USPTO used the greater of either the A or B delay in calculating the patent term adjustment.

In view of this clearly stated policy, Petitioner did not challenge the USPTO’s calculation of the patent term adjustment by filing a request for reconsideration with the USPTO within the two month period from issuance of the patent set forth in 37 CFR 1.705(d), i.e., by May 11, 2008. However, this interpretation of 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1) was challenged by Wyeth in the

District Court for the District of Columbia. On September 30, 2008, more than two months after the issuance of the '014 patent, the District Court issued a decision that the USPTO had indeed been misinterpreting the statute and confirmed that overlap between the A delay and B delay periods is only taken into account in determining the patent term adjustment to the extent the A delay and B delay occur on the same calendar day. Wyeth v. Dudas, 580 F.Supp.2d 138, 88 U.S.P.Q.2d 1538 (D.D.C. 2008) (“Wyeth District Court Decision”).

After considering the Wyeth District Court Decision, Petitioner filed a Petition under 37 CFR 1.705(d) and Request for Reconsideration of Patent Term Adjustment (“Request for Reconsideration”) on February 2, 2009. Because Petitioner recognized that the Request for Reconsideration was being filed more than two months after the issue date of the '014 patent, the time period for requesting reconsideration of patent term adjustment specified in 37 CFR 1.705(d), Petitioner concurrently filed a petition under 37 CFR 1.183 (“Rule 183 Petition”) to suspend the rules so that the USPTO could consider the underlying Request for Reconsideration in a manner consistent with the recent Wyeth decision. Petitioner understood, however, that at that time the USPTO continued to dispute the District Court’s interpretation and had appealed the Wyeth decision to the Federal Circuit.

Subsequent to the filing of Petitioner’s Request for Reconsideration and Rule 183 Petition, the district court decision was affirmed by the Federal Circuit on January 7, 2010 in Wyeth v. Kappos, 591 F.3d 1364, 93 USPQ2d 1257 (Fed. Cir. 2010) (“Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision”). The Federal Circuit found that the statute was unambiguous and there was no real support for the USPTO’s strained interpretation. Id. at 1369-1370. The Court confirmed that

“[i]f an A delay occurs on one day and a B delay occurs on a different day, those two days do not ‘overlap’ under section 154(b)(2).” Id.

Soon thereafter, the USPTO accepted that it had misinterpreted the statute and issued an announcement that it would not seek further judicial review of the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision. In view of its decision to abide by the determination of the D.C. District Court and the Federal Circuit, the USPTO temporarily modified the procedures for requesting recalculation of patent term adjustment for certain issued patents. The modified procedure extended the two month deadline up to 180 days from patent issuance under Rule 705(d) to request recalculation of the patent term adjustment under the Wyeth decision and waived the fee. See “Interim Procedure for Patentees To Request a Recalculation of the Patent Term Adjustment To Comply With the Federal Circuit Decision in Wyeth v. Kappos Regarding the Overlapping Delay Provision of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A),” 75 Federal Register 5043 (February 1, 2010) (“Interim Procedure Notice,” attached as Exhibit D). Petitioner’s Request for Reconsideration had already been filed and was pending in the USPTO at this time.

Dismissal of the Request for Reconsideration and Rule 183 Petition

On March 30, 2010, the USPTO dismissed the Rule 183 Petition and dismissed as untimely filed the Request for Reconsideration. In particular, the March 2010 Decision found that Petitioner’s situation did not warrant a waiver of the two month time limit under Rule 705(d) to file a request for reconsideration of patent term adjustment. Specifically, the USPTO argues that nothing prevented Petitioner from filing a Request for Consideration within the two month time limit based on the date of patent issuance. The fact that Petitioner relied on the Office’s

interpretation of 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(A) which was reversed by the District Court and affirmed by the Federal Circuit did not, according to the USPTO, make the situation extraordinary. The Office likens the situation to any other one in which one patentee challenges a final agency decision and the reversal of that decision upon judicial review could have applied to another patentee if they had take such action as well. March 2010 Decision at 4-5. In addition, the USPTO contends that “the law only allows 180 days for both the filing of a petition and for the Office’s consideration of that petition, patentees’ unexplained delay in filing the petition weighs against them.” Id. Thus, it is the USPTO’s determination that since Petitioner did not file the Request for Reconsideration within two months of the issuance of the ‘014 patent, Petitioner is not entitled to recalculation of the patent term despite the subsequent change in the USPTO’s statutory interpretation.

Petitioner respectfully submits that, as detailed below, dismissal of the petition is not in the interest of justice and is inconsistent with the USPTO’s interim policy allowing a select set of patent owners additional time to request recalculation of the patent term adjustment even after the two month time limit for doing so in the USPTO has passed. The draconian effects of the USPTO’s decision, which was based on its own misinterpretation of the statute as propagated through its Federal Register policy announcement meant to dissuade unnecessary requests for reconsideration by similarly situated patentees, does make the present situation extraordinary. Furthermore, under equitable tolling principles, Petitioner’s reliance on the USPTO’s stated policy warrants tolling of the deadline for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment calculation.

The Request for Reconsideration Should Be Considered on the Merits

Petitioner requests reconsideration of the dismissal of the Rule 183 Petition and the Request for Reconsideration because, contrary to the reasoning in the March 2010 Decision, this is an extraordinary situation caused by the USPTO's disregard for the plain meaning of the statute in a policy expressly set forth in the Federal Register. In addition, the refusal to waive the two month time limit for requesting reconsideration is inconsistent with the USPTO's extension of the time period for requesting recalculation of the patent term adjustment in accordance with the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision for only a subset of patents issuing after the '014 patent.

Rule 183 reads as follows:

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations in this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Director or the Director's designee, *sua sponte*, or on petition of the interested party, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.

In the instant situation, justice requires waiving the two month time limit for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment calculation made by the USPTO. The Request for Reconsideration is not just a request to review a calculation error. The USPTO had assertively advocated for its construction of 35 U.S.C. §154(b)(2)(A). In its effort to "clarify" the rules governing patent term adjustment, the USPTO stated in the 2004 Notice that "[t]he language of former § 1.703(f) **mised** applicants into believing that delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) (§§ 1.702(a) and 1.703(a)) and delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) (§§ 1.702(b) and 1.703(b)) were overlapping only if the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) occurred more than three years after the actual filing date of the application (emphasis added)." In actuality, what is

misleading is the 2004 Notice. The USPTO Notice makes patentees believe that the statute directs the USPTO to consider only the A delay or the B delay, but not both. As the Federal Circuit has articulated, the statute means just the opposite--that the only overlap is when the A delay and B delay occur on the same calendar day.

The force and effect of the language in the 2004 Notice shows that publication of the 2004 Notice in the Federal Register was clearly meant to dissuade patentees from challenging the patent term adjustment calculated according to the “A delay or B delay which ever is longer” rubric adopted by the USPTO in contravention to the statute as later interpreted by the Federal Circuit. That Petitioner’s reliance on the USPTO’s own policy as announced in the 2004 Notice caused it severe prejudice through the loss of substantial patent term, a property right that is rightly Petitioner’s but for the USPTO’s erroneous statutory interpretation, certainly creates an extraordinary situation.

Petitioner notes that in Wyeth, the USPTO argues that its statutory interpretation should be accorded deference under Chevron (Chevron USA, Inc. v. Natural Resources Defense Council, Inc., 467 US 837, 104 S.Ct. 2778 (1984)). Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision at 1372. Yet, the USPTO faults Petitioner for failing to challenge the USPTO’s statutory interpretation for which it has argued so strongly. March 2010 Decision at 4. The USPTO should not have it both ways--being owed deference under Chevron but also denying patentees’ right to redress when the Office’s interpretation is wrong. Petitioner abided by the USPTO’s expertise and stated policy in assessing whether to challenge the Office’s patent term adjustment calculation but is foreclosed from obtaining its rightful patent term now that the Courts have determined that the

USPTO was wrong. In view of the USPTO's strong statements regarding its interpretation of 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(A) and that the USPTO did not publicly recognize its error until well after the deadline for Petitioner to file a request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705(d), Petitioner's situation is indeed extraordinary, and Petitioner asks that its Request for Reconsideration be considered on the merits and granted in the interest of justice.

The USPTO has clearly accepted its error in interpreting Section 154(b)(2)(A) and waived provisions of its rules to facilitate recalculation of patent term adjustment for certain patentees. After the Wyeth Federal Circuit decision in January 2010, the USPTO issued an announcement that it would not further challenge the Federal Circuit's decision. Subsequently, the USPTO issued its Interim Procedure Notice on February 1, 2010, stating its intention to calculate patent term adjustment using the statutory interpretation set forth in the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision. Under the Interim Procedure Notice, the USPTO created a temporary procedure to address recalculation of the patent term adjustment for certain patents where the patent term adjustment had already been determined under the old method. Interim Procedure Notice at 5043. This Interim Procedure extends the time beyond two months to request that the USPTO reconsider the patent term adjustment consistent with the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision for patents issued within a certain window of time and even waives the fee required in Rule 705(d). In particular, for those certain patents issued within the 180 days prior to March 2, 2010, the USPTO permits petitions for recalculation of patent term adjustment to be filed later than the two months from patent issuance time limit specified in the rule. Interim Procedure Notice at 5043-5044.

The USPTO's action in implementing the Interim Procedure contradicts the USPTO's position taken with respect to Petitioner in the March 2010 Decision. The March 2010 Decision found that the fact that the Wyeth opinion was contrary to the USPTO's expressly stated interpretation did not warrant modifying the rules to permit Petitioner to request reconsideration of the patent term adjustment more than two months after the patent issued. Yet, the Interim Procedure Notice does exactly that. After the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision, the USPTO apparently did find the situation sufficiently extraordinary to modify the procedure (even doing away with the fee) and extend the time from two months to 180 days from patent issuance in which certain patentees could properly file a Request for Reconsideration to have the patent term adjustment revised in view of Wyeth. Permitting certain patentees, but not others, to seek recalculation of the patent term adjustment is arbitrary and unfair allowing certain patentees to broaden their property right while denying others the right to do so. Petitioner respectfully requests to be treated similarly to those patent owners falling within the Interim Procedure window and have its Request for Reconsideration considered on the merits.

The March 2010 Decision further alleges that the USPTO is constrained by statute to extend the time period for requesting reconsideration. "...[T]he law only allows 180 days for both the filing of a petition and for the Office's consideration of that petition...." March 2010 Decision at 5. Petitioner can find no such limitation in the statute. 35 U.S.C. §154((b)(4) provides those dissatisfied with a patent term adjustment determination with the remedy of a civil action against the Director in the District Court for the District of Columbia, which the statute specifies must be filed within 180 days. However, 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(3) states that the USPTO must create procedures for determining patent term adjustment and, under those

procedures, the USPTO must give the patentee one opportunity to request reconsideration of any patent term adjustment made by the Director. The statute does not specify any particular time limit for requesting reconsideration. The two month time limit is imposed by the regulations in 37 CFR 1.705(d), not by statute. Since this limit is imposed by the Office's own regulations and not the statute, there is no impediment to suspending the time limit of rule 705(d) so that the USPTO can consider Petitioner's request on the merits.

Deadline Should be Tolloed due to Equitable Tolling

The deadline for filing the Request for Reconsideration should also be tolled, regardless of whether it is a regulatory or statutory deadline, under principles of equitable tolling because of Petitioner's reliance, inter alia, on the USPTO's statutory interpretation in the 2004 Notice. The US Supreme Court has held that equitable tolling principles do apply against the government. See Irwin v. Department of Veterans Affairs, 498 U.S. 89, 95-96, 111 S.Ct. 453, 457-458 (1990). Under equitable tolling, a party may be permitted to take action after even a statutory deadline (which this is not, as discussed above) for a number of equitable reasons. Bull S.A. v. Comer, 55 F.3d 678, 681, 35 USPQ2d 1144 (D.C. Cir. 1995). One such basis for equitable tolling is when the failure to meet a deadline "is the result of justifiable reliance on the advice of [a] government officer." Jarrell v. United States Postal Service, 753 F.2d 1088, 1092 (D.C. Cir. 1985).

The instant situation is comparable to that in Bull where the Court tolled a statutory deadline. In Bull, the deadline for renewal of a trademark registration was tolled in view of the USPTO's misstatement that the renewal date was one year later than the actual renewal date. Id. at 683. The DC Court of Appeals rejected the USPTO's arguments that equitable tolling should

not apply because the plaintiff should have known that the renewal date stated in the document from the USPTO was wrong. Rather, the Court found that it was reasonable for the plaintiff to rely on the USPTO's statements and, thus, when its renewal was found untimely, the equities mandated tolling of the deadline. Id.

Similarly, Petitioner justifiably relied on the USPTO's statements in the 2004 Notice to conclude that the USPTO's patent term adjustment calculation for '014 patent was correct. Less than 180 days after the Wyeth District Court Decision (which the USPTO continued to challenge through appeal), Petitioner filed the Request for Reconsideration and the Rule 183 Petition requesting suspension of the rules so that the Request for Reconsideration would be considered on the merits. Petitioner filed the Request for Reconsideration prior to all of the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision, the USPTO's announcement that it would accept and implement the Federal Circuit's interpretation, and the Interim Procedure Notice which waived the two month deadline and the fee for filing a request for reconsideration in view of Wyeth for a select set of issued patents. Petitioner's reliance on the USPTO's statements alone should merit equitable tolling of the deadline in this case. In addition, the arbitrary waiver of the requirements of Rule 705(d) for certain patents but not others further supports that equity requires tolling of the deadline in this case as well. Equitable relief is required to redress the loss of a substantial property right due to Petitioner's reliance on the USPTO's stated policy.

CONCLUSION

For all the reasons discussed herein, Petitioner respectfully requests that the USPTO consider Petitioner's Request for Reconsideration on the merits and revise the patent term


adjustment calculation for the '014 patent in accordance with the Wyeth Federal Circuit Decision.

Petitioner does not believe any fees are due in connection with this Request for Reconsideration. Nevertheless, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required for consideration of this communication to Deposit Account No. **50-3732**, Order No. 17620-105007.

Respectfully submitted,
KING & SPALDING LLP

Dated: June 1, 2010

By:


Kenneth H. Sonnenfeld/ Margaret Brivanlou
Reg. No. 33,285 /Reg. No. 40,922

Correspondence Address:

King & Spalding LLP
1185 Avenue of the Americas
New York, NY 10036
212-556-2100 Telephone
212-556-2222 Facsimile

EXHIBIT A



US007342014B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Ohta et al.(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,342,014 B2**
(45) **Date of Patent:** ***Mar. 11, 2008**(54) **DIAMINE DERIVATIVES**(75) Inventors: **Toshiharu Ohta**, Tokyo (JP); **Satoshi Komoriya**, Tokyo (JP); **Toshiharu Yoshino**, Tokyo (JP); **Kouichi Uoto**, Tokyo (JP); **Yumi Nakamoto**, Tokyo (JP); **Hiroyuki Naito**, Tokyo (JP); **Akiyoshi Mochizuki**, Tokyo (JP); **Tsutomu Nagata**, Tokyo (JP); **Hideyuki Kanno**, Tokyo (JP); **Noriyasu Haginoya**, Tokyo (JP); **Kenji Yoshikawa**, Tokyo (JP); **Masatoshi Nagamochi**, Tokyo (JP); **Syozo Kobayashi**, Tokyo (JP); **Makoto Ono**, Tokyo (JP)(73) Assignee: **Daiichi Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.**, Tokyo (JP)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 357 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/773,344**(22) Filed: **Feb. 9, 2004**(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2005/0020645 A1 Jan. 27, 2005

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation-in-part of application No. 10/481,629, filed as application No. PCT/JP02/06141 on Jun. 20, 2002, application No. 10/773,344, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. PCT/JP02/08119, filed on Aug. 8, 2002.

(30) **Foreign Application Priority Data**

Jun. 20, 2001	(JP)	2001-187105
Aug. 9, 2001	(JP)	2001-243046
Oct. 9, 2001	(JP)	2001-311808
Dec. 28, 2001	(JP)	2001-398708

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61K 31/50 (2006.01)
A61K 31/44 (2006.01)
A61K 31/445 (2006.01)
C07D 471/02 (2006.01)
C07D 401/00 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** **514/252.04**; 514/301; 514/318; 514/338; 546/194; 546/276.6; 544/238(58) **Field of Classification Search** 546/194; 546/114, 276.7; 514/318, 252.04, 301, 338; 544/238

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited****U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

5,668,159 A 9/1997 Jin et al.

5,707,994 A	1/1998	Ikeda et al.
5,811,441 A	9/1998	Olson et al.
5,849,736 A	12/1998	Wityak et al.
5,852,045 A	12/1998	Askew et al.
6,054,065 A	4/2000	Uang et al.
6,300,330 B1	10/2001	Stocker et al.
6,359,134 B1	3/2002	Tawada et al.
6,525,042 B1	2/2003	Kobayashi et al.
6,747,023 B1	6/2004	Kobayashi et al.
2005/0020645 A1	1/2005	Ohta et al.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	0 602 306	6/1994
EP	0 937 711	8/1999
EP	0 937 723	8/1999
EP	0 947 510	10/1999

(Continued)

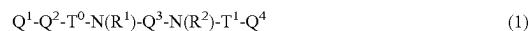
OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hcaplus 68:22392.*

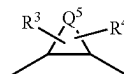
(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Janet L. Andres*Assistant Examiner*—Binta Robinson(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Oblon, Spivak, McClelland, Maier & Neustadt, P.C.(57) **ABSTRACT**

A compound represented by the general formula (1):



wherein R^1 and R^2 are hydrogen atoms or the like; Q^1 is a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or the like; Q^2 is a single bond or the like; Q^3 is a group



in which Q^5 is an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, or the like; and T^0 and T^1 are carbonyl groups or the like; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

The compound is useful as an agent for preventing and/or treating cerebral infarction, cerebral embolism, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, pulmonary infarction, pulmonary embolism, Buerger's disease, deep venous thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome, thrombus formation after valve or joint replacement, thrombus formation and reocclusion after angioplasty, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), thrombus formation during extracorporeal circulation, or blood clotting upon blood drawing.

30 Claims, No Drawings

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EP	1 102 766	5/2001
JP	2000-86659	3/2000
JP	2000-302765	10/2000
JP	2001-11071	1/2001
WO	WO 86/07257	12/1986
WO	WO 93/10022	5/1993
WO	WO 94/20062	9/1994
WO	WO 94/21599	9/1994
WO	WO 92/04017	3/1995
WO	WO 96/10022	4/1996
WO	WO 96/26187	8/1996
WO	WO 96/31501	10/1996
WO	WO 96/40100	12/1996
WO	WO 97/06802	2/1997
WO	WO 97/10853	3/1997
WO	WO 97/29104	8/1997
WO	WO 97/38984	10/1997
WO	WO 98/06705	2/1998
WO	98/21188	5/1998
WO	WO 98/21188	5/1998
WO	WO 98/35956	8/1998
WO	WO 98/45262	10/1998
WO	WO 98/54164	12/1998
WO	WO 98/57952	12/1998
WO	WO 99/00121	1/1999
WO	WO 99/00126	1/1999
WO	WO 99/00127	1/1999
WO	99/06371	2/1999
WO	99/09027	2/1999
WO	WO 99/06371	2/1999
WO	WO 99/09027	2/1999
WO	WO 99/20606	4/1999
WO	WO 99/32225	7/1999
WO	99/51614	10/1999
WO	WO 99/54308	10/1999
WO	WO 99/57099	11/1999
WO	WO 99/57112	11/1999
WO	WO 99/57113	11/1999
WO	00/00498	1/2000
WO	WO 00/06570	2/2000
WO	WO 00/09480	2/2000
WO	WO 00/39092	7/2000
WO	WO 00/39111	7/2000
WO	WO 00/39117	7/2000
WO	WO 00/39118	7/2000
WO	WO 00/47573	8/2000
WO	WO 00/59913	10/2000
WO	WO 00/64902	11/2000
WO	WO 00/71516	11/2000
WO	WO 00/76942	12/2000
WO	WO 00/76971	12/2000
WO	WO 00/78749	12/2000
WO	WO 01/07440	2/2001
WO	WO 01/17990	3/2001
WO	WO 01/19788	3/2001
WO	WO 01/19795	3/2001
WO	WO 01/19798	3/2001
WO	WO 01/38309	5/2001
WO	WO 01/64642	9/2001
WO	WO 01/64643	9/2001
WO	WO 01/74774	10/2001
WO	WO 02/02519	1/2002
WO	WO 02/26712	4/2002
WO	WO 02/26720	4/2002
WO	WO 02/26734	4/2002
WO	WO 02/42270	5/2002
WO	WO 02/060859	8/2002
WO	WO 02/079145	10/2002
WO	WO 02/102380	12/2002
WO	WO 03/026652	4/2003
WO	WO 03/045912	6/2003

WO	WO 03/048081	6/2003
WO	WO 03/048158	6/2003
WO	03/099276	12/2003

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Pandey, B. R., et al., "Interrelationship between anticonvulsant and enzyme inhibitor properties on N-methyl-N-2-(1-arylthiocarbamido) cyclopentyl nitrobenzamides," Pharmacological Research Communications, Italian Pharmacological Society, IT, vol. 13, No. 1, 1981, pp. 65-74, XP002977669.
- Bied, C., et al., "Chiral amino-urea derivatives of (1R,2R)-1,2-diaminocyclohexane as ligands in the ruthenium catalyzed asymmetric reduction of aromatic ketones by hydride transfer," Tetrahedron: Asymmetry, 12(2), 2001, pp. 329-336, XP004230915.
- Smith, P. J., et al., "Substrate-specific catalysis via ion pairs," Angewandte Chemie Int. Ed. Engl., 1993, 32(11), pp. 1648-1650, 1993, XP002384367.
- U.S. Appl. No. 11/217,837, filed Sep. 2, 2005, Yoshino et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 10/539,995, filed Jun. 22, 2005, Nakamoto, et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 10/540,259, filed Jun. 23, 2005, Ohta, et al.
- Abstracts of Papers, Part 1, 218th ACS National Meeting, 0-8412-3685-2, Medi 29 and Medi 199, 3 pages, Aug. 22-26, 1999.
- Abstracts of Papers, Part 2, 219th ACS National Meeting, 0-8412-3731-X, Medi 187, 2 pages, Mar. 26-30, 2000.
- Abstracts of Papers, Part 1, 220th ACS National Meeting, 0-8412-3749-2, Medi 289 and Medi 328, 3 pages, Aug. 20-24, 2000.
- Abstracts of Papers, Part 2, 221th ACS National Meeting, 0-8412-3788-3, Medi 128 (with poster), 3 pages, Apr. 1-5, 2001.
- Abstracts of Papers, Part 2, 226th ACS National Meeting, 0-8412-3889-8, Medi 79 (with poster), 3 pages, Sep. 7-11, 2003.
- S. M. Sheehan, et al., Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, vol. 13, pp. 2255-2259, "A Four Component Coupling Strategy for the Synthesis of D-Phenylglycinamide-Derived Non-Covalent Factor Xa Medi 289 Inhibitors", 2003.
- Y. K. Yee, et al., J. Med. Chem., vol. 43, No. 5, pp. 873-882, "N²-Aroylanthranilamide Inhibitors of Human Factor Xa", 2000.
- D. K. Herron, et al., J. Med. Chem., vol. 43, No. 5, pp. 859-872, "1,2-Dibenzamidobenzene Inhibitors of Human Factor Xa", 2000.
- C. Wu, et al., Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry, vol. 5, No. 10, pp. 1925-1934, "Stereochemical Influence on the Stability of Radio-Metal Complexes In Vivo. Synthesis and Evaluation of the Four Stereoisomers of 2-(p-Nitrobenzyl)-Trans-CyDTPA", 1997.
- Y.-L. Chou, et al., Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters, vol. 13, pp. 507-511, "Structure-Activity Relationships of Substituted Benzo[thiophene]-Anthranilamide Factor Xa Inhibitors", 2003.
- M. Adler, et al., Biochemistry, vol. 41, No. 52, pp. 15514-15523, "Crystal Structures of Two Potent Nonamidine Inhibitors Bound to Factor Xa", 2000.
- J. J. Masters, et al., J. Med. Chem., vol. 43, No. 11, pp. 2087-2092, "Non-Amidine-Containing 1,2-Dibenzamidobenzene Inhibitors of Human Factor Xa With Potent Anticoagulant and Antithrombotic Activity", 2000.
- M. R. Wiley, et al., J. Med. Chem., vol. 43, No. 5, pp. 883-899, "Structure-Based Design of Potent, Amidine-Derived Inhibitors of Factor Xa: Evaluation of Selectivity, Anticoagulant Activity, and Antithrombotic Activity", 2000.
- Jan J. Sigma, et al., "The Ideal Anti-Thrombotic Drug," Thrombosis Research, Erratum, vol. 68, pp. 507-512, 1992.
- Susan Elodi, et al., "Optimization of Conditions for the Catalytic Effect of the Factor IXa—Factor VIII Complex: Probable Role of the Complex in the Amplification of Blood Coagulation," Thrombosis Research, vol. 15, pp. 617-629, 1979.
- Jerome E. Teitel, et al., "Protection of Factor Xa From Neutralization by the Heparin-Antithrombin Complex," Journal of Clinical Investigation, vol. 71, pp. 1383-1391, May 1983.
- Meblo vol. 14, No. 8, pp. 92-97, with partial English Translation.
- Lloyd Waxman, et al., "Tick Anticoagulant Peptide (TAP) is a Novel Inhibitor of Blood Coagulation Factor Xa," Science, vol. 248, pp. 593-596, May 4, 1990.
- Elka Nutt, et al., "The Amino Acid Sequence of Antistatsin," The Journal of Biological Chemistry, vol. 263, pp. 10162-10167, Jul. 25, 1988.

F. Gasparrini, et al., Journal of Chromatography A, vol. 724, pp. 79-90, "Enantioselective Chromatography on Brush-Type Chiral Stationary Phases Containing Totally Synthetic Selectors Theoretical Aspects and Paractical Applications", 1996.

M. Torneiro, et al., Tetrahedron, vol. 53, No. 26, pp. 8739-8749, "Simple Synthetic Receptors That Bind Peptides in Water", 1997.

* cited by examiner

DIAMINE DERIVATIVES

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This new application is a Continuation-in-Part of Ser. No. 10/481,629, filed on Jun. 1, 2004, which is a National Stage Application of International Application No. PCT/JP02/06141, filed on Jun. 20, 2002, which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. § 365(c) to PCT/JP02/02683, filed Mar. 20, 2002; and this new application is a Continuation-in-Part of PCT/JP02/08119, filed Aug. 8, 2002, which claims priority under 35 U.S.C. § 365(c) to both PCT/JP02/02683, filed Mar. 20, 2002, and PCT/JP02/06141, filed on Jun. 20, 2002.

TECHNICAL FIELD

The present invention relates to novel compounds which inhibit activated blood coagulation factor X (hereinafter abbreviated as "FXa") to exhibit a potent anticoagulant effect and can be orally administered, and anticoagulants or agents for preventing and/or treating thrombosis or embolism, which comprise such a novel compound as an active ingredient.

BACKGROUND ART

In unstable angina, cerebral infarction, cerebral embolism, myocardial infarction, pulmonary infarction, pulmonary embolism, Buerger's disease, deep venous thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome, thrombus formation after valve replacement, reocclusion after angioplasty and thrombus formation during extracorporeal circulation, hypercoagulable state is a pivotal factor. Therefore, there is a demand for development of excellent anticoagulants which have good dose responsiveness, long duration, low risk of hemorrhage and little side effects and fast onset of sufficient effects even by oral administration (Thrombosis Research, Vol. 68, pp. 507-512, 1992).

Based on the research of anticoagulants worked through various mechanism of action, it is suggested that FXa inhibitors are promising anticoagulants. A blood coagulation system comprises a series of reactions that a great amount of thrombin is produced through an amplification process by multi-stage enzyme reactions to form insoluble fibrin. In an endogenous system, activated factor IX activates into factor X on a phospholipid membrane in the presence of activated factor VIII and calcium ions after multi-stage reactions subsequent to activation of a contact factor. In an exogenous system, activated factor VII activates factor X in the presence of a tissue factor. More specifically, the activation of the factor X into FXa in the coagulation system is a crucial reaction in the formation of thrombin. The activated factor X (FXa) limitedly decomposes prothrombin to produce thrombin in the both systems. Since the produced thrombin activates coagulation factors in the upper stream, the formation of thrombin is more amplified. As described above, since the coagulation system in the upper stream of FXa is divided into the endogenous system and the exogenous system, production of FXa cannot be sufficiently inhibited by inhibiting enzymes in the coagulation system in the upper stream of FXa, leading to production of thrombin. Since the coagulation system comprises self-amplification reactions, inhibition of the coagulation system can be more efficiently achieved by inhibiting FXa in the upper stream of thrombin than the inhibition of thrombin (Thrombosis Research, Vol. 15, pp. 617-629, 1979).

Another excellent point of FXa inhibitors is a great difference between an effective dose in a thrombosis model and a dose elongating bleeding time in an experimental hemorrhagic model. From this experimental result, FXa inhibitors are considered to be anticoagulants having low risk of hemorrhage.

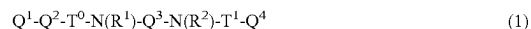
Various compounds have been reported as FXa inhibitors. It is known that antithrombin III and antithrombin III dependent pentasaccharides can generally not inhibit prothrombinase complexes which play a practical role in the thrombus formation in a living body (Thrombosis Research, Vol. 68, pp. 507-512, 1992; Journal of Clinical Investigation, Vol. 71, pp. 1383-1391, 1983; Mebio, Vol. 14, No. 8, pp. 92-97). In addition, they do not exhibit effectiveness by oral administration. Tick anticoagulant peptide (TAP) (Science, Vol. 248, pp. 593-596, 1990) and antistasin (AST) (Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 263, pp. 10162-10167, 1998) isolated from mites or leeches, which are bloodsuckers, also inhibit Fxa and exhibit anti-thrombotic effects against venous thrombosis and arterial thrombosis. However, these compounds are high-molecular weight peptides and unavailable in oral administration. As described above, development of antithrombin III independent low-molecular weight FXa inhibitors which directly inhibit coagulation factors has been conducted.

It is therefore an object of the present invention to provide a novel compound which has a potent FXa-inhibiting effect and exhibits an anti-thrombotic effect quickly, sufficiently and persistently by oral administration.

DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The present inventors have investigated synthesis and pharmacological effects of novel FXa inhibitors. As a result, diamine derivatives, salts thereof, and solvates and N-oxides thereof, which exhibit potent FXa-inhibiting effect and anticoagulant effect, have been found. It has also been found that these compounds promptly, persistently and potently inhibit FXa and exhibit potent anticoagulant effect and anti-thrombotic effect by oral administration, and are hence useful as prophylactics and remedies for various diseases based on thromboembolism, thus leading to completion of the present invention.

This invention provides a compound represented by the general formula (1):



wherein

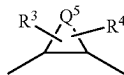
R^1 and R^2 , independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q^1 represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q^2 represents a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

3

Q³ represents the following group:



in which Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, or a group $-(CH_2)_m-CH_2-A-CH_2-(CH_2)_n-$, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, $-SO-$, $-SO_2-$, $-NH-$, $-O-NH-$, $-NH-NH-$, $-S-NH-$, $-SO-NH-$ or $-SO_2-NH-$, and R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or a sulfur atoms of a ring comprising Q⁵ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxycarbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxycarbonylalkylamino group, alkoxycarbonylalkylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxy-alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxy-alkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonyl-aminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxycarbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxycarbonylalkyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylacyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonyl-

4

lacyl group, aminocarbothioyl group, N-alkylaminocarbothioyl group, N,N-dialkylaminocarbothioyl group or alkoxy-alkyl(thiocarbonyl) group, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

Q⁴ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, an arylalkynyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

T⁰ represents a carbonyl or thiocarbonyl group; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, group $-C(=O)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=O)-C(=S)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=S)-N(R')$, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-A^1-N(R'')$, in which A¹ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-NH-$, group $-C(=S)-NH-$, group $-C(=O)-NH-NH-$, group $-C(=O)-A^1-C(=O)-$, in which A² means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-C(=O)-A^3-C(=O)-NH-$, in which A³ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-C(=O)-C(=NOR^a)-N(R^b)-$, group $-C(=S)-C(=NOR^a)-N(R^b)-$, in which R^a means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group or alkanoyl group, and R^b means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-N=N-$, group $-C(=S)-N=N-$, group $-C(=NOR^c)-C(=O)-N(R^d)-$, in which R^c means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl group, aryl group or aralkyl group, and R^d means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=N-N(R^e)(R^f)-C(=O)-N(R^g)-$, in which R^e and R^f, independently of each other, mean a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl or alkyl(thiocarbonyl) group, and R^g means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, or thiocarbonyl group;

a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

This invention also provides a medicine, an activated blood coagulation factor X inhibitor, an anticoagulant, an agent for preventing and/or treating thrombosis or embolism and an agent for preventing and/or treating cerebral infarction, cerebral embolism, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, pulmonary infarction, pulmonary embolism, Buerger's disease, deep venous thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome, thrombus formation after valve or joint replacement, thrombus formation and reocclusion after angioplasty, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), thrombus formation during extracorporeal circulation, or blood clotting upon blood gathering, which each comprises the compound represented by the general formula (1), the salt thereof, the solvate thereof, or N-oxide thereof.

This invention further provides an intermediate useful for preparing the compound represented by the general formula (1).

This invention still further provides use of the compound represented by the general formula (1), the salt thereof, the solvate thereof, or N-oxide thereof for preparation of a medicine.

5

This invention yet still further provides a method for treating thrombosis or embolism, which comprises administering an effective amount of the compound represented by the general formula (1), the salt thereof, the solvate thereof, or N-oxide thereof.

BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

Substituents in the diamine derivatives according to the present invention represented by the general formula (1) will hereinafter be described.

<On group Q⁴>

The group Q⁴ means an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, an arylalkynyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted.

In the group Q⁴, the aryl group may include aryl groups having 6 to 14 carbon atoms, for example, phenyl, naphthyl, anthryl and phenanthryl groups. The arylalkenyl group means a group formed by an aryl group having 6 to 14 carbon atoms and an alkenylene group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof may include a styryl group. The arylalkynyl group means a group formed by an aryl group having 6 to 14 carbon atoms and an alkynylene group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof may include a phenylethynyl group.

The heteroaryl group means a monovalent aromatic group having at least one hetero atom selected from oxygen, sulfur and nitrogen atoms, and examples thereof may include 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl groups, for example, pyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, furyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, pyrimidinyl and tetrazolyl groups. The heteroarylalkenyl group means a group formed by the above-described heteroaryl group and an alkenylene group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof may include thienylethenyl and pyridylethenyl groups.

The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group means a monovalent group derived from a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon. The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon denotes a bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon formed by fusing 2 or 3 saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbons which are the same or different from each other. In this case, examples of the saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbons may include cyclopentane, cyclopentene, cyclohexane, cyclohexene, cyclohexadiene and benzene. Specific examples of the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group may include indenyl, indanyl, tetrahydronaphthyl and naphthyl groups. Incidentally, the position of the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group bonded to T¹ in the general formula (1) is not particularly limited.

The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group means a monovalent group derived from a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring. The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring denotes the following heterocyclic ring ①, ② or ③:

6

①: a bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring formed by fusing 2 or 3 saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic rings which are the same or different from each other;

②: a bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring formed by fusing a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic ring with 1 or 2 saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbons; or

③: a tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring formed by fusing 2 saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic rings with a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon.

The position of the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group bonded to T¹ in the general formula (1) is not particularly limited.

The saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic ring denotes a heterocyclic ring having at least one hetero atom selected from oxygen, sulfur and nitrogen atoms, and specific examples thereof may include furan, pyrrole, thiophene, pyrazole, imidazole, oxazole, oxazolidine, thiazole, thiadiazole, furazane, pyrane, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, piperidine, oxazine, oxadiazine, morpholine, thiazine, thiadiazine, thiomorpholine, tetrazole, triazole, triazine, thiadiazine, oxadiazine, azepine, diazepine, triazepine, thiazepine and oxazepine. The saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon denotes the same saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon as shown in the description of the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group. Specific examples of the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group may include benzofuryl, isobenzofuryl, benzothienyl, indolyl, indolinyl, isoindolyl, isoindolinyl, indazolyl, quinolyl, dihydroquinolyl, 4-oxodihydroquinolyl (dihydroquinolin-4-on), tetrahydroquinolyl, isoquinolyl, tetrahydro-isoquinolyl, chromenyl, chromanyl, isochromanyl, 4H-4-oxobenzopyranyl, 3,4-dihydro-4H-4-oxobenzopyranyl, 4H-quinoliziny, quinazoliny, dihydroquinazoliny, tetrahydroquinazoliny, quinoxaliny, tetrahydroquinoxaliny, cinnoliny, tetrahydrocinnoliny, indoliziny, tetrahydroindoliziriny, benzothiazolyl, tetrahydrobenzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzoisothiazolyl, benzoisoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, naphthyridiny, tetrahydronaphthyridiny, thienopyridyl, tetrahydro-thienopyridyl, thiazolopyridyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridyl, thiazolopyridazinyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridazinyl, pyrrolopyridyl, dihydropyrrolopyridyl, tetrahydropyrrolopyridyl, pyrrolopyrimidinyl, dihydropyrrolopyrimidinyl, pyridoquinazoliny, dihydropyridoquinazoliny, pyridopyrimidinyl, tetrahydropyridopyrimidinyl, pyranothiazolyl, dihydropyranothiazolyl, furopyridyl, tetrahydro-furopyridyl, oxazolopyridyl, tetrahydrooxazolopyridyl, oxazolopyridazinyl, tetrahydrooxazolopyridazinyl, pyrrolothiazolyl, dihydropyrrolothiazolyl, pyrrolooxazolyl, dihydropyrrolooxazolyl, thienopyrrolyl, thiazolopyrimidinyl, 4-oxotetrahydrocinnoliny, 1,2,4-benzothiadiaziny, 1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiaziny, 1,2,4-benzoxadiaziny, cyclopentapyranyl, thienofuranyl, fuopyranyl, pyridoxaziny, pyrazoloxazolyl, imidazothiazolyl, imidazopyridyl, tetrahydroimidazo-pyridyl, pyrazinopyridazinyl, benzoisoquinolyl, furocinnolyl, pyrazolothiazolopyridazinyl, tetrahydropyrazolothiazolopyridazinyl, hexahydrothiazolopyridazinopyridazinyl, imidazotriazinyl, oxazolopyridyl, benzoxepiny, benzoxazepiny, tetrahydrobenzoxazepiny, benzodiazepiny, benzotriazepiny, thienoazepiny, tetrahydrothienoazepiny, thienodiazepiny, thienotriazepiny, thiazoloazepiny, tetrahydrothia-

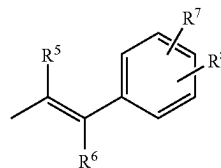
zolo-azepinyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-5,6-tetramethylenethiazolo-pyridazinyl and 5,6-trimethylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolopyridazinyl groups.

No particular limitation is imposed on the fusing form of the fused heterocyclic group. For example, the naphthyridinyl group may be any of 1,5-, 1,6-, 1,7-, 1,8-, 2,6- and 2,7-naphthyridinyl groups, the thienopyridyl group may be any of thieno[2,3-b]pyridyl, thieno[2,3-c]pyridyl, thieno[3,2-b]pyridyl, thieno[3,2-c]pyridyl, thieno[3,4-b]pyridyl and thieno[3,4-c]pyridyl groups, the thienopyrrolyl group may be any of thieno[2,3-b]pyrrolyl and thieno[2,3-b]pyrrolyl groups, the thiazolopyridyl group may be any of thiazolo[4,5-b]pyridyl, thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridyl, thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridyl, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridyl, thiazolo[3,4-a]pyridyl and thiazolo[3,2-a]pyridyl groups, the thiazolopyridazinyl group may be any of thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridazinyl, thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazinyl, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridazinyl and thiazolo[3,2-b]pyridazinyl groups, the pyrrolopyridyl may be any of pyrrolo[2,3-b]pyridyl, pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridyl, pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridyl, pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridyl, pyrrolo[3,4-b]pyridyl and pyrrolo[3,4-c]pyridyl group, the pyridopyrimidinyl group may be any of pyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidinyl, pyrido[3,2-d]pyrimidinyl, pyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidinyl, pyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidinyl, pyrido[1,2-c]pyrimidinyl and pyrido[1,2-a]pyrimidinyl groups, the pyranothiazolyl group may be any of pyrano[2,3-d]thiazolyl, pyrano[4,3-d]thiazolyl, pyrano[3,4-d]thiazolyl and pyrano[3,2-d]thiazolyl groups, the furopyridyl group may be any of furo[2,3-b]pyridyl, furo[2,3-c]pyridyl, furo[3,2-b]pyridyl, furo[3,2-c]pyridyl, furo[3,4-b]pyridyl and furo[3,4-c]pyridyl groups, the oxazolopyridyl group may be any of oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridyl, oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridyl, oxazolo[5,4-b]pyridyl, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridyl, oxazolo[3,4-a]pyridyl and oxazolo[3,2-a]pyridyl groups, the oxazolopyridazinyl group may be any of oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridazinyl, oxazolo[4,5-d]pyridazinyl, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridazinyl and oxazolo[3,4-b]pyridazinyl groups, the pyrrolothiazolyl group may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]thiazolyl, pyrrolo[1,2-c]thiazolyl, pyrrolo[2,3-d]thiazolyl, pyrrolo[3,2-d]thiazolyl and pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazolyl groups, the pyrrolooxazolyl group may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]oxazolyl, pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazolyl, pyrrolo[2,3-d]oxazolyl, pyrrolo[3,2-d]oxazolyl and pyrrolo[3,4-d]oxazolyl groups, the benzoazepinyl group may be any of 1H-1-benzoazepinyl, 1H-2-benzoazepinyl and 1H-3-benzoazepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type benzoazepinyl group such as 4,5-dihydro-1-oxo-1H-2-benzoazepinyl group, the benzodiazepinyl group may be any of 1H-1,3-benzodiazepinyl, 1H-1,4-benzodiazepinyl and 1H-1,5-benzodiazepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type benzodiazepinyl group such as 4,5-dihydro-4-oxo-1H-1,3-benzodiazepinyl group, the benzotriazepinyl group may be any of 1H-1,3,4-benzotriazepinyl and 1H-1,3,5-benzotriazepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type benzotriazepinyl group such as 4,5-dihydro-5-oxo-1H-1,3,4-benzotriazepinyl group, and the thienazepinyl group may be any of thieno[2,3-b]azepinyl, thieno[2,3-c]azepinyl, thieno[2,3-d]azepinyl, thieno[3,2-c]azepinyl and thieno[3,2-b]azepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type thienazepinyl group such as 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-c]azepinyl group. Thienodiazepinyl and thienotriazepinyl groups may also be any fusing forms, or may be those of the dihydro-oxo derivative type. The benzothiazepinyl group may be any of 1H-1-benzothiazepinyl, 1H-2-benzothiazepinyl and 1H-3-benzothiazepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type benzothiazepinyl group such as 4,5-dihydro-1-oxo-1H-2-benzothiazepinyl group, and the benzoxazepinyl group may be any of 1H-1-benzoxazepinyl, 1H-2-benzox-

azepinyl and 1H-3-benzoxazepinyl groups, or may be a dihydro-oxo derivative type benzoxazepinyl group such as 4,5-dihydro-1-oxo-1H-2-benzoxazepinyl group. Other fusing forms than these may be allowed.

The above-described aryl groups, heteroaryl groups, arylalkenyl group, heteroarylalkenyl groups, saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon groups and saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic groups may each have 1 to 3 substituents. Examples of the substituents may include a hydroxyl group, halogen atoms such as fluorine atom, chlorine atom, bromine atom and iodine atom, halogenoalkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms substituted by 1 to 3 halogen atoms, an amino group, a cyano group, aminoalkyl groups, a nitro group, hydroxyalkyl groups (for example, hydroxymethyl group, 2-hydroxyethyl group, etc.), alkoxyalkyl groups (for example, methoxymethyl group, 2-methoxyethyl group, etc.), a carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl groups (for example, carboxymethyl group, 2-carboxyethyl group, etc.), alkoxy-carbonylalkyl groups (for example, methoxycarbonylmethyl group, ethoxycarbonylmethyl group, etc.), acyl groups (for example, alkanoyl groups such as formyl group, acetyl group and propionyl group), an amidino group, a hydroxyamidino group, linear, branched or cyclic alkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, methyl group, ethyl group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy groups having 1 to 6 carbon atom (for example, methoxy group, ethoxy group, etc.), amidino groups substituted by an alkoxy-carbonyl group having 2 to 7 carbon atoms (for example, methoxycarbonylamidino group, ethoxycarbonylamidino group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkenyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, vinyl group, allyl group, etc.), linear or branched alkynyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, ethynyl group, propynyl group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy-carbonyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, methoxycarbonyl group, ethoxycarbonyl group, etc.), a carbamoyl group, mono- or di-alkylcarbamoyl groups substituted by a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms on the nitrogen atom(s) (for example, methylcarbamoyl group, ethylcarbamoyl group, dimethylcarbamoyl group, ethylmethylcarbamoyl group, etc.), mono- or di-alkylamino groups substituted by 1 or 2 linear, branched or cyclic alkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, ethylamino, dimethylamino and methylethylamino groups), and 5- or 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic groups (for example, pyrrolidino group, piperidino group, piperazino group, morpholino group, etc.).

As the group Q⁴, are preferred the following 12 groups (a) to (1) among the above-described groups. Namely,

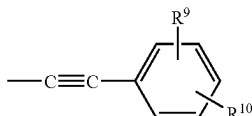


(a)

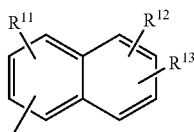
wherein R⁵ and R⁶, independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, or phenyl group which may be substituted by a cyano group, hydroxyl group,

9

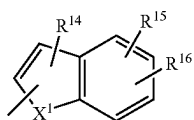
halogen atom, alkyl group or alkoxy group, and R⁷ and R⁸, independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;



wherein R⁹ and R¹⁰, independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;

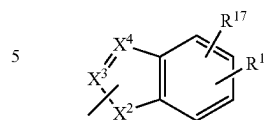


wherein R¹¹, R¹² and R¹³, independently of one another, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;

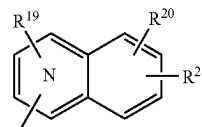


wherein X¹ represents CH₂, CH, NH, NOH, N, O or S, and R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and R¹⁶, independently of one another, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;

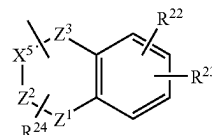
10



wherein X² represents NH, N, O or S, X³ represents N, C or CH, X⁴ represents N, C or CH, and R¹⁷ and R¹⁸, independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group, excluding the cases where X³ and X⁴ are combinations of C and CH, and are both C or CH;

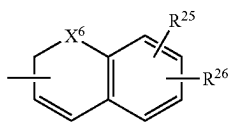


wherein N indicates that 1 or 2 carbon atoms of the ring substituted by R¹⁹ have been substituted by a nitrogen atom, and R¹⁹, R²⁰ and R²¹, independently of one another, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;

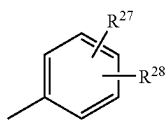


wherein X⁵ represents CH₂, CH, N or NH, Z¹ represents N, NH or O, Z² represents CH₂, CH, C or N, Z³ represents CH₂, CH, S, SO₂ or C=O, X⁵-Z² indicates that X⁵ and Z² are bonded to each other by a single bond or double bond, R²² and R²³, independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group, and R²⁴ represents a hydrogen atom or alkyl group;

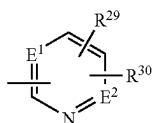
11



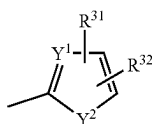
wherein X^6 represents O or S, and R^{25} and R^{26} , independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;



wherein R^{27} and R^{28} , independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;



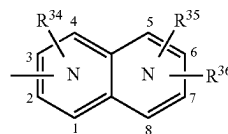
wherein E^1 and E^2 , independently of each other, represent N or CH, and R^{29} and R^{30} , independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group;



wherein Y^1 represents CH or N, Y^2 represents $-N(R^{33})-$, in which R^{33} means a hydrogen atom or alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, O or S, and R^{31} and R^{32} , independently

12

of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group; and



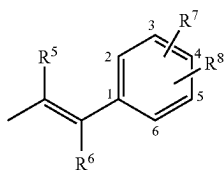
wherein numerals 1 to 8 indicate positions, each N indicates that any one of carbon atoms of positions 1 to 4 and any one of carbon atoms of positions 5 to 8 has been substituted by a nitrogen atom, and R^{34} , R^{35} and R^{36} , independently of one another, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, nitro group, amino group, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, acyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, alkoxycarbonyl group, amidino group or alkoxycarbonylalkyl group.

These groups will hereinafter be described.

In the description of R^5 to R^{36} , the halogen atom is a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, the alkyl group is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, the alkenyl group is a linear, branched or cyclic alkenyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, the alkynyl group is a linear or branched alkynyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms, the hydroxyalkyl group means the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted by a hydroxyl group, the alkoxy group is a linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, the alkoxyalkyl group means the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted by the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkoxy group, the carboxyalkyl group means the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted by a carboxyl group, the acyl group is an alkanoyl group (including formyl) having 1 to 6 carbon atom, an aroyl group such as a benzoyl or naphthoyl group, or an arylalkanoyl group with the above-described C_6 - C_{14} aryl group substituted on the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkanoyl group, the N-alkylcarbamoyl group means a carbamoyl group with the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted on the nitrogen atom, the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group means a carbamoyl group with two of the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl groups substituted on the nitrogen atom, the alkoxycarbonyl group is a group composed of the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkoxy group and a carbonyl group, the alkoxycarbonylalkyl group means the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted by the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkoxycarbonyl group, and the halogenoalkyl group means the above-described C_1 - C_6 alkyl group substituted by 1 to 3 halogen atoms. Incidentally, in the above description, no particular limitation is imposed on the substituting position.

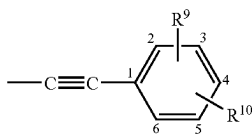
13

In the following group:



wherein R^5 , R^6 , R^7 and R^8 have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 6 indicate positions, R^5 and R^6 , independently of each other, are preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. R^5 and R^6 are more preferably hydrogen atoms or alkyl groups. In the case of the alkyl group, a methyl group is preferred. It is preferable that one of R^7 and R^8 is a hydrogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is particularly preferred an ethynyl group. As specific preferable examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned chlorostyryl, fluorostyryl, bromostyryl and ethynylstyryl groups. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is particularly preferably a 4-position in the above formula though it should not be particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 4-chlorostyryl, 4-fluorostyryl, 4-bromostyryl and 4-ethynylstyryl groups.

In the following group:

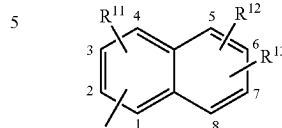


wherein R^9 and R^{10} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 6 indicate positions, R^9 and R^{10} , independently of each other, are preferably a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. It is further preferable that R^9 is a hydrogen atom, and R^{10} is a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is particularly preferred an ethynyl group. As specific preferable examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned chlorophenylethynyl, fluorophenylethynyl, bromophenylethynyl and ethynylphenylethynyl groups. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is particularly preferably a 4-position in the above formula though it should not be particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 4-chlorophenylethynyl, 4-fluorophenylethynyl, 4-bromophenylethynyl and 4-ethynylphenylethynyl groups.

14

In the following group:

(a)

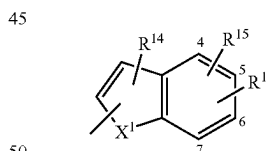


10

wherein R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{13} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 8 indicate positions, R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{13} are, independently of one another, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. R^{11} is preferably a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, halogen atom or hydroxyl group, with a hydrogen atom particularly preferred. It is preferable that one of R^{12} and R^{13} is a hydrogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. In the naphthyl group, a 2-naphthyl group is preferred to a 1-naphthyl group. In the case of the 2-naphthyl group, a position substituted by a halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 6- or 7-position in the above formula though it should not be particularly limited, with a 6-position being most preferred. These naphthyl groups are preferably substituted by a chlorine, fluorine or bromine atom, an alkynyl group, or the like, with a group having a substituents such as a chlorine, fluorine or bromine atom, an alkynyl group, or the like at the above-described position in the above formula being particularly preferred. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 6-chloro-2-naphthyl, 6-fluoro-2-naphthyl, 6-bromo-2-naphthyl, 6-ethynyl-2-naphthyl, 7-chloro-2-naphthyl, 7-fluoro-2-naphthyl, 7-bromo-2-naphthyl and 7-ethynyl-2-naphthyl groups.

In the following group:

(b)



45

wherein X^1 , R^{14} , R^{15} and R^{16} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 4 to 7 indicate positions, X^1 is preferably NH, NOH, N, O or S, with NH, O or S being particularly preferred. R^{14} is preferably a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, acyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group or alkyl group, and R^{15} and R^{16} are, independently of each other, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. It is preferable that one of R^{15} and R^{16} is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom, preferably fluorine atom or chlorine atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or

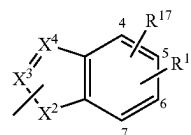
15

alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 4-, 5- or 6-position in the above formula though it should be not particularly limited. As specific preferable examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned 5-chloroindolyl, 5-fluoroindolyl, 5-bromoindolyl, 5-ethynylindolyl, 5-methylindolyl, 5-chloro-4-fluoroindolyl, 5-chloro-3-fluoroindolyl, 5-fluoro-3-chloroindolyl, 5-ethynyl-3-fluoroindolyl, 5-chloro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indolyl, 5-fluoro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indolyl, 5-chloro-3-formylindolyl, 5-fluoro-3-formylindolyl, 6-chloroindolyl, 6-fluoroindolyl, 6-bromoindolyl, 6-ethynylindolyl, 6-methylindolyl, 5-chlorobenzothienyl, 5-fluorobenzothienyl, 5-bromo-benzothienyl, 5-ethynylbenzothienyl, 5-methyl-benzothienyl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzothienyl, 6-chlorobenzothienyl, 6-fluorobenzothienyl, 6-bromo-benzothienyl, 6-ethynylbenzothienyl, 6-methyl-benzothienyl, 5-chlorobenzofuryl, 5-fluorobenzofuryl, 5-bromobenzofuryl, 5-ethynylbenzofuryl, 5-methylbenzofuryl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzofuryl, 6-chlorobenzofuryl, 6-fluorobenzofuryl, 6-bromobenzofuryl, 6-ethynylbenzofuryl and 6-methylbenzofuryl groups. The position of the above-described substituent group bonded to T¹ is not particularly limited, but is preferably a 2-position or 3-position in the formula (d). Specifically, more preferred are 5-chloroindol-2-yl, 5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-bromoindol-2-yl, 5-ethynylindol-2-yl, 5-methylindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-fluoroindol-2-yl, 3-bromo-5-chloroindol-2-yl, 3-chloro-5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 3-bromo-5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-chloroindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-fluoro-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-ethynyl-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-fluoro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-ethynyl-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 6-chloroindol-2-yl, 6-fluoroindol-2-yl, 6-bromoindol-2-yl, 6-ethynylindol-2-yl, 6-methylindol-2-yl, 5-chloroindol-3-yl, 5-fluoroindol-3-yl, 5-bromoindol-3-yl, 5-ethynylindol-3-yl, 5-methylindol-3-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluoroindol-3-yl, 6-chloroindol-3-yl, 6-fluoroindol-3-yl, 6-bromoindol-3-yl, 6-ethynylindol-3-yl, 6-methylindol-3-yl, 5-chlorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-bromobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-methylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-bromobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-methylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-fluorobenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-bromobenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-ethynylbenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-methylbenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzothiophen-3-yl, 6-chlorobenzothiophen-3-yl, 6-fluorobenzothiophen-3-yl, 6-bromobenzothiophen-3-yl, 6-ethynylbenzothiophen-3-yl, 6-methylbenzothiophen-3-yl, 5-chlorobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-bromobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzofuran-2-yl, 5-methylbenzofuran-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-bromobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzofuran-2-yl, 6-methylbenzofuran-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzofuran-3-yl, 5-fluorobenzofuran-3-yl, 5-bromobenzofuran-3-yl, 5-ethynylbenzofuran-3-yl, 5-methylbenzofuran-3-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzofuran-3-yl, 6-chlorobenzofuran-3-yl, 6-fluorobenzofuran-3-yl, 6-bromobenzofuran-3-yl, 6-ethynylbenzofuran-3-yl and

16

6-methylbenzofuran-3-yl groups, with 5-chloroindol-2-yl, 5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-bromoindol-2-yl, 5-ethynylindol-2-yl, 5-methylindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluoroindol-2-yl, 6-chloroindol-2-yl, 6-fluoroindol-2-yl, 6-bromoindol-2-yl, 6-ethynylindol-2-yl, 6-methylindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-fluoroindol-2-yl, 3-bromo-5-chloroindol-2-yl, 3-chloro-5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 3-bromo-5-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-chloroindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-fluoroindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-fluoro-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-ethynyl-3-formylindol-2-yl, 5-chloro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-fluoro-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-bromo-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-ethynyl-3-(N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl)indol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-bromobenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-methylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-bromobenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 6-methylbenzothiophen-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-bromobenzofuran-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzofuran-2-yl, 5-methylbenzofuran-2-yl, 5-chloro-4-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-bromobenzofuran-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzofuran-2-yl and 6-methylbenzofuran-2-yl groups being particularly preferred.

In the following group:



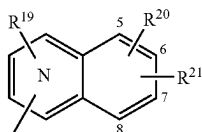
(e)

wherein X², X³, X⁴, R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 4 to 7 indicate positions, X² is preferably NH, O or S, any one of X³ and X⁴ is preferably CH or C, particularly preferably C. R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ are, independently of each other, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. It is preferable that one of R¹⁷ and R¹⁸ is a hydrogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 5- or 6-position in the above formula though it should not be particularly limited. As specific preferable examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned 5-chloroindazolyl, 5-fluoroindazolyl, 5-bromoindazolyl, 5-ethynylindazolyl, 6-chloroindazolyl, 6-fluoroindazolyl, 6-bromoindazolyl, 6-ethynylindazolyl, 5-chlorobenzimidazolyl, 5-fluoro-benzimidazolyl, 5-bromobenzimidazolyl, 5-ethynyl-benzimidazolyl, 6-chlorobenzimidazolyl, 6-fluoro-benzimidazolyl, 6-bromobenzimidazolyl, 6-ethynylbenzimidazolyl, 5-chlorobenzothiazolyl, 5-fluoro-benzothiazolyl, 5-bromobenzothiazolyl, 5-ethynyl-benzothiazolyl, 6-chlorobenzothiazolyl, 6-fluoro-benzothiazolyl, 6-bromobenzothiazolyl, 6-ethynyl-benzothiazolyl, 5-chlorobenzoxazolyl, 5-fluo-

17

robenzoxazolyl, 5-bromobenzoisoxazolyl, 5-ethynylbenzoxazolyl, 6-chloro-benzoxazolyl, 6-fluorobenzoisoxazolyl, 6-bromobenzoisoxazolyl, 6-ethynylbenzoxazolyl, 5-chlorobenzoisothiazolyl, 5-fluorobenzoisothiazolyl, 5-bromobenzoisothiazolyl, 5-ethynylbenzoisothiazolyl, 6-chlorobenzoisothiazolyl, 6-fluorobenzoisothiazolyl, 6-bromobenzoisothiazolyl, 6-ethynylbenzoisothiazolyl, 5-chlorobenzoisoxazolyl, 5-fluorobenzoisoxazolyl, 5-bromobenzoisoxazolyl, 5-ethynyl-benzoisoxazolyl, 6-chlorobenzoisoxazolyl, 6-fluorobenzoisoxazolyl, 6-bromobenzoisoxazolyl and 6-ethynyl-benzoisoxazolyl groups. The position of the above-described substituent group bonded to T¹ is not particularly limited. More preferred are 5-chloroindazol-3-yl, 5-fluoroindazol-3-yl, 5-bromoindazol-3-yl, 5-ethynylindazol-3-yl, 6-chloroindazol-3-yl, 6-fluoroindazol-3-yl, 6-bromoindazol-3-yl, 6-ethynylindazol-3-yl, 5-chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 5-fluorobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 5-bromobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 5-ethynylbenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 6-chlorobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 6-fluorobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 6-bromobenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 6-ethynylbenzoisothiazol-3-yl, 5-chlorobenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 5-fluorobenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 5-bromobenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 5-ethynylbenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 6-chlorobenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 6-fluorobenzoisoxazol-3-yl, 6-bromobenzoisoxazol-3-yl and 6-ethynylbenzoisoxazol-3-yl groups, with 5-chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzimidazol-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzothiazol-2-yl, 6-ethynylbenzothiazol-2-yl, 5-chlorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzoxazol-2-yl, 5-ethynylbenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-chlorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-fluorobenzoxazol-2-yl, 6-bromobenzoxazol-2-yl and 6-ethynylbenzoxazol-2-yl groups being particularly preferred. Among these, 5-chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-fluorobenzimidazol-2-yl, 5-bromobenzimidazol-2-yl and 5-ethynylbenzimidazol-2-yl are further preferred.

In the following group:

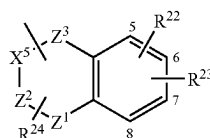


wherein N indicates that 1 or 2 carbon atoms of the ring substituted by R¹⁹ have been substituted by a nitrogen atom, R¹⁹, R²⁰ and R²¹ have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 5 to 8 indicate positions, R¹⁹, R²⁰ and R²¹ are,

18

independently of each other, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. R¹⁹ is particularly preferably a hydrogen atom. It is preferable that one of R²⁰ and R²¹ is a hydrogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 6- or 7-position in the above formula though it should not be particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl and cinnolinyl groups. More preferred are 6-chloroquinolinyl, 6-fluoroquinolinyl, 6-bromoquinolinyl, 6-ethynylquinolinyl, 6-chloroisoquinolinyl, 6-fluoroisoquinolinyl, 6-bromoisoquinolinyl, 6-ethynylisoquinolinyl, 7-chlorocinnolinyl, 7-fluorocinnolinyl, 7-bromocinnolinyl and 7-ethynylcinnolinyl groups, with 6-chloroquinolin-2-yl, 6-fluoroquinolin-2-yl, 6-bromoquinolin-2-yl, 6-ethynylquinolin-2-yl, 6-chloroquinolin-3-yl, 6-fluoroquinolin-3-yl, 6-bromoquinolin-3-yl, 6-ethynylquinolin-3-yl, 7-chloroquinolin-2-yl, 7-fluoroquinolin-2-yl, 7-bromoquinolin-2-yl, 7-ethynylquinolin-2-yl, 7-chloroquinolin-3-yl, 7-fluoroquinolin-3-yl, 7-bromoquinolin-3-yl, 7-ethynylquinolin-3-yl, 6-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl, 6-fluoroisoquinolin-3-yl, 6-bromoisoquinolin-3-yl, 6-ethynylisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-fluoroisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-bromoisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-ethynylisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-chlorocinnolin-3-yl, 7-fluorocinnolin-3-yl, 7-bromocinnolin-3-yl and 7-ethynylcinnolin-3-yl groups being particularly preferred. Among these, 6-chloroquinolin-2-yl, 6-fluoroquinolin-2-yl, 6-bromoquinolin-2-yl, 6-ethynylquinolin-2-yl, 7-chloroquinolin-3-yl, 7-fluoroquinolin-3-yl, 7-bromoquinolin-3-yl, 7-ethynylquinolin-3-yl, 7-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-fluoroisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-bromoisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-ethynylisoquinolin-3-yl, 7-chlorocinnolin-3-yl, 7-fluorocinnolin-3-yl, 7-bromocinnolin-3-yl and 7-ethynylcinnolin-3-yl groups are further preferred.

In the following group:



wherein numerals 5 to 8 indicate positions, X⁵ represents CH₂, CH, N or NH, Z¹ represents N, NH or O, Z² represents CH₂, CH, C or N, Z³ represents CH₂, CH, S, SO₂ or C≡O, X⁵-Z² indicates that X⁵ and Z² are bonded to each other by a single bond or double bond, and R²², R²³ and R²⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, R²² and R²³ are, independently of each other, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. It is preferable that one of R²² and R²³ is a hydrogen, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this

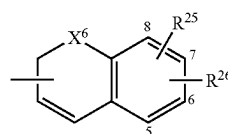
19

case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 6- or 7-position in the above formula though it should be not particularly limited. R²⁴ is preferably a hydrogen atom or alkyl group, and a methyl group is preferred as the alkyl group. As R²⁴, is particularly preferred a hydrogen atom. As specific preferable examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned 4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, 4-oxodihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 4-oxotetrahydrocinnolinyl, 4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 4-oxobenzothiadiazinyl, 1,1-dioxy-4-oxo-benzothiadiazinyl and benzoxadiazinyl groups. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 6-chloro-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 6-fluoro-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 6-bromo-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-dihydroquinolinyl, 7-chloro-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 7-fluoro-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 7-bromo-4-oxo-dihydroquinolinyl, 7-ethynyl-4-oxodihydroquinolinyl, 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 6-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 7-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 7-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 7-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 7-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolinyl, 6-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 6-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 6-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 6-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 7-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 7-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 7-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolinyl, 6-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 6-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 6-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 6-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 7-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 7-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 7-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolinyl, 6-chloro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-bromo-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-chloro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-fluoro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-bromo-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 6-fluoro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 6-bromo-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 6-ethynyl-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 7-chloro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 7-fluoro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 7-bromo-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 7-ethynyl-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazinyl, 6-chloro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 6-fluoro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 6-bromo-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 6-ethynyl-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 7-chloro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 7-fluoro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl, 7-bromo-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl and 7-ethynyl-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazinyl groups; with 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 7-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 7-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 7-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 7-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 7-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 7-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-

20

dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 7-chloro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 7-fluoro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 7-bromo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-4-oxocinnolin-2-yl, 6-chloro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-bromo-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-chloro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-fluoro-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-bromo-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-4H-4-oxobenzopyran-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 6-bromo-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 7-chloro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 7-bromo-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiazin-3-yl, 6-chloro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 6-bromo-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 7-chloro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl, 7-bromo-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl and 7-ethynyl-2H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazin-3-yl groups being preferred. Among these, 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinolin-2-yl, 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl, 6-bromo-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl and 6-ethynyl-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl are particularly preferred.

In the following group:



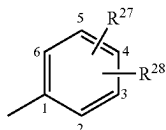
(h)

wherein X⁶ represents O or S, R²⁵ and R²⁶ have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 5 to 8 indicate positions, X⁶ is preferably O, and R²⁵ and R²⁶ are, independently of each other, preferably a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. It is preferable that one of R²⁵ and R²⁶ is a hydrogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is preferably a 6- or 7-position in the above formula though it should be not particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 6-chloro-2H-chromen-3-yl, 6-fluoro-2H-chromen-3-yl,

21

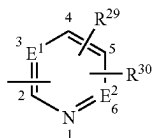
6-bromo-2H-chromen-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-2H-chromen-3-yl, 7-chloro-2H-chromen-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2H-chromen-3-yl, 7-bromo-2H-chromen-3-yl and 7-ethynyl-2H-chromen-3-yl groups, with 7-chloro-2H-chromen-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2H-chromen-3-yl, 7-bromo-2H-chromen-3-yl and 7-ethynyl-2H-chromen-3-yl groups being particularly preferred.

In the following group:



wherein R^{27} and R^{28} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 6 indicate positions, it is preferable that one of R^{27} and R^{28} is a hydrogen atom or halogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, nitro group, amino group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogenoalkyl group or N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is particularly preferred an ethynyl group. As specific examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned phenyl, chlorophenyl, fluorophenyl, bromophenyl, ethynylphenyl and chlorofluorophenyl groups. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group in these groups is particularly preferably a 3- or 4-position in the above formula in the case of one substituent or a combination of a 4-position and a 2- or 3-position in the above formula in the case of two substituents though it should be not particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned phenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, 4-ethynylphenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 3-bromo-phenyl, 3-ethynylphenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 4-chloro-3-fluorophenyl, 4-chloro-2-fluorophenyl, 2-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 4-bromo-2-fluorophenyl, 2-bromo-4-fluorophenyl, 2,4-dichlorophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 2,4-dibromophenyl, 4-chloro-3-methylphenyl, 4-fluoro-3-methylphenyl, 4-bromo-3-methylphenyl, 4-chloro-2-methylphenyl, 4-fluoro-2-methylphenyl, 4-bromo-2-methylphenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,4-difluorophenyl and 3,4-dibromophenyl.

In the following group:

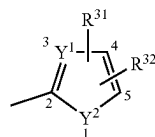


wherein E^1 , E^2 , R^{29} and R^{30} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 6 indicate positions, it is preferable that one of R^{29} and R^{30} is a hydrogen atom or halogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom,

22

halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is particularly preferred an ethynyl group. As specific examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned pyridyl, pyrimidyl and pyridazinyl groups. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group in these groups is particularly preferably a 4- or 5-position in the above formula in the case where its bonding to the group T^1 is at a 2-position in the above formula though it should be not particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 4-chloro-2-pyridyl, 4-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 4-bromo-2-pyridyl, 4-ethynyl-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-3-pyridyl, 4-fluoro-3-pyridyl, 4-bromo-3-pyridyl, 4-ethynyl-3-pyridyl, 5-chloro-2-pyridyl, 5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-bromo-2-pyridyl, 5-ethynyl-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-chloro-4-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-chloro-3-pyridyl, 5-fluoro-3-pyridyl, 5-bromo-3-pyridyl, 5-ethynyl-3-pyridyl, 5-chloro-2-pyrimidyl, 5-fluoro-2-pyrimidyl, 5-bromo-2-pyrimidyl, 5-ethynyl-2-pyrimidyl, 4-chloro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-fluoro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-bromo-3-pyridazinyl, 4-ethynyl-3-pyridazinyl, 6-chloro-3-pyridazinyl, 6-fluoro-3-pyridazinyl, 6-bromo-3-pyridazinyl and 6-ethynyl-3-pyridazinyl groups. Particularly preferred are 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 4-chloro-2-pyridyl, 4-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 4-bromo-2-pyridyl, 4-ethynyl-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-3-pyridyl, 4-fluoro-3-pyridyl, 4-bromo-3-pyridyl, 4-ethynyl-3-pyridyl, 5-chloro-2-pyridyl, 5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-bromo-2-pyridyl, 5-ethynyl-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-chloro-4-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-chloro-3-pyridyl, 5-fluoro-3-pyridyl, 5-bromo-3-pyridyl, 5-ethynyl-3-pyridyl, 6-chloro-3-pyridazinyl, 6-fluoro-3-pyridazinyl, 6-bromo-3-pyridazinyl, 6-ethynyl-3-pyridazinyl, 4-chloro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-fluoro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-bromo-3-pyridazinyl and 4-ethynyl-3-pyridazinyl groups. Among these, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 5-chloro-2-pyridyl, 5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 5-bromo-2-pyridyl, 5-ethynyl-2-pyridyl, 5-chloro-4-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-5-fluoro-2-pyridyl, 4-chloro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-fluoro-3-pyridazinyl, 4-bromo-3-pyridazinyl and 4-ethynyl-3-pyridazinyl groups are further preferred.

In the following group:

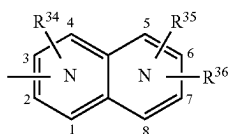


wherein Y^1 , Y^2 , R^{31} and R^{32} have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 to 5 indicate positions, it is preferable that one of R^{31} and R^{32} is a hydrogen atom or halogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is particularly preferred an ethynyl group. As specific examples of the group represented by the above formula, may be mentioned thienyl, pyrrolyl, furyl, oxazolyl and thiazolyl groups. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group in these groups is

23

particularly preferably a 4- or 5-position in the above formula though it should be not particularly limited. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 4-chloro-2-thienyl, 4-fluoro-2-thienyl, 4-bromo-2-thienyl, 4-ethynyl-2-thienyl, 4-chloro-2-pyrrolyl, 4-fluoro-2-pyrrolyl, 4-bromo-2-pyrrolyl, 4-ethynyl-2-pyrrolyl, 4-chloro-2-furyl, 4-fluoro-2-furyl, 4-bromo-2-furyl, 4-ethynyl-2-furyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 5-fluoro-2-thienyl, 5-bromo-2-thienyl, 5-ethynyl-2-thienyl, 5-chloro-2-thiazolyl, 5-fluoro-2-thiazolyl, 5-bromo-2-thiazolyl, 5-ethynyl-2-thiazolyl, 5-chloro-2-oxazolyl, 5-fluoro-2-oxazolyl, 5-bromo-2-oxazolyl and 5-ethynyl-2-oxazolyl groups. Particularly preferred are 5-chloro-2-thiazolyl, 5-fluoro-2-thiazolyl, 5-bromo-2-thiazolyl and 5-ethynyl-2-thiazolyl groups.

In the following group:



wherein numerals 1 to 8 indicate positions, each N indicates that any one of 4 carbon atoms at positions 1 to 4 and any one of 4 carbon atoms at positions 5 to 8 have been substituted by a nitrogen atom, and R^{34} to R^{36} have the same meanings as defined above, the position of each nitrogen atom may be in any positional relation, and R^{34} is preferably a hydrogen atom or halogen atom. It is preferable that one of R^{35} and R^{36} is a hydrogen atom or halogen atom, and the other is a hydrogen atom, cyano group, halogen atom, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group or halogenoalkyl group. Among others, it is particularly preferred that the other group be a hydrogen atom, halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group. In this case, the halogen atom is preferably a fluorine, chlorine or bromine atom. As the alkyl group, is preferred a methyl group. As the alkynyl group, is preferred an ethynyl group. The position substituted by the halogen atom, alkyl group or alkynyl group is not be particularly limited. As preferable examples of specific groups represented by the above formula, may be mentioned 6-chloro-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-bromo-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-chloro-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-fluoro-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-bromo-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,5-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-bromo-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-chloro-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-chloro-1,7-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-1,7-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-bromo-1,7-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,7-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,7-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-1,7-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-bromo-1,7-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,7-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-chloro-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-fluoro-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-bromo-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-chloro-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-fluoro-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-bromo-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,8-naphthyridin-2-yl, 6-chloro-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-bromo-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-chloro-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-1,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-chloro-2,5-naphthyridin-

24

3-yl, 6-fluoro-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-bromo-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-chloro-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-chloro-2,6-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2,6-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-2,6-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-2,6-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-chloro-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-fluoro-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-bromo-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 6-ethynyl-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-chloro-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl and 7-ethynyl-2,8-naphthyridin-3-yl groups. Particularly preferable example thereof include 7-chloro-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-fluoro-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-bromo-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl, 7-ethynyl-2,5-naphthyridin-3-yl.

- (1) In addition to the above-mentioned 12 groups (a) to (1), a thienopyrrolyl group which may be substituted is preferred. This group may have 1 to 3 substituents, and examples of the substituents include a hydroxyl group, a nitro group, an amino group, a cyano group, halogen atoms, alkyl groups, alkenyl groups, alkynyl groups, halogenoalkyl groups, hydroxyalkyl groups, alkoxy groups, alkoxyalkyl groups, a carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl groups, acyl groups, a carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl groups, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl groups, alkoxycarbonyl groups, an amidino group and alkoxycarbonylalkyl groups. Among these, a cyano group, halogen atoms, alkyl groups, alkenyl groups, alkynyl groups and halogenoalkyl groups are preferred. As specific preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned 2-chlorothieno[2,3-b]pyrrol-5-yl, 2-fluorothieno[2,3-b]pyrrol-5-yl, 2-bromothieno[2,3-b]pyrrol-5-yl, and 2-ethynylthieno[2,3-b]pyrrol-5-yl groups.

<On group Q^1 >

In the present invention, Q^1 means a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted.

As examples of the saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group, may be mentioned cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl and phenyl groups. Cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and phenyl groups are preferred, with a phenyl group being particularly preferred.

The saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group means a monovalent heterocyclic group having at least one hetero atom selected from oxygen, sulfur and nitrogen atoms, and examples thereof may include furyl, pyrrolyl, thienyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolinyl, thiazolyl, thiazolinyl, thiadiazolyl, furazanyl, pyranal, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, oxazinyl, oxadiazinyl, morpholinyl, thiazinyl, thiadiazinyl, thiomorpholinyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, triazinyl, azepinyl, diazepinyl and triazepinyl groups. Thienyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, furazanyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, morpholinyl, thiadiazinyl and triazolyl groups are preferred, with thienyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl and piperidinyl groups being particularly preferred. Of these heterocyclic groups, the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic groups may be in the form of an N-oxide.

The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group means the same saturated or unsaturated,

bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group as described in the description of Q⁴ in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned indenyl, indanyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, anthryl and phenanthryl groups, with indenyl, indanyl, naphthyl and tetrahydronaphthyl groups being preferred.

The saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group means the same saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group as described in the description of Q⁴ in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned benzofuryl, isobenzofuryl, benzothienyl, indolyl, indolinyl, isoindolyl, isoindolinyl, indazolyl, quinolyl, dihydroquinolyl, 4-oxodihydroquinolyl (dihydroquinon-4-on), tetrahydroquinolyl, isoquinolyl, tetrahydroisoquinolyl, chromenyl, chromanyl, isochromanyl, 4H-4-oxobenzopyranyl, 3,4-dihydro-4H-4-oxobenzopyranyl, 4H-quinoliziny, quinazoliny, dihydroquinazoliny, tetrahydroquinazoliny, quinoxalyl, tetrahydroquinoxalyl, cinnoliny, tetrahydrocinnoliny, indoliziny, tetrahydroindoliziny, benzothiazolyl, tetrahydrobenzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzoisothiazolyl, benzoisoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, naphthyridiny, tetrahydronaphthyridiny, thienopyridyl, tetrahydrothienopyridyl, thiazolopyridyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridyl, thiazolopyridaziny, tetrahydrothiazolopyridaziny, pyrrolopyridyl, dihydropyrrolopyridyl, tetrahydropyrrolopyridyl, pyrrolopyrimidinyl, dihydropyrrolopyrimidinyl, pyridoquinazolyl, dihydropyridoquinazolyl, pyridopyrimidinyl, tetrahydropyridopyrimidinyl, pyranothiazolyl, dihydropyranothiazolyl, furopyridyl, tetrahydrofuropyridyl, oxazolopyridyl, tetrahydrooxazolopyridyl, oxazolopyridaziny, tetrahydrooxazolopyridaziny, pyrrolothiazolyl, dihydropyrrolothiazolyl, pyrrolooxazolyl, dihydropyrrolooxazolyl, thienopyrrolyl, thiazolopyrimidinyl, dihydrothiazolopyrimidinyl, 4-oxo-tetrahydrocinnoliny, 1,2,4-benzothiadiaziny, 1,1-dioxy-2H-1,2,4-benzothiadiaziny, 1,2,4-benzoxadiaziny, cyclopentapyranyl, thienofuranyl, fuopyranyl, pyridoxaziny, pyrazoloxazolyl, imidazothiazolyl, imidazopyridyl, tetrahydroimidazopyridyl, pyrazinopyridaziny, benzoquinolyl, fuocinnolyl, pyrazolothiazolopyridaziny, tetrahydropyrazolothiazolopyridaziny, hexahydrothiazolopyridaziny, imidazotriaziny, oxazolopyridyl, benzoxepiny, benzoazepiny, tetrahydrobenzoazepiny, benzodiazepiny, benzotriazepiny, thienoazepiny, tetrahydrothienoazepiny, thienodiazepiny, thienotriazepiny, thiazoloazepiny, tetrahydrothiazoloazepiny, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-5,6-tetramethylenethiazolo-pyridaziny and 5,6-trimethylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolopyridaziny groups. Preferred are benzothiazolyl, tetrahydrobenzothiazolyl, thienopyridyl, tetrahydrothienopyridyl, thienopyrrolyl, thiazolopyridyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridyl, thiazolopyridaziny, tetrahydrothiazolopyridaziny, pyrrolopyrimidinyl, dihydropyrrolopyrimidinyl, pyranothiazolyl, dihydropyranothiazolyl, furopyridyl, tetrahydrofuropyridyl, oxazolopyridyl, tetrahydrooxazolopyridyl, pyrrolopyridyl, dihydropyrrolopyridyl, tetrahydropyrrolopyridyl, oxazolopyridaziny, tetrahydrooxazolopyridaziny, pyrrolothiazolyl, dihydropyrrolothiazolyl, pyrrolooxazolyl, thiazolopyrimidinyl, dihydrothiazolopyrimidinyl, benzoazepiny, tetrahydrobenzoazepiny, thiazoloazepiny, tetrahydrothiazoloazepiny, thienoazepiny, tetrahydrothienoazepiny, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-5,6-tetramethylenethiazolopyridaziny and 5,6-trimethylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolopyridaziny groups, with tetrahydrobenzothiazolyl, tetrahydrothienopyridyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridyl, tetrahydrothiazolopyridaziny, dihydropyrrolopyrimidinyl, dihydropyranothiazolyl, tetrahydroox-

azolopyridyl, dihydropyrrolothiazolyl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-5,6-tetramethylenethiazolopyridaziny and 5,6-trimethylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-pyridaziny groups being particularly preferred.

No particular limitation is imposed on the fusing form of the fused heterocyclic groups. For example, thienopyridine may be any of thieno[2,3-b]pyridine, thieno[2,3-c]pyridine, thieno[3,2-b]pyridine, thieno-[3,2-c]pyridine, thieno[3,4-b]pyridine and thieno[3,4-c]pyridine, with thieno[2,3-c]pyridine and thieno[3,2-c]pyridine being preferred. Thienopyrrolyl may be any of thieno[2,3-b]pyrrolyl and thieno[3,2-b]pyrrolyl. Thiazolopyridine may be any of thiazolo[4,5-b]pyridine, thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine, thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridine, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine, thiazolo[3,4-a]pyridine and thiazolo[3,2-a]pyridine, with thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine and thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine being preferred.

Thiazolopyridazine may be any of thiazolo-[4,5-c]pyridazine, thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridazine and thiazolo[3,2-b]pyridazine, with thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine being preferred. Pyrrolopyridine may be any of pyrrolo[2,3-b]pyridine, pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,4-b]pyridine and pyrrolo[3,4-c]pyridine, with pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridine and pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridine being preferred. Pyrrolopyrimidine may be any of pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine, pyrrolo[3,2-d]pyrimidine and pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidine, with pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine being preferred. Pyridopyrimidine may be any of pyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidine, pyrido[3,2-d]pyrimidine, pyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidine, pyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidine, pyrido[1,2-c]pyrimidine and pyrido[1,2-a]pyrimidine, with pyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidine and pyrido[4,3-d]pyrimidine being preferred. Pyranothiazole may be any of pyrano[2,3-d]thiazole, pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole, pyrano[3,4-d]thiazole and pyrano[3,2-d]thiazole, with pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole and pyrano[3,4-d]thiazole being preferred. Furopyridine may be any of furo[2,3-b]pyridine, furo[2,3-c]pyridine, furo[3,2-b]pyridine, furo[3,2-c]pyridine, furo[3,4-b]pyridine and furo[3,4-c]pyridine, with furo[2,3-c]pyridine and furo[3,2-c]pyridine being preferred. Oxazolopyridine may be any of oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridine, oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridine, oxazolo[5,4-b]pyridine, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine, oxazolo[3,4-a]pyridine and oxazolo[3,2-a]pyridine, with oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridine and oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine being preferred. Oxazolopyridazine may be any of oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridazine, oxazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridazine and oxazolo[3,4-b]pyridazine, with oxazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine being preferred. Pyrrolothiazole may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]thiazole, pyrrolo[1,2-c]thiazole, pyrrolo[2,3-d]thiazole, pyrrolo[3,2-d]thiazole and pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole, with pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole being preferred. Pyrrolooxazole may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]oxazole, pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazole, pyrrolo[2,3-d]oxazole, pyrrolo[3,2-d]oxazole and pyrrolo[3,4-d]oxazole, with pyrrolo[3,4-d]oxazole being preferred. Benzoazepine may be any of 1H-1-benzoazepine, 1H-2-benzoazepine and 1H-3-benzoazepine, with 1H-3-benzoazepine being preferred. Thiazolo[4,5-c]azepine may be any of 4H-thiazolo[4,5-c]azepine, 4H-thiazolo[4,5-d]azepine and 4H-thiazolo[5,4-c]azepine, with 4H-thiazolo[4,5-d]azepine being preferred. Thieno[2,3-c]azepine may be any of 4H-thieno[2,3-d]azepine and 4H-thieno[3,2-c]azepine, with 4H-thieno[2,3-d]azepine being preferred.

Of these heterocyclic groups, the nitrogen-containing heterocyclic groups may be in the form of an N-oxide. Incidentally, the position of the above substituent group bonded to Q² is not particularly limited.

The above-described saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon groups, saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic groups, saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon groups and saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic groups may each have 1 to 3 substituents. Examples of the substituents may include a hydroxyl group; halogen atoms of fluorine atom, chlorine atom, bromine atom and iodine atom; halogenomethyl groups having 1 to 3 halogen atoms; an amino group; a cyano group; an amidino group; a hydroxyamidino group; linear, branched or cyclic alkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms (hereinafter referred to as C₁-C₆ alkyl groups which mean linear, branched and cyclic alkyl groups; for example, linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups such as methyl group, ethyl group, isopropyl group and tert-butyl group; C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl groups such as cyclopropyl group, cyclobutyl group, cyclopentyl group and 1-methylcyclopropyl group; and C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups such as cyclopropylmethyl group); hydroxy-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (such as hydroxyethyl and 1,1-dimethyl-2-hydroxyethyl groups); C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups (for example, methoxy group, ethoxy group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkoxy-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups; a carboxyl group; C₂-C₆ carboxyalkyl groups (for example, carboxymethyl group and the like); C₂-C₆ alkoxycarbonyl-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, methoxycarbonylmethyl group, tert-butoxycarbonylmethyl group and the like); amidino groups substituted by a C₂-C₆ alkoxycarbonyl group; C₂-C₆ alkenyl groups (for example, vinyl group, allyl group and the like); C₂-C₆ alkynyl groups (for example, ethynyl group, propynyl group and the like); C₂-C₆ alkoxycarbonyl groups (for example, methoxycarbonyl group, ethoxycarbonyl group, tert-butoxycarbonyl group and the like); amino C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, aminomethyl group, aminoethyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkylamino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, N-methylaminomethyl group, N-ethylaminomethyl group and the like); di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, N,N-dimethylaminomethyl group, N,N-diethylaminomethyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylaminomethyl group and the like); C₂-C₆ alkoxycarbonylamino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, methoxycarbonylaminoethyl group, tert-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkanoyl groups (for example, formyl group, acetyl group, methylpropionyl group, cyclopentanecarbonyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkanoylamino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, acetylaminoethyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl groups (for example, methanesulfonyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylamino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, methanesulfonylaminoethyl group and the like); a carbamoyl group; C₁-C₆ alkylcarbamoyl groups (for example, methylcarbamoyl group, ethylcarbamoyl group, isopropylcarbamoyl group, tert-butylcarbamoyl group and the like); N,N-di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)carbamoyl groups (for example, dimethylcarbamoyl group, diethylcarbamoyl group, methylethylcarbamoyl group and the like); C₁-C₆ alkylamino groups (for example, N-methylamino group, N-ethylamino group and the like); di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino groups (for example, N,N-dimethylamino group, N,N-diethylamino group, N-ethyl-N-methylamino group and the like); 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups containing one of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur or the same or different two atoms thereof (for example, pyrrolidinyl group, piperidinyl group, piperazinyl group, morpholinyl group, pyridyl group, pyrimidinyl group, tetrahydropyranyl group and the like); the above 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic-C₁-C₄ alkyl groups (for example, morpholinomethyl group and the like); and the above 5- or

6-membered heterocyclic-amino-C₁-C₄ alkyl groups (for example, N-(oxazol-2-yl)aminomethyl group and the like).

As specific examples of Q¹, may be mentioned bicyclic heterocyclic groups such as 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-cyclopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-carboxymethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-butyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-(4-pyridyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl, 6-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[2,3-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrooxazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl, 5-methyl-4,6-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl, 5,7-dihydro-6-methylpyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-2-yl, 5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazin-2-yl, 5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrooxazolo[4,5-d]pyridazin-2-yl, 5-dimethylamino-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[d]thiazol-2-yl, 5-(4-pyridyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl and 6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazol-2-yl groups; and 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic groups such as pyridyl groups such as 4-pyridyl and 2-pyridyl; dihydrooxazolyl groups such as 4,5-dihydrooxazol-2-yl; 4-[N-(4,5-dihydrooxazol-2-yl)-N-methylaminomethyl]thiophen-2-yl, 4-[N-(4,5-dihydrooxazol-2-yl)-N-methylaminomethyl]-3-chlorothiophen-2-yl, 5-(N-methylaminomethyl)thiazol-2-yl, 5-(N-methylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl, 5-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)thiazol-2-yl, 5-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)thiophen-2-yl and 5-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)pyridin-2-yl groups. Incidentally, Q¹ is not limited by these examples at all.

<On group Q²>

The group Q² means a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted.

In the group Q², the saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group means a divalent group derived from the saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon described in the description of Q⁴ in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned cyclohexylene, cyclohexenylene and phenylene groups, with cyclohexylene and phenylene groups being preferred.

The saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group means a divalent group derived from the saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic ring described in the description of Q⁴ in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned divalent groups derived from furan, pyrrole, thiophene, pyrazole, imidazole, oxazole, oxazolidine, thiazole, thiadiazole, furazane, pyrane, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, piperidine, oxazine, oxadiazine, morpholine, thiazine, thiadiazine, thiomorpholine, tetrazole, triazole, triazine, azepien, diazepine and triazepine. Among these, preferable examples thereof include divalent groups derived from pyrazole, imidazole, oxazole, thiazole, thiadiazole, furazane, pyridine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, piperidine, triazole, triazine, azepien, diazepine and triazepine.

The saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon means a divalent group derived from the

saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group described in the description of Q^4 in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned divalent groups derived from indene, indane, naphthalene, tetrahydronaphthalene, anthracene, phenanthrene and the like. As preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned divalent groups derived from indane and naphthalene.

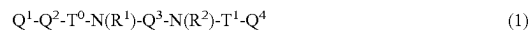
The saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group means a divalent group derived from the saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic ring described in the description of Q^4 in the general formula (1). As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned divalent groups derived from benzofuran, benzothiofene, indole, isoindole, indazole, quinoline, tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinoline, tetrahydroisoquinoline, quinazoline, dihydroquinazoline, tetrahydroquinazoline, quinoxaline, tetrahydroquinoxaline, cinnoline, tetrahydrocinnoline, indolizine, tetrahydroindolizine, benzothiazole, tetrahydrobenzothiazole, naphthyridine, tetrahydro-naphthyridine, thienopyridine, tetrahydrothienopyridine, thiazolopyridine, tetrahydrothiazolopyridine, thiazolopyridazine, tetrahydrothiazolopyridazine, pyrrolopyridine, dihydropyrrolopyridine, tetrahydropyrrolopyridine, pyrrolopyrimidine, dihydropyrrolopyrimidine, dihydropyridoquinazoline, pyranothiazole, dihydropyranothiazole, furopyridine, tetrahydrofuropyridine, oxazolopyridine, tetrahydrooxazolopyridine, oxazolopyridazine, tetrahydrooxazolopyridazine, pyrrolothiazole, dihydropyrrolothiazole, pyrrolooxazole, dihydropyrrolooxazole and benzoazepine. As preferable examples thereof, may be mentioned divalent groups derived from benzofuran, benzothiofene, indole, indazole, quinoline, isoquinoline, tetrahydroisoquinoline, benzothiazole, naphthyridine, thienopyridine, thiazolopyridine, tetrahydrothiazolopyridine, thiazolopyridazine, pyrrolopyridine, tetrahydropyrrolopyridine, pyridopyrimidine, pyranothiazole, dihydropyranothiazole, furopyridine, oxazolopyridine, oxazolopyridazine, pyrrolothiazole, dihydropyrrolothiazole, pyrrolooxazole and dihydropyrrolooxazole. No particular limitation is imposed on the fusing form of the fused heterocyclic group. For example, naphthyridine may be any of 1,5-, 1,6-, 1,7-, 1,8-, 2,6- and 2,7-naphthyridine, thienopyridine may be any of thieno[2,3-b]pyridine, thieno[2,3-c]pyridine, thieno[3,2-b]pyridine, thieno[3,2-c]pyridine, thieno-[3,4-b]pyridine and thieno[3,4-c]pyridine, thiazolopyridine may be any of thiazolo[4,5-b]pyridine, thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine, thiazolo[5,4-b]pyridine, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine, thiazolo[3,4-a]pyridine and thiazolo[3,2-a]pyridine, thiazolopyridazine may be any of thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridazine, thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine, thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridazine and thiazolo[3,2-b]pyridazine, pyrrolopyridine may be any of pyrrolo[2,3-b]pyridine, pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,2-c]pyridine, pyrrolo[3,4-b]pyridine and pyrrolo[3,4-c]pyridine, pyrrolopyrimidine may be any of pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine, pyrrolo[3,2-d]pyrimidine and pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidine, pyridopyrimidine may be any of pyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidine, pyrido[3,2-d]pyrimidine and pyrido[3,4-d]pyrimidine, pyranothiazole may be any of pyrano[2,3-d]thiazole, pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole, pyrano-[3,4-d]thiazole and pyrano[3,2-d]thiazole, furopyridine may be any of furo[2,3-b]pyridine, furo[2,3-c]pyridine, furo[3,2-b]pyridine, furo[3,2-c]pyridine, furo[3,4-b]pyridine and furo[3,4-c]pyridine, oxazolopyridine may be any of oxazolo[4,5-b]pyridine, oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridine, oxazolo[5,4-b]pyridine, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine, oxazolo[3,4-a]pyridine and oxazolo[3,2-a]pyridine, oxazolopyridazine may be any of oxazolo[4,5-c]pyridazine,

oxazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine, oxazolo[5,4-c]pyridazine and oxazolo[3,4-b]pyridazine, pyrrolothiazole may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]thiazole, pyrrolo[1,2-c]thiazole, pyrrolo[3,2-d]thiazole and pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole, and pyrrolooxazole may be any of pyrrolo[2,1-b]oxazole, pyrrolo[1,2-c]oxazole, pyrrolo[2,3-d]oxazole, pyrrolo-[3,2-d]oxazole and pyrrolo[3,4-d]oxazole. Other fusing forms than these may be allowed.

The above-described saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon groups, saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic groups, saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon groups and saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic groups may each have 1 to 3 substituents. Examples of the substituents may include a hydroxyl group, halogen atoms of a fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine atoms, halogenoalkyl groups having 1 to 3 halogen atoms, an amino group, a cyano group, aminoalkyl groups, an amidino group, a hydroxyamidino group, linear, branched or cyclic alkyl groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, methyl group, ethyl group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, methoxy group, ethoxy group, etc.), an amidino group substituted by a linear, branched or cyclic alkoxycarbonyl groups having 2 to 7 carbon atoms (for example, methoxycarbonylamidino group, ethoxycarbonylamidino group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkenyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, vinyl group, allyl group, etc.), linear or branched alkynyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, ethynyl group, propynyl group, etc.), linear, branched or cyclic alkoxycarbonyl group having 2 to 6 carbon atoms (for example, methoxycarbonyl group, ethoxycarbonyl group, etc.), and a carbamoyl group.

Preferable groups in Q^2 described above are a single bond, saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon groups which may be substituted, saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic groups which may be substituted, and saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic groups which may be substituted. In particular, a single bond, saturated or unsaturated, divalent 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon groups, saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic groups are preferred.

When Q^1 is a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted, the group Q^2 is preferably a single bond. The case where Q^2 is a single bond in the above-described combination means that the general formula (1):



wherein R^1 , R^2 , Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , T^0 and T^1 have the same meanings as defined above, comes to the following general formula (1'):



wherein Q^1 represents the above bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group or bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group, and R^1 , R^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , T^0 and T^1 have the same meanings as defined above.

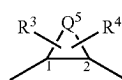
Specifically, are preferred those in which the group Q^1 is a thienopyridyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrothienopyridyl group which may be substituted; a thiazolopyridyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrothia-

zopolyridyl group which may be substituted; a thiazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrothiazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted; a pyranothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a dihydropyranothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a furo-pyridyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrofuro-pyridyl group which may be substituted; an oxazopolyridyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrooxazopolyridyl group which may be substituted; a pyrrolopyridyl group which may be substituted; a dihydropyrrolopyridyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydropyrrolopyridyl group which may be substituted; a pyrrolopyrimidinyl group which may be substituted; a dihydropyrrolopyrimidinyl group which may be substituted; an oxazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrooxazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted; a pyrrolothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a dihydropyrrolothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a pyrrolooxazolyl group which may be substituted; a dihydropyrrolooxazolyl group which may be substituted; a benzothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a tetrahydrobenzothiazolyl group which may be substituted; a thiazopolyrimidinyl which may be substituted; a dihydrothiazolepyrimidinyl which may be substituted; a benzoazepinyl which may be substituted; a tetrahydrobenzoazepinyl which may be substituted; a thiazoloazepinyl which may be substituted; a tetrahydrothiazoloazepinyl which may be substituted; a thienoazepinyl which may be substituted; a tetrahydrothienoazepinyl which may be substituted; a 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-5,6-tetramethylenethiazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted; or a 5,6-trimethylene-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazopolyridazinyl group which may be substituted, and Q^2 is a single bond.

When Q^1 is a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, the group Q^2 is preferably a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted. As preferable example of the group Q^1 - Q^2 , may be mentioned 4-(4-pyridyl)phenyl, 4-(2-pyridyl)phenyl, 5-(4-pyridyl)thiazolyl, 1-(4-pyridyl)piperidyl, 4-(4-pyridyl)piperidyl, 4-hydroxy-1-(4-pyridyl)piperidin-4-yl, biphenyl, 4-(2-aminosulfonylphenyl)phenyl, 4-(2-amidinophenyl)phenyl, 4-(2-methylsulfonylphenyl)phenyl, 4-(2-aminomethylphenyl)phenyl, 4-(2-carbamoylphenyl)phenyl, 4-(2-imidazolyl)phenyl, 4-(1-methyl-2-imidazolyl)phenyl, 4-(2,3,4,5-tetrahydropyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl, 4-(1-methyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydropyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl, 4-(5-tetrazolyl)phenyl, 1-(4-pyridyl)piperidin-4-yl, 3-(4-piperidyl)isoxazolin-5-yl, 3-(4-amidinophenyl)isoxazolin-5-yl, 3-(4-piperidyl)isoxazolidin-5-yl, 3-(4-amidinophenyl)isoxazolidin-5-yl, 2-(4-piperidyl)-1,3,4-thiadiazol-5-yl, 2-(4-aminophenyl)-1,3,4-oxadiazol-5-yl, 4-(4-piperidyl)piperazin-1-yl, 4-(4-piperidyl)piperazin-1-yl, 4-(4-piperazinyl)piperazin-1-yl, 1-(4-pyrimidinyl)piperidin-1-yl, 1-(2-methylpyrimidin-4-yl)piperidin-4-yl, 1-(4-pyrimidinyl)pyrrolidin-3-yl, 1-(4-methylpyrimidin-6-yl)piperazin-4-yl, 1-(2-methylpyrimidin-4-yl)pyrrolidin-4-yl, 1-(6-chloropyrimidin-4-yl)piperidin-4-yl, 5-(4-chlorophenyl)thiophen-2-yl, 2-(4-chlorophenyl)thiazol-4-yl, 3-(4-chlorophenyl)-1H-pyrrrol-2-yl, 4-(4-pyrimidinyl)phenyl and 4-(4-imidazolyl)phenyl groups.

<On group Q^3 >

The group Q^3 represents the following group:

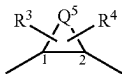


wherein Q^5 means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, or a group $-(CH_2)_m-CH_2-A-CH_2-(CH_2)_n-$, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, $-SO-$, $-SO_2-$, $-NH-$, $-O-NH-$, $-NH-NH-$, $-S-NH-$, $-SO-NH-$ or $-SO_2-NH-$, numerals 1 and 2 indicate positions, and R^3 and R^4 are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q^5 and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonyl-aminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylacyl group, alkoxyalkyloxy-carbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylacyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylacyl group, aminocar-

33

bothiyl group, N-alkylaminocarbothiyl group, N,N-di-alkylaminocarbothiyl group or alkoxyalkyl(thiocarbonyl) group, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group.

The following group will be described in detail.



wherein Q⁵, R³ and R⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 and 2 indicate positions.

A portion of the cyclic structure having the group Q⁵ is a 3- to 10-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may have a double bond, or a 5- to 12-membered divalent heterocyclic group containing 1 or 2 hetero atoms, preferably a 3- to 8-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group or a 5- to 8-membered divalent heterocyclic group, more preferably a 5- to 7-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group or a 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group. Among others, a group in which Q⁵ is an alkylene group having 3 to 6 carbon atoms or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or 1, and A has the same meaning as defined above, is preferred. In particular, a group in which Q⁵ is an alkylene group having 4 carbon atoms is preferred.

This cyclic hydrocarbon group or heterocyclic group may have both cis and trans structures in the relation between position 1 and position 2. However, the trans-form is preferred in the case of the 5-membered ring, while both cis-form and trans-form are preferred in the 6- or 7-membered ring.

The substituents R³ and R⁴ will now be described in detail. The halogen atom means a fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom. Examples of the alkyl group include linear, branched or cyclic C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, methyl group, cyclopropyl group, isobutyl group and the like). Examples of the halogenoalkyl group include the 1 to 3 halogen-substituted alkyl groups (for example, chloromethyl group, 1-bromoethyl group, trifluoromethyl group and the like). Examples of the cyanoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with a cyano group (for example, cyanomethyl group, 1-cyanoethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkenyl group include linear or branched alkenyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms and a double bond (for example, vinyl group, allyl group and the like). Examples of the alkynyl group include linear or branched alkynyl groups having 2 to 6 carbon atoms and a triple bond (for example, ethynyl group, propynyl group and the like). Examples of the acyl group include C₁-C₆ alkanoyl groups (for example, formyl group, acetyl group and the like), C₇-C₁₅ aroyl groups such as a benzoyl group and a naphthoyl group, and arylalkanoyl groups that are the C₁-C₆ alkanoyl groups substituted with a C₆-C₁₄ aryl group (for example, phenacetyl group and the like). Examples of the acylalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the acyl group (for example, acethylmethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy group include linear, branched or cyclic C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups (for example, methoxy group, cyclopropoxy group, an isopropoxy group and the like). Examples of the alkoxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy group (for example, methoxymethyl group, ethoxymethyl group

34

and the like). Examples of the hydroxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with a hydroxyl group (for example, hydroxymethyl group, 1-hydroxyethyl group and the like). Examples of the carboxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with a carboxyl group (for example, carboxymethyl group, 1-carboxyethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy carbonyl group include groups composed of the C₁-C₆ alkoxy group and a carbonyl group (for example, methoxycarbonyl group, ethoxycarbonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy carbonylalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl group (for example, methoxycarbonylethyl group, ethoxycarbonylethyl group and the like). Examples of the carbamoylalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted a carbamoyl group (for example, carbamoylmethyl group, carbamoylethyl group and the like).

Examples of the heteroaryl group include the same heteroaryl groups as described in the description of Q⁴ in the general formula (1). Examples of the heteroarylalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the heteroaryl group (for example, thienylmethyl group, pyridylethyl group and the like). Examples of the aryl group include aryl groups having 6 to 14 carbon atoms, such as phenyl group and naphthyl group. The aryl groups may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups, the C₁-C₆ alkanoyl groups, a hydroxyl group, a nitro group, a cyano group, halogen atoms, the C₂-C₆ alkenyl groups, the C₂-C₆ alkynyl groups, the C₁-C₆ halogenoalkyl groups, the C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups, a carboxy group, a carbamoyl group, the C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl groups and the like. Examples of the aralkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₆-C₁₄ aryl groups (for example, benzyl group, phenethyl group and the like). Incidentally, in the above description, no particular limitation is imposed on the substituting position. Examples of the acylamino group which may be substituted include the amino groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ acyl group (for example, formylamino group, acetylamino group and the like) and besides acyl groups having 1 to several substituents selected from halogen atoms, a hydroxyl group, C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups, a amino group, N-C₁-C₆ alkylamino groups, N,N-di-C₁-C₆ alkylamino groups, a carboxyl group, C₂-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl groups and the like (for example, 2-methoxyacetylaminomethyl group, 3-aminopropionylaminomethyl group and the like). Examples of the acylaminomethyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ acylamino group (for example, formylaminomethyl group, acetylaminomethyl group and the like). Examples of the aminoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with an amino group (for example, aminomethyl group, 1-aminoethyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkylaminomethyl group include the amino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkyl group on the nitrogen atom (for example, N-methylaminomethyl group, N-methylaminoethyl group and the like). Examples of N,N-dialkylaminomethyl group include the amino-C₁-C₆ alkyl groups respectively substituted with two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups on the nitrogen atom (for example, N,N-dimethylaminomethyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylaminomethyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkenylcarbamoyl group include carbamoyl groups substituted with a linear or branched C₂-C₆ alkenyl group (for example, allylcarbamoyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N-C₂-C₆ alkenylcarbamoyl group (for example, allylcarbamoylethyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group include the N-C₂-

35

C₆ alkenylcarbamoyl groups substituted with a linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl group on the nitrogen atom (for example, N-allyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group include the N-C₂-C₆ alkenylcarbamoylalkyl groups substituted with a linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl group on the nitrogen atom (for example, N-allyl-N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group and the like). Example of the N-alkoxycarbamoyl group include carbamoyl groups substituted with a linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkoxy group (for example, methoxycarbamoyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkoxycarbamoylalkyl group include linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N-C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbamoyl group (for example, methoxycarbamoylmethyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkyl-N-alkoxycarbamoyl group include carbamoyl groups substituted with linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkoxy group and C₁-C₆ alkyl group (for example, N-ethyl-N-methoxycarbamoyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkyl-N-alkoxycarbamoylalkyl group include linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N-C₁-C₆ alkyl-N-C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbamoyl group (for example, N-ethyl-N-methoxycarbamoylmethyl group and the like). Examples of the carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups include a carbazoyl group, and besides carbazoyl groups substituted with 1 to 3 linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups (for example, 1-methylcarbazoyl group, 1,2-dimethylcarbazoyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonyl group include linear, branched or cyclic C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl groups (for example, methanesulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonylalkyl group include linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl group (for example, methanesulfonylmethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxyimino group include C₁-C₆ alkoxyimino groups (for example, methoxyimino group, ethoxyimino group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy carbonylalkylamino group include amino groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonylalkyl group (for example, methoxycarbonylmethylamino group, ethoxycarbonylpropylamino group and the like). Examples of the carboxyalkylamino group include amino groups substituted with the carboxy-C₁-C₆ alkyl group (for example, carboxymethylamino group, carboxyethylamino group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy carbonylamino group include amino groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl group (for example, methoxycarbonylamino group, tert-butoxycarbonylamino group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy carbonylaminoalkyl group include the alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonylamino group (for example, methoxycarbonylaminoethyl group, tert-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl group and the like). The N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group means a carbamoyl group substituted with a linear, branched or cyclic C₁-C₆ alkyl group which may be substituted with a hydroxyl group, amino group, N-C₁-C₆ alkylamino group, amidino group, halogen atom, carboxyl group, cyano group, carbamoyl group, C₁-C₆ alkoxy group, C₁-C₆ alkanoyl group, C₁-C₆ alkanoylamino group, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylamino group or the like, and examples thereof include N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-ethylcarbamoyl group, N-isopropylcarbamoyl group, N-cyclopropylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-fluoroethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-cyanoethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N-carboxymethylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-aminoethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-amidinoethyl)carbamoyl group and the like. Examples of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the

36

alkyl(s) group means a carbamoyl group substituted with 2 linear, branched or cyclic C₁-C₆ alkyl groups which may be substituted with a hydroxyl group, amino group, N-C₁-C₆ alkylamino group, amidino group, halogen atom, carboxyl group, cyano group, carbamoyl group, C₁-C₆ alkoxy group, C₁-C₆ alkanoyl group, C₁-C₆ alkanoylamino group, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylamino group or the like, and examples thereof include N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl group, N,N-diethylcarbamoyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-isopropyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-fluoroethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-cyanoethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-carboxymethyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-aminoethyl)carbamoyl group and the like. Examples of the N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) include linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the C₁-C₆ alkyl group (for example, N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoylmethyl group and the like). Examples of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) include linear or branched C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the C₁-C₆ alkyl group(s) (for example, N,N-dimethylcarbamoylmethyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group and the like). The 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted is a group composed of a saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring and a carbonyl group. The heterocyclic ring means a 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic ring which may contain 1 to 3 hetero atoms (nitrogen atom, oxygen atom, sulfur atom, etc.). The heterocyclic ring may have a substituent such as a hydroxy group, halogen atom, amino group, C₁-C₆ alkyl group or the like. As specific examples thereof, may be mentioned an aziridinylcarbonyl group, azetidiny carbonyl group, 3-hydroxyazetidiny carbonyl group, 3-methoxyazetidiny carbonyl group, pyrrolidinylcarbonyl group, 3-hydroxypyrrolidinylcarbonyl group, 3-fluoropyrrolidinylcarbonyl group, piperidinylcarbonyl group, piperazinylcarbonyl group, morpholinylcarbonyl group, tetrahydropyrany carbonyl group, pyridylcarbonyl group, furoyl group and thiophenecarbonyl group. Examples of the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted (for example, azetidiny carbonylmethyl group, pyrrolidinylcarbonyl ethyl group and the like). Examples of the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxy group which is composed of the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group and an oxygen atom (for example, piperidinylcarbonyloxyethyl group, morpholinylcarbonyloxymethyl group and the like). Examples of the carbamoyloxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with a carbamoyloxy group which is composed of a carbamoyl group and an oxygen atom (for example, carbamoyloxymethyl group, carbamoyloxyethyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N-alkylcarbamoyloxy group which is composed of the N-alkylcarbamoyl group, which may have a substituent on the C₁-C₆ alkyl group, and an oxygen atom (for example, N-methylcarbamoyloxymethyl group, N-methylcarbamoyloxyethyl group and the like). Examples of the

N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxy group which is composed of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group, which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), and an oxygen atom (for example, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyloxymethyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylcarbamoyloxyethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonylamino group include amino groups substituted with an alkylsulfonyl group having the C₁-C₆ alkyl group (for example, methylsulfonylamino group, isopropylsulfonylamino group and the like). Examples of the arylsulfonylamino group include amino groups substituted with an arylsulfonyl group having the aryl group (for example, phenylsulfonylamino group, naphthylsulfonylamino group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylamino group (for example, methylsulfonylaminoethyl group, methylsulfonylaminoethyl group and the like). Examples of the arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the arylsulfonylamino group (for example, phenylsulfonylaminoethyl group, naphthylsulfonylaminoethyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include groups composed of the C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylamino group and a carbonyl group (for example, methylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, isopropylsulfonylaminoalkyl group and the like). Examples of the arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include groups composed of the arylsulfonylamino group and a carbonyl group (for example, phenylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, naphthylsulfonylaminoalkyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group (for example, methylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, isopropylsulfonylaminoalkyl group and the like). Examples of the arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group (for example, phenylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, naphthylsulfonylaminoalkyl group and the like). The acyloxy group means a group composed of the acyl group and an oxygen atom (for example, formyloxy group, acetyloxy group and the like). Examples of the acyloxyalkyl group include the C₁-C₆ alkyl groups substituted with the acyloxy group (for example, formyloxymethyl group, acetyloxymethyl group and the like). Examples of the aralkyloxy group include the C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups substituted with the aryl group (for example, benzyloxy group, naphthylmethoxy group and the like). Examples of the carboxyalkyloxy group include the alkoxy groups substituted with a carboxyl group (for example, carboxymethoxy group, carboxyethoxy group and the like).

Examples of the arylsulfonyl group include C₆-C₁₄ arylsulfonyl groups (for example, phenylsulfonyl group, naphthylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group include groups composed of the C₁-C₆ alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group and a sulfonyl group (for example, methoxycarbonylalkylsulfonyl group, ethoxycarbonylalkylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the carboxyalkylsulfonyl group include groups composed of the carboxyalkyl group and a sulfonyl group (for example, carboxymethylsulfonyl group, carboxyethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group include groups composed of the alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group and a carbonyl group (for example, methoxycarbonylmethylsulfonyl group, ethoxycarbonylmethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group include the alkoxy-carbonyl groups substituted with the

C₁-C₆ alkoxy group (for examples, methoxymethyloxycarbonyl group, methoxyethyloxycarbonyl group and the like). Examples of the hydroxyacyl group include the acyl groups (including C₁-C₆ alkanoyl and aroyl) substituted with a hydroxyl group (for example, glycoloyl group, lactoyl group, benziloyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxyacyl group include the acyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkoxy group (for example, methoxyacetyl group, ethoxyacetyl group and the like). Examples of the halogenoacyl group include groups composed of the halogenoalkyl group and a carbonyl group (for example, chloromethylcarbonyl group, trifluoromethylcarbonyl group and the like). Examples of the carboxyacyl group include the acyl groups substituted with a carboxyl group (for example, carboxyacetyl group, 2-carboxypropionyl group and the like). Examples of the aminoacyl group include the acyl groups (including C₁-C₆ alkanoyl and aroyl) substituted with an amino group (for example, aminomethylcarbonyl group, 1-aminoethylcarbonyl group and the like). Examples of the acyloxyacyl group include groups composed of the acyloxyalkyl and a carbonyl group (for example, formyloxymethylcarbonyl group, acetyloxymethylcarbonyl group and the like). Examples of the acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group include groups composed of the acyloxyalkyl and a sulfonyl group (for example, formyloxymethylsulfonyl group, acetyloxymethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group include groups composed of the C₁-C₆ hydroxyalkyl group and a sulfonyl group (for example, hydroxymethylsulfonyl group, 1-hydroxyethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group include the groups composed of C₁-C₆ alkoxyalkyl group and a sulfonyl group (for example, methoxymethylsulfonyl group, ethoxymethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted include groups composed of the 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted and a sulfonyl group (for example, aziridinylsulfonyl group, azetidinyllsulfonyl group, pyrrolidinylsulfonyl group, piperidylsulfonyl group, piperazinylsulfonyl group, morpholinylsulfonyl group, tetrahydropyranylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the N-alkylaminoacyl group include the aminoacyl groups substituted with the C₁-C₆ alkyl group on the nitrogen atom (for example, N-methylaminoacetyl group, N-ethylaminoacetyl group and the like). Examples of the N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group include the aminoacyl groups substituted with the two C₁-C₆ alkyl groups on the nitrogen atoms (for example, N,N-dimethylaminoacetyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylaminoacetyl group and the like). Examples of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) include the acyl groups substituted with the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the C₁-C₆ alkyl group(s) (for example, N,N-dimethylcarbamoylacetyl group, N,N-diethylcarbamoylacetyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylcarbamoylacetyl group and the like). Examples of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) include groups composed of the N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the C₁-C₆ alkyl group(s) and a sulfonyl group (for example, N,N-dimethylcarbamoylmethylsulfonyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoylmethylsulfonyl group and the like). Examples of the alkylsulfonyl group include the acyl groups substituted with the alkylsulfonyl group having the C₁-C₆ alkyl group (for example, methylsulfonylacetyl group, isopropylsulfonylacetyl group and the like).

The aminocarbothioyl group is a group represented by $-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{NH}_2$, and the N-alkylaminocarbothioyl group means an aminothiocarboxyl group substituted by one of the above-described alkyl groups, and examples thereof include (methylamino)carbothioyl group, (ethylamino)carbothioyl group and the like. The N,N-dialkylamino-carbothioyl group means an aminothiocarboxyl group substituted by two of the above-described alkyl groups, and examples thereof include (dimethylamino)carbothioyl group, (diethylamino)carbothioyl group and (ethylmethylamino)carbothioyl group. The alkoxyalkyl(thiocarbonyl) group means a group composed of the above-described alkoxyalkyl group and a thiocarboxyl group, and examples thereof include 2-ethoxyethanethioyl group and the like.

The alkylene group means a linear or branched alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include methylene group, ethylene group, propylene group and the like. The alkenylene group is an alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms and a double bond, and examples thereof include vinylene group, propenylene group and the like. Examples of the alkylenedioxy group include those having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, such as methylenedioxy group, ethylenedioxy group and propylenedioxy group. The carbonyldioxy group is a group represented by $-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{O}-$. Incidentally, no particular limitation is imposed on the substituting position in the above description.

Among these substituents represented by R^3 and R^4 , the hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, amino group, hydroxyimino group, alkoxyimino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, oxo group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylacyl group, carboxyacyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, halogenoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group, aminocarbothioyl group, N-alkylaminocarbothioyl group, N,N-dialkylaminocarbothioyl group, alkoxyalkyl-(thiocarbonyl) group and the like are preferred. The alkylene group, alkenylene group,

alkylenedioxy group carbonyldioxy group and the like which are formed by R^3 and R^4 together with each other are also preferred.

It is preferred that R^3 be a hydrogen atom, and R^4 be one of the substituents mentioned above as preferable groups. In this case, examples of a group more preferred as R^4 include the hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, halogen atom, hydroxyimino group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, acyloxy group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylacyl group, carboxyacyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, halogenoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylacyl group, aminocarbothioyl group, N-alkylaminocarbothioyl group, N,N-dialkylaminocarbothioyl group, alkoxyalkyl-(thiocarbonyl) group and the like.

Of these, as examples of R^4 , are particularly preferred the hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, acyloxy group, acyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, halogenoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, aminocarbothioyl group, N-alkylaminocarbothioyl group, N,N-dialkylaminocarbothioyl group, alkoxyalkyl-(thiocarbonyl) group and the like.

As specific preferable examples of R^3 and R^4 , may be mentioned a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, methyl group,

ethyl group, isopropyl group, N,N-dimethylaminomethyl group, N,N-dimethylaminoethyl group, N,N-diethylaminomethyl group, acetylamino group, methoxyacetylamino group, acetylaminomethyl group, acetylaminoethyl group, methoxy group, ethoxy group, methoxymethyl group, methoxyethyl group, hydroxymethyl group, 2-hydroxyethyl group, 1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl group, methoxycarbonyl group, ethoxycarbonyl group, methoxycarbonylamino group, ethoxycarbonylamino group, N-allylcarbamoyl group, N-ethylcarbamoyl group, N-propylcarbamoyl group, N-isopropylcarbamoyl group, N-tert-butylcarbamoyl group, N-cyclopropylcarbamoyl group, N-cyclopropylmethylcarbamoyl group, N-(1-ethoxycarbonyl-cyclopropyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-fluoroethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(carboxymethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-aminoethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-amidinoethyl)carbamoyl group, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl group, N,N-diethylcarbamoyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-isopropyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-methyl-N-propylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-(2-fluoroethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)carbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-fluoroethyl)carbamoyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N-carboxymethyl-N-methylcarbamoyl group, N,N-bis(2-aminoethyl)carbamoyl group, azetidino-carbonyl group, 3-methoxyazetidino-carbonyl group, 3-hydroxyazetidino-carbonyl group, pyrrolidino-carbonyl group, 3-hydroxypyrrolidino-carbonyl group, 3,4-dimethoxypyrrolidino-carbonyl group, piperidino-carbonyl group, piperazinocarbonyl group, morpholinocarbonyl group, (tetrahydropyran-4-yl)carbonyl group, benzoyl group, pyridylcarbonyl group, N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group, N-methylcarbamoylethyl group, N-ethylcarbamoylmethyl group, N-(2-fluoroethyl)carbamoylmethyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)carbamoylmethyl group, N,N-dimethylcarbamoylmethyl group, N,N-dimethylcarbamoylethyl group, N-(2-fluoroethyl)-N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group, N-(2-methoxyethyl)-N-methylcarbamoylmethyl group, N,N-dimethylcarbamoyloxymethyl group, 2-(N-ethyl-N-methylcarbamoyloxy)ethyl group, methylsulfonylamino group, ethylsulfonylamino group, methylsulfonylaminoethyl group, methylsulfonylaminoethyl group, acetyl group, propionyl group, isobutyryl group, 2-methoxyethoxycarbonyl group, trifluoroacetyl group, N,N-dimethylaminoacetyl group, N-ethyl-N-methylaminoacetyl group, hydroxyacetyl group, 1,1-dimethyl-2-hydroxyethyl-carbonyl group, methoxyacetyl group, 1,1-dimethyl-2-methoxyethylcarbonyl group, aminocarbothioyl group, (dimethylamino)carbothioyl group, 2-methoxyethenethioyl group and the like.

As described above, it is preferred that R^3 be a hydrogen atom, and R^4 be one of these specified substituents, preferably, an N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), particularly preferably, an N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl group. However, R^3 and R^4 are not limited to these specific substituents at all.

<On group T^0 >

The group T^0 represents a carbonyl group or thiocarbonyl group, with the carbonyl group being preferred.

<On group T^1 >

The group T^1 represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, group $-C(=O)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=O)-C(=S)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=S)-N(R')$, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-A^1-N(R'')$, in which A^1 means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-NH-$, group $-C(=S)-NH-$, group $-C(=O)-NH-NH-$, group $-C(=O)-A^2-C(=O)-$, in which A^2 means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-C(=O)-A^3-C(=O)-NH-$, in which A^3 means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-C(=O)-C(=NOR^a)-N(R^b)-$, group $-C(=S)-C(=NOR^a)-N(R^b)-$, in which R^a means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group or alkanoyl group, and R^b means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=O)-N=N-$, group $-C(=S)-N=N-$, group $-C(=NOR^c)-C(=O)-N(R^d)-$, in which R^c means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl, aryl or aralkyl group, and R^d means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-C(=N-N(R^e)(R^f)-C(=O)-N(R^g)-$ in which R^e and R^f , independently of each other, mean a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl or alkyl(thiocarbonyl) group, and R^g means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, or thiocarbonyl group.

In the above group, the alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms in A^1 , A^2 and A^3 means a linear, branched or cyclic alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include methylene, ethylene, propylene, cyclopropylene, 1,3-cyclopentylene groups and the like. The alkyl group in R' , R'' , R^a , R^b , R^c , R^d , R^e , R^f and R^g means a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include methyl, ethyl groups and the like. The alkoxy group means a linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include methoxy, ethoxy groups and the like.

In R^a , R^c , R^e and R^f , the alkanoyl group means a group composed of a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms and a carbonyl group, and examples thereof include acetyl, propionyl groups and the like.

In R^c , the aryl group means aryl group having 6 to 14 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include phenyl, naphthyl groups and the like. The aralkyl group means a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms substituted with the aryl group having 6 to 14 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include benzyl, phenethyl groups and the like.

As T^1 , is preferred a carbonyl group, group $-C(=O)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=O)-C(=S)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=S)-N(R')$, and group $-C(=O)-CH_2-N(R'')$, with a carbonyl group, group $-C(=O)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=S)-C(=O)-N(R')$, group $-C(=O)-C(=S)-N(R')$ and group $-C(=S)-C(=S)-N(R')$ being particularly preferred.

<On Group R^1 and Group R^2 >

R^1 and R^2 are, independently of each other, a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, preferably a hydrogen atom or alkyl group, more preferably a hydrogen atom.

In R^1 and R^2 , the alkyl group means a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples

43

thereof include methyl, ethyl groups and the like. The alkoxy group means a linear, branched or cyclic alkoxy group having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and examples thereof include methoxy, ethoxy groups and the like. R¹ and R² are preferably, independently of each other, a hydrogen atom or alkyl group, more preferably both hydrogen atoms.

When T¹ is a carbonyl or sulfonyl group, and Q⁵ in the group Q³ is an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms or an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, Q⁴ is preferably a group (b), (f), (g), (h), (i), (j), (k) and (l) of the above-described 12 groups, with the proviso that N in the group (f) indicates that 2 carbon atoms of the ring substituted by R¹⁹ have been substituted by a nitrogen atom.

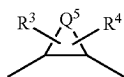
When T¹ is a carbonyl or sulfonyl group, and Q⁵ in the group Q³ is an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms or an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, the substituent on the group Q⁵ is preferably an N-alkylcarbamoyl or N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group.

When T¹ is a group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')— or group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R')—, and Q⁵ in the group Q³ is an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms or an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, Q⁴ is preferably a group (i), (j) or (k) of the above-described 12 groups.

When T¹ is a group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')— or group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R')—, and Q⁵ in the group Q³ is an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms or an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, the substituent on the group Q⁵ is preferably an N-alkylcarbamoyl or N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group.

A feature of the compounds of the present invention represented by the general formula (1), the salts thereof, the solvates thereof, or the N-oxides thereof resides in a combination of the group T¹ and the group Q³. The combination is roughly divided into the following 2 cases (I) and (II):

(I) A case where T¹ is a carbonyl, sulfonyl or thiocarbonyl group, and Q³ is the following group:

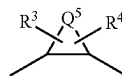


wherein Q⁵ means a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—; and

(II) a case where T¹ is a group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')— or group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R')—, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—A¹—N(R'')—, in which A¹ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—NH—, group —C(=S)—NH—, group —C(=O)—NH—NH—, group —C(=O)—A²—C(=O)—, in which A means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group —C(=O)—A³—C(=O)—NH—, in which A³ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group —C(=O)—

44

C(=NOR^a)—N(R^b)—, group —C(=S)—C(=NOR^a)—N(R^b)—, in which R^a means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group or alkanoyl group, and R^b means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—N=N—, group —C(=S)—N=N—, group —C(=NOR^c)—C(=O)—N(R^d)—, in which R^c means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl group, aryl group or aralkyl group, and R^d means a hydrogen atom, hydroxy group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=N—N(R^e)(R^f))—C(=O)—N(R^g)—, in which R^e and R^f are, independently of each other, a hydrogen atom, alkyl group, alkanoyl group or alkyl(thiocarbonyl)group, and R^g means a hydrogen atom, hydroxy group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, or thiocarbonyl group, and Q³ is the following group:



wherein Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

In the cases (I) and (II), the following (i) and (ii) are mentioned as preferred examples, respectively.

(i) An example where the group R¹ and the group R² are, independently of each other, a hydrogen atom or alkyl group, the group Q¹ is a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted, the group Q² is a single bond, the group Q⁵ in the group Q³ is a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or 1, and A has the same meaning as defined above, the group Q⁴ is selected from 9 groups (a) to (h) and (l) of the above-described 12 groups, the group T⁰ is a carbonyl group or thiocarbonyl group, and the group T¹ is a carbonyl group or sulfonyl group; and

(ii) An example where in the generally formula (1), the groups R¹ and R² are, independently of each other, a hydrogen atom or alkyl group, the group Q¹ is a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted, the group Q² is a single bond, the group Q⁵ in the group Q³ is an alkylene group having 3 to 6 carbon atoms or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or 1, and A has the same meaning as defined above, the group Q⁴ is selected from 3 groups (i), (j) and (k) of the above-described 12 groups, the group T⁰ is a carbonyl group or thiocarbonyl group, and the group T¹ is a group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')— or group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R')—.

Stereoisomers or optical isomers derived from an asymmetric carbon atom may be present in the compounds of the present invention represented by the general formula (1). However, these stereoisomers, optical isomers and mixtures thereof are all included in the present invention.

No particular limitation is imposed on salts of the compounds of the present invention represented by the general

formula (1) so far as they are pharmaceutically acceptable salts. However, specific examples thereof include mineral acid salts such as hydrochlorides, hydrobromides, hydriodides, phosphates, nitrates and sulfates; benzoates; organic sulfonates such as methanesulfonates, 2-hydroxyethanesulfonates and p-toluenesulfonates; and organic carboxylates such as acetates, propanoates, oxalates, malonates, succinates, glutarates, adipates, tartrates, maleates, malates and mandelates. In the case where the compounds represented by the general formula (1) have an acidic group, they may be salts of alkali metal ions or alkaline earth metal ions. No particular limitation is imposed on the solvates thereof so far as they are pharmaceutically acceptable solvates. As specific examples thereof, however, may be mentioned hydrates and solvates with ethanol. When a nitrogen atom is present in the general formula (1), such a compound may be converted to an N-oxide thereof.

As the compounds according to the present invention, are preferred the compounds described in the following Examples and salts thereof as well as the following compounds and salts thereof.

- 1) 3-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)[1,6]naphthyridine-7-carboxamide;
- 2) 7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-4-fluorocinnoline-3-carboxamide;
- 3) 7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-4a,8a-dihydro-4H-1,2,4-benzoxadiazine-3-carboxamide;
- 4) N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-6-fluoro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinoline-2-carboxamide;
- 5) 7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-1,3,4-benzotriazepine-2-carboxamide;
- 6) 6-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-4-oxo-3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-cinnolinecarboxamide;
- 7) 6-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline-2-carboxamide;
- 8) N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[3-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-propinoyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide;
- 9) N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[4-chlorobenzoyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide;
- 10) N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-6-methyl-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thiazolo[4,5-d]azepin-2-carboxamide;
- 11) 5-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-(3-pyrrolidinyl)oxy)thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide;
- 12) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;

- 13) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 14) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 15) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S, 2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 16) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopentyl)ethanediamide;
- 17) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopentyl)ethanediamide;
- 18) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cycloheptyl)ethanediamide;
- 19) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cycloheptyl)ethanediamide;
- 20) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cycloheptyl)ethanediamide;
- 21) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1R,2R)-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cycloheptyl)ethanediamide;
- 22) N¹-(5-Chloro-6-methylpyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 23) N¹-(5-Chloro-3-methylpyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 24) N¹-(5-Chloro-4-methylpyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 25) N¹-(4-Chloro-3-hydroxyphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 26) N¹-(4-Chloro-2-hydroxyphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 27) N¹-(4-Chloro-2-(fluoromethyl)phenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 28) N¹-(4-Chloro-2-(methoxymethyl)phenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 29) N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[1-(4-Chloroanilino)cyclopropyl]carbonyl]amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide;
- 30) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R,4R)-4-(hydroxymethyl)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopentyl)ethanediamide;
- 31) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R,4S)-4-(hydroxymethyl)-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopentyl)ethanediamide;

- 32) N¹-(3R,4S)-1-Acetyl-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-piperidin-4-yl)-N 2-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide;
- 33) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(methylsulfonyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)-ethanediamide;
- 34) N¹-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-[[3-Chlorobenzothiophen-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide;
- 35) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbothioyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 36) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbothioyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 37) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyethanethioyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 38) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbothioyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 39) N-[(3R,4S)-4-((2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 40) N-[(3R,4S)-4-((2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-thioxoacetyl)amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 41) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyethanethioyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 42) N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N 2-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbothioyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 43) N-[(3R,4S)-4-[[2-[(4-Chloroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 44) N-[(3R,4S)-4-((2-[(4-Chlorophenyl)amino]-2-thioxoacetyl)amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 45) N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-(1-azetidiny carbonyl)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide;
- 46) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-4-(1-pyrrolidinylcarbonyl)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide;
- 47) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-4-(1-piperidinylcarbonyl)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide;
- 48) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-4-(4-morpholinylcarbonyl)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide;

- 49) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(methylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 50) N¹-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-((2-[(6-Chloropyridazin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 51) N¹-(4-Bromophenyl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 52) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[4-(pyridin-4-yl)benzoyl]amino]-piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 53) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[2-(pyridin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide;
- 54) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[2-(pyridin-4-yl)pyrimidin-5-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl]ethanediamide;
- 55) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-oxoethane(methoxy)imidoyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 56) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-(methoxyimino)acetyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 57) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[4,4,5-trimethyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 58) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[4,4-ethylene-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 59) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-((E)-2-(4-Chlorophenyl)ethenyl)sulfonyl]amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 60) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-((4-Chlorobenzyl)sulfonyl]amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 61) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(2-[(4-Chlorophenyl)sulfonyl]amino)acetyl]amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 62) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-((2-[(5-Chloropyrimidin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 63) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-((2-[(5-Chloropyrazin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 64) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-5-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(2-[(5-fluoro-2-thienyl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 65) N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(3-Amino-4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;

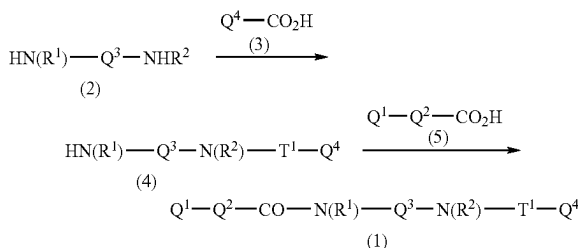
- 66) N¹-(4-Chlorothiazol-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 67) N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-N²-(3-fluorophenyl)-ethanediamide;
- 68) N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-N²-phenylethanediamide;
- 69) N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-N²-(pyridin-2-yl)-ethanediamide;
- 70) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5,6,6-trimethyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 71) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[4,4,5,6,6-pentamethyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 72) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-thiazolo[5,4-d]isooxazol-5-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide;
- 73) N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[2-methyl-2,3-dihydro-thiazolo[4,5-d]isooxazol-5-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide;
- 74) N¹-(5-Chloro-2-furyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 75) N¹-(5-Chloroxazol-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 76) N¹-(5-Chloro-1H-imidazol-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide;
- 77) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-ethoxyimino-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 78) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-phenoxyimino-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 79) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[1-Benzyloxyimino-2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 80) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-hydrazono-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 81) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-(2-methylhydrazono)-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 82) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-1-(2,2-dimethylhydrazono)-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;

- 83) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-methylimino-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 84) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[1(2-Acetylhydrazono)-2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide;
- 85) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-[(2-ethanethiolyldiazono)-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide; and
- 86) N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[E)-3-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-2-propenoyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide.

The preparation process of the diamine derivatives (1) according to the present invention will hereinafter be described.

[Preparation Process 1]

A compound represented by the general formula (1), a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof can be prepared in accordance with, for example, the following process:



wherein Q¹, Q², Q³, Q⁴, R¹ and R² have the same meanings as defined above, and T¹ represents a carbonyl group.

A mixed acid anhydride, acid halide, activated ester or the like, which is derived from carboxylic acid (3), may react with diamine (2), giving compound (4). The resultant compound (4) may react with carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. In the above reaction steps, reagents and conditions, which are generally used in peptide synthesis, may be applied. The mixed acid anhydride can be prepared by, for example, reaction of a chloroformate such as ethyl chloroformate or isobutyl chloroformate with carboxylic acid (3) in the presence of a base. The acid halide can be prepared by treating carboxylic acid (3) with an acid halide such as thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride. The activated ester includes various kinds of esters. Such an ester can be prepared by, for example, reaction of a phenol such as p-nitrophenol, N-hydroxybenzotriazole, or N-hydroxysuccinimide with carboxylic acid (3) using a condensing agent such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide or 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. The activated ester can also be prepared by reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with pentafluorophenyl trifluoroacetate or the like, reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with 1-benzotriazolyloxytripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate, reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with diethyl cyanophosphonate (Shioiri method), reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with triphenylphosphine and 2,2'-dipyridyl disulfide (Mukaiyama method) or the like. The thus-obtained mixed acid anhy-

51

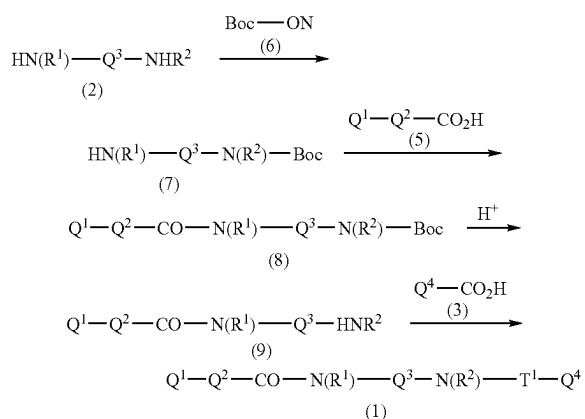
dride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (3) may react with diamine (2) at -78°C . to 150°C . in the presence of a proper base in an inert solvent, giving compound (4). Thus-obtained compound (4) may react with a mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. The reagents and reaction conditions in the reaction of compound (4) with carboxylic acid (5) are the same as those in the reaction of diamine (2) with carboxylic acid (3).

As specific examples of the base used in each of the above mentioned step, may be carbonates of alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, alkali metal alkoxides such as sodium ethoxide and potassium butoxide, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide, and hydrides of alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium hydride and potassium hydride; organic metal bases exemplified by alkylolithium such as n-butyllithium, and dialkylaminolithium such as lithium diisopropylamide; organic metal bases exemplified by bis(silyl)amine, such as lithiumbis(trimethylsilyl)amide; and organic bases such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, collidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, diisopropylethylamine and diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).

Examples of the inert solvent used in this reaction include alkyl halide type solvents such as dichloromethane, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and dioxane, aromatic solvents such as benzene and toluene, and amide solvents such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide and N-methylpyrrolidin-2-one. In addition to these solvent, a sulfoxide solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide or sulfolane, a ketone solvent such as acetone or methyl ethyl ketone, or the like may be used in some cases.

[Preparation Process 2]

Compound (1) according to the present invention can also be prepared in accordance with the following process:



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, T^1 represents a carbonyl group, Boc represents a tert-butoxycarbonyl group, and Boc-ON represents a 2-(tert-butoxycarbonyloxyimino)-2-phenylacetone-trile.

As described above, diamine (2) is treated with Boc-ON (6) to prepare compound (7) in which one of 2 amino groups has been protected with tert-butoxycarbonyl group. The

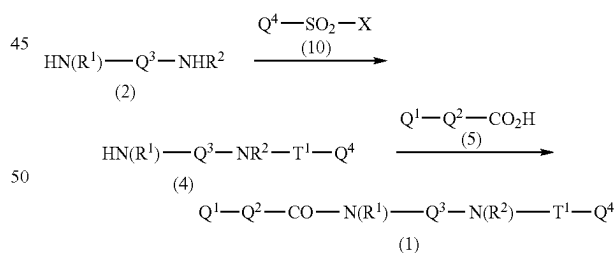
52

resultant compound (7) reacts with carboxylic acid (5) and affords compound (8). Compound (8) is successively treated with an acid to give compound (9). Compound (9) then reacts with the carboxylic acid (3), giving compound (1) according to the present invention. Compound (7) can be prepared by a reaction at -10°C . to 40°C . in the presence of triethylamine in a solvent such as dichloromethane. Reaction of compound (7) with the mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of the carboxylic acid (5) is carried out using the same reagents and reaction conditions as those described in Preparation Process 1, whereby compound (8) can be prepared. The resultant compound (8) is treated with trifluoroacetic acid or the like at -20°C . to 70°C ., whereby amine (9) can be prepared. In the reaction of the resultant amine (9) with carboxylic acid (3), the same reagents and conditions as those described in Preparation Process 1 may be used.

By the way, the tert-butoxycarbonyl group of compound (7) may be replaced by other amino-protecting groups. In this case, reagent (6) is also changed to other reagents, and reaction conditions and the like according to the reagents must be used. As examples of other protecting groups for amino groups, may be mentioned alkanoyl groups such as an acetyl group, alkoxycarbonyl groups such as methoxycarbonyl and ethoxycarbonyl groups, arylmethoxycarbonyl groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl, p-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl and p- or o-nitrobenzyloxy-carbonyl groups, arylmethyl groups such as benzyl and triphenylmethyl groups, aroyl groups such as a benzoyl group, and arylsulfonyl groups such as 2,4-dinitro-benzenesulfonyl and o-nitrobenzenesulfonyl groups. These protecting groups may be chosen for use according to the nature and the like of the compound of which amino group is to be protected. Upon leaving such a protecting group, reagents and conditions may be employed according to the protecting group.

[Preparation Process 3]

Compound (1) according to the present invention can be prepared by reacting diamine (2) with sulfonyl halide (10) and then condensing the reaction product with carboxylic acid (5).



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, T^1 represents a sulfonyl group, and X represents a halogen atom.

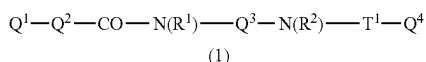
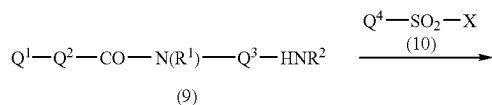
Diamine (2) reacts with sulfonyl halide (10) at -10°C . to 30°C . in the presence of a base such as triethylamine in an inert solvent, giving compound (4). The inert solvent and base may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 1. The resultant compound (4) is condensed with carboxylic acid (5) using the reagents and conditions described in Preparation Process 1, whereby compound (1) according to the present invention can be prepared. Sulfonyl halide (10) may be synthesized in a

53

proper base in accordance with the publicly known process (WO96/10022, WO00/09480) or a process according to it.

[Preparation Process 4]

Compound (1) according to the present invention can also be prepared in accordance with the following process:

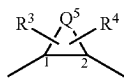


wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and X have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a sulfonyl group.

More specifically, amine (9) may react with sulfonyl halide (10) at -10°C . to 30°C . in the presence of a base in an inert solvent, giving compound (1). The inert solvent and base may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 1.

[Preparation Process 5]

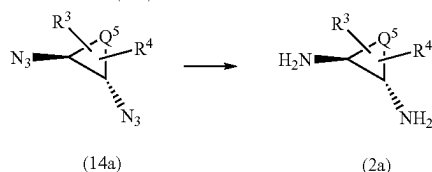
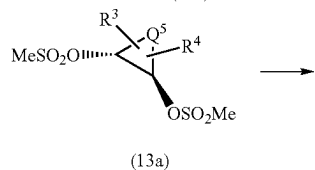
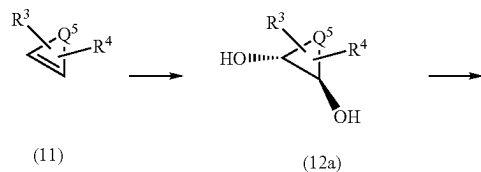
In the compounds (1) according to the present invention, geometrical isomers of trans-form and cis-form in the relation between position 1 and position 2 are present when Q^3 is the following group:



wherein R^3 , R^4 and Q^5 have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 and 2 indicate positions.

The preparation processes of such compounds (1) having the trans-form and the cis-form will hereinafter be described.

<Preparation Process of Trans-form>



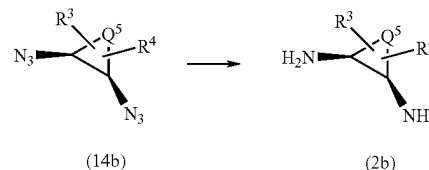
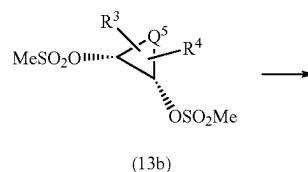
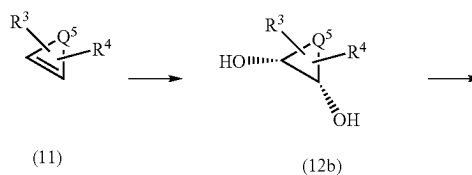
54

wherein Q^5 , R^3 and R^4 have the same meanings as defined above.

As an example of preparation of trans-diol (12a) from cyclic alkene (11), conversion from, for example, cyclohexene to trans-cyclohexanediol (Organic Synthesis, 1995, Vol. III, p. 217) is known. As an example of preparation of trans-diamine (2a) from trans-diol (12a), conversion from trans-cyclopentanediol to trans-cyclopentanediamine (WO98/30574) is reported. Trans-diamine (2a) can be prepared from cyclic alkene (11) according to these reports.

Trans-diamine (2a) prepared in accordance with the above-described process can be converted into trans-compound (1) by any of the above-described Preparation Processes 1 to 4.

<Preparation Process of Cis-form>



wherein Q^5 , R^3 and R^4 have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals.

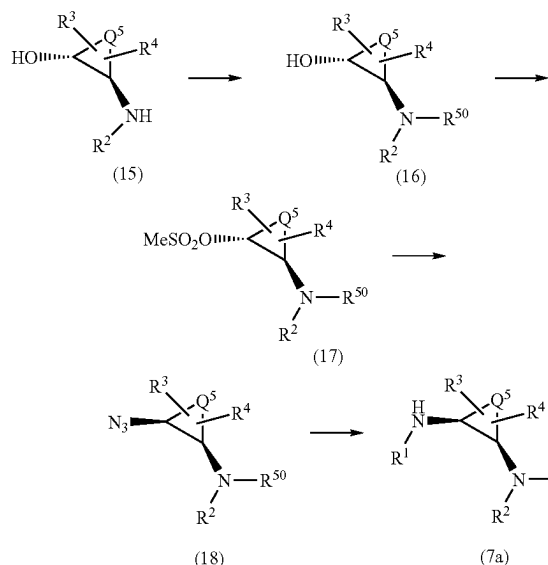
As an example of preparation of cis-diol (12b) from cyclic alkene (11), conversion from cyclohexene to cis-cyclohexanediol (J. Org. Chem., 1998, Vol. 63, p. 6094) and the like is known. As an example of preparation of cis-diamine (2b) from cis-diol (12a), conversion from cis-cyclopentanediol to cis-cyclopentanediamine (WO98/30574) and the like is reported. Cis-diamine (2b) can be prepared from cyclic alkene (11) according to these reports.

Cis-diamine (2b) prepared in accordance with the above-described process can be converted into the cis-compound (1) by any of the above-described Preparation Processes 1 to 4.

[Preparation Process 6]

As described above, either cis-form or trans-form generated in Q^3 may be present in the compounds (1) according to the present invention, and so geometrical isomers are present. Further, optical isomers may be present in the respective geometrical isomers. The preparation process of an optically active substance will hereinafter be described.

55



wherein Q^5 , R^1 , R^2 , R^3 and R^4 have the same meanings as defined above, and R^{50} represents a protecting group for amino group.

With respect to the preparation process of optically active aminoalcohol derivative (15) of 1,2-trans-form, for example, the preparation process of optically active 1,2-trans-2-aminocyclopentanol from cyclopentene oxide or the preparation process of optically active 1,2-trans-2-aminocyclohexanol from cyclohexene oxide is known (Tetrahedron: Asymmetry, 1996, Vol. 7, p. 843; J. Org. Chem., 1985, Vol. 50, p. 4154; J. Med. Chem., 1998, Vol. 41, p. 38). When the amino group of optically active aminoalcohol derivative (15) prepared by such an already known process or by applying such a process reacts with a proper protecting reagent, compound (16) can be produced. As a protecting group corresponding to R^{50} in compound (16), is preferred, among the ordinary acyl type protecting groups, an alkoxycarbonyl group such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl group and the like, an arylmethoxycarbonyl group such as benzyloxycarbonyl, p-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, p- or o-nitrobenzyloxy-carbonyl group and the like, or an arylsulfonyl group such as 2,4-dinitrobenzenesulfonyl, o-nitrobenzenesulfonyl group and the like. When the amino group is protected with, for example, a tert-butoxycarbonyl group, aminoalcohol derivative (15) may react with di-tert-butyl dicarbonate at -78°C . to 50°C . in an inert solvent, giving compound (16). The inert solvent may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 1.

Compound (16) may react with methanesulfonyl chloride at -78°C . to 50°C . in the presence of a base in an inert solvent, giving compound (17). The inert solvent may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 1. As the base, is preferred an organic base such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, collidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, diisopropylethylamine and diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU) and the like.

Compound (17) may react with sodium azide at -10°C . to 150°C . in a proper solvent, giving compound (18). As the solvent, an amide solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide or N-methylpyrrolidin-2-one, an

56

alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol, an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane or dioxane, benzenoid solvent such as toluene, a carbon halogenide such as dichloromethane, chloroform or carbon tetrachloride, acetone, dimethyl sulfoxide, or a mixed solvent of such a solvent with water is suitable.

As a process for converting azide derivative (18) into compound (7a), there are many processes such as a process of conducting hydrogenation with a palladium catalyst, Raney nickel catalyst or platinum catalyst, a reaction using a reducing agent such as lithium aluminum hydride, sodium borohydride or zinc borohydride, a reaction using zinc in the presence of nickel chloride or cobalt chloride, a reaction using triphenylphosphine and the like. Suitable reaction conditions may be selected according to the nature of the compound. For example, azide derivative (18) is hydrogenated at a temperature of -10°C . to 70°C . using 1 to 20% palladium carbon as a catalyst in a proper solvent, whereby compound (7a) can be prepared. The hydrogen pressure may be raised higher than atmospheric pressure. As the solvent, an alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol, an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane or dioxane, an amide solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide or N-methylpyrrolidin-2-one, an ester solvent such as ethyl acetate, acetic acid, hydrochloric acid, water, a mixed solvent thereof and the like is suitable.

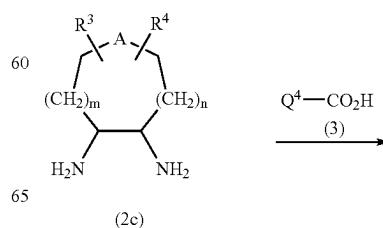
Optically active amine (7a) prepared in accordance with the above-described process can be converted to optically active compound (1) in accordance with the above-described Preparation Process 2. Antipode (1) of optically active substance (1) obtained from optically active amine (7a) may also be prepared in accordance with a similar process.

Optically active compound (1) may be prepared by separating racemic compound (1) through a column composed of an optically active carrier. It is also possible to separate intermediate (2), (4), (7), (8) or (9) for preparing racemic compound (1) through a column composed of an optically active carrier to isolate optically active intermediate (2), (4), (7), (8) or (9), and then prepare optically active compound (1) in accordance with any of Preparation Processes 1 to 4. As a process for isolating optically active compound (1), optically active intermediate (2), (4), (7), (8) or (9), a process of fractionally crystallizing a salt with an optically active carboxylic acid, or a process of fractionally crystallizing a salt with an optically active base on the contrary may be used.

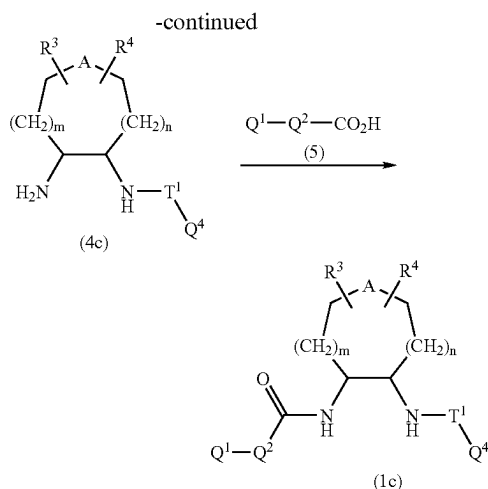
[Preparation Process 7]

Among the compounds (1) according to the present invention, a preparation process of compound (1c) containing heteroatom(s) in the group Q^3 will hereinafter be described in detail.

A compound represented by the general formula (1c), a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof can be prepared in accordance with, for example, the following process:



57



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^3 , R^4 , A , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a carbonyl group.

A mixed acid anhydride, acid halide, activated ester or the like, which is derived from carboxylic acid (3), may react with compound (2c), giving compound (4c). The resultant compound (4c) may react with carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1c) according to the present invention.

In the above reaction steps, reagents and conditions, which are generally used in peptide synthesis, may be applied. The mixed acid anhydride can be prepared by, for example, reaction of a chloroformate such as ethyl chloroformate or isobutyl chloroformate with carboxylic acid (3) in the presence of a base. The acid halide can be prepared by treating carboxylic acid (3) with an acid halide such as thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride. The activated ester includes various kinds of esters. Such an ester can be prepared by, for example, reaction of a phenol such as p-nitrophenol, N-hydroxybenzotriazol, or N-hydroxysuccinimide with carboxylic acid (3) using a condensing agent such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide or 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. The activated ester can also be prepared by reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with pentafluorophenyl trifluoroacetate or the like, reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with 1-benzotriazolyl-ox-yltripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphite, reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with diethyl cyanophosphonate (Shioiri method), reaction of carboxylic acid (3) with triphenylphosphine and 2,2'-dipyridyl disulfide (Mukaiyama method) or the like. The thus-obtained mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (3) may react with diamine (2c) at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in the presence of a proper base in an inert solvent, giving compound (4c). Thus-obtained compound (4c) may react with a mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1c) according to the present invention. The reagents and reaction conditions in the reaction of compound (4c) with carboxylic acid (5) are the same as those in the reaction of diamine (2c) with carboxylic acid (3).

As specific examples of the base used in each step, may be mentioned carbonates of alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate,

58

alkali metal alkoxides such as sodium ethoxide and potassium butoxide, alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide and potassium hydroxide, and hydrides of alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium hydride and potassium hydride; organic metal bases exemplified by alkylolithium such as n-butyllithium, and dialkylamino-lithium such as lithium diisopropylamide; organic metal bases exemplified by bis(silyl)amine, such as lithium-bis(trimethylsilyl)amide; and organic bases such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, collidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, diisopropylethylamine and diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).

Examples of the inert solvent used in this reaction include alkyl halide type solvents such as methylene chloride and chloroform, etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran and 1,4-dioxane, aromatic solvents such as benzene and toluene, and amide solvents such as N,N-dimethylformamide. In addition to these solvent, a sulfoxide solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide, a ketone solvent such as acetone, or the like may be used in some cases.

In the above-described preparation steps, processes such as attaching and leaving of a protecting group, and conversion of a functional group can be suitably applied, thereby preparing compound (1c).

As the protecting group for amino group, it is only necessary to use a protecting group, which is generally used as a protecting group for amino group in syntheses of organic compounds, particularly, peptide synthesis. As examples thereof, may be mentioned alkoxycarbonyl groups such as tert-butoxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl and ethoxycarbonyl groups, arylmethoxycarbonyl groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl, p-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl and p- or o-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl group, arylmethyl groups such as benzyl, 4-methoxybenzyl and triphenylmethyl groups, alkanoyl groups such as formyl and acetyl groups, aroyl groups such as a benzoyl group, and arylsulfonyl groups such as 2,4-dinitrobenzenesulfonyl and o-nitrobenzenesulfonyl groups.

As the protecting group for hydroxyl group, it is only necessary to use a protecting group for hydroxyl group, which is generally used in syntheses of organic compounds. As examples thereof, may be mentioned alkoxymethyl groups such as a methoxymethyl group, arylmethyl groups such as benzyl, 4-methoxybenzyl and triphenylmethyl groups, alkanoyl groups such as an acetyl group, aroyl groups such as a benzoyl group, and a tert-butylidiphenylsilyloxy group. A carboxyl group can be protected as an ester with an alkyl group such as a tert-butyl group or an arylmethyl group such as a benzyl group. The attaching and leaving of the protecting group may be conducted in accordance with a method known per se in the art.

Compound (1c) according to the present invention can be converted into various derivatives by converting its functional group. For example, a compound in which A is a nitrogen atom having no substituent can be converted into an amide compound by acylation using a mixed acid anhydride, acid halide, activated ester or the like in accordance with ordinary organic chemical methods, a sulfonamide compound by reaction with a sulfonyl halide, an N-alkyl compound by reaction with an alkyl halide, an N-aryl compound by reaction with an aryl halide or a carbamate compound by reaction with an isocyanate. Incidentally, the compound in which A is a nitrogen atom having no substituent can be prepared by, for example, treating compound (1c) prepared from diamine (2c), in which A has been protected with tert-butoxycarbonyl group, in accordance with Preparation Process 7 with an acid.

59

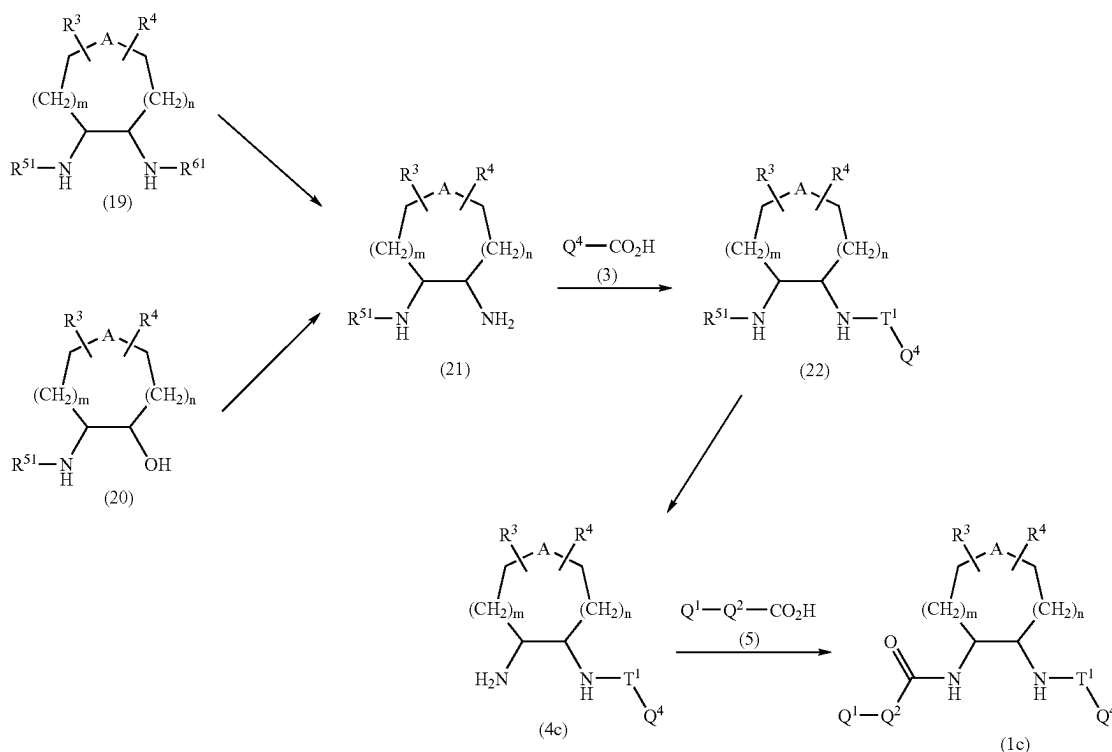
The compounds according to the present invention thus prepared can be isolated and purified by publicly known methods, for example, extraction, precipitation, fractional chromatography, fractional crystallization, recrystallization, etc. The compounds according to the present invention can be converted into desired salts in accordance with ordinary salt-forming reactions.

Optical isomers derived from an asymmetric carbon atom are present in the compounds of the present invention. Such an optically active isomer can be prepared by the process of preparing from optically active diamine (2c), and besides, a process of forming an optically active amine or acid and a salt from racemic compound (1c) and fractionally crystallizing it, a process of separating it by column chromatography using an optically active carrier.

Compound (1c), in which T^1 is a sulfonyl group, can be prepared by changing carboxylic acid (3) to sulfonyl halide (10) in the reaction of compound (2c) with carboxylic acid (3).

[Preparation Process 8]

Compound (1c) according to the present invention can also be prepared in accordance with the following process:



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^4 , R^3 , R^4 , A , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, T^1 represents a carbonyl group, and R^{51} and R^{61} represent protecting groups for amino group.

Compound (21) can be prepared by removing the protecting group R^{61} of compound (19) obtained by protecting the amino groups of compound (2c). No particular limitation is imposed on the protecting groups for amino acid illustrated as R^{51} and R^{61} so far as they are groups generally used in protection of the amino group. However, as typical examples thereof, may be mentioned the protecting groups

60

for amino group described in Preparation Process 7. In this case, R^{51} and R^{61} are required to be protecting groups capable of leaving by different methods or conditions from each other. As typical examples thereof, may be mentioned a combination that R^{51} is a tert-butoxycarbonyl group, and R^{61} is a benzyloxycarbonyl group. These protecting groups may be chosen for use according to the nature and the like of the compound of which amino groups are to be protected. Upon leaving such a protecting group, reagents and conditions may be employed according to the protecting group.

Compound (21) can also be prepared by converting the hydroxyl group in aminoalcohol derivative (20) into an amino group. As an example of the preparation of aminoalcohol derivative (20), is known conversion of methionine into 3-hydroxy-4-aminothiopyrane-1,1-dioxide (Tetrahedron Lett., Vol. 37, p. 7457, 1996).

As a process for converting the hydroxyl group in aminoalcohol derivative (20) into an amino group, may be mentioned a process in which aminoalcohol derivative (20) may react with methanesulfonyl chloride, p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride or the like, the resultant product may then react with ammonia, a primary

55

arylalkylamine such as benzylamine, p-methoxybenzylamine or 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine, a secondary arylalkylamine such as dibenzylamine, or a hydroxylamine such as N-benzylhydroxylamine or N,O-dibenzylhydroxylamine, and benzyl group or the like is then removed as needed, thereby preparing diamine (21). Aminoalcohol derivative (20) can also be converted into diamine (21) by reacting it with phthalimide or succinimide in accordance with the reaction with triphenylphosphine and ethyl azodicarboxylate (Mukaiyama method) or the like, and then treating the reaction product with hydrazine or N-methylhydrazine.

61

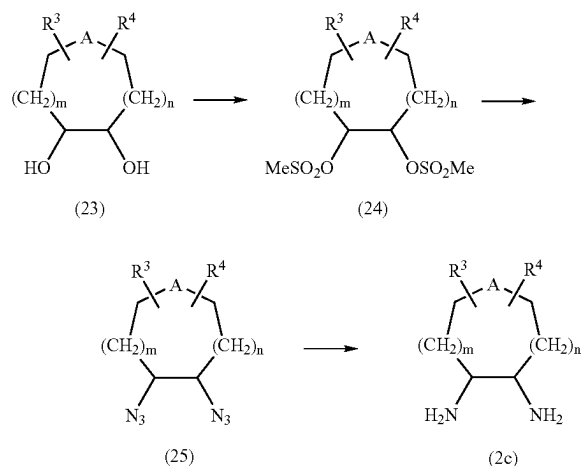
When A in the formula is SO₂, and n is 0, diamine (21) can be prepared by adding ammonia, a primary arylalkylamine such as benzylamine, p-methoxybenzylamine or 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine, a secondary arylalkylamine such as dibenzylamine, or a hydroxylamine such as N-benzylhydroxylamine or N,O-dibenzylhydroxylamine to an α,β-unsaturated cyclic sulfone formed by reacting aminoalcohol derivative (20) with methanesulfonyl chloride, p-toluene-sulfonyl chloride, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride or the like and then treating the reaction product with a proper base or directly reacting aminoalcohol derivative (20) with triphenylphosphine and ethyl azodicarboxylate, and removing the benzyl group or the like as needed.

The resultant diamine (21) may react with carboxylic acid (3), giving compound (22). The protecting group R⁵¹ is successively removed, giving compound (4c). Compound (4c) may react with carboxylic acid (5), giving compound (1c) according to the present invention. The reagents and reaction conditions in the reaction of compound (21) with carboxylic acid (3) and the reaction of compound (4c) with carboxylic acid (5) may be the same as those described in Preparation Process 7.

Similarly, compound (1c) in which T¹ is a sulfonyl group can be prepared by changing carboxylic acid (3) to sulfonyl halide (10) in the reaction of compound (21) with carboxylic acid (3).

[Preparation Process 9]

A typical preparation process of intermediate (2c) for preparation described in Preparation Process 7 will be described.



wherein R³, R⁴, A, m and n have the same meanings as defined above.

As preparation processes of diol derivative (23), are known, for example, conversion of 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine into 1-benzoyloxycarbonyl-3,4-cis-dihydropyridine (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 138264/1995), conversion of L-tartaric acid into (R,R)-tetrahydrofuran diol or (R,R)-N-benzylpyrrolidinediol (Tetrahedron: Asymmetry, Vol. 8, p. 1861, 1997). Diol derivative (23) can be prepared by using such an already known process or applying such a process and removing a protecting group or converting a functional group as needed.

62

Diol derivative (23) may react with methanesulfonyl chloride at a temperature under cooling to room temperature in the presence of a base in an inert solvent, giving compound (24). The inert solvent may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 7. However, particularly preferred are alkyl halide type solvents such as methylene chloride and chloroform, and etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran and 1,4-dioxane. As the base, is preferred an organic base such as pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, diisopropylethylamine or diazabicyclo-[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).

Compound (24) may react with sodium azide at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in a proper solvent, giving azide derivative (25). As the solvent, an amide solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide or N-methylpyrrolidin-2-one, an alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol, an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, benzenoid solvent such as benzene or toluene, a carbon halogenide such as methylene chloride or chloroform, dimethyl sulfoxide, acetone, or the like is suitable. Such a solvent may be a mixed solvent with water.

As a process for converting azide derivative (25) into compound (2c), there are many processes such as a process of conducting hydrogenation with a palladium catalyst, Raney nickel catalyst or platinum catalyst, a reaction using a reducing agent such as lithium aluminum hydride or sodium borohydride, a reaction using zinc in the presence of nickel chloride or cobalt chloride, and a reaction using triphenylphosphine. Suitable reagents and reaction conditions may be selected according to the nature of the compound. The hydrogen pressure may be raised higher than atmospheric pressure. As the solvent, an alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol, an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane, an amide solvent such as N,N-dimethylformamide or N-methylpyrrolidin-2-one, an ester solvent such as ethyl acetate, acetic acid, hydrochloric acid, water, or a mixed solvent thereof is suitable. Compound (1c) according to the present invention can be derived from diamine derivative (2c) prepared in accordance with the above-described process in accordance with Preparation Process 7.

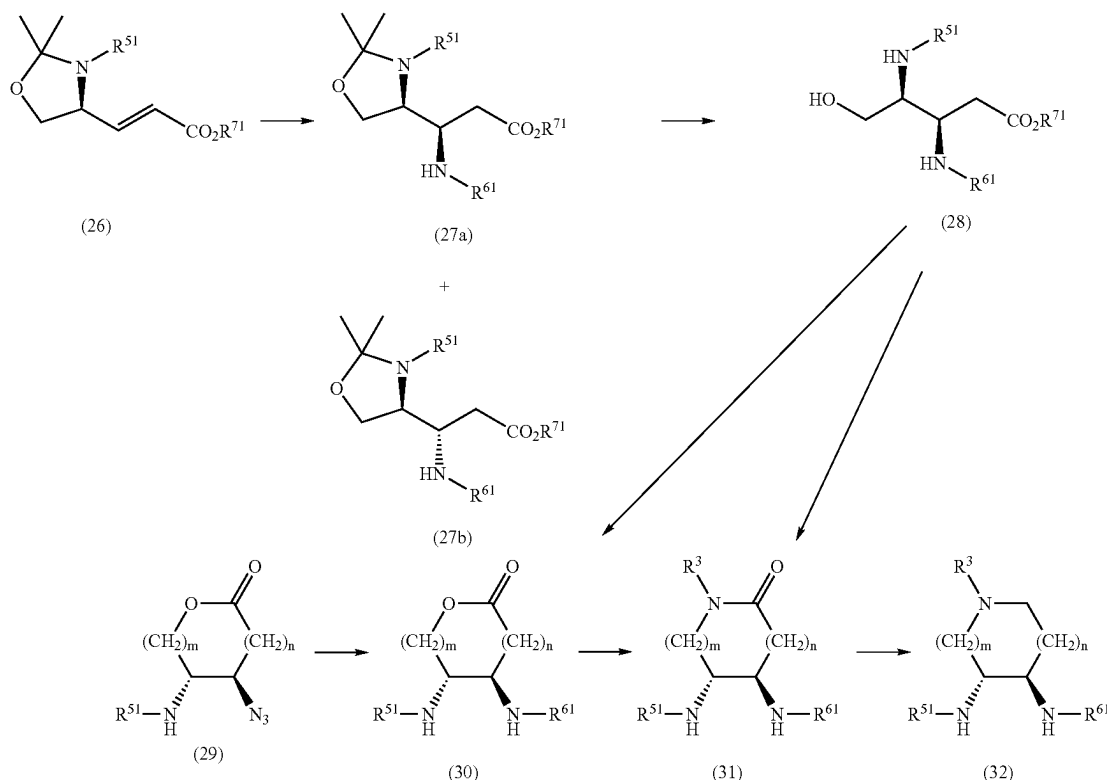
When diol derivative (23) is trans-3,4-dihydroxytetrahydrofuran or trans-1-substituted 3,4-dihydropyridine, optically active substances are present. These optically active diol derivatives (23) can be converted into optically active diamine derivatives (2c), and further into optically active compounds (1c) according to the present invention in accordance with Preparation Process 7.

[Preparation Process 10]

A typical preparation process of optically active compounds (30), (31) and (32) included in compound (19) described in Preparation Process 8 will be described. Incidentally, the position of an asymmetric carbon atom shown in the following preparation scheme is indicated by way of example.

63

64



wherein m , n , R^3 , R^{51} and R^{61} have the same meanings as defined above, and R^{71} represents a protecting group for carboxyl group.

Optically active α,β -unsaturated ester derivative (26) can be prepared in accordance with the process described in literature (J. Org. Chem., Vol. 61, p. 581, 1996; J. Org. Chem., Vol. 57, p. 6279, 1992, etc.) or by applying such a process. Optically active α,β -unsaturated ester derivative (26) may react with an amine at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in a proper solvent, giving diastereomers (27a) and (27b). The amine may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 8. The solvent is desirably an organic solvent unreactive to a substrate, product or reagent, particularly, an alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol, or an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane or 1,4-dioxane. Diastereomers (27a) and (27b) can also be prepared by reaction of α,β -unsaturated ester derivative (26) with an organometallic base such as lithium N-benzyl-(trimethylsilyl)amide by applying the process described in literature (J. Org. Chem., Vol. 63, p. 7263, 1998). The diastereomers may be separated to use, for example, diastereomer (27a) in the next reaction.

Compound (27a) is treated with an acid at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in a proper solvent, giving compound (28). Examples of the acid used include hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, Lewis acids such as boron trifluoride, trifluoroacetic acid and p-toluenesulfonic acid. As the solvent, is used water or an alcoholic solvent such as methanol or ethanol. Such a solvent may be a mixed solvent with water. In this reaction, the protecting group R^{71}

may be left in some cases. In such a case, such a compound is required to react with a proper protecting reagent for amino group as needed.

Compound (28) may be treated with an acid at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in a proper solvent, giving optically active compound (30). The acid used may be suitably chosen for use from the acids mentioned above, with a Lewis acid such as boron trifluoride, or p-toluenesulfonic acid being particularly preferred. As the solvent used in the reaction, is used an etheric solvent such as 1,4-dioxane or tetrahydrofuran, or an aromatic solvents such as benzene or toluene. Compound (30) can also be prepared from azide derivative (29). As examples of the preparation of optically active azide derivative (29), are known conversion of L-asparagic acid into (R,R)-(3S,4S)-3-amino-4-azide-5-oxotetrahydrofuran (Can. J. Chem., Vol. 71, p. 1047, 1993) and the like. Optically active azide derivative (29) can be prepared by using such an already known process or applying such a process and removing a protecting group or converting a functional group as needed. The azide in azide derivative (29) may be reduced into an amino group, and the resultant product may react with a proper protecting reagent for amino group, giving compound (30). The reagents and reaction conditions used in the reduction of azide (29) may be the same as those described in the process of converting azide derivative (25) into compound (2c).

The hydroxyl group portion of compound (28) may be converted into an amino group and then treated with a base, giving compound (31). The conversion of the hydroxyl group in compound (28) into the amino group can be performed in accordance with, for example, Preparation Process 8. Compound (31) can also be prepared by treating

65

alcohol derivative (28) with an oxidizing agent and then reductively aminating the resultant aldehyde derivative. Specific preferable examples of the oxidizing agent used in the above reaction include pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC), pyridinium dichromate (PDC) and sulfur trioxide pyridine complexes. Example of the amine include primary alkylamines such as ammonia, methylamine and ethylamine, and primary arylalkylamine such as benzylamine, p-methoxybenzylamine and 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine. As the reducing process, there are a process of conducting hydrogenation with a palladium catalyst, Raney nickel catalyst or platinum catalyst, a reaction using a reducing agent such as sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride, and suitable reagents and reaction conditions may be selected according to the nature of the compound. The base used in the above process may be suitably chosen for use from those described in Preparation Process 7. Compound (31) can also be prepared by using compound (30) and an amine in accordance with the process described in literature (Tetrahedron Lett., Vol. 41, p. 1141, 2000; Heterocycles, Vol. 53, p. 173, 2000) or by applying such a process. Examples of the amine used include primary alkylamines such as ammonia, methylamine and ethylamine, and primary arylalkylamine such as benzylamine and p-methoxybenzylamine.

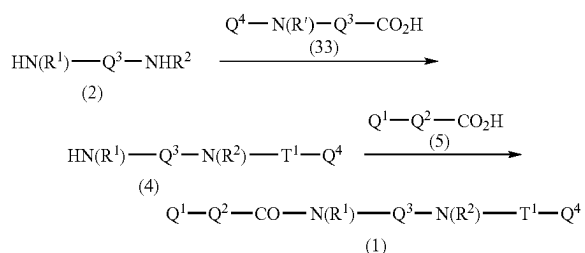
Compound (31) may be treated with a reducing agent at a temperature under cooling to a temperature under heating in a solvent, giving compound (32). Examples of the reducing agent include borane-tetrahydrofuran complexes, borane-methyl sulfide complexes and lithium aluminum hydride. However, suitable reagents and reaction conditions may be selected according to the nature of the compound. The solvent is desirably an organic solvent unreactive to a substrate, product or reagent, particularly, an etheric solvent such as tetrahydrofuran or 1,4-dioxane.

Optically active substances (1c) of the compounds according to the present invention can be derived from the compounds (30), (31) and (32) prepared by the processes described above.

In the above-described preparation scheme, one of optically active substances has been described by way of example. However, other optically active substances different in conformation from each other may also be prepared in accordance with similar preparation schemes by respectively using starting materials different in conformation from each other.

[Preparation Process 11]

Compound (1) in which T¹ is a group —CO—CO—N(R')—, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, can be prepared in accordance with the following scheme:

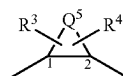


66

wherein Q¹, Q², Q³, Q⁴, R¹, R² and R' have the same meanings as defined above, and T¹ represents a group —CO—CO—N(R')—, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above.

An acid halide, activated ester or the like, which is derived from carboxylic acid (33), may react with diamine (2), giving compound (4). The resultant compound (4) may react with carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. In the above reaction steps, reagents and conditions, which are generally used in peptide synthesis, may be applied. The acid halide can be prepared by treating carboxylic acid (33) with an acid halide such as thionyl chloride or oxalyl chloride. The activated ester includes various kinds of esters. Such an ester can be prepared by, for example, reaction of a phenol such as p-nitrophenol, N-hydroxybenzotriazol, or N-hydroxysuccinimide with carboxylic acid (33) using a condensing agent such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide or 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. The activated ester can also be prepared by reaction of carboxylic acid (33) with pentafluorophenyl trifluoroacetate or the like, reaction of carboxylic acid (33) with 1-benzotriazolylloxytripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate, reaction of carboxylic acid (33) with diethyl cyanophosphonate (Shioiri method), reaction of carboxylic acid (33) with triphenylphosphine and 2,2'-dipyridyl disulfide (Mukaiyama method) or the like. The thus-obtained mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (33) may react with diamine (2) at −78° C. to 150° C. in the presence of a proper base in an inert solvent, giving compound (4). Thus-obtained compound (4) may react with a mixed acid anhydride, acid halide or activated ester of carboxylic acid (5) under the same conditions, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. The reagents and reaction conditions in the reaction of compound (4) with carboxylic acid (5) are the same as those in the reaction of diamine (2) with carboxylic acid (33). The bases and solvents used in the above respective steps may be suitably chosen from those described in Preparation Process 1.

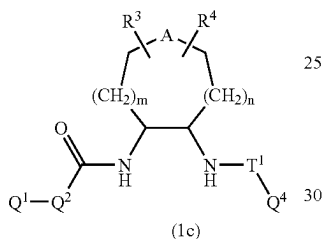
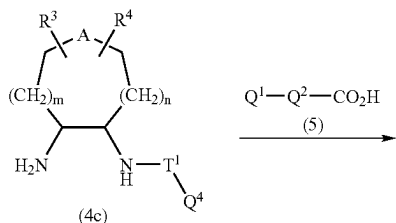
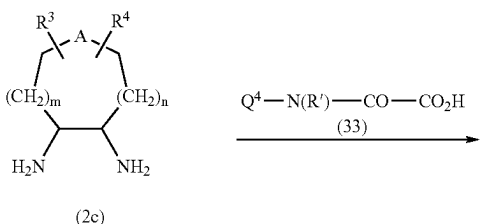
When compound (1) in which Q³ is the following group:



wherein R³, R⁴ and Q⁵ have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 and 2 indicate positions, and the relation between position 1 and position 2 is a trans-form or cis-form, is prepared, it is only necessary to use diamine (2a) or (2b) described in Preparation Process 5.

When compound (1) in which a heteroatom such as a nitrogen atom, oxygen atom or sulfured atom is contained in Q⁵ is prepared, it is only necessary to change carboxylic acid (3) to carboxylic acid (33) in the reaction of compound (2c) with carboxylic acid (3) as described in Preparation Process 7. Namely, compound (1) in which a heteroatom is contained in Q⁵ in the following reaction scheme, i.e., compound (1c) can be prepared.

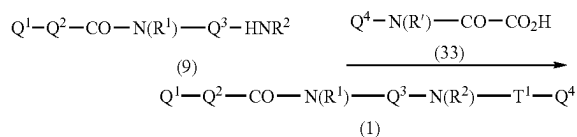
67



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^4 , R^3 , R^4 , R' , A , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-CO-CO-N(R')$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above.

[Preparation Process 12]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-CO-CO-N(R')$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, can also be prepared in accordance with the following scheme:

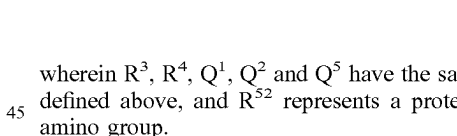
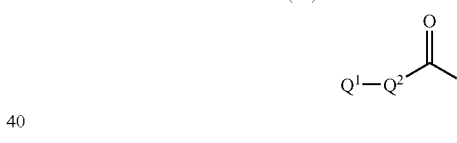
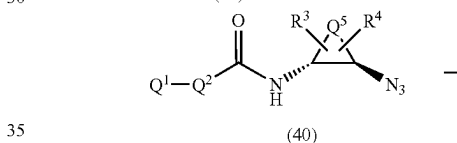
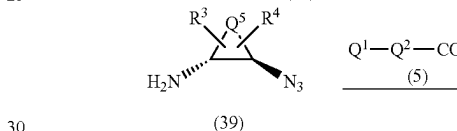
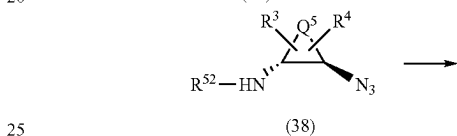
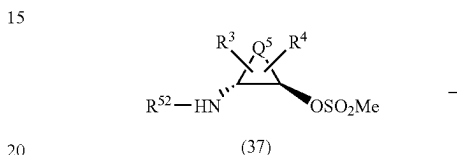
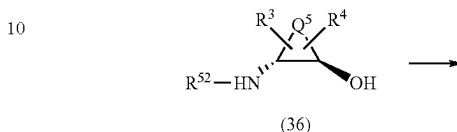
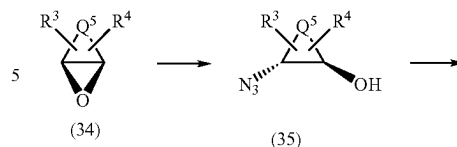


wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and R' have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-CO-CO-N(R')$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above.

In the reaction of amine (9) with carboxylic acid (33), the same reagents and conditions as those described in Preparation Process 1 may be used.

Amine (9) used herein can also be prepared in accordance with the following scheme shown as a preparation scheme of amine (41) in addition of the scheme described in Preparation Process 2.

68



wherein R^3 , R^4 , Q^1 , Q^2 and Q^5 have the same meanings as defined above, and R^{52} represents a protecting group for amino group.

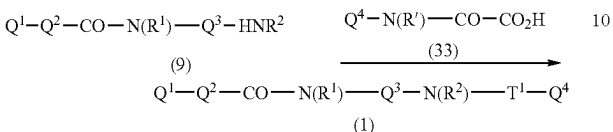
Compound (34) in the above preparation scheme can be prepared by treating a cycloalkene with perbenzoic acid or a derivative thereof in a solvent such as methylene chloride to epoxidate it. Ordinary conditions for epoxidation of an alkene may be applied to the conditions of this reaction. Compound (34) can also be prepared in accordance with the process described in J. Org. Chem., Vol. 61, pp. 8687-8691 (1996) or a process corresponding thereto.

Compound (34) may react with sodium azide in accordance with a method known per se in the art, giving azide (35). Azide (35) may be catalytically reduced, and the amino group of the resultant compound may be protected, giving compound (36). As examples of the protecting group for amino group in this reaction, may be mentioned those described in Preparation Process 2. Compound (36) may be converted into azide (38) in a similar manner to the process described Preparation Process 5, and the protecting group for the amino group thereof may be left, giving compound (39). Compound (39) may react with carboxylic acid (5), giving compound (40). The compound (40) may then be catalytically reduced, giving compound (41).

69

[Preparation Process 13]

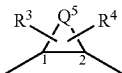
Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-\text{CO}-\text{CO}-\text{N}(\text{R}')-$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, can also be prepared by changing the reaction of compound (9) with carboxylic acid (3) in the scheme described in Preparation Process 2 to a reaction of compound (9) with compound (33).



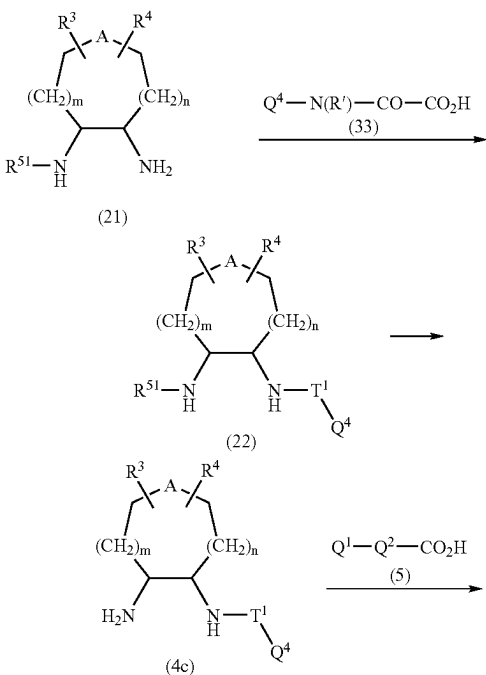
wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and R' have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-\text{CO}-\text{CO}-\text{N}(\text{R}')-$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above.

As the reaction conditions, may be applied those described in Preparation Process 2.

When compound (1) in which Q^3 is the following group:

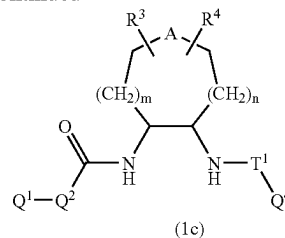


wherein R^3 , R^4 and Q^5 have the same meanings as defined above, and numerals 1 and 2 indicate positions, and a heteroatom such as a nitrogen atom, oxygen atom or sulfur atom is contained in Q^5 is prepared, it is only necessary to change carboxylic acid (3) to carboxylic acid (33) in the reaction of compound (21) with carboxylic acid (3) as described in Preparation Process 8. Namely, compound (1) in which a heteroatom is contained in Q^5 in the following reaction scheme, i.e., compound (1c) can be prepared.



70

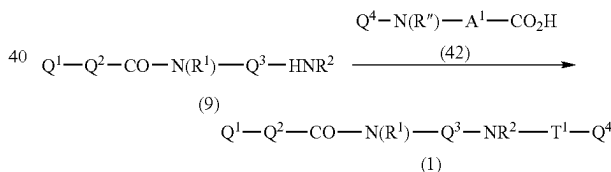
-continued



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^4 , R^3 , R^4 , R' , A , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-\text{CO}-\text{CO}-\text{N}(\text{R}')-$, in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, and R^{51} represents a protecting group for amino group.

[Preparation Process 14]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-\text{CO}-\text{A}^1-\text{N}(\text{R}'')-$, in which R'' represents a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, and A^1 represents an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, can be prepared by reaction of compound (9) described in Preparation Process 2 with $\text{Q}^4-\text{N}(\text{R}'')-\text{A}^1-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ (42) at -55°C . to 50°C . using a condensing agent in an inert solvent. As examples of the condensing agent, may be mentioned $\text{N,N}'$ -dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. As examples of the inert solvent, may be mentioned alkyl halide type solvents such as methylene chloride, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and dioxane, aromatic solvents such as benzene and toluene, and amide solvents such as N,N -dimethylformamide.



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and R'' have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-\text{CO}-\text{A}^1-\text{N}(\text{R}'')-$, in which R'' represents a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, and A^1 represents an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted.

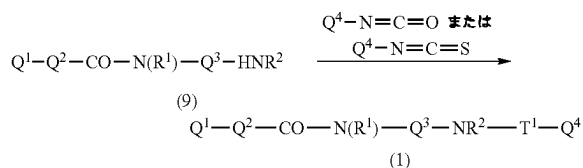
Compound (42) described in the preparation process described above can be prepared by, for example, reacting an arylamine such as 4-chloroaniline with an ester of a bromoalkanoic acid at 40 to 120°C . in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate in a solvent such as acetonitrile or N,N -dimethylformamide and then hydrolyzing the ester with an alkali such as lithium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide. Compound (42) may be used in reaction in the form of a salt such as a potassium salt as it is.

[Preparation Process 15]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NH}-$ or a group $-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{NH}-$, can be prepared by reaction of compound (9) described in Preparation Process 2 with

71

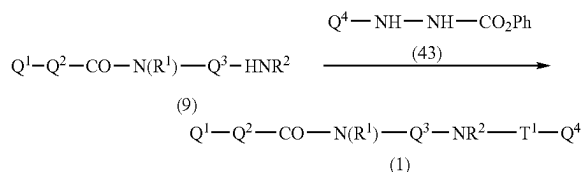
isocyanate ($Q^4-N=C=O$) or isothiocyanate ($Q^4-N=C=S$) at -20°C . to 50°C . in an inert solvent. A typical examples of the inner solvent is described in Preparation Process 14. When isocyanate or isothiocyanate is not commercialized, isocyanate or isothiocyanate can be synthesized using ordinary methods.



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-C(=O)-NH-$ or $-C(=S)-NH-$.

[Preparation Process 16]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-CO-NH-NH-$ can be prepared by reaction of compound (9) described in Preparation Process 2 with $Q^4-NH-NH-CO_2Ph$ (43) at room temperature to 150°C . in an inert solvent in the presence of a base if necessary. As typical examples of the inert solvent, may be mentioned acetonitrile and N,N-dimethylformamide, and besides those described in Preparation Process 14. As examples of the base, may be mentioned pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, collidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, diisopropylethylamine and diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).



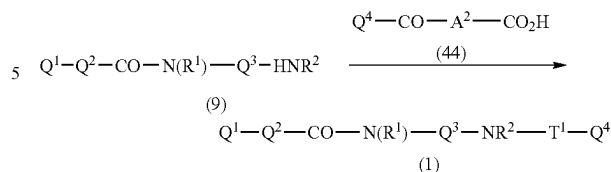
wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-CO-NH-NH-$.

Compound (43) described in the preparation process described above can be prepared by, for example, reacting an arylhydrazine such as 4-chlorophenylhydrazine with diphenyl carbonate at room temperature to 120°C . in a solvent such as acetonitrile, N,N-dimethylformamide, methylene chloride, chloroform, tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, dioxane, benzene or toluene.

[Preparation Process 17]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-CO-A^2-CO-$, in which A^2 represents a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms can be prepared by reaction of compound (9) described in Preparation Process 2 with $Q^4-Co-A^2-CO_2H$ (44) at -50°C . to 50°C . using a condensing agent in an inert solvent. As examples of the condensing agent, may be mentioned N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. As examples of the solvent, may be mentioned those described in Preparation Process 16.

72



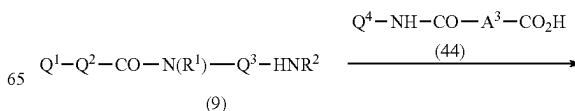
wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $-CO-A^2-CO-$, in which A^2 represents a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms.

When A^2 is a single bond, compound (44) described in the preparation process described above can be prepared by, for example, hydrolyzing a compound (for example, $Q^4-Co-CO_2Et$) prepared by the Friedel-Crafts reaction of an aromatic hydrocarbon such as chlorobenzene or an aromatic heterocyclic compound such as thiophene with a chloroacetate (for example, $ClCO-CO_2Et$) using an alkali such as lithium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide.

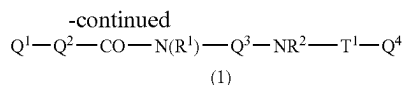
When A^2 is a methylene group, compound (44) can be prepared by, for example, hydrolyzing a ketoester derivative (for example, $Q^4-CO-CH_2-CO_2Et$) obtained by reaction of an arylcarbonyl chloride such as 4-chlorobenzoyl chloride or a heteroarylcarbonyl chloride such as thiophenecarbonyl chloride with potassium malonic monoester monocarboxylate in the presence of magnesium chloride and triethylamine with an alkali such as lithium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide. The ketoester derivative may be used in the reaction with compound (9) in the form of a carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolysis after conversion of its carbonyl group into ethyleneketal. When A is an alkylene group having at least 2 carbon atoms, compound (44) can be prepared by, for example, hydrolyzing a ketoester derivative (for example, $Q^4-CO-A^2-CO_2Et$) obtained by the Friedel-Crafts reaction of an aromatic hydrocarbon such as benzene or an aromatic heterocyclic compound such as thiophene with an alkylenedicarboxylic monoester monochloride using an alkali such as lithium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide.

[Preparation Process 18]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $-CO-A^3-CO-NH-$, in which A^3 represents an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms can be prepared by reaction of compound (9) described in Preparation Process 2 with $Q^4-NH-CO-A^3-CO_2H$ (45) at -50 to 50°C . using a condensing agent in an inert solvent. As examples of the condensing agent, may be mentioned N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride. Examples of the inert solvent include alkyl halide type solvents such as methylene chloride, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and dioxane, aromatic solvents such as benzene and toluene, and amide solvents such as N,N-dimethylformamide.



73

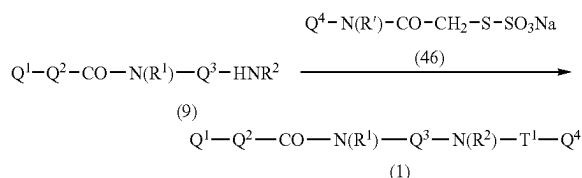


wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $\text{—CO—A}^3\text{—CO—}$, in which A^3 represents an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms.

Compound (45) can be prepared by hydrolyzing a compound (for example, $Q^4\text{—NH—CO—A}^3\text{—CO}_2\text{Et}$) obtained by reaction of an arylamine such as 4-chloroaniline or a heteroarylamine such as aminopyridine corresponding to $Q^4\text{—NH}_2$ with potassium alkylenedicarboxylic monoester monocarboxylate at -50 to 50°C . using a condensing agent in an inert solvent with an alkali such as lithium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or sodium hydroxide.

[Preparation Process 19]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $\text{—CS—CO—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above can be prepared in accordance with the following scheme:

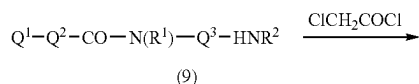


wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and R' have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $\text{—CS—CO—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above.

More specifically, sodium thiosulfate (46) and compound (9) may be dissolved or dispersed in a solvent and heated, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. The reaction temperature is preferably 80 to 200°C ., particularly preferably about 150°C . As the solvent used in this reaction, may be mentioned water, alcohols such as methanol and ethanol, basic solvents such as pyridine and N-methylmorpholine, alkyl halide type solvents such as methylene chloride and chloroform, etheric solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and dioxane, and amide solvents such as N,N-dimethylformamide. These solvents may be suitably mixed for use. As examples of mixed solvents, may be mentioned a mixed solvent of methanol and methylene chloride. In this reaction, the solvent is not necessarily refluxed. For example, when the mixed solvent of methanol and methylene chloride is used, a reaction solution (or a reaction mixture) is heated at an external temperature of 150°C . to distill off the solvent, and the residue is then heated at the same temperature.

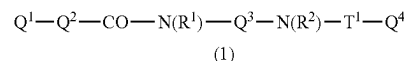
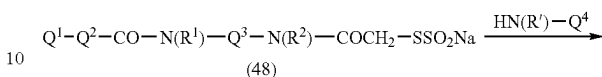
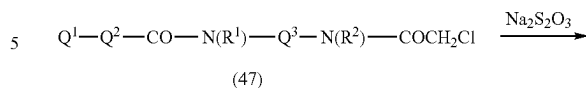
[Preparation Process 20]

Compound (1) in which T^1 is a group $\text{—CO—CS—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above can be prepared in accordance with the following scheme:



74

-continued



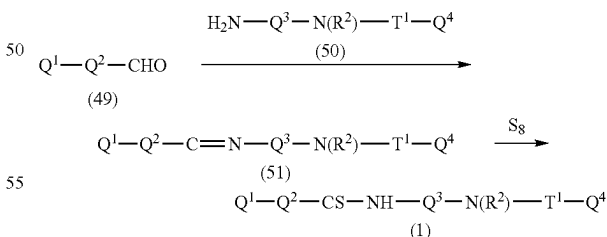
wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 , R^1 , R^2 and R' have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $\text{—CO—CS—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above.

More specifically, compound (9) may react with chloroacetyl chloride in the presence of a base, giving compound (47). Compound (47) may be heated together with sodium thiosulfate in a solvent, giving sodium thiosulfate derivative (48). The thus-obtained sodium thiosulfate derivative (48) may be heated with an amine, i.e., $\text{HN(R}')\text{—Q}^4$, giving compound (1) according to the present invention.

As conditions, solvent and the like for preparing compound (47) from compound (9), may be applied those commonly used in reaction of an amine with acid chloride. In order to prepare compound (48) from compound (47), it is only necessary to heat compound (47) together with sodium thiosulfate under reflux for about 1 hour in a solvent such as ethanol. When compound (47) is a salt with hydrochloric acid or the like, the reaction may be performed in the presence of a base such as sodium hydrogencarbonate. The preparation conditions of compound (48) are not limited to those described herein, and the temperature and the kinds of the solvent and base may be suitably changed. The conditions for the reaction of compound (48) with $\text{HN(R}')\text{—Q}^4$ are the same as those described in Preparation Process 19.

[Preparation Process 21]

Compound (1) in which T^0 is a thiocarbonyl group (—CS—) can be prepared in accordance with the following scheme:



wherein Q^1 , Q^2 , Q^3 , Q^4 and R^2 have the same meanings as defined above, and T^1 represents a group $\text{—SO}_2\text{—}$, —CO— , —CO—NH— , —CS—NH— , —CO—NH—NH— , $\text{—CO—CO—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above, $\text{—CO—CS—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above, $\text{—CS—CO—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above, $\text{—CS—CS—N(R}^1\text{)—}$, in which R^1 has the same meaning as defined above,

75

—CO-A¹-N(R'')—, in which A¹ and R'' have the same meanings as defined above, —CO-A²-CO—, in which A² has the same meaning as defined above, —CO-A³-CO—NH—, in which A³ has the same meanings as defined above, or —CO-A³-CO—, in which A³ has the same meaning as defined above.

More specifically, compound (49) may be subjected to dehydration reaction with amine (50) in the presence of an acid catalyst such as p-toluenesulfonic acid, giving compound (51). Compound (51) may be heated together with sulfur powder in a solvent such as a mixed solvent of methanol/methylene chloride, giving compound (1) according to the present invention. As conditions for preparing compound (51) from compound (49) and amine (50), may be applied those commonly used in preparation of a Schiff base. Specifically, heating under reflux may be conducted in the presence of an acid catalyst in benzene or toluene under conditions that water is removed from the reaction system by, for example, using a Dean-Stark trap. Molecular sieve may also be used in removing water from the reaction system.

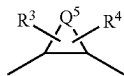
The important intermediates described in Preparation Process 1 to 21 of the compounds (1) according to the present invention will hereinafter be described.

1) The compounds described in Preparation Process 1, 3 and 11 and represented by the following general formula (4):



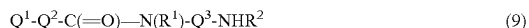
wherein R¹, R², Q³ and Q⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, and T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group or group —CO—CO—N(R'), in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.

Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which T¹ is a group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R'), in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, and compounds in which T¹ in the above formula is a carbonyl group, and Q³ is the following group:



in which R³ and R⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, and Q⁵ means a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂-A-CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

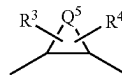
2) The compounds described in Preparation Process 2, 4 and 12 and represented by the following general formula (9):



wherein R¹, R², Q¹, Q² and Q³ have the same meanings as defined above, are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.

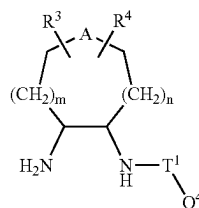
76

Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which Q³ is the following group:



in which R³ and R⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, and Q⁵ means a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂-A-CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

3) The following compounds (4C) described in Preparation Process 7, 11 and 13 are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.

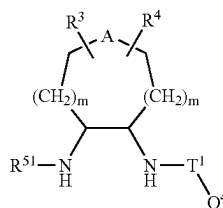


(4c)

wherein Q⁴, R³, R⁴, A, m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group or group —CO—CO—N(R'), in which R' has the same meaning as defined above.

Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which T¹ in the above formula is a group —CO—CO—N(R'), in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, and compounds in which T¹ is a carbonyl group, and A is an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

4) The following compounds (22) described in Preparation Process 8 and 13 are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.



(22)

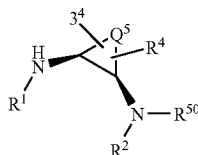
wherein Q⁴, R³, R⁴, A, m and n have the same meanings as defined above, T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group or group —CO—CO—N(R'), in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, and R⁵¹ represents a protecting group for amino group.

Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which T¹ in the above formula is a group —CO—CO—N(R'), in which R' has the same meaning as defined above, and compounds in which T¹ is a carbonyl group, and A is an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom,

77

—SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—,
—S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

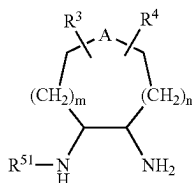
5) The following optically active compounds (7a) described in Preparation Process 6 are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.



wherein Q⁵, R¹, R², R³ and R⁴ have the same meanings as defined above, and R⁵⁰ represents a protecting group for amino group.

Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which Q⁵ in the above formula is a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

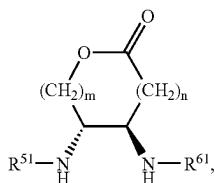
6) The following compounds (21) described in Preparation Process 8 are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.



wherein R³, R⁴, A, m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and R⁵¹ represents a protecting group for amino group.

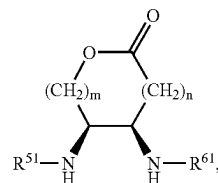
Among the above-described intermediates, are preferred compounds in which A in the above formula is an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—.

7) The following compounds described in Preparation Process 10 are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention. More specifically, the following optically active trans-form compounds (30), (31) and (32):



(30)

60



65

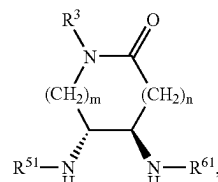
78

-continued

(31)

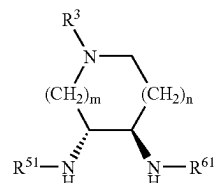
(7a)

10



(32)

15



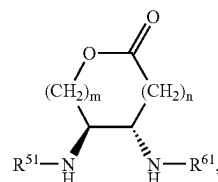
20

wherein R³, m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and R⁵¹ and R⁶¹ represent protecting groups for amino group, enantiomers (30a), (31a) and (32a) of the above compounds prepared in a similar manner:

(30a)

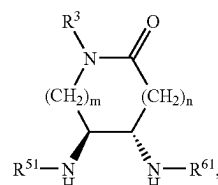
(21)

35



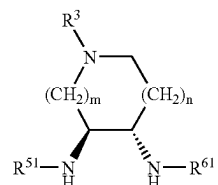
(31a)

40



(32a)

45



55

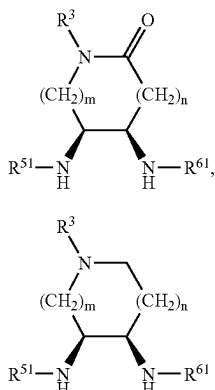
wherein R³, m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and R⁵¹ and R⁶¹ represent protecting groups for amino group, cis-form compounds (30b), (31b) and (32b):

(30b)

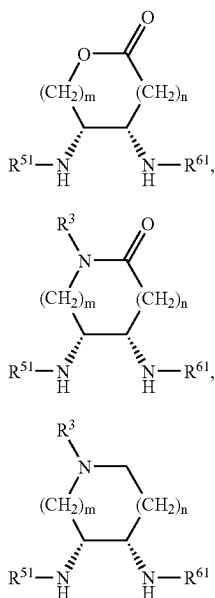
60

79

-continued



wherein R^3 , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and R^{51} and R^{61} represent protecting groups for amino group, and enantiomers (30c), (31c) and (32c) thereof:



wherein R^3 , m and n have the same meanings as defined above, and R^{51} and R^{61} represent protecting groups for amino group, are important as intermediates for preparing compounds (1) according to the present invention.

The diamine derivatives according to the present invention exhibit strong inhibitory effects on activated blood coagulation factor X and are thus useful for medicines for mammal including human, anticoagulants, agents for preventing and/or treating thrombosis or embolism, agents for preventing and/or treating thrombotic diseases, and agents for preventing and/or treating cerebral infarction, cerebral embolism, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, pulmonary infarction, pulmonary embolism, Buerger's disease, deep venous thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome, thrombus formation after valve or joint replacement, thrombus formation and reocclusion after

80

angioplasty, systemic inflammatory reaction syndrome (SIRS), multiple organ disease syndrome (MODS), thrombus formation during extracorporeal circulation, or blood clotting upon blood gathering.

When a compound according to the present invention is used as a medicine for human body, the dose is within a range of 1 mg to 1 g, preferably 10 to 300 mg, per day for an adult. The dose for animal varies according to the object (treatment or prevention) of the administration, the kind and size of an animal to be treated, the kind of a contagium, and the condition of a disease attacked. However, it is generally within a range of 0.1 to 200 mg, preferably 0.5 to 100 mg, per kg of weight a day. Meanwhile, the administration may be once per day, or may be divided into 2 to 4 times per day. The dose per day may exceed the above range if necessary.

Medicinal compositions comprising the compound according to the present invention can be prepared by selecting a suitable preparation form according to an administration method in accordance with a preparation method for the preparation form used. As examples of the preparation forms of the medicinal compositions comprising the compound according to the present invention as a main component, may be mentioned tablets, tablets, powder, granules, capsules, solutions, syrups, elixirs, oil or aqueous suspensions for oral preparations.

In the case of an injection, a stabilizer, a preservative and a dissolution aid may be used in a preparation. A solution which may contain these auxiliaries in some cases may also be provided as a solid form for preparing upon use by containing the solution into a container and then drying the solution by lyophilization or the like. A dose or doses of the injection may also be contained into a container.

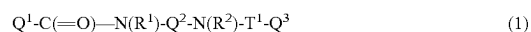
As example of preparation forms for external application, may be mentioned solutions, suspensions, emulsions, ointments, gel, creams, lotions, sprays and plasters.

A solid preparation may contain pharmaceutically acceptable additives in addition to the compound according to the present invention. For example, fillers, extenders, binders, disintegrators, dissolution accelerators, wetting agents, etc. may be suitably selected and mixed, giving a preparation.

As example of preparation forms of a liquid preparation, may be mentioned solutions, suspensions and emulsions. They may contain a suspending agent, emulsifier and/or the like in some cases.

The compounds of the present invention will be described in detail by the following (A) to (E).

(A): A compound represented by the general formula



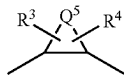
wherein

R^1 and R^2 , independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q^1 represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 6-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

81

Q² represents the following group:



in which Q⁴ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms or a group $-(CH_2)_m-CH_2-A-CH_2-(CH_2)_n-$, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, sulfur atom, $-SO-$, $-SO_2-$, $-NH-$, $-O-NH-$, $-NH-NH-$, $-S-NH-$, $-SO-NH-$ or $-SO_2-NH-$, and numbers 1 and 2 indicate positions; and R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q⁴ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylacyl group, alkoxyalkyloxy-carbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent

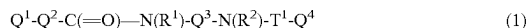
82

on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylacyl group, or the like, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

Q³ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl or sulfonyl group; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

(B): A compound represented by the general formula (1):



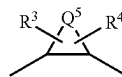
wherein

R¹ and R², independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q¹ represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 6-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q² represents a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 6-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q³ represents the following group:



in which Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms or a group $-(CH_2)_m-CH_2-A-CH_2-(CH_2)_n-$, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, $-SO-$, $-SO_2-$, $-NH-$, $-O-NH-$, $-NH-NH-$, $-S-NH-$, $-SO-NH-$ or $-SO_2-NH-$; and

R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q⁵ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent

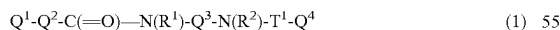
83

the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxy-alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxy-alkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxyalkyloxy-carbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonylalkyl group, or the like, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

Q⁴ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, or group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

(C): A compound represented by the general formula (1):



wherein

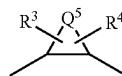
R¹ and R², independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q¹ represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

84

Q² represents a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q³ represents the following group:



in which Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—; and

R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q⁵ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxy-alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxy-alkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxyalkyloxy-carbonyl group,

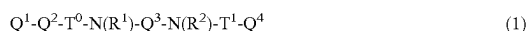
85

hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), alkylsulfonyl group, or the like, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

Q⁴ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, an arylalkynyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—A¹—N(R'')—, in which A¹ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—NH—, group —C(=S)—NH—, group —C(=O)—NH—NH—, group —C(=O)—A²—C(=O)—, in which A² means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group —C(=O)—A³—C(=O)—NH—, in which A³ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or thiocarbonyl group; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

(D): A compound represented by the general formula (1):



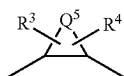
wherein

R¹ and R², independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q¹ represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q² represents a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q³ represents the following group:



86

in which Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—, and R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or a sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q⁵ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group, alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylamino group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy-carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy-carbonylalkyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) or alkylsulfonylalkyl group, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

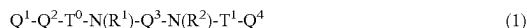
Q⁴ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, an arylalkynyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted;

substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

T⁰ represents a carbonyl or thiocarbonyl group; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R')—, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—A¹—N(R'')—, in which A¹ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—NH—, group —C(=S)—NH—, group —C(=O)—NH—NH—, group —C(=O)—A²—C(=O)—, in which A² means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group —C(=O)—A³—C(=O)—NH—, in which A³ means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group —C(=O)—C(=NOR^a)—N(R^b)—, group —C(=S)—C(=NOR^a)—N(R^b)—, in which R^a means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group or alkanoyl group, and R^b means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group —C(=O)—N=N—, group —C(=S)—N=N—, or thiocarbonyl group; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

(E): A compound represented by the general formula (1):



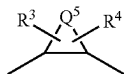
wherein

R¹ and R², independently of each other, represent a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group;

Q¹ represents a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q² represents a single bond, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- or 6-membered divalent cyclic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, 5- to 7-membered divalent heterocyclic group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, divalent bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

Q³ represents the following group:



in which Q⁵ means an alkylene group having 1 to 8 carbon atoms, an alkenylene group having 2 to 8 carbon atoms, or a group —(CH₂)_m—CH₂—A—CH₂—(CH₂)_n—, in which m and n are independently of each other 0 or an integer of 1-3, and A means an oxygen atom, nitrogen atom, sulfur atom, —SO—, —SO₂—, —NH—, —O—NH—, —NH—NH—, —S—NH—, —SO—NH— or —SO₂—NH—, and R³ and R⁴ are substituents on carbon atom(s), nitrogen atom(s) or a sulfur atom(s) of a ring comprising Q⁵ and are independently of each other a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group,

alkenyl group, alkynyl group, halogen atom, halogenoalkyl group, cyano group, cyanoalkyl group, amino group, aminoalkyl group, N-alkylaminoalkyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoalkyl group, acyl group, acylalkyl group, acylamino group which may be substituted, alkoxyimino group, hydroxyimino group, acylaminoalkyl group, alkoxy group, alkoxyalkyl group, hydroxyalkyl group, carboxyl group, carboxyalkyl group, alkoxy carbonyl group, alkoxy carbonylalkyl group, alkoxy carbonylalkylamino group, carboxyalkylamino group, alkoxy carbonylamino group, alkoxy carbonylaminoalkyl group, carbamoyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N-alkenylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoyl group, N-alkenyl-N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group, N-alkoxy carbamoyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy carbamoyl group, N-alkoxy carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkyl-N-alkoxy carbamoylalkyl group, carbazoyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 alkyl groups, alkylsulfonyl group, alkylsulfonylalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyl group which may be substituted, carbamoylalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), carbamoyloxyalkyl group, N-alkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoyloxyalkyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonylalkyl group which may be substituted, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic carbonyloxyalkyl group which may be substituted, aryl group, aralkyl group, heteroaryl group, heteroarylalkyl group, alkylsulfonylamino group, arylsulfonylamino group, alkylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminoalkyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonyl group, alkylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, arylsulfonylaminocarbonylalkyl group, oxo group, carbamoyloxy group, aralkyloxy group, carboxyalkyloxy group, acyloxy group, acyloxyalkyl group, arylsulfonyl group, alkoxy carbonylalkylsulfonyl group, carboxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxy carbonylacyl group, alkoxyalkyloxycarbonyl group, hydroxyacyl group, alkoxyacyl group, halogenoacyl group, carboxyacyl group, aminoacyl group, acyloxyacyl group, acyloxyalkylsulfonyl group, hydroxyalkylsulfonyl group, alkoxyalkylsulfonyl group, 3- to 6-membered heterocyclic sulfonyl group which may be substituted, N-alkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylaminoacyl group, N,N-dialkylcarbamoylacyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s), N,N-dialkylcarbamoylalkylsulfonyl group which may have a substituent on the alkyl group(s) or alkylsulfonylacyl group, or R³ and R⁴, together with each other, denote an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenylene group having 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkylenedioxy group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms or carbonyldioxy group;

Q⁴ represents an aryl group which may be substituted, an arylalkenyl group which may be substituted, an arylalkynyl group which may be substituted, a heteroaryl group which may be substituted, a heteroarylalkenyl group which may be substituted, a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or a saturated or unsaturated, bicyclic or tricyclic fused heterocyclic group which may be substituted;

T⁰ represents a carbonyl or thiocarbonyl group; and

T¹ represents a carbonyl group, sulfonyl group, group —C(=O)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=O)—N(R')—, group —C(=O)—C(=S)—N(R')—, group —C(=S)—C(=S)—N(R'')—, in which R' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy

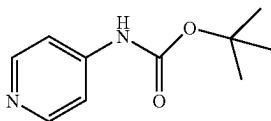
89

group, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{A}^1-\text{N}(\text{R}'')$, in which A^1 means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, which may be substituted, and R'' means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NH}-$, group $-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{NH}-$, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NH}-\text{NH}-$, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{A}^2-\text{C}(=\text{O})-$, in which A^2 means a single bond or alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{A}^3-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NH}-$, in which A^3 means an alkylene group having 1 to 5 carbon atoms, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^a)-\text{N}(\text{R}^b)-$, group $-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^a)-\text{N}(\text{R}^b)-$, in which R^a means a hydrogen atom, alkyl group or alkanoyl group, and R^b means a hydrogen atom, hydroxyl group, alkyl group or alkoxy group, group $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{N}=\text{N}-$, group $-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{N}=\text{N}-$, or thiocarbonyl group; a salt thereof, a solvate thereof, or an N-oxide thereof.

The present invention will hereinafter be described by the following Referential Examples, Examples and Test Examples. However, the present invention is not limited to these examples.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 1

tert-Butyl pyridin-4-ylcarbamate



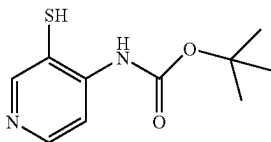
4-Aminopyridine (10 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (500 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (25.5 g) was added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The resultant reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and deposited solids were washed with hexane to obtain the title compound (16.9 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.53(9H,s), 6.86(1H,br.s), 7.30(2H,dd,J=1.5, 4.9 Hz), 8.44(2H,dd,J=1.5, 4.9 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 195(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 2

tert-Butyl 3-sulfanylpypidin-4-ylcarbamate



The compound (61.6 g) obtained in Referential Example 1 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (2,000 ml), and the solution was stirred at -78°C . for 10 minutes. A hexane solution (1.59 mol/l, 500 ml) of n-butyllithium was added dropwise to the solution, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and then for 2 hours with ice cooling. After the reaction mixture was cooled to -78°C ., sulfur powder (12.2 g) was added, and the resultant mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 1 hour. Water (1,000 ml) was added to the reaction mixture to separate a water layer. After 3N hydrochloric acid was added to the water layer to adjust

90

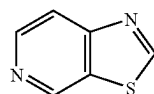
the pH of the water layer to 3 to 4, methylene chloride was added to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=50:1) to obtain the title compound (33.2 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 1.52(9H,s), 7.89(1H,d,J=6.4 Hz), 7.99(1H,d,J=6.4 Hz), 8.20(1H,s), 9.91(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 227(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 3

Thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine



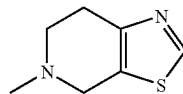
The compound (33.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 2 was dissolved in formic acid (250 ml), and the solution was heated under reflux for 3 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a 5N aqueous solution (100 ml) of potassium hydroxide and diethyl ether were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=25:1) to obtain the title compound (9.03 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 8.05(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 8.70(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 9.23(1H,s), 9.34(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 137(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 4

5-Methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine



The compound (1.61 g) obtained in Referential Example 3 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 ml), and to the solution methyl iodide (1.50 ml) was added, the resultant mixture was stirred at 80°C . for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in methanol (100 ml), sodium borohydride (1.53 g) was added, and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of potassium carbonate and diethyl ether were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=25:1) to obtain the title compound (1.28 g).

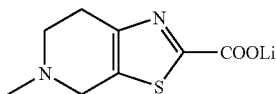
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.52(3H,s), 2.83(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 2.98(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 3.70(2H,s), 8.63(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 155(M+H) $^+$.

91

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 5

Lithium 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxylate



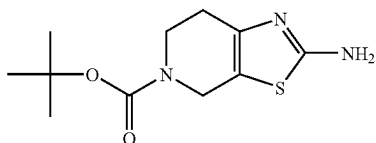
The compound (6.43 g) obtained in Referential Example 4 was dissolved in absolute tetrahydrofuran (200 ml), to the solution n-butyllithium (1.47N hexane solution, 34.0 ml) was added dropwise at -78°C ., and the resultant mixture was stirred for 40 minutes. After carbon dioxide gas was blown into the reaction mixture at -78°C . for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (9.42 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO-}d_6$) δ : 2.37(3H,s), 2.64-2.77(4H,m), 3.54(2H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 199(M+H) $^{+}$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 6

tert-Butyl 2-amino-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-5[4H]-carboxylate



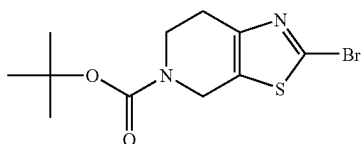
1-tert-Butoxycarbonyl-4-piperidone (40.0 g) was dissolved in cyclohexane (80 ml), and to the solution p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (191 mg) and pyrrolidine (17.6 ml) were added. The mixture was heated under reflux for 2 hours while removing water using a Dean-Stark trap. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in methanol (60 ml), and sulfur powder (6.42 g) was added. A methanol solution (10 ml) of cyanamide (8.44 g) was slowly added dropwise to the solution with ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. Precipitated solid materials were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (31.0 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO-}d_6$) δ : 1.41(9H,s), 2.44(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 3.57(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.29(2H,s), 6.79(2H,s).

MS (EI) m/z : 255(M $^{+}$).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 7

tert-Butyl 2-bromo-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-5[4H]-carboxylate



Copper(II) bromide (1.05 g) was suspended in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and tert-butyl nitrite (0.696 ml) and the compound (1.00 g) obtained in Referential Example

92

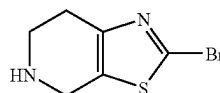
6 were added with ice cooling, the reaction mixture was heated and stirred at 40°C . for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:5) to obtain the title compound (568 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.48(9H,s), 2.85(2H,br.s), 3.72(2H,br.s), 4.56(2H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 319(M+H) $^{+}$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 8

2-Bromo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine trifluoroacetate



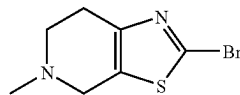
The compound (890 mg) obtained in Referential Example 7 was dissolved in methylene chloride (2 ml), and to the solution trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 seconds. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and diethyl ether was added to the residue. Precipitated solid materials were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (867 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO-}d_6$) δ : 2.98(2H,t,J=6.1 Hz), 3.45(2H,t,J=6.1 Hz), 4.35(2H,s), 9.53(2H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 219(M+H) $^{+}$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 9

2-Bromo-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine



The compound (422 mg) obtained in Referential Example 8 was suspended in methylene chloride (10 ml), and triethylamine (0.356 ml) was added to make a solution. Acetic acid (0.216 ml), an aqueous solution (35% solution, 0.202 ml) of formaldehyde and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (428 mg) were successively added to the solution, and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. A saturated aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydrogen carbonate, methylene chloride (100 ml) and a 3N aqueous solution (3 ml) of sodium hydroxide were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. After an organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain the title compound (286 mg).

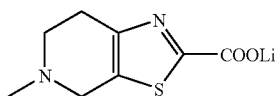
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.49(3H,s), 2.79(2H,t,J=5.7 Hz), 2.85-2.93(2H,m), 3.58(2H,t,J=1.8 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z : 233(M+H) $^{+}$.

93

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 10

Lithium 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxylate

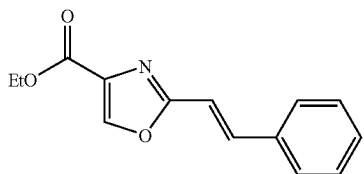


The compound (531 mg) obtained in Referential Example 9 was dissolved in absolute diethyl ether (20 ml), n-butyllithium (1.54N hexane solution, 1.63 ml) was added dropwise at -78°C ., and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes with ice cooling. After passing carbon dioxide into the reaction mixture at -78°C . for 10 minutes, the mixture was warmed to room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (523 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 2.37(3H,s), 2.64-2.85(4H,m), 3.54(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 11

Ethyl 2-[(E)-2-phenylethenyl]oxazole-4-carboxylate



Synthesis was conducted in accordance with the report (J. Org. Chem., 1996, Vol. 61, p. 6496) by Panek et al. Sodium hydrogencarbonate (22.8 g) and ethyl bromopyruvate (10.5 ml) were added to a solution of cinnamamide (10.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (250 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, filtered through Celite and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain residue. Trifluoroacetic anhydride (30 ml) was added to a solution of this residue in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml) at 0°C ., and the mixture was gradually warmed to room temperature. After the mixture was stirred for 63 hours, a saturated aqueous solution (500 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and ethyl acetate (150 ml) were added to the reaction mixture, and a water layer was separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (150 ml). The organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (150 ml), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=5:1 \rightarrow 3:1) to obtain the title compound (10.9 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.41(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 4.42(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 6.96(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.30-7.40(3H,m), 7.53(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 7.63(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 8.20(1H,s).

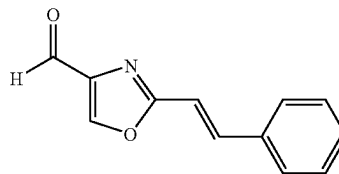
94

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 12

2-[(E)-2-phenylethenyl]oxazole-4-carbaldehyde

5

10



15

20

25

30

35

40

Diisobutylaluminum hydride (1.0N hexane solution, 66 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (8.57 g) obtained in Referential Example 11 in methylene chloride (80 ml) at -78°C . After 15 minutes, methanol (11 ml) was added dropwise, and the mixture was warmed to room temperature over 1 hour. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and the resultant pasty substance was dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (200 ml) of ammonium chloride was added, and a water layer was separated. The water layer was then extracted with methylene chloride (2 \times 100 ml). The resultant organic layers were collected and washed with a saturated aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (100 ml), combined with the filtrate obtained by the filtration through Celite and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:ethyl acetate=5:1 \rightarrow methylene chloride:methanol=10:1) to obtain the title compound (5.86 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 6.96(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.35-7.45(3H,m), 7.56(2H,d,J=6.4 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 8.26(1H,s), 9.98(1H,s).

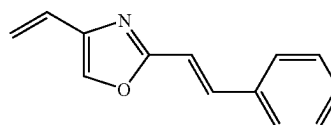
MS (FAB) m/z : 200($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^{+}$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 13

2-[(E)-2-Phenylethenyl]-4-vinyloxazole

45

50



55

60

65

n-Butyllithium (1.54N hexane solution, 14.2 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of methyl-triphenylphosphonium bromide (8.16 g) in tetrahydrofuran (80 ml) at 0°C ., and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled again to 0°C ., a solution of the compound (3.64 g) obtained in Referential Example 12 in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) was added, and the mixture was warmed to room temperature. After stirring for 2 hours, water (200 ml) and ethyl acetate (100 ml) were added and a water layer was separated. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (50 ml). After the organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (100 ml) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure.

95

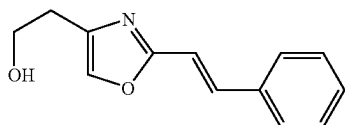
The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1→3:1) to obtain the title compound (2.84 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 5.33(1H,dd,J=1.5, 10.7 Hz), 5.98 (1H,dd,J=1.5, 17.6 Hz), 6.56(1H,dd,J=10.7, 17.6 Hz), 6.95 (1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.31-7.42(3H,m), 7.49-7.56(4H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 198(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 14

2-{2-[(E)-2-Phenylethenyl]oxazol-4-yl}-1-ethanol



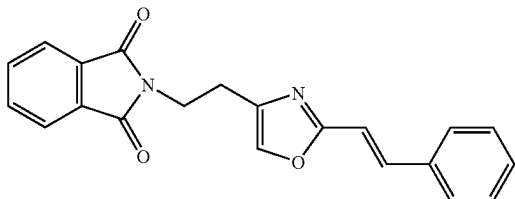
9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (0.5N tetrahydrofuran solution, 158 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (13.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 13 in tetrahydrofuran (500 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hours. Water (10 ml), a 3N aqueous solution (80 ml) of sodium hydroxide and aqueous hydrogen peroxide (80 ml) were successively added dropwise to the reaction mixture at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. After water (600 ml) and ethyl acetate (200 ml) were added to the resultant reaction mixture to separate a water layer, the water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (200 ml). After the organic layers were collected, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (200 ml) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1→ethyl acetate alone) to obtain the title compound (14.1 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.69(1H,br.s), 2.80(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 3.90-3.97(2H,m), 6.91(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.30-7.42(4H,m), 7.43-7.56(3H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 216(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 15

2-(2-{2-[(E)-2-Phenylethenyl]oxazol-4-yl}ethyl)-1H-isindol-1,3(2H)-dione



Phthalimide (200 mg), triphenylphosphine (357 mg) and diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.214 ml) were added to a solution of the compound (292 mg) obtained in Referential Example 14 in tetrahydrofuran (15 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 4 hours. The solvent of the reaction mixture was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (447 mg).

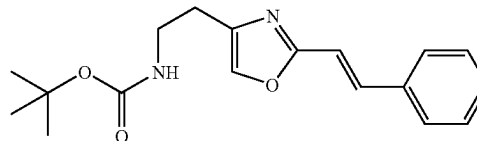
96

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.98(2H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 4.03(2H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 6.88(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.28-7.45(5H,m), 7.48 (2H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 7.71(2H,dd,J=2.9, 5.4 Hz), 7.84(2H,dd,J=2.9, 5.4 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 345(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 16

tert-Buthyl 2-{2-[(E)-2-phenylethenyl]oxazol-4-yl}ethylcarbamate



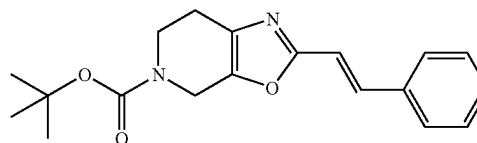
After hydrazine monohydrate (1.50 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (6.40 g) obtained in Referential Example 15 in ethanol (150 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour, hydrazine monohydrate (0.500 ml) was added again at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. Methylene chloride (150 ml), a saturated aqueous solution (150 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (13.4 g) were added to the reaction mixture at room temperature. After stirring for 30 minutes, a water layer was separated and extracted with methylene chloride (50 ml). The resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1→1:1) to obtain the title compound (5.06 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 2.75(2H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 3.46(2H,dt,J=5.9, 6.6 Hz), 4.92(1H,br.s), 6.91(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.29-7.45(4H,m), 7.48(1H,d,J=16.6 Hz), 7.52(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 315(M+H)⁺, 259(M-isobutene+H)⁺, 315 (M-Boc+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 17

tert-Buthyl 2-[(E)-2-phenylethenyl]-6,7-dihydrooxazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate



Paraformaldehyde (54.5 mg) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (7.2 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (190 mg) obtained in Referential Example 16 in toluene (15 ml) at room temperature. After heating under reflux for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool, and ethyl acetate (15 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (15 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the reaction mixture to separate a water layer. After the water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (10 ml), the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the

97

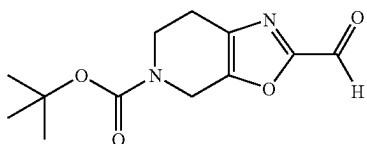
solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1→2:1) to obtain the title compound (153 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50(9H,s), 2.67(2H,br.s), 3.73(2H,br.s), 4.55(2H,s), 6.90(1H,d,J=16.1 Hz), 7.29-7.42(3H,m), 7.46(1H,d,J=16.1 Hz), 7.52(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 327(M+H)⁺, 271(M-isobutene+H)⁺, 227(M-Boc+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 18

tert-Butyl 2-formyl-6,7-dihydrooxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate

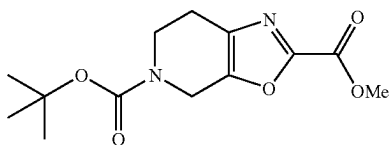


Acetone (8.0 ml), water (4.0 ml), N-methyl-morpholine N-oxide (577 mg) and a 0.039 M aqueous solution (3.20 ml) of osmium tetroxide were added to a solution of the compound (803 mg) obtained in Referential Example 17 in tetrahydrofuran (16 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred overnight. Ethyl acetate (50 ml) and a 10% aqueous solution (50 ml) of sodium thiosulfate were added to the reaction mixture to separate a water layer. The water layer was then extracted with ethyl acetate (30 ml). After the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol (8.0 ml), water (8.0 ml) and sodium metaperiodate (790 mg) were added to a solution of the residue in tetrahydrofuran (16 ml). After stirring for 3 hours, ethyl acetate (30 ml) and water (50 ml) were added to the reaction mixture to separate a water layer. The water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (20 ml). After the resultant organic layers were combined, washed with a saturated solution (50 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1→2:1) to obtain the title compound (234 mg). Since this aldehyde was unstable, it was immediately used in the next reaction.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49(9H,s), 2.77(2H,br.s), 3.77(2H,br.s), 4.62(2H,s), 9.70(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 19

5-(tert-Butyl) 2-methyl 6,7-dihydrooxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2,5(4H)-dicarboxylate



98

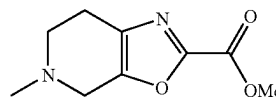
Sodium cyanide (220 mg) and manganese dioxide (780 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (225 mg) obtained in Referential Example 18 in methanol (9.0 ml) at room temperature. After stirring for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was filtered through Celite with ethyl acetate. The filtrate was washed with water (50 ml) and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (50 ml) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:2→1:1) to obtain the title compound (120 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49(9H,s), 2.73(2H,br.s), 3.74(2H,br.s), 4.01(3H,s), 4.59(2H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 283(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 20

Methyl 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrooxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate



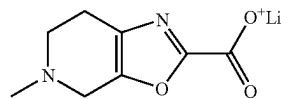
Trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (500 mg) obtained in Referential Example 19 in methylene chloride (15 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (20 ml), triethylamine (0.495 ml), acetic acid (205 ml), formalin (0.230 ml) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (570 mg) were added to the resultant residue at room temperature. After stirring for 15 minutes, methylene chloride (20 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (50 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to separate an organic layer. The water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (3×20 ml). After the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=20:1→10:1) to obtain the title compound (257 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.52(3H,s), 2.72-2.78(2H,m), 2.78-2.83(2H,m), 3.61(2H,t,J=1.7 Hz), 4.00(3H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 197(M+H)⁺, 165(M-OCH₃)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 21

Lithium 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrooxazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate



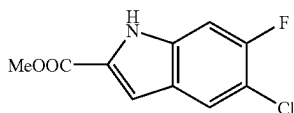
Water (6.0 ml) and lithium hydroxide (99.7 mg) were added to a solution of (800 mg) obtained in Referential Example 20 in tetrahydrofuran (24 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (825 mg).

99

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 2.37(3H,s), 2.47(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 2.64(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 3.43(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 22

Methyl 5-chloro-6-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate

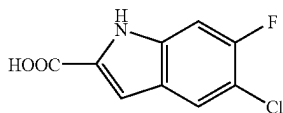


A mixture of methyl 3-chloro-4-fluoro- α -azidocinnamate (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 149723/1995) (1.85 g) and xylene (140 ml) was heated under reflux for 1 hour, and the solvent was then distilled off. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) to obtain the title compound (491 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.95(3H,s), 7.13-7.15(1H,m), 7.20(1H,dd,J=9.3, 0.49 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.93(1H,br.s)
MS (FAB) m/z : 227 M^+ .

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 23

5-Chloro-6-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid

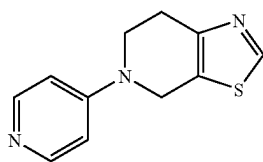


The compound (461 mg) obtained in Referential Example 22 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), methanol (10 ml) and water (10 ml), lithium hydroxide (283 mg) was added at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 4 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and 1N hydrochloric acid was added to the residue to weakly acidify it. The resultant powder was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (422 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 7.08-7.10(1H,m), 7.34(1H,d,J=9.5 Hz), 7.88(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 12.04(1H,s), 13.16(1H,s).
MS (FAB) m/z : 213(M^+).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 24

5-(Pyridin-4-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine



1) Diphosphorus pentasulfide (500 g) was suspended in formamide (3,000 ml) with ice cooling, and the suspension was stirred overnight. Water and diethyl ether were added to

100

the reaction mixture, and an organic layer was separated and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off to obtain an oil. After the oil was dissolved in *n*-butanol (350 ml), and ethyl 3-chloro-4-oxo-1-piperidinecarboxylate (150 g) synthesized according to the process described in literature (Tetrahedron, 1983, Vol. 39, p. 3767) was added to the solution, the resultant mixture was stirred at 100° C. for 2.5 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite. The filtrate was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride→ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2) to obtain ethyl 6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate (79.0 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.30(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 2.96(2H,br.s), 3.82(2H,br.s), 4.19(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 4.73(2H,br.s), 8.68(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 213($M+H$) $^+$.

2) A 3.5N aqueous solution (250 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction product (33.5 g) obtained above, and the mixture was heated under reflux overnight. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (103 g) was added with ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. After 3N hydrochloric acid was added to the reaction mixture to adjust the pH thereof to 1 to 2, methylene chloride was added. After separation of an organic layer, the organic layer was washed successively with an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2) to obtain *tert*-butyl 6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate (21.1 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.49(9H,s), 2.94(2H,br.s), 3.76(2H,br.s), 4.68 (2H, s), 8.67 (1H, s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 241($M+H$) $^+$.

3) Trifluoroacetic acid (25 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (5.00 g) obtained in the step 2) in methylene chloride (25 ml) at room temperature. After stirring for 10 minutes, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and 4-bromopyridine (5.20 g), *N,N*-dimethylformamide (30 ml) and triethylamine (15.5 ml) were added to the residue at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 150° C. for 2 days and then allowed to cool to room temperature. Colorless precipitates were separated by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. Thereafter, methylene chloride (50 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added, and the resultant water layer was saturated with sodium chloride. After separation of an organic layer, the resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (5×30 ml). After the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1→8:1) to obtain the title compound (2.97 g).

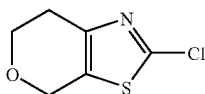
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.07(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 3.81(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 4.61(2H,s), 6.74(2H,t,J=6.5 Hz), 8.30(2H,t,J=6.5 Hz), 8.70(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 218($M+H$) $^+$.

101

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 25

2-Chloro-6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole



1) Tetrahydro-4H-pyran-4-one (5.0 g) was dissolved in cyclohexane (20 ml), pyrrolidine (4.35 ml) and p-toluene-sulfonic acid monohydrate (48 mg) were added, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 70 minutes while removing water by a Dean-Stark trap. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, and a supernatant was taken out and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in methanol (15 ml), and sulfur powder (1.60 g) was added with ice cooling. After 15 minutes, a methanol solution (10 ml) of cyanamide (2.10 g) was added dropwise over 20 minutes, and the mixture was stirred for 3 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1→10:1→4:1) to obtain 6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazol-2-ylamine (3.97 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.66-2.70(2H,m), 3.97(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.63(2H,s), 4.94(2H,br.s).

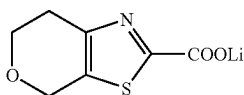
MS (FAB) m/z: 157(M+H)⁺.

2) Copper(II) chloride (4.10 g) was dissolved in acetonitrile (50 ml), and tert-butyl nitrite (3.93 g) was added in one portion with ice cooling. After 10 minutes, the compound obtained in the above-described reaction (3.97 g) was added over about 1 hour, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was heated to 65° C. and continuously stirred for 2 hours. After silica gel (20 g) was added to the reaction mixture, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (1.78 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.85-2.89(2H,m), 4.02(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.73(2H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 175(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 26

Lithium
6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazol-2-carboxylate

1) The compound (1.78 g) obtained in Referential Example 25 was dissolved in methanol (30 ml), and to the solution 10% palladium on carbon (300 mg) and sodium acetate (830 mg) were added. The mixture was stirred for 5 days in a hydrogen stream of 5 atm. After the catalyst was separated by filtration, the solvent was concentrated, and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain 6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole (1.14 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.97-3.01(2H,m), 4.04(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.87(2H,s), 8.69(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 142(M+H)⁺.

2) After the product (1.14 g) obtained above was dissolved in diethyl ether (30 ml) and cooled to -78° C., 1.6 M

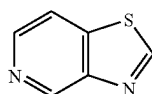
102

butyllithium (6.6 ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred. After 20 minutes, bubbling was conducted with carbon dioxide for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.65 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.83(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 3.92(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.73(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 27

Thiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine

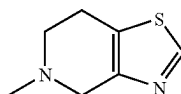


3-(tert-Butoxycarbonylamino)-4-mercaptopyridine (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 321691/1992) (9.20 g) was dissolved in formic acid (60 ml) and heated under reflux for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a 5N aqueous solution (100 ml) of potassium hydroxide and diethyl ether were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Diethyl ether was added to the residue, and solids deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (3.97 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 7.93(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 8.60(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 9.07(1H,s), 9.46(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 28

5-Methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine



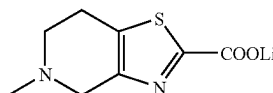
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 27 in a similar manner to Referential Example 4.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.52(3H,s), 2.77(2H,t,J=5.4 Hz), 2.92-3.00(2H,m), 3.69(2H,t,J=2.0 Hz), 8.61(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 155(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 29

Lithium 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate



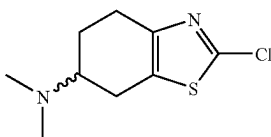
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 28 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

103

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.38(3H,s), 2.64(2H,br.s), 2.80(2H,br.s), 3.44(2H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 30

2-Chloro-N,N-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazole-6-amine



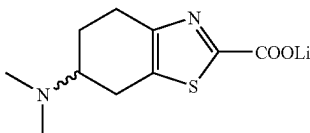
2-Chloro-4,7-dihydro-1,3-benzothiazol-6(5H)-one (Helv. Cim. Acta., 1994, Vol. 77, p. 1256) (2.0 g) was dissolved in methanol (100 ml), and ammonium acetate (8.2 g) and sodium cyanoborohydride (4.0 g) were added to heat the mixture under reflux for 20 hours. Hydrochloric acid was added to the reaction mixture to decompose excessive sodium cyanoborohydride before the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was alkalinized with a 1N solution of sodium hydroxide and then extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain a pale yellow oil. This oil was dissolved in methanol (50 ml), and an aqueous solution (4.29 g) of formaldehyde and sodium cyanoborohydride (3.49 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride was added to the residue, the organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=10:1) to obtain the title compound (740 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.71-1.78(1H,m), 2.10-2.19(1H,m), 2.35(6H,s), 2.66-2.94(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 217(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 31

Lithium 6-(dimethylamino)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazole-2-carboxylate



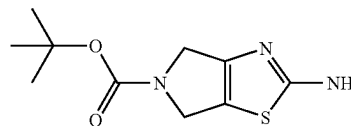
After the compound (750 mg) obtained in Referential Example 30 was dissolved in diethyl ether (15 ml), and the solution was cooled to -78° C., 1.5N t-butyllithium (3.5 ml) was added, the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes, and carbon dioxide was then bubbled for about 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

104

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.75-1.78(1H,m), 1.98-2.07(1H,m), 2.50(6H,s), 2.64-2.88(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 32

tert-Butyl 2-amino-4,6-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-5-carboxylate

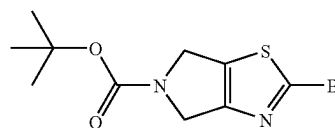


1-tert-Butoxycarbonyl-3-pyrrolidone (1.58 g) was dissolved in cyclohexane (10 ml), p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (8.12 mg) and pyrrolidine (607 mg) were added, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 1.5 hours while dewatering with a Dean-Stark trap. After a supernatant was taken out and concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in methanol (5 ml), and sulfur powder (274 mg) was added. The mixture was stirred for 15 minutes under ice cooling. A methanol solution (2 ml) of cyanamide (377 mg) was slowly added dropwise to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The mixture was additionally heated under reflux for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate were added. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:39) to obtain the title compound (248 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50(9H,s), 4.34-4.37(1H,m), 4.40-4.45(1H,m), 4.49-4.55(2H,m), 4.99(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 33

tert-Butyl 2-bromo-4,6-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-5-carboxylate



Copper(II) bromide (445 mg) was suspended in N,N-dimethylformamide, and tert-butyl nitrite (256 mg) was added dropwise at room temperature. After an N,N-dimethylformamide solution (1 ml) of the compound (400 mg) obtained in Referential Example 32 was added under ice cooling, the reaction mixture was heated and stirred at 60° C. for 1.5 hours. Diethyl ether and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride were added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (174 mg).

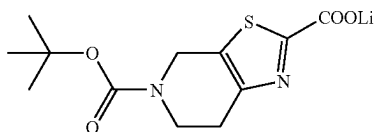
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.51(9H,s), 4.52-4.55(1H,m), 4.57-4.67(3H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 305(M+H)⁺.

105

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 34

Lithium (5-tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate

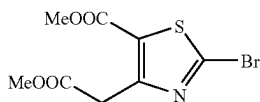


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 7 in a similar manner to Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42(9H,s), 2.69-2.77(2H,m), 3.60-3.68(2H,m), 4.51-4.58(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 35

Methyl 2-bromo-4-(2-methoxy-2-oxoethyl)thiazole-5-carboxylate

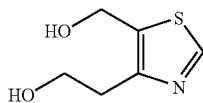


Copper(II) chloride (26.8 g) was added to a solution of tert-butyl nitrite (15.5 g) in acetonitrile (500 ml) at a time under ice cooling. A solution of methyl 2-amino-5-methoxycarbonylthiazole-4-acetate (Yakugaku Zasshi, 1966, Vol. 86, p. 300) (23.0 g) in acetonitrile (500 ml) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 45 minutes, and the resulting mixture was stirred for 1 hour under ice cooling and for 30 minutes at room temperature. The solvent was concentrated, and 10% hydrochloric acid and diethyl ether were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (25.9 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.73(3H,s), 3.87(3H,s), 4.21(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 36

2-[5-(hydroxymethyl)thiazol-4-yl]-1-ethanol



A solution of the compound (23.4 g) obtained in Referential Example 35 in tetrahydrofuran (500 ml) was added dropwise over 1 hour to a suspension of lithium aluminum hydride (9.03 g) in tetrahydrofuran (500 ml) under ice cooling. After stirring for additional 1 hour under ice cool-

106

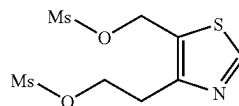
ing, water (9 ml), a 35% aqueous solution (9 ml) of sodium hydroxide and water (27 ml) were successively added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After anhydrous magnesium sulfate was added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was stirred, insoluble matter was removed by filtration with Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=7:93) to obtain the title compound (8.64 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.01(2H,t,J=5.5 Hz), 3.30(1H,br.s), 3.57(1H,br.s), 3.90(2H,br.s), 4.75(2H,br.s), 8.66(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 160(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 37

2-(5-[[[(Methylsulfonyl)oxy]methyl]thiazol-4-yl]ethyl methanesulfonate

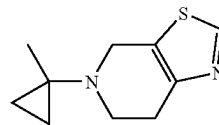


A methylene chloride solution of methanesulfonyl chloride (12.6 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (8.64 g) obtained in Referential Example 36 and triethylamine (45.4 ml) dissolved in methylene chloride (500 ml) over 20 minutes at -78° C. After stirring the reaction mixture for 15 minutes at -78° C. and 1 hour at 0° C., water was added to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (13.4 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.93(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.28(2H,t,J=6.3 Hz), 4.61(2H,t,J=6.3 Hz), 5.44(2H,s), 8.84(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 38

5-(1-Methylcyclopropyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine



1-Methylcyclopropylamine hydrochloride (J. Org. Chem., 1989, Vol. 54, p. 1815) (1.89 g) was added to methylene chloride (20 ml) containing the compound obtained in Referential Example 37 (4.46 g) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. 1-Methylcyclopropylamine hydrochloride (1.89 g) was additionally added, and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature and 5 hours under refluxing. Methylene chloride and water were added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:49) to obtain the title compound (944 mg).

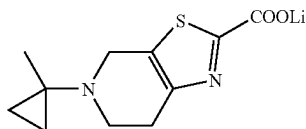
107

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.40-0.50(2H,m), 0.68-0.73(2H,m), 1.16(3H,s), 2.88-2.94(2H,m), 3.03(2H,t,J=5.7 Hz), 3.89(2H,br.s), 8.60(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 195(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 39

Lithium 5-(1-methylcyclopropyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate

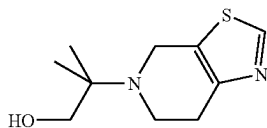


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 38 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.39(2H,br.s), 0.56(2H,br.s), 1.10(3H,br.s), 2.66(2H,br.s), 2.89(2H,br.s), 3.75(2H,br.s)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 40

2-[6,7-Dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-5(4H)-yl]-2-methyl-1-propanol

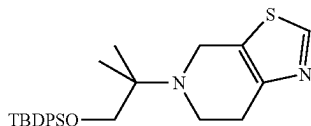


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 37 and 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol in a similar manner to Referential Example 38.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.15(6H,s), 2.91(4H,s), 3.45(2H,s), 3.87(2H,s), 8.63(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 41

5-(2-[[tert-Butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-1,1-dimethylethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine



tert-Butylchlorodiphenylsilane (1.93 g) and imidazole (994 mg) were added to a solution of the compound obtained in Referential Example 40(1.24 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred overnight. Water and diethyl ether were added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane: ethyl acetate=1:2) to obtain the title compound (2.46 g).

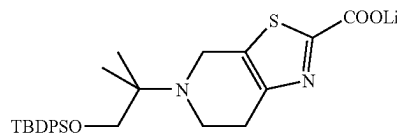
108

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.15(6H,s), 2.83-2.90(2H,m), 2.93-3.00(2H,m), 3.63(2H,s), 3.97(2H,s), 7.35-7.48(6H,m), 7.63-7.70(4H,m), 8.58(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 451(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 42

Lithium 5-(2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-1,1-dimethylethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate

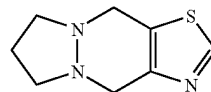


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 41 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.01(9H,s), 1.11(6H,s), 2.55-2.65(2H,m), 2.80-2.90(2H,m), 3.57(2H,s), 3.80(2H,br.s), 7.40-7.52(6H,m), 7.60-7.65(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 43

4,7,8,10-Tetrahydro-6H-pyrazolo[1,2-a]thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine



1) 4,5-Dimethylthiazole (5.00 g), N-bromo-succinimide (15.7 g) and α,α'-azobisisobutyronitrile (362 mg) were dissolved in ethylene dichloride (500 ml) at room temperature, and the solution was heated under reflux for 1 hour. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:diethyl ether=1:4) to obtain 4,5-bis-(bromomethyl)thiazole (5.24 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.64(2H,s), 4.74(2H,s), 8.75(1H,s)

2) 4,5-Bis(bromomethyl)thiazole (1.37 g) and 1,2-trimethylenedihydrazine hydrochloride (WO9532965) (732 mg) were suspended in ethanol (15 ml) under ice cooling, and triethylamine (2.82 ml) was added dropwise over 5 minutes. After stirring the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours, the solvent was distilled off, and methylene chloride (50 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=3:47) to obtain the title compound (358 mg).

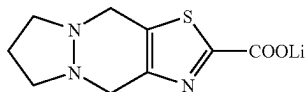
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.10-2.25(2H,m), 3.01(4H,br.s), 3.95(2H,s), 3.99(2H,br.s), 8.64(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 182(M+H)⁺.

109

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 44

Lithium 4,7,8,10-tetrahydro-6H-pyrazolo[1,2-a]thiazolo-[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxylate

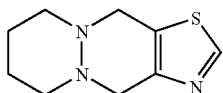


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 43 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.60-3.10(4H,br.s), 3.65-4.00(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 45

4,6,7,8,9,11-Hexahydropyridazino[1,2-a]thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine



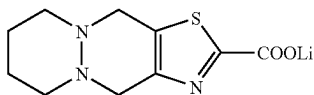
The title compound was obtained from 4,5-bis-(bromomethyl)thiazole (2.20 g) obtained in 1) of Referential Example 43 and 1,2-tetramethylenediazine hydrochloride (U.S. Pat. No. 5,726,126) in a similar manner to Referential Example 43.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.77(4H,br.s), 2.20-3.50(4H,br), 3.92(4H,br.s), 8.65(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 196(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 46

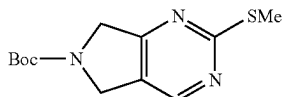
Lithium 4,6,7,8,9,11-hexahydropyridazino[1,2-a]thiazolo-[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 45 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 47

tert-Butyl 2-(methylsulfanyl)-5,7-dihydro-6H-pyrrolo-[3,4-d]pyrimidine-6-carboxylate



1-tert-Butoxycarbonyl-3-pyrrolidone (4.57 g) was added to N,N-dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal (30 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was heated for 1 hour at 140°

110

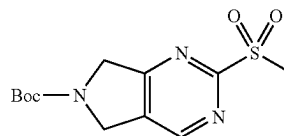
C. After allowing the reaction mixture to cool to room temperature, it was concentrated under reduced pressure. Hexane was added to the residue, and yellow powder deposited was collected by filtration. This powder was dissolved in ethanol (100 ml), and methylisothiourea sulfate (9.24 g) and sodium ethoxide (4.52 g) were added to the resultant solution at room temperature, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 24 hours. Saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and diethyl ether were added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:99) to obtain the title compound (1.10 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.51(9H,s), 2.57(3H,m), 4.15-4.45(4H,m), 8.39(½H,s), 8.43(½H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 268(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 48

tert-Butyl 2-(methylsulfonyl)-5,7-dihydro-6H-pyrrolo-[3,4-d]pyrimidine-6-carboxylate



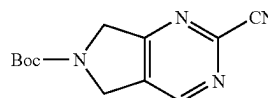
m-Chloroperbenzoic acid (1.99 g) was added to a methylene chloride solution (20 ml) of the compound (1.08 g) obtained in Referential Example 47 under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 5 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfite, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate and methylene chloride were added to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, hexane was added to the residue, and powder deposited was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (1.09 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 3.36(3H,m), 4.77-4.90(4H,m), 8.77(½H,s), 8.81(½H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 300(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 49

tert-Butyl 2-cyano-5,7-dihydro-6H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-6-carboxylate



Tetrabutylammonium cyanide (1.04 g) was added to a solution of the compound (1.05 g) obtained in Referential Example 48 in methylene chloride (30 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. 1N sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer, and the organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was

111

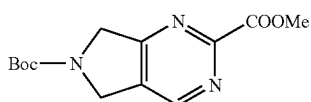
purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:acetone=20:1) to obtain the title compound (776 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52(9H,s), 4.70-4.85(4H,m), 8.68-8.77(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 247(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 50

6-tert-Butyl 2-methyl 5,7-dihydro-6H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-2,6-dicarboxylate



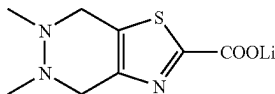
Concentrated hydrochloric acid (5 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (776 mg) obtained in Referential Example 49 in methanol (10 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at 100° C. for 1 hour. After allowing to cool, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in methanol (10 ml). Triethylamine (2.20 ml) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.37 g) were added to the solution at room temperature and stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride were added to the residue to separate an organic layer, and the organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=3:97) to obtain the title compound (317 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 4.09(3H,s), 4.75-4.85(4H,m), 8.81(½H,s), 8.85(½H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 280(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 51

Lithium 5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxylate



1) After 4,5-bis(bromomethyl)thiazole (600 mg) obtained in 1) of Referential Example 43 was dissolved in ethanol (20 ml), and 1,2-dimethylhydrazine hydrochloride (294 mg) was added under ice cooling, triethylamine (1.23 ml) was added at a time, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature and 30 minutes at 50° C. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19) to obtain 5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine (90 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.43(3H,s), 2.56(3H,s), 3.92(2H,s), 4.06(2H,br.s), 8.68(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 170(M+H)⁺.

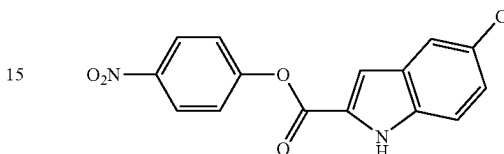
112

2) The title compound was obtained from 5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.28(3H,s), 2.39(3H,s), 3.66(2H,br.s), 3.88(2H,br.s)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 52

4-Nitrophenyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate



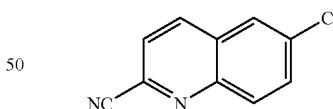
After 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (20 g) was suspended in methylene chloride (1500 ml), and N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml) was added, thionyl chloride (11 ml) was added dropwise at room temperature. The reaction mixture was heated overnight under reflux and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (1000 ml), and triethylamine (84.7 ml) and p-nitrophenol (14.2 g) were added to the mixture under ice cooling. After stirring for 1 hour at room temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and ethyl acetate and 0.2N hydrochloric acid were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was successively washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (29.9 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 7.35(1H,dd,J=9.0, 1.7 Hz), 7.39-7.42(2H,m), 7.45(2H,dd,J=7.3, 1.7 Hz), 7.73(1H,d,J=1.0 Hz), 8.35(2H,dd,J=7.3, 1.7 Hz), 9.09(1H,br.s).

MS (FD) m/z: 316(M⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 53

6-Chloro-2-quinolinecarbonitrile



6-Chloroquinoline (2.50 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (25 ml), and m-chloroperbenzoic acid (3.71 g) was added under ice cooling to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1 hour. After the reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, the diluted mixture was washed with an aqueous solution of sodium thiosulfate and an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (40 ml), and trimethylsilyl cyanide (2.0 ml) and N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl chloride (1.50 ml) were added to heat the resultant mixture for 9 hours under reflux. After trimethylsilyl cyanide (1.0 ml) and N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl chloride (0.80 ml) were additionally added, and the mixture

113

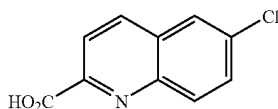
was heated for 16 hours under reflux, the reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and a 10% aqueous solution (40 ml) of potassium carbonate was added to stir the mixture for 30 minutes. After an organic layer was separated and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methylene chloride was added to the residue, and crystals deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (1.77 g). Further, a mother liquor was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) to obtain the title compound (0.80 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.94(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.2 Hz), 8.09(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.29(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.63(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 189(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 54

6-Chloro-2-quinolinecarboxylic acid

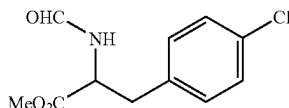


The compound (1.73 g) obtained in Referential Example 53 was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (40 ml), and the solution was heated for 19 hours under reflux. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, and deposits were collected by filtration and then washed with water to obtain the title compound (1.81 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.87(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.4 Hz), 8.10-8.20(2H,m), 8.24(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.52(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz).

MS (FAB)m/z:208(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 55

Methyl
3-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-(formylamino)propionate

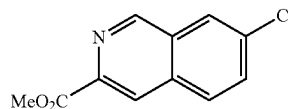
(±)-(4-Chlorophenyl)alanine methyl ester hydrochloride (2.00 g) was suspended in methylene chloride (20 ml), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl-carbodiimide hydrochloride (1.60 g), 1-hydroxybenzo-triazole monohydrate (1.23 g), N-methylmorpholine (1.90 ml) and formic acid (0.30 ml) were added to stir the mixture for 15 minutes. After a process in which formic acid (0.30 ml) was additionally added to stir the mixture for 15 minutes was repeated 3 times, the reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride. After an organic layer was washed with water and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=40:1) to obtain the title compound (1.21 g).

114

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.10(1H,dd,J=13.9, 5.6 Hz), 3.18(1H,dd,J=13.9, 5.9 Hz), 3.75(3H,s), 4.95(1H,m), 6.07(1H,br), 7.05(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.27(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.18(1H,s). MS (FAB) m/z: 242(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 56

Methyl 7-chloro-3-isoquinolinecarboxylate

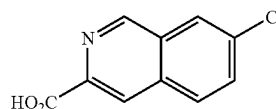


The compound (1.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 55 was dissolved in methylene chloride (40 ml), and oxalyl chloride (0.57 ml) was added dropwise. After the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, ferric chloride (1.17 g) was added at an ambient temperature of about -10° C. to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4 days. 1N Hydrochloric acid was added, and the resultant mixture was diluted with methylene chloride to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in methanol (38 ml), and concentrated sulfuric acid (2 ml) was added to heat the mixture for 20 hours under reflux. An aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture, the resultant mixture was extracted with methylene chloride, and the extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1→ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound (0.25 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.07(3H,s), 7.74(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.94(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.06(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.59(1H,s), 9.28 (1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 57

7-Chloro-3-isoquinolinecarboxylic hydrochloride



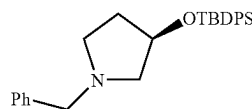
The compound (0.23 g) obtained in Referential Example 56 was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (10 ml) to heat the mixture for 18 hours under reflux. The temperature of the reaction mixture was dropped to room temperature, and deposits were collected by filtration and then washed with water to obtain the title compound (0.21 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.96(1H,m), 8.29(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.44(1H,s), 8.72(1H,s), 9.45(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 208(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 58

(3R)-1-Benzyl-3-(tert-butyl-diphenylsilyloxy)pyrrolidine



115

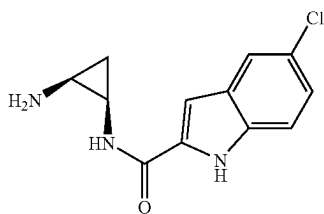
(3R)-1-Benzyl-3-hydroxypyrrolidine (500 μ l) and imidazole (466 mg) were dissolved in N,N-dimethyl-formamide (15 ml), tert-butyldiphenylsilyl chloride (1.57 ml) was added under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 9 days. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and water were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (1.27 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.05(9H,s), 1.70-1.85(1H,m), 1.90-2.00(1H,m), 2.45-2.65(3H,m), 2.70-2.80(1H,m), 3.50-3.70(2H,m), 4.35-4.45(1H,m), 7.20-7.45(11H,m), 7.60-7.70(4H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z : 416(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 59

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Aminocyclopropyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide



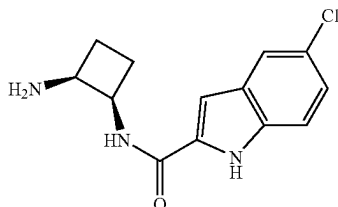
1-Hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (377 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (642 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (1.95 ml) were added to solution of cis-1,2-cyclopropanediamine hydrochloride (405 mg) and a 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (546 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 50 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, methylene chloride (50 ml) and a saturated solution (200 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to separate colorless solid deposited by filtration. The filtrate was extracted with methylene chloride. After the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain residue. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:7+10:1) to obtain the title compound (110 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 0.44(1H,dd,J=10.7, 4.4 Hz), 1.11(1H,dd,J=14.0, 7.4 Hz), 2.63-2.70(1H,m), 3.07-3.16(1H,m), 6.77(1H,s), 6.97(1H,br.s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.9, 1.8 Hz), 7.36(1H,d,J=8.9 Hz), 7.60(1H,s), 9.32(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 250(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 60

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Aminocyclobutyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide



116

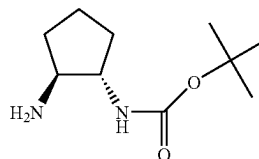
The title compound was obtained from cis-1,2-cyclobutanediamine hydrochloride (J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1942, Vol. 64, pp. 2696-2700) in a similar manner to Referential Example 59.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 1.55-2.20(4H,m), 3.52-3.62(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.1 Hz), 7.19(1H,s), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=2.1 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.77(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 264(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 61

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*)-2-aminocyclopentylcarbamate



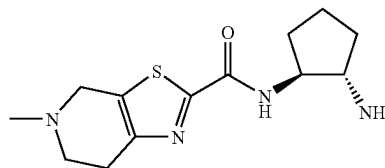
(\pm)-trans-1,2-Cyclopentanediamine (WO98/30574) (692 mg) was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), to which triethylamine (1.1 ml) and 2-(tert-butoxycarbonyloxyimino)-2-phenylacetoneitrile (493 mg) were added, and the mixture was stirred at 0 $^\circ$ C. for 1 hour. Thereafter, 2-(tert-butoxycarbonyloxyimino)-2-phenylacetoneitrile (493 mg) were additionally added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 7 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=9:1) to obtain the title compound (395 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.25-1.40(2H,m), 1.49(9H,s), 1.59-1.77(2H,m), 1.92-2.08(1H,m), 2.10-2.17(1H,m), 2.98(1H,q,J=7.2 Hz), 3.48-3.53(1H,m), 4.49(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 201(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 62

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Aminocyclopentyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (175 mg) obtained in Referential Example 61 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml), and to the solution lithium 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxylate (purity: 90%, 258 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (252 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzo-triazole monohydrate (60 mg) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure using a pump, and methylene chloride and a saturated solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The resultant

117

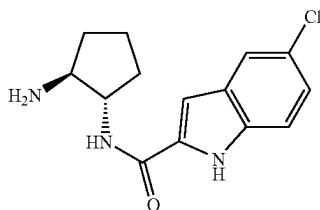
organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3). The resultant pale yellow oil was dissolved in a ethanol solution (5 ml) of hydrochloric acid, and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Ethyl acetate was then added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue to collect precipitate formed by filtration, thereby obtaining the title compound (120 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.63-1.73(4H,m), 1.99-2.06(2H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.09-3.14(1H,m), 3.25-3.70(4H,m), 4.27-4.32(1H,m), 4.42-4.46(1H,m), 4.68-4.71(1H,m), 8.20-8.23(3H,m), 9.09(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.82-12.01(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 281(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 63

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Aminocyclopentyl]-5-chloro-1H-indol-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (1.40 g) obtained in Referential Example 61 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 ml), and to the solution 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (1.64 g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (2.68 g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (473 mg) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 23 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to collect precipitates by filtration. The precipitates were washed with ethyl acetate, methylene chloride and methanol. On the other hand, the filtrate was separated to give an organic layer, which was taken out and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=19:1) to obtain a pale yellow solid. This pale yellow solid was combined with the precipitates obtained by the filtration and dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 3 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide were added to the residue to collect precipitate by filtration. The organic layer of the filtrate was separated and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The precipitates collected by the filtration were added to this solution, and a 4N dioxane solution (20 ml) of hydrochloric acid was further added. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (10 ml) and a 4N dioxane solution (10 ml) of hydrochloric acid were added to the residue. The solvent was distilled off again under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue to collect precipitates formed by filtration, thereby obtaining the title compound (1.83 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.75(4H,m), 2.05-2.10(2H,m), 3.49(1H,q,J=7.6 Hz), 4.27(4H,quintet,J=7.6 Hz), 7.17

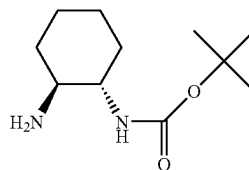
118

(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.19(1H,s), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.24(3H,br.s), 8.85(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.91(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 278(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 64

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*)-2-aminocyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from (±)-trans-1,2-cyclohexanediamine in a similar manner to Referential Example 61.

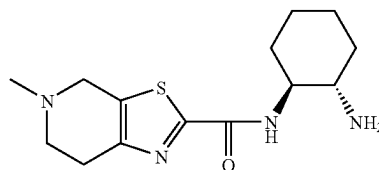
m.p.79-81.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.05-1.34(4H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.68-1.75(2H,m), 1.92-2.02(2H,m), 2.32(1H,dt,J=10.3, 3.9 Hz), 3.08-3.20(1H,m), 4.50(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 215(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 65

N-[(1R*, 2R*)-2-Aminocyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide trifluoroacetate (hydrochloride)



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 64 in a similar manner to Referential Example 62.

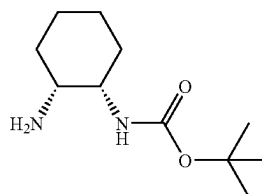
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.10-1.80(7H,m), 1.95-2.05(1H,m), 2.97(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(3H,m), 3.63(2H,br.s), 3.72-3.88(1H,m), 4.61(2H,br.s), 7.98(3H,s), 8.89(1H,d,J=9.2 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 295(M+H)⁺.

The hydrochloride was obtained in a similar manner.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 66

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-aminocyclohexylcarbamate



119

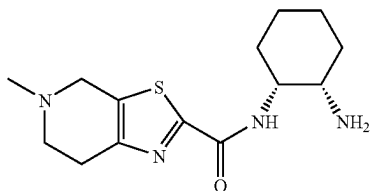
The title compound was obtained from cis-1,2-cyclohexanediamine in a similar manner to Referential Example 61.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.70(17H,m), 2.98-3.05(1H,m), 3.60(1H,br.s), 4.98(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 215(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 67

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Aminocyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride (trifluoroacetate)



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 66 in a similar manner to Referential Example 62.

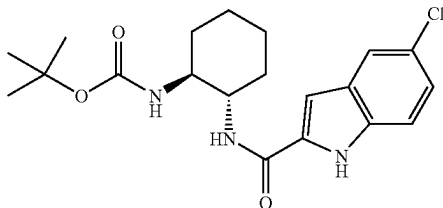
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-1.90(8H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.05-3.79(5H,m), 4.23(1H,br.s), 4.34-4.79(2H,m), 8.01-8.34(3H,m), 8.30-8.49(1H,m), 11.90-12.30(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 295(M+H)⁺.

The trifluoroacetate was obtained in a similar manner.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 68

tert-Buthyl (1R*,2R*)-2-[[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexylcarbamate



5-Chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (2.88 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (2.08 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (2.95 g) were added to a solution of the compound (3.00 g) obtained in Referential Example 64 in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml) at room temperature. After stirring for 3 days, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (30 ml), a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate (150 ml) and water (150 ml) were added to the residue. After collecting colorless precipitate formed by filtration and the precipitate was dried to obtain the title compound (5.21 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.10-1.45(4H,m), 1.21(9H,s), 1.68(2H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 1.86(2H,t,J=16.2 Hz), 3.22-3.42(1H,m), 3.69(1H,br.s), 6.66(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.02(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.73(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 392(M+H)⁺.

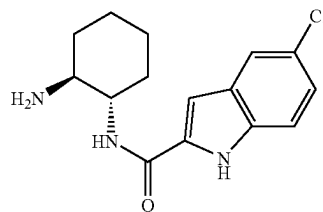
120

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 69

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Aminocyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride

5

10



15

An ethanol solution (100 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to a solution of the compound (5.18 g) obtained in Referential Example 68 in methylene chloride (100 ml) at room temperature. After stirring for 2 days, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, diethyl ether (300 ml) was added to the resultant residue, and colorless precipitate formed was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (4.30 g).

20

25

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.36(2H,m), 1.36-1.50(2H,m), 1.60(2H,br.s), 1.90(1H,d,J=13.0 Hz), 2.07(1H,d,J=13.7 Hz), 3.06(1H,br.s), 3.83-3.96(1H,m), 7.15-7.24(2H,m), 7.45(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.73(1H,s), 8.00(3H,br.s), 8.60(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 292(M+H)⁺.

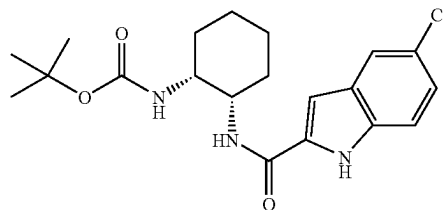
30

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 70

tert-Buthyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexylcarbamate

35

40



45

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 66 in a similar manner to Referential Example 68.

50

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.45(11H,m), 1.45-1.70(4H,m), 1.70-1.85(2H,m), 3.76(1H,br.s), 4.08(1H,br.s), 6.64(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 7.12(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.85(1H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 11.80(1H,br.s).

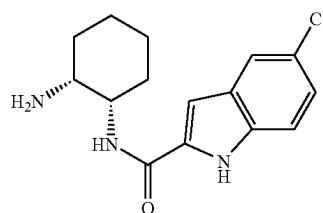
MS (ESI) m/z: 392(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 71

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Aminocyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride

60

65



121

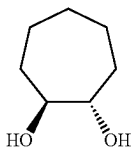
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 70 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-1.50(2H,m), 1.55-1.95(6H,m), 3.41(1H,br.s), 4.32(1H,br.s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,s), 7.45(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.60-7.90(4H,m), 8.17(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 11.91(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 292(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 72

(1R*,2R*)-1,2-Cycloheptanediol



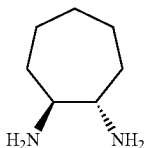
Cycloheptene (3.85 g) was added portionwise to 30% aqueous hydrogen peroxide (45 ml) and 88% formic acid (180 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 40 to 50° C. for 1 hour and then at room temperature for a night. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and a 35% aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide was added to the residue to alkalify it. After this residue was stirred at 40 to 50° C. for 10 minutes, ethyl acetate was added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted 4 times with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were collected and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (4.56 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44-1.56(6H,m), 1.63-1.70(2H,m), 1.83-1.91(2H,m), 2.91(2H,br.s), 3.40-3.44(2H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 131(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 73

(1R*,2R*)-1,2-Cycloheptanediamine hydrochloride



The compound (4.56 g) obtained in Referential Example 72 was dissolved in methylene chloride (35 ml), triethylamine (29 ml) was added, and the mixture was cooled to -78° C. Methanesulfonyl chloride (8.13 ml) was added dropwise thereto. Methylene chloride (10 ml) was slowly added, and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature and then for 1.5 hours at 0° C. Water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain an oil. This oil was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (90 ml), sodium azide (13.65 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 65° C. for 18 hours. Ether and water was added to the reaction

122

mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant ether layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain an oil.

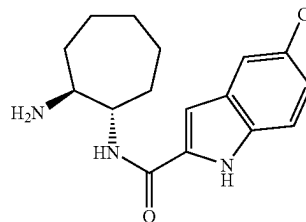
This oil was dissolved in ethanol (70 ml), 10% palladium on carbon (containing 50% of water, 4 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days in a hydrogen (3.5 atm) atmosphere. After separating the palladium on carbon by filtration, a 1N ethanol solution (70 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to the filtrate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in methanol, ethyl acetate was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure again. Precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (3.57 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO) δ: 1.44(4H,br.s), 1.73-1.81(6H,m), 3.43(2H,br.s), 8.63(6H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 129(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 74

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Aminocycloheptyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide



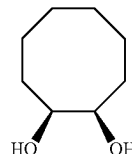
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 73 in a similar manner to Referential Example 59.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.49-1.52(4H,m), 1.72-1.91(6H,m), 4.04-4.10(1H,m), 7.17-7.23(2H,m), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.96(2H,br.s), 8.75(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.89(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 306(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 75

(1R*,2S*)-1,2-Cyclooctanediol



Cyclooctene (4.41 g) was dissolved in acetonitrile (45 ml) and water (15 ml), and to the solution N-methylmorpholine N-oxide (5.15 g) and microcapsulated osmium tetroxide (1 g, containing 10% osmium tetroxide) were added, and the mixture was stirred at 40 to 50° C. for 21 hours. Insoluble microcapsulated osmium tetroxide was removed by filtration, and washed with acetonitrile, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified

123

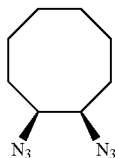
fied by flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane: ethyl acetate=1:1) to obtain the title compound (4.97 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48-1.58(6H,m), 1.64-1.75(4H,m), 1.86-1.96(2H,m), 2.28(2H,d,J=2.9 Hz), 3.90(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 145(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 76

(1R*,2S*)-1,2-diazidocyclooctane

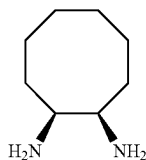


After cis-1,2-cyclooctanediol (4.82 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (60 ml), and to the solution triethylamine (27.7 ml) was added, and the interior of a vessel was purged with argon, the mixture was cooled to -78° C., and methanesulfonyl chloride (7.7 ml, 100 mmol) was added dropwise thereto. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature and then for 1 hour at 0° C. Water was then added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was washed with water, 0.5N hydrochloric acid, water and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (80 ml), sodium azide (13.0 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 65° C. for 19 hours. Ether and water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant ether layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=6:1) to obtain the title compound (4.85 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.49-1.64(6H,m), 1.67-1.78(2H,m), 1.81-1.97(4H,m), 3.74-3.76(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 77

(1R*,2S*)-1,2-Cyclooctanediamine hydrochloride



The compound (4.85 g) obtained in Referential Example 76 was dissolved in ethanol (55 ml), to the solution 10% palladium on carbon (containing 50% of water, 3.0 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 21 hours in a hydrogen (4.5 atm) atmosphere. After separating the catalyst by filtration, a 1N ethanol solution (50 ml) of hydrochloric

124

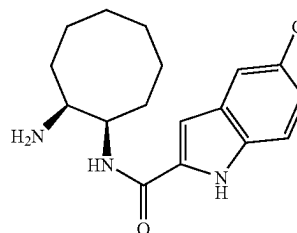
acid was added to the filtrate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (4.14 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO) δ: 1.51(6H,br.s), 1.69(2H,br.s), 1.79-1.99(4H,m), 3.68-3.70(2H,m), 8.66(6H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 143(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 78

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-aminocyclooctyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide

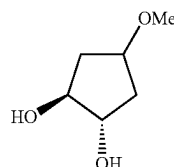


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 77 in a similar manner to Referential Example 59.

MS (ESI) m/z: 320(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 79

(1R*,2R*)-4-Methoxy-1,2-cyclopentenediol (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)



60% Sodium hydride (800 mg) was added portionwise to a solution of 3-cyclopentene-1-ol (1.68 g) and methyl iodide (1.25 ml) dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Water and diethyl ether was added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer, the organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure with ice cooling to obtain crude 4-methoxy-1-cyclopentene.

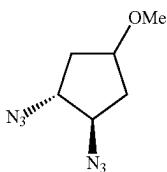
88% Formic acid (90 ml) and 30% hydrogen peroxide (3.17 ml) were added to 4-methoxy-1-cyclopentene thus obtained, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a 35% aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide was added to the residue to alkalinify the reaction mixture, followed by stirring at 50° C. for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and extracted with ethyl acetate to dry the organic layer over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19) to obtain the title compound (1.21 g).

125

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65-1.85(2H,m), 2.15-2.30(2H,m), 3.28(3H,s), 3.90-4.00(2H,m), 4.26(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 80

(1R*,2R*)-1,2-Diazo-4-methoxycyclopentane
(mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)

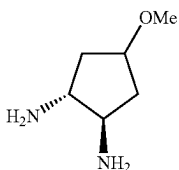


The compound (1.21 g) obtained in Referential Example 79 and triethylamine (7.66 ml) were dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml), and methanesulfonyl chloride (2.13 ml) was added dropwise over 20 minutes at -78° C. After completion of drop addition, the mixture was warmed to 0° C. and stirred for 80 minutes to obtain crude (1R*, 2R*)-1, 2-bis (methanesulfonyloxy)-4-methoxy-cyclopentane. This product was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and sodium azide (3.57 g) was added to heat and stir the mixture at 65° C. for 22 hours. Sodium azide (3.57 g) was additionally added to stir the mixture at 70° C. for 2 days. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool, and water and diethyl ether was added to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain the title compound (584 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65-1.80(2H,m), 2.05-2.18(1H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 3.21(3H,s), 3.55-3.65(1H,m), 3.75-3.90(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 81

(1R*, 2R*)-4-Methoxy-1,2-cyclopentane diamine
hydrochloride (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)



The compound (584 mg) obtained in Referential Example 80 was dissolved in ethanol, and 10% palladium on carbon (321 mg) was added to conduct hydrogenation at normal temperature and normal pressure for 2 days. After removing the catalyst by filtration, the reaction mixture was concentrated, and a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and ethyl acetate were added to the residue. The mixture was concentrated to obtain the title compound (488 mg).

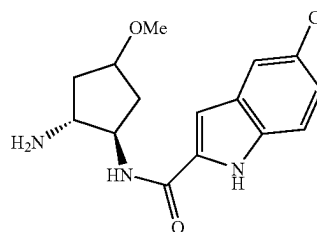
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72-1.83(1H,m), 1.91-2.03(1H,m), 2.07-2.18(1H,m), 2.37-2.50(1H,m), 3.19(3H,s), 3.55-3.75(2H,br), 3.85-3.95(1H,m), 8.60-8.90(6H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 261(2M+H)⁺.

126

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 82

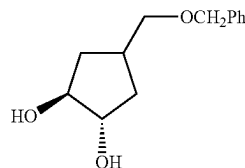
N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Amino-4-methoxycyclopentyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)



The compound (470 mg) obtained in Referential Example 81 was suspended in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and triethylamine (0.966 ml) and p-nitrophenyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate (805 mg) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to conduct liquid separation, an organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:9) to obtain the title compound (268 mg).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 83

(1R*,2R*)-4-[(Benzyloxy)methyl]-1,2-cyclopentanol
diol (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)



The title compound was obtained by benzylating 4-hydroxymethyl-1-cyclopentene (J. Heterocycl. Chem., 1989, Vol. 26, p. 451) with benzyl bromide and then reacting the product with formic acid-hydrogen peroxide in a similar manner to Referential Example 79.

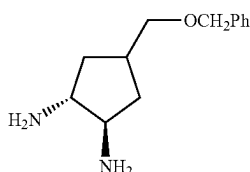
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44-1.52(1H,m), 1.77-1.85(1H,m), 1.89-1.97(1H,m), 2.25-2.35(1H,m), 2.46-2.58(1H,m), 3.40-3.50(2H,m), 3.89(1H,br.s), 4.08(1H,br.s), 4.54(2H,s), 7.27-7.39(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 223(M+H)⁺.

127

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 84

(1R*,2R*)-4-[(Benzyloxy)methyl]-1,2-cyclopentanediamine (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)

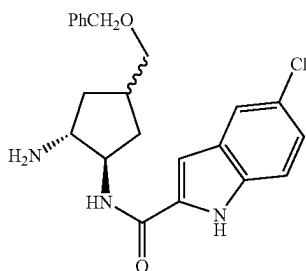


(1R*,2R*)-4-Benzyloxymethyl-1,2-diazidocyclopentane was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 83 in a similar manner to Referential Example 80.

The title compound was obtained in a similar manner to Referential Example 81 without purifying this product.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 85

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-Amino-4-[(benzyloxy)methyl]cyclopentyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers)



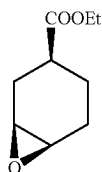
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 84 in a similar manner to Referential Example 59.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.07-1.15(0.5H,m), 1.26-1.35(0.5H,m), 1.47-1.55(0.5H,m), 1.61-1.79(1H,m), 1.83-1.92(0.5H,m), 1.99-2.10(0.5H,m), 2.12-2.20(0.5H,m), 2.27-2.40(1H,m), 3.10-3.20(1H,m), 3.33-3.39(2H,m), 3.81-3.92(1H,m), 4.48(2H,s), 7.13-7.20(2H,m), 7.22-7.39(5H,m), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.34(1H,t,J=7.1 Hz)

MS (FAB) m/z: 398(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 86

Ethyl (1R*,3R*,6S*)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate



(1R*,4R*,5R*)-4-Iodo-6-oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-7-one (J. Org. Chem., 1996, Vol. 61, p. 8687) (14.3 g) was dissolved in ethanol (130 ml), a 2N aqueous solution (34.5 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added under ice cooling, and the

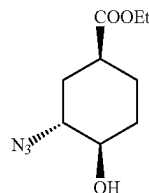
128

mixture was then stirred at room temperature for 7 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with methylene chloride, the extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=83:17) to obtain the title compound (6.54 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.50-1.70(2H,m), 1.71-1.82 (1H,m), 2.08-2.28(4H,m), 3.16(2H,s), 4.12(2H, q, J=7.1 Hz)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 87

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-azido-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate

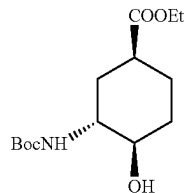


The compound (13.6 g) obtained in Referential Example 86 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml), ammonium chloride (6.45 g) and sodium azide (7.8 g) were successively added at room temperature, and the mixture was then stirred at 75° C. for 12 hours. The solvent was concentrated to about 1/3, and the residue was diluted with water and ethyl acetate to conduct stirring for 3 minutes. The resultant organic layer was washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (15.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.28(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.37-1.67(2H,m), 1.86-1.95(1H,m), 2.04-2.18(2H,m), 2.32-2.43(1H,m), 2.68-2.78(1H,m), 3.40-3.60(2H,m), 4.17(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 88

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (100 mg) obtained in Referential Example 87 and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (133 mg) were dissolved in ethyl acetate (12 ml) and a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 12 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. After insoluble matter was removed by filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was

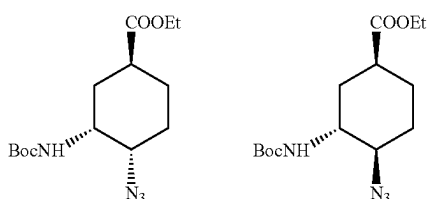
129

purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane: ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (145 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.28(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.45 (9H,s), 1.38-1.57(2H,m), 1.86-1.95(1H,m), 2.05-2.17 (1H,m), 2.29-2.39(2H,m), 2.61-2.68(1H,m), 3.25-3.66(3H,m), 4.17(2H,q, J=7.1 Hz), 4.53(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 89

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate and ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate



After the compound (16 g) obtained in Referential Example 88 and triethylamine (38 ml) were dissolved in methylene chloride (150 ml), and the solution was cooled to -78° C., methanesulfonyl chloride (13 ml) was added dropwise at the same temperature. After stirring for 15 minutes at the same temperature, the mixture was heated to 0° C. and stirred for 30 minutes and then 2 hours at room temperature. After 0.1N hydrochloric acid was added, and the mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, the resultant organic layer was separated, washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain crude ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[(methanesulfonyl)oxy]cyclohexanecarboxylate.

The product obtained above was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml), and sodium azide (18 g) was added at room temperature. The mixture was heated to 75° C. and stirred for 12 hours. The solvent was concentrated to about 1/3, and the residue was diluted with water and ethyl acetate to conduct stirring for 3 minutes. The resultant organic layer was separated, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compounds [(1R*,3S*,4R*)-form (6.74 g) and (1R*,3S*,4S*)-form (1.32 g)].

(1R*,3S*,4R*)-form:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.45(9H,s), 1.38-2.33(6H,m), 2.57-2.68 (1H,m), 3.77-4.20(4H,m), 4.63 (1H,br.s)

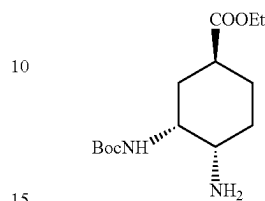
(1R*,3S*,4S*)-form:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.27 (3H,t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.46(9H,s), 1.53-2.30(6H,m), 2.50-2.65(1H,m), 3.42-3.72(2H,m), 4.15 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 4.67 (1H,br.s).

130

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 90

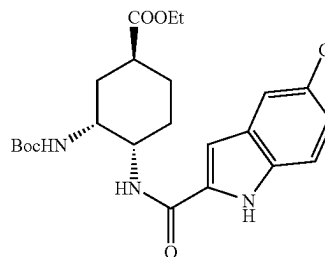
Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-4-amino-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate:



Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxy-carbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate (5.4 g) obtained in Referential Example 89 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of ethanol (10 ml) and ethyl acetate (10 ml), and a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. After insoluble matter was removed by filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (4.7 g).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 91

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (4.62 g) obtained in Referential Example 90 was dissolved in methylene chloride (50 ml), 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (3.63 g), 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (2.43 g) and 1-(3-dimethyl-aminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.45 g) were added at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 12 hours. After 0.1N hydrochloric acid was added, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride, the resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=2:3) to obtain the title compound (5.3 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.43(9H,s), 1.35-2.46(7H,m), 3.91-4.02(1H,m), 4.10-4.22(2H,m), 4.79 (1H,br.s), 6.79(1H,s), 7.18-7.40(2H,m), 7.59(1H,s), 8.00(1H,br.s), 9.13(1H,br.s).

131

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 92

Ethyl (1S,3S,6R)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate

(1S,4S,5S)-4-Iodo-6-oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-7-one (J. Org. Chem., 1996, Vol. 61, p. 8687) (89.3 g) was suspended in ethanol (810 ml), a 2N aqueous solution (213 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added, and the mixture was then stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with methylene chloride, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=17:3) to obtain the title compound (41.3 g).

$[\alpha]_D^{25} = -58^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 93

Ethyl

(1S,3R,4R)-3-azido-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate

The compound (41 g) obtained in Referential Example 92 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (300 ml), ammonium chloride (19.3 g) and sodium azide (23.5 g) were successively added at room temperature, and the mixture was then stirred at 76° C. for 13 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered, the filtrate was concentrated, the product previously captured by the filter was put in the residue, and water was added to dissolve the collected product. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (51.5 g).

$[\alpha]_D^{25} = +8^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 94

Ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate

The compound (51.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 93 and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (68.1 g) were dissolved in ethyl acetate (1000 ml), 5% palladium on carbon (5.0 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature under a hydrogen pressure of 7 kg/cm². After insoluble matter was removed by filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1→3:1), and hexane was added to solidify it to obtain the title compound (46.9 g).

$[\alpha]_D^{25} = +25^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 95

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate and ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate:

The compound (53.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 94 and triethylamine (130 ml) were dissolved in methylene

132

chloride (500 ml), and methanesulfonyl chloride (42 ml) was added dropwise over 20 minutes under cooling at -10° C. to -15° C. After stirring for 20 minutes at the same temperature, the mixture was heated to room temperature over 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0° C., 0.5N hydrochloric acid (800 ml) was added dropwise, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain crude ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]cyclohexanecarboxylate.

The crude product obtained above was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (335 ml), and sodium azide (60.5 g) was added to stir the mixture at 67° C. to 75° C. for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered, the filtrate was concentrated to distill off 250 ml of the solvent, the product captured by the filter was put in the residue, and the collected product was dissolved in water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compounds

[(1S,3R,4S)-form (18.4 g) and (1S,3R,4R)-form (3.3 g)].

(1S,3R,4S)-form: $[\alpha]_D^{25} = +62^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

(1S,3R,4R)-form: $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -19^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 96

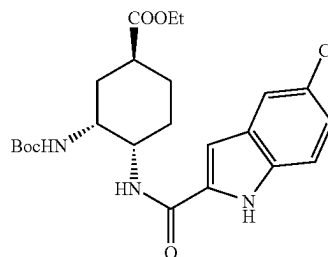
Ethyl

(1S,3R,4S)-4-Amino-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate

The compound (4.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 95 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of ethanol (150 ml) and ethyl acetate (150 ml), and 5% palladium on carbon (0.5 g) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 17 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere (5 kg/cm²). After insoluble matter was removed by filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (4.2 g).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 97

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylate



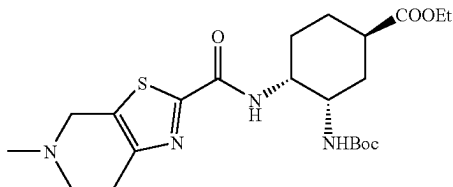
133

The compound (4.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 96 was dissolved in methylene chloride (50 ml), 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (3.33 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (2.52 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.15 g) were added at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 12 hours. After 0.1N hydrochloric acid was added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride, the resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:1) to obtain the title compound (4.36 g).

$[\alpha]_D^{25} = -27^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 98

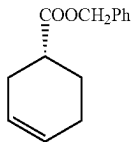
Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl amino]-4-[[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl] amino}cyclohexanecarboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 90 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 99

Benzyl 3-cyclohexene-1-carboxylate



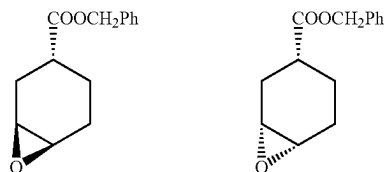
(±)-3-Cyclohexene-1-carboxylic acid (50 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (550 ml), and triethylamine (170 ml) and benzyl bromide (61 ml) were added under ice cooling to stir the mixture at room temperature for 12 hours. Water was added, extraction was conducted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane: ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (70.8 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.66-1.76(1H,m), 2.00-2.13(3H,m), 2.27-2.29(2H,m), 2.58-2.65(1H,m), 5.13(2H,s), 5.66(2H,br.s), 7.29-7.38(5H,m).

134

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 100

Benzyl (1R*,3S*,6S*)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate



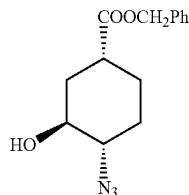
The compound (40 g) obtained in Referential Example 99 was dissolved in methylene chloride (500 ml), and m-chloroperbenzoic acid (86 g) was added under ice cooling to stir the mixture for 2 hours. After a 10% aqueous solution of sodium thiosulfate was added to conduct stirring for 20 minutes, an organic layer was separated, washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:9) to obtain the title compound (23.4 g) and benzyl (1R*,3R*,6S*)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate (12.1 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.39-1.49(1H,m), 1.75-1.82(1H,m), 1.90-2.04(3H,m), 2.30(1H,dd,J=14.9, 4.9 Hz), 2.54-2.61(1H,m), 3.12-3.14(1H,m), 3.22-3.24(1H,m), 5.12(2H,s), 7.30-7.39(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z : 233(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 101

Benzyl (1R*,3S*,4S)-4-azido-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



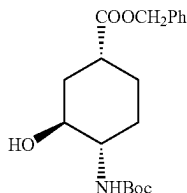
The compound (52.3 g) obtained in Referential Example 100 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (1000 ml), ammonium chloride (21.9 g) and sodium azide (18.1 g) were added, and the mixture was heated to 70° C. and stirred for 24 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (61.8 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.51-1.66(2H,m), 1.91-1.98(1H,m), 2.07-2.10(1H,m), 2.27-2.32(1H,m), 2.51-2.52(1H,m), 2.81-2.86(1H,m), 3.30-3.36(1H,m), 3.70-3.75(1H,m), 5.13(2H,s), 7.30-7.39(5H,m).

135

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 102

Benzyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



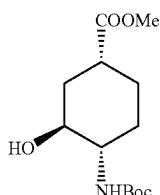
The compound (5.27 g) obtained in Referential Example 101 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (25 ml), and triphenylphosphine (5.53 g) and water (0.55 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours. Di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (4.82 g) was added to the reaction mixture to continue stirring for additional 2 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain the title compound (6.22 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.59-1.66(2H,m), 1.88-2.00(2H,m), 2.29-2.32(1H,m), 2.80-2.85(1H,m), 3.02(1H,br.s), 3.42(1H,br.s), 3.59-3.65(1H,m), 4.56(1H,br.s), 5.12(2H,q,J=12.5 Hz), 7.30-7.38(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 350(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 103

Methyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (2.54 g) obtained in Referential Example 102 was dissolved in ethyl acetate (15 ml), and a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on charcoal was added to the solution. The mixture was stirred in a hydrogen stream at room temperature for 20 hours. After the catalyst was filtered off, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give (1R*,3S*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylic acid as a colorless oil. The oil was dissolved in a mixture of methanol (8 ml) and toluene (15 ml), to which a 2N hexane solution (10 ml) of trimethylsilyldiazomethane was added under ice cooling, and the resulting mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1) to obtain the title compound (1.82 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44 (9H,s), 1.36-2.32 (7H,m), 2.74-2.82(1H,m), 3.04(1H,br.s), 3.33-3.47(1H,m), 3.55-3.65(1H,m), 3.68(3H,s), 4.56(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 274(M+H)⁺.

136

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 104

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate and methyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

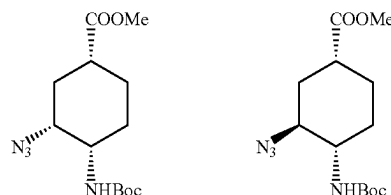
45

50

55

60

65



The compound (1.81 g) obtained in Referential Example 103 was dissolved in methylene chloride (36 ml), and triethylamine (4.6 ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (1.63 ml) were added at -78° C. After 30 minutes, the mixture was heated to 0° C. and stirred for 30 minutes. 1N Hydrochloric acid was added, extraction was conducted with methylene chloride, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain crude methyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]-cyclohexanecarboxylate.

The crude product obtained above was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (23 ml), sodium azide (1.29 g) was added, and the mixture was heated to 70° C. and stirred for 12 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture, extraction was conducted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=3:17) to obtain methyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate (85 mg) and methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate (590 mg).

(1R*,3R*,4S*)-form: ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.35-2.35(7H,m), 2.45-2.55(1H,m), 3.73(3H,s), 3.67-3.84(2H,m), 4.70(1H,br.s).

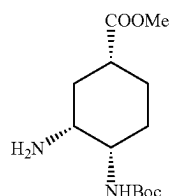
MS (FAB) m/z: 299(M+H)⁺.

(1R*,3S*,4S*)-form: ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.56-2.25(7H,m), 2.68-2.80(1H,m), 3.70(3H,s), 3.48-3.68(2H,m), 4.56(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 299(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 105

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



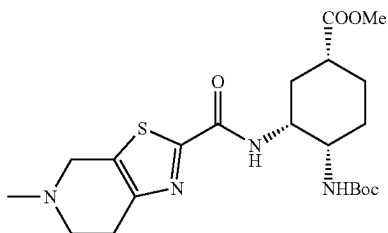
The (1R*,3R*,4S*)-compound (230 mg) obtained in Referential Example 104 was dissolved in ethyl acetate (8 ml), and a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon was

137

added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. Insoluble matter was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (220 mg).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 106

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylate



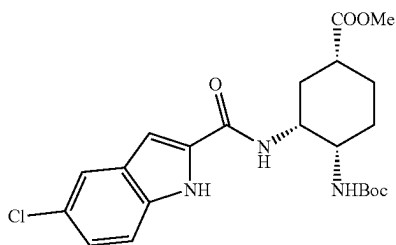
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 105 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.53-1.95(5H,m), 2.17-2.24(1H,m), 2.50(3H,s), 2.50-2.53(1H,m), 2.80-2.96(4H,m), 3.67(3H,s), 3.69-3.74(1H,m), 4.10(2H,br.s), 4.88(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 453(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 107

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 105 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.33(9H,s), 1.42-2.47(6H,m), 2.78-2.88(1H,m), 3.70(3H,s), 3.86-4.15(2H,m), 4.65-4.75(1H,m), 6.86(1H,br.s), 7.18-7.38(2H,m), 7.57-7.61(1H,m), 8.32(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 450(M+H)⁺.

138

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 108

Benzyl (1S,3R,6R)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate

1) Benzyl (1R)-3-cyclohexene-1-carboxylate was obtained from (1R)-3-cyclohexene-1-carboxylic acid (J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1978, Vol. 100, p. 5199) in a similar manner to Referential Example 99.

2) The title compound was obtained from the above-described product in a similar manner to Referential Example 100.

MS (FAB) m/z: 233(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 109

Benzyl (1R,3S,4S)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate

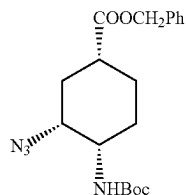
1) Benzyl (1R,3S,4S)-4-azido-3-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 108 in a similar manner to Referential Example 101.

2) The title compound was obtained from the above-described product in a similar manner to Referential Example 102.

MS (FAB) m/z: 350(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 110

Benzyl (1R,3R,4S)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



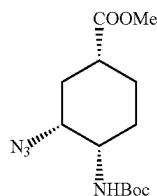
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 109 in a similar manner to Referential Example 104.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45 (9H,s), 1.52-1.66(2H,m), 1.83-2.01(3H,m), 2.20-2.28(1H,m), 2.51-2.54(1H,m), 3.77(2H,br.s), 4.70(1H,br.s), 5.15(2H,ABq,J=12.2 Hz), 7.33-7.38(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 375(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 111

Methyl (1R,3R,4S)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (3.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 110 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (130 ml) and water (16 ml), and lithium hydroxide (291 mg) was added under ice

139

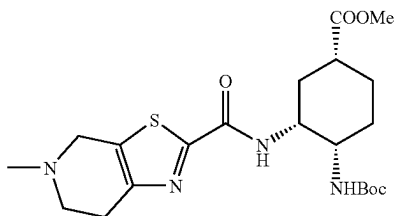
cooling. After 10 minutes, the mixture was heated to room temperature to continue stirring. After 20 hours, the reaction was stopped, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:20) to obtain (1R,3R,4S)-3-azido-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylic acid (3.34 g) as a pale yellow oil. This product was dissolved in methanol (18 ml) and toluene (64 ml), a 2N hexane solution (6.1 ml) of trimethylsilyldiazomethane was added under ice cooling. After 10 minutes, the mixture was heated to room temperature and stirred for 2 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (3.35 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.57-1.63(2H,m), 1.82-1.85(1H,m), 1.95-1.99(2H,m), 2.20-2.28(1H,m), 2.48-2.51(1H,m), 3.73(3H,s), 3.78(2H,br.s), 4.70-4.72(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 299(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 112

Methyl (1R,3R,4S)-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



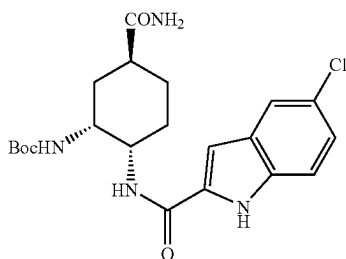
1) Methyl (1R,3R,4S)-3-amino-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 111 in a similar manner to Referential Example 105.

2) The title compound was obtained from the above-described product and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Referential Example 106.

MS (FAB) m/z: 453(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 113

tert-Buthyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-5-aminocarbonyl-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (590 mg) obtained in Referential Example 91 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of ethanol (3 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (6 ml), a 1N aqueous solution (2.5 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled

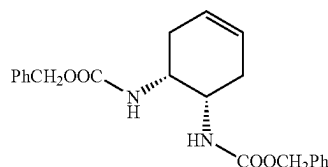
140

off to obtain sodium (1R*,3S*,4R*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate. This product was suspended in N,N-dimethylformamide (4 ml), di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (654 mg) and ammonium hydrogencarbonate (1 g) were added at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to conduct extraction with chloroform. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3) to obtain the title compound (82 mg).

MS (ESI) m/z: 435(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 114

Benzyl (1R,6S)-6-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-cyclohexen-1-ylcarbamate



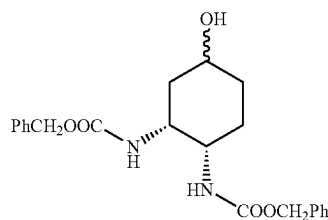
4-Cyclohexene-1,2-diamine hydrochloride (4.0 g) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of water (20 ml) and acetonitrile (20 ml), and benzyl chloroformate (7.66 ml) and potassium carbonate (14.9 g) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The reaction mixture was poured into water to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. To resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) to obtain the title compound (8.22 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.03(2H,m), 2.53(2H,d,J=17.1 Hz), 3.77(2H,m), 5.03(2H,q,J=12.3 Hz), 5.09(2H,q,J=12.3 Hz), 5.59(2H,s), 7.32(10H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 381(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 115

Benzyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-5-hydroxy-cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (10 g) obtained in Referential Example 114 was dissolved in absolute tetrahydrofuran (70 ml), borane-dimethyl sulfide complex (7.4 ml) was added at 0° C., and the mixture was gradually heated to room temperature and stirred for 14 hours. Ice was added to the reaction mixture to decompose excessive borane, and a 1N aqueous

141

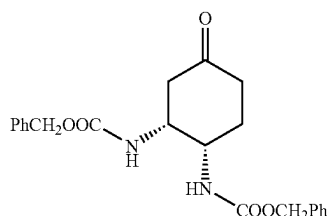
solution (80 ml) of sodium hydroxide and 30% aqueous hydrogen peroxide (80 ml) were added to stir the mixture for 1 hour as it is. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=2:1) to obtain the title compound (9.2 g)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.98(1H,m), 2.08(1H,m), 2.30(1H,m), 3.43(2H,m), 3.73(1H,m), 5.06(6H,m), 7.32(10H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 399(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 116

Benzyl (1R*2S*)-2-[[[(benzyloxy)carbony]amino]-5-oxo-cyclohexyl]carbamate



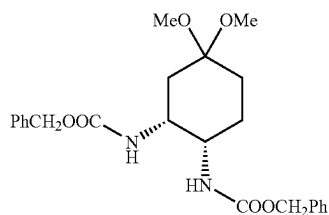
Dimethyl sulfoxide (8.2 ml) was added to a solution of oxalyl chloride (9.9 ml) in methylene chloride (90 ml) at -60° C., and a solution of the compound (9.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 115 in tetrahydrofuran (90 ml) was added to the mixture at a time. After 1 hour, the temperature of the mixture was raised to -40° C., and triethylamine (26 ml) was added at a time. The mixture was heated to room temperature as it is, and stirred for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:1) to obtain the title compound (8.0 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.27-2.43(4H,m), 2.78(1H,dd, J=14.4, 3.9 Hz), 3.86(2H,m), 5.08(4H,m), 5.22(2H,m), 7.32(10H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 397(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 117

Benzyl (1R*2S*)-2-[[[(benzyloxy)carbony]amino]-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]carbamate



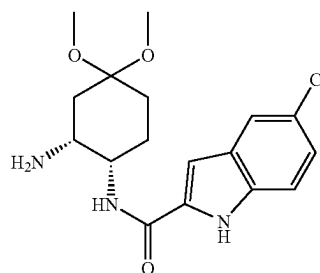
142

The compound (3.89 g) obtained in Referential Example 116 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol (15 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), 2,2-dimethoxypropane (10.7 ml) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (187 mg) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solvent was concentrated, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. After the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2) to obtain the title compound (3.54 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.41(4H,m), 1.93(1H,m), 2.38(1H,m), 3.19(6H,s), 3.46(1H,m), 3.59(1H,m), 5.03(2H,q, J=12.5 Hz), 5.09(2H,q, J=12.5 Hz), 7.32(10H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 118

N-[(1R*2S*)-2-Amino-4,4-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide and N-[(1R*2S*)-2-amino-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide



The compound (1.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 117 was dissolved in methanol (12 ml), and 10% palladium on carbon (290 mg) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. 10% Palladium on carbon (290 mg) and methanol (10 ml) were additionally added to stir the mixture for 8 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and mother liquor was concentrated, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml). 5-Chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (320 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodi-imide hydrochloride (377 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (301 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (360 ml) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was isolated and purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7) to obtain N-[(1R*2S*)-2-amino-4,4-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(1R*2S*)-2-amino-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide) (98 mg) and N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-4,4-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide) (105 mg).

143

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Amino-4,4-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45-1.50(2H,m), 2.06-2.10(2H,m), 2.34(1H,d,J=13.1 Hz), 2.78(1H,dt,J=2.9, 13.1 Hz), 3.18(3H,s), 3.23(3H,s), 3.75-3.77(1H,m), 6.24(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 6.79(1H,s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.60(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 9.53(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 352(M+H)⁺.

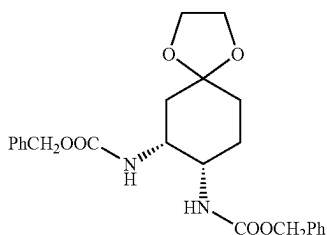
N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Amino-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.83-1.87(1H,m), 1.97-2.01(1H,m), 2.39(1H,br,J=13.2 Hz), 2.86-2.90(1H,m), 3.22-3.28(10H,m), 4.00-4.02(1H,m), 6.77(1H,s), 7.23(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.61(1H,s), 9.49(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 352(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 119

Benzyl (7R*,8S*)-7-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-ylcarbamate



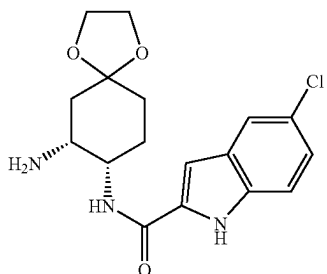
The compound (4.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 116 was dissolved in absolute tetrahydrofuran (30 ml), and ethylene glycol (5.6 ml) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (192 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:1) to obtain the title compound (4.23 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65-1.71(4H,m), 2.00(1H,m), 2.11(1H,m), 3.49(1H,m), 3.73(1H,m), 3.93(4H,s), 5.03(2H,q,J=12.2 Hz), 5.08(2H,q,J=12.2 Hz), 7.32(10H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 441(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 120

N-[(7R*,8S*)-7-Amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide and N-[(7R*,8S*)-8-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide:



144

N-[(7R*,8S*)-7-Amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(7R*,8S*)-8-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide) and N-[(7R*,8S*)-8-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(7R*,8S*)-7-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide) were obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 119 in a similar manner to Referential Example 118. N-[(7R*,8S*)-7-Amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(7R*,8S*)-8-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.68-1.81(4H,m), 2.11(2H,m), 2.87(1H,td,J=3.9,11.2 Hz), 3.77(1H,m), 3.97(4H,s), 6.27(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 6.80(1H,s), 7.24(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.61(1H,s), 9.47(br.s,1H).

MS (ESI) m/z: 350(M+H)⁺.

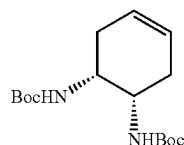
N-[(7R*,8S*)-8-Amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (or N-[(7R*,8S*)-7-amino-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-8-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide):

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65(2H,m), 1.88(1H,m), 1.96(1H,m), 2.31(1H,dd,J=12.9,3.2 Hz), 2.96(1H,m), 3.98(1H,m), 4.02(4H,s), 4.12(1H,m), 6.77(1H,s), 7.06(1H,br.s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.49(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 350(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 121

tert-Butyl (1R,6S)-6-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-cyclohexene-1-ylcarbamate



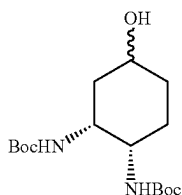
cis-4-Cyclohexene-1,2-diamine hydrochloride (4.0 g) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of water (40 ml) and acetonitrile (40 ml), and di-tert-butoxy carbonate (11.8 g) and triethylamine (12 ml) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water to conduct extraction with methylene chloride, and the resultant methylene chloride layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (6.12 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(18H,s), 1.98(2H,dd,J=9.3,15.9 Hz), 2.48(2H,br.d,J=15.9 Hz), 3.66(2H,br.s), 4.88(2H,br.s), 5.58(2H,d,J=2.7 Hz).

145

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 122

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-hydroxycyclohexylcarbamate (mixture of stereoisomers)



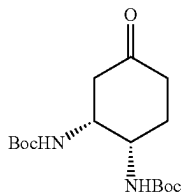
The compound (6.1 g) obtained in Referential Example 121 was dissolved in absolute tetrahydrofuran (40 ml), and borane-dimethyl sulfide complex (2.22 ml) was added under ice cooling. The mixture was stirred for 16 hours while gradually heating the mixture to room temperature as it is. Ice was added to the reaction mixture, and a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and 30% aqueous hydrogen peroxide (50 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours as it is. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2→2:1) to obtain the title compound (6.1 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.42(9H,s), 1.43(9H,s), 1.83-1.67 (5H,m), 2.15(1H,m), 2.22(1H,s), 3.34(1H,m), 3.78(1H,m), 4.15(1H,s), 4.98(1H,q,J=9.0 Hz), 5.02(1H,q,J=9.0 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 331(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 123

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxocyclohexylcarbamate



Oxalyl chloride (8.2 ml) and dimethyl sulfoxide (6.8 ml) were dissolved in methylene chloride (100 ml) at -60° C., and a solution of the compound (mixture of stereoisomers) (6.32 g) obtained in Referential Example 122 in tetrahydrofuran (80 ml) was added at a time, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The temperature of the mixture was raised to -40° C., and triethylamine (21 ml) was added. The mixture was heated to room temperature. After 3 hours, the reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was

146

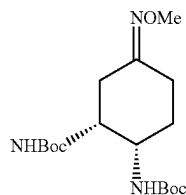
purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:1) to obtain the title compound (3.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 1.44(9H,s), 2.24-2.36 (3H,m), 2.39-2.44(2H,m), 2.75(1H,dd,J=14.6,2.9 Hz), 3.66-3.81(2H,m), 4.95-4.90(1H,m), 4.97-5.03(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 329(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 124

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-(methoxyimino)cyclohexylcarbamate



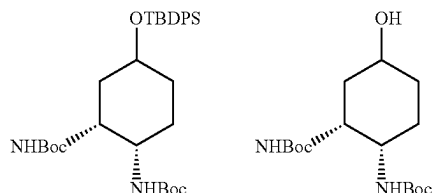
The compound (1.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 123 was dissolved in methanol (30 ml), and O-methylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (572 mg) and pyridine (737 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 17 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, water was added to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (1.52 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(18H,s), 1.64(1H,m), 2.16(2H,m), 2.44(1H,m), 3.45-3.63(3H,m), 3.82(3H,s), 4.93(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 358(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 125

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-{[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy}cyclohexylcarbamate (Stereoisomer A)



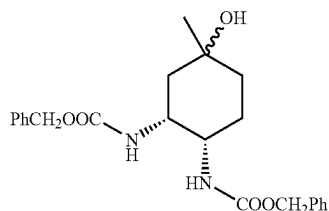
The title compound was obtained from the compound (mixture of stereoisomers) obtained in Referential Example 122 in a similar manner to Referential Example 58, and tert-butyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-hydroxycyclohexylcarbamate (Stereoisomer B) was recovered.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.03(9H,s), 1.39(9H,s), 1.40(9H,s), 1.72(1H,m), 1.86(1H,m), 2.13(1H,m), 3.24(2H,m), 3.65(1H,m), 4.83(1H,m), 7.37(10H,m).

147

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 126

Benzyl (1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-5-hydroxy-5-methylcyclohexyl]carbamate



Anhydrous cerium chloride (6.4 g) was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), and the suspension was cooled to -78°C . in an argon atmosphere. A methyllithium solution (1.14N diethyl ether solution, 22.5 ml) was added to the suspension, and the mixture was stirred at -78°C . for 30 minutes. A tetrahydrofuran solution (50 ml) of the compound (3.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 116 was added dropwise at -78°C ., and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was poured into a 3% aqueous solution (100 ml) of acetic acid, and diethyl ether (50 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified twice by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:chloroform=0:100-1:19) to obtain the title compound (Stereoisomer A) (780 mg) and the title compound (Stereoisomer B) (1.1 g).

Stereoisomer A:

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.26(3H,s), 1.27-2.08(6H,m), 3.48(1H,br.s), 3.59(1H,br.s), 5.02-5.09(5H,m), 5.33(1H,br.s), 7.30-7.32(10H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z : 413(M+H) $^+$.

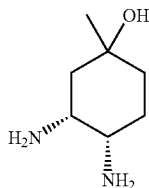
Stereoisomer B:

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.25(3H,s), 1.29-2.07(6H,m), 3.39(1H,br.s), 3.82(1H,br.s), 5.02-5.23(6H,m), 7.30(10H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z : 413(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 127

(3R*,4S*)-3,4-Diamino-1-methylcyclohexanol (Stereoisomer A)



10% Palladium on carbon (350 mg) was suspended in a methanol solution (100 ml) of the compound (Stereoisomer A) (780 mg) obtained in Referential Example 126, and the suspension was stirred for 5 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. After the residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 ml), and

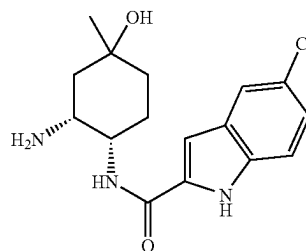
148

the solution was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (Stereoisomer A) (190 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.22(3H,s), 1.25-2.48(11H,m), 2.62(1H,br.s), 2.78(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 128

Mixture of N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-Amino-4-hydroxy-4-methylcyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) and N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-5-hydroxy-5-methylcyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A)

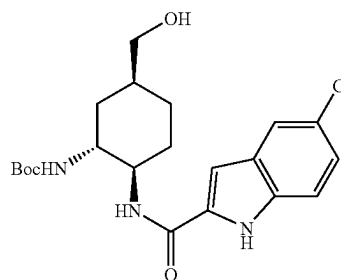


The title compound was obtained from the compound (Stereoisomer A) obtained in Referential Example 127 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 59.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.32(3H,s), 1.34-2.29(6H,m), 4.42-4.70(4H,br), 7.13(2H,s), 7.50(2H,s), 8.00(1H,s), 11.0(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 129

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(hydroxymethyl)cyclohexyl]carbamate



1) Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate was obtained from the (1R*,3S*,4S*)-form obtained in Referential Example 89 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Examples 90 and 91.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.22-1.72(6H,m), 2.15-2.28(2H,m), 2.41-2.49(1H,m), 2.85(1H,brs), 3.62-3.75(1H,m), 3.78-3.92(1H,m), 4.12-4.28(2H,m), 4.56-4.63(1H,m), 6.88(1H,brs), 7.20(1H,dd,J=8.8 and 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.52-7.57(1H,m), 7.59(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.24(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 464(M+H) $^+$.

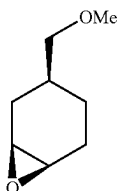
149

2) The product (735 mg) obtained above was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), a 1N hexane solution (5 ml) of diisobutylaluminum hydride was added at -78°C ., and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours and then 30 minutes at 0°C . A saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride was added at -78°C ., the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride, and the resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium bicarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=19:1) to obtain the title compound (480 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.20-2.30(7H,m), 3.60-3.86(4H,m), 4.64(1H,br.s), 6.87(1H,s), 7.20-7.48(3H,m), 9.15(1H,br.s).
MS (ESI) m/z : 422(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 130

(1R*,3R*,6S*)-3-(Methoxymethyl) oxabicyclo[4.1.0] heptane



1) (1R*,4R*,5R*)-4-Iodo-6-oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-7-one (2.8 g) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (27 ml) and water (3 ml), concentrated hydrochloric acid (0.1 ml) was added, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hour. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain (1R*,3R*,4R*)-3-hydroxy-4-iodocyclohexanecarboxylic acid (3.23 g) as a colorless solid.

2) The product (3.22 g) obtained by the reaction described above was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), borane-dimethyl sulfide complex (2 M tetrahydrofuran solution, 47 ml) was added under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in isopropanol (10 ml), a 1N aqueous solution (12 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added, and the mixture was stirred for 12 hours. After the solvent was concentrated to about $\frac{1}{5}$, the reaction mixture was diluted with water and methylene chloride to stir it for 10 minutes. An organic layer was separated, successively washed with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2) to obtain (1R*,3R*,6S*)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]hept-3-ylmethanol (1.25 g) as a colorless oil.

3) The product (4.63 g) obtained by the reaction in 2) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (0.5N toluene solution, 80 ml) was added to the solution at -78°C . After stirring at same temperature for 10 minutes, methyl iodide (2.93 ml) was added. After heating the mixture to 0°C ., it was stirred for 1 hour, quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride and then diluted with diethyl ether. An organic layer was separated, washed with saturated aqueous solution of

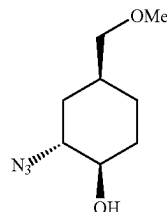
150

sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (3.7 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 0.89-1.63(5H,m), 1.80-2.05(2H,m), 1.89-3.06(4H,m), 3.16(3H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 131

(1R*,2R*,4S*)-2-Azido-4-(methoxymethyl)cyclohexanol

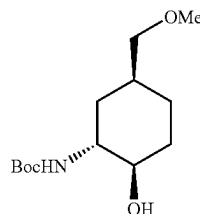


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 130 in a similar manner to Referential Example 87.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.45-1.70(5H,m), 1.77-1.95(2H,m), 1.98-2.08(1H,m), 3.30(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 3.35(3H,s), 3.45-3.65(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 132

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-hydroxy-5-(methoxymethyl)-cyclohexylcarbamate

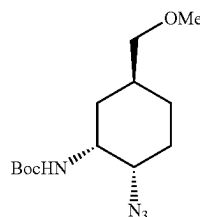


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 131 in a similar manner to Referential Example 88.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.35-2.01(16H,m), 3.05(1H,br.s), 3.32(2H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 3.34(3H,s), 3.44-3.62(2H,m), 4.59(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 133

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-azido-5-(methoxymethyl)-cyclohexylcarbamate



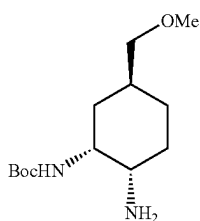
151

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 132 through the methansulfonate thereof in a similar manner to Referential Example 89.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.31-1.93(16H,m), 3.27(2H,d,J=6.4 Hz), 3.32(3H,s), 3.57-3.70(1H,m), 3.67(1H,br.s), 3.95(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 134

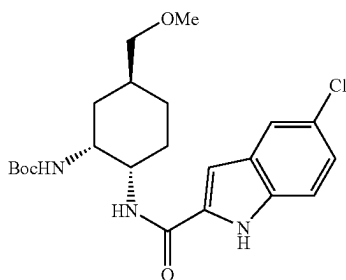
tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-amino-5-(methoxymethyl)-cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 133 in a similar manner to Referential Example 90.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 135

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-(methoxymethyl)cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 134 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

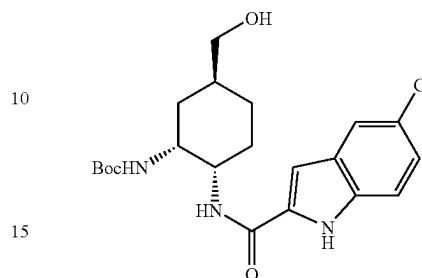
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.12-2.31(16H,m), 3.14-3.30(2H,m), 3.34(3H,s), 3.92(1H,br.s), 4.13(1H,br.s), 4.88(1H,br.s), 6.82(1H,s), 7.21(1H,br.d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.60(1H,s), 8.09(1H,br.s), 9.42(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 436(M+H)⁺.

152

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 136

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-(hydroxymethyl)cyclohexylcarbamate



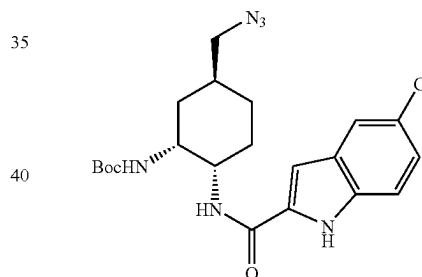
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 91 in a similar manner to Referential Example 129.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.78-2.30(16H,m), 3.41-3.59(3H,m), 3.86-3.95(1H,m), 4.12-4.20(1H,m), 4.82-4.91(1H,m), 6.81(1H,s), 7.17-7.40(2H,m), 7.60(1H,s), 8.03(1H,br.s), 9.18(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 422(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 137

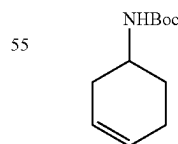
tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-5-(azidomethyl)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 136 in a similar manner to Referential Example 80.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 138

tert-Butyl 3-cyclohexen-1-ylcarbamate



3-Cyclohexene-1-carboxylic acid (25.3 g) was dissolved in tert-butanol (250 ml), triethylamine (28 ml) and diphenylphosphoryl azide (43.0 ml) were added, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature and 2 days at 90° C. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) and then repurified by col-

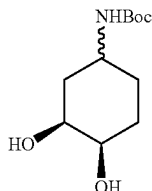
153

umn chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=20:1) to obtain the title compound (24.9 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.80-1.90(2H,m), 2.05-2.20(2H,m), 2.35-2.45(1H,m), 3.78(1H,br), 4.56(1H,br), 5.55-5.65(1H,m), 5.65-5.75(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 139

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3,4-dihydroxycyclohexylcarbamate



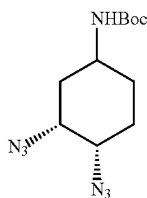
The compound (1.24 g) obtained in Referential Example 138 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of acetonitrile (15 ml) and water (5 ml), N-methylmorpholine N-oxide (0.90 g) and microcapsulated 10% osmium tetroxide (1 g) were added, and the mixture was stirred at about 80° C. for a day. After insoluble matter was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The thus-obtained residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1) to obtain the title compound (1.28 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.15-1.30(½H,m), 1.35-2.00(15H,m), 2.15-2.30(3/2H,m), 2.40-2.60(1H,m), 3.64(1H,br), 3.75-3.90(3/2H,m), 4.00(½H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 232(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 140

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3,4-diazidocyclohexylcarbamate (Stereoisomer A and Stereoisomer B)



The title compounds (Stereoisomer A and Stereoisomer B) were obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 139 in a similar manner to Referential Example 80.

Stereoisomer A:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.55-1.80(3H,m), 1.95-2.15(2H,m), 3.53(1H,m), 3.59(1H,br), 3.80(1H,m), 4.70(1H,br).

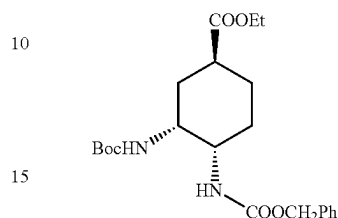
Stereoisomer B:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.27(1H,m), 1.44(9H,s), 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.80-2.00(2H,m), 2.00-2.15(1H,m), 2.21(1H,m), 3.48(1H,m), 3.77(1H,br), 3.89(1H,br), 4.34(1H,br).

154

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 141

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate

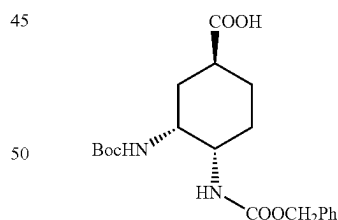


The compound (3.10 g) obtained in Referential Example 96 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), and a saturated aqueous solution (50 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added. After benzyloxycarbonyl chloride (1.71 ml) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture under ice cooling, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. Ethyl acetate (200 ml) and water (200 ml) were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Solids deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (3.24 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.24(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.29-1.44(1H,m), 1.44(9H,s), 1.51-1.64(1H,m), 1.72-2.10(4H,m), 2.27-2.43(1H,m), 3.60-3.73(1H,m), 4.00-4.18(3H,m), 4.62(1H,br.s), 5.01-5.13(2H,m), 5.26(1H,br.s), 7.27-7.38(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 142

(1S,3R,4S)-4-[[[(Benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylic acid



The compound (620 mg) obtained in Referential Example 141 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), and an aqueous solution (10 ml) of lithium hydroxide monohydrate (93 mg) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 16 hours. After lithium hydroxide monohydrate (217 mg) was additionally added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with methylene chloride. An organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (600 mg).

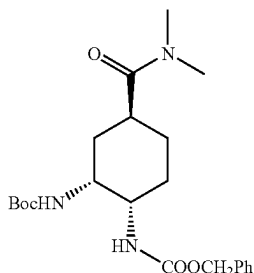
155

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.22-2.20(6H, m), 1.44(9H,s), 2.45-(1H,br.s), 3.60-3.80(1H,br), 4.09(1H,br.s), 4.66 (1H,br.s), 5.00-5.20(2H,m), 5.26(1H,br.s), 7.20-7.40(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 393(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 143

Benzyl (1S,2R,4S)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



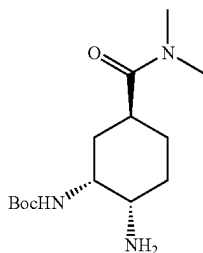
After the compound (600 mg) obtained in Referential Example 142 and dimethylamine hydrochloride (240 mg) were suspended in methylene chloride (50 ml), a proper amount of tetrahydrofuran was added to the suspension to prepare a solution. To this solution were added triethylamine (0.41 ml), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (422 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (338 mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Dimethylamine hydrochloride (480 mg) and triethylamine (0.82 ml) were additionally added to the reaction mixture to stir the mixture at room temperature for additional 18 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water to separate an organic layer. After the organic layer was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=3:47→2:23) to obtain the title compound (620 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20-1.50(2H,m), 1.44(9H,s), 1.50-2.10(4H,m), 2.60(1H,br,t,J=11.6 Hz), 2.93(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 3.70(1H,br.s), 4.14(1H,br.s), 4.65(1H,br.s), 5.00-5.30(3H,m), 7.26-7.40(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z=420(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 144

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-amino-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



156

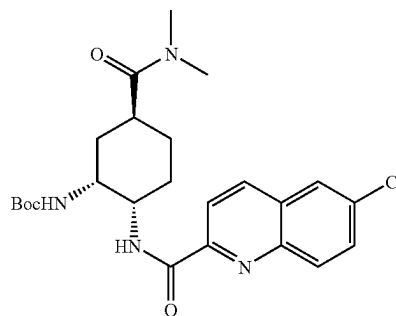
10% Palladium on carbon (57 g) was added to a solution of the compound (190 g) obtained in Referential Example 143 in methanol (8000 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours under a hydrogen pressure (7 atm). After the catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. After toluene was added to the residue, and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, hexane (2500 ml) was added to solidify a product. The product was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (121 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20-1.77(6H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 2.20-2.35(1H,br), 2.63-2.74(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 3.02-3.11(2H,m), 3.74-3.82(1H,m), 4.88-5.00(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 286(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 145

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[(6-chloroquinolin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



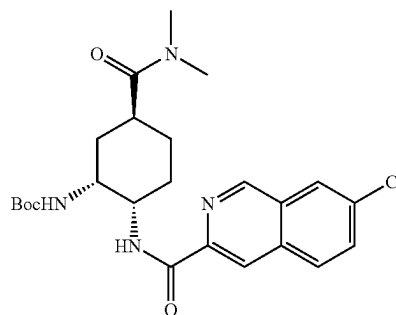
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 54 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.41(9H,br), 1.50-1.70(1H,m), 1.75-1.95(2H,m), 1.95-2.25(3H,m), 2.65-2.80(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.15-4.30(1H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 4.95(1H,br), 7.66(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.84(1H,s), 8.00(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.19(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.30(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 475(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 146

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[(7-chloroquinolin-3-yl)-carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 57 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

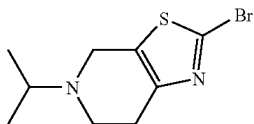
157

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.65(10H,br), 1.75-1.90(2H,m), 1.90-2.25(3H,m), 2.65-2.90(1H,br), 2.96(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 4.20-4.30(1H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 4.93(1H,br), 7.68(1H,m), 7.90(1H,br), 7.99(1H,s), 8.35-8.70(2H,m), 9.01(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 475(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 147

2-Bromo-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine

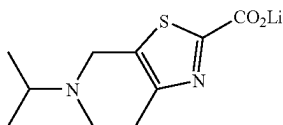


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 8 in a similar manner to Referential Example 9.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.13(6H,d,J=6.5 Hz), 2.86(4H,s), 2.89-3.00(1H,m), 3.70(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 148

Lithium 5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxylate

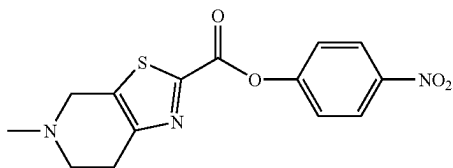


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 147 in a similar manner to Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.05(6H,d,J=6.4 Hz), 2.68-2.70(2H,m), 2.75-2.77(2H,m), 2.87-2.93(1H,m), 3.66(2H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 149

4-Nitrophenyl 5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and p-nitrophenol in a similar manner to Referential Example 52.

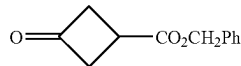
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.55(3H,s), 2.88(2H,t,J=5.7 Hz), 3.06-3.12(2H,m), 3.80(2H,s), 7.46(2H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.32(2H,d,J=9.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 320(M+H)⁺.

158

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 150

Benzyl 3-oxocyclobutanecarboxylate



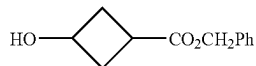
Triethylamine (2.0 ml) and benzyl bromide (1.2 ml) were added to a solution of 3-oxocyclobutanecarboxylic acid (J. Org. Chem., Vol. 53, pp. 3841-3843, 1981) (995 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (5.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed successively with 1N hydrochloric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated saline and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:6) to obtain the title compound (886 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.22-3.33(3H,m), 3.37-3.48(2H,m), 5.19(2H,s), 7.31-7.42(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 205(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 151

Benzyl 3-hydroxycyclobutanecarboxylate



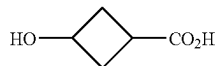
Sodium borohydride (76 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (781 mg) obtained in Referential Example 150 in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) and methanol (0.5 ml) at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride in that order and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:2) to obtain the title compound (770 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.13-2.27(3H,m), 2.55-2.71(3H,m), 4.14-4.23(1H,m), 5.12(2H,s), 7.28-7.39(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 207(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 152

3-Hydroxycyclobutanecarboxylic acid



10% Palladium on carbon (108 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (706 mg) obtained in Referential Example 151 in ethanol (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere.

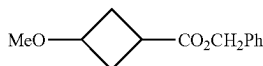
159

After the catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (399 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD) δ : 2.00-2.21(2H,m), 2.41-2.61(3H,m), 4.01-4.13(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 153

Benzyl 3-methoxycyclobutanecarboxylate



Methyl iodide (194 μl) and silver oxide (237 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (317 mg) obtained in Referential Example 151 in N,N-dimethylformamide (3.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 45° C. for 1 hour. Methyl iodide (194 μl) and silver oxide (226 mg) were additionally added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred at 45° C. for 16 hours. After the catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:10) to obtain the title compound (152 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.14-2.24(2H,m), 2.44-2.54(2H,m), 2.59-2.72(1H,m), 3.21(3H,s), 3.73-3.81(1H,m), 5.11(2H,s), 7.22-7.39(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 221(M+H⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 154

3-Methoxycyclobutanecarboxylic acid

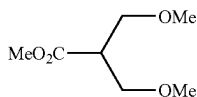


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 153 in a similar manner to Referential Example 152.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.17-2.27(2H,m), 2.48-2.58(2H,m), 2.62-2.73(1H,m), 3.25(3H,s), 3.76-3.86(1H,m), 8.60-9.30(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 155

Methyl 3-methoxy-2-(methoxymethyl)propionate



Sodium methoxide (1.21 g) was added to a solution of methyl 2-(bromomethyl)acrylate (1.0 ml) in methanol (10 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 26 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether, and precipitate was collected by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The result-

160

ant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (726 mg).

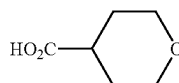
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.90-2.96(1H,m), 3.34(6H,s), 3.57(2H,dd,J=9.3,5.9 Hz), 3.64(2H,dd,J=9.3,6.6 Hz), 3.73(3H,s).

$^{13}\text{C-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 172.71, 70.31, 59.91, 46.49.

MS (ESI) m/z: 163(M+H⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 156

Tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-carboxylic acid

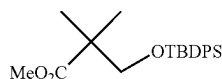


Dimethyl tetrahydro-4H-pyran-4,4-dicarboxylate (4.04 g) was added to 20% hydrochloric acid (20 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 19 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with diethyl ether. After the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. After the resultant residue was solidified with hexane, the resultant solids were collected by filtration and washed to obtain the title compound (2.63 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.75-1.95(4H,m), 2.55-2.65(1H,m), 3.40-3.52(2H,m), 3.93-4.05(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 157

Methyl 3-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-2,2-dimethylpropionate

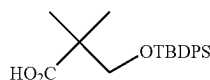


The title compound was obtained from methyl 2,2-dimethyl-3-hydroxypropionate in a similar manner to Referential Example 41.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.03(9H,s), 1.20(6H,s), 3.64-3.68(5H,m), 7.38-7.44(6H,m), 7.63-7.65(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 158

3-[[tert-Butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-2,2-dimethylpropionic acid



Water (0.24 ml) was added to a suspension composed of potassium tert-butoxide (5.32 g) and diethyl ether (100 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 5 minutes. The compound (2.22 g) obtained in Referential Example 157 was added thereto, and the resultant mixture was stirred

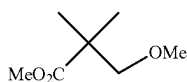
161

overnight at room temperature. Water was added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was acidified with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted 3 times with diethyl ether. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:6) to obtain the title compound (735 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.04(9H,d,J=0.7 Hz), 1.22(6H,s), 3.65(2H,s), 7.36-7.45(6H,m), 7.64-7.66(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 159

Methyl 3-methoxy-2,2-dimethylpropionate



A solution of methyl 3-hydroxy-2,2-dimethylpropionate (25.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (300 ml) was added dropwise to a suspension composed of a 60% oil suspension of sodium hydride (8.32 g) and tetrahydrofuran (100 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at 60° C. for 1 hour. Methyl iodide (53.7 g) was added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Water was carefully added to conduct extraction twice with methylene chloride. After the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant oil was distilled to obtain the title compound (12.8 g).

Boiling point: 140-142° C. (ordinary pressure).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.19(6H,d,J=1.0 Hz), 3.33(3H,d,J=1.0 Hz), 3.38(2H,d,J=1.0 Hz), 3.69(3H,d,J=1.0 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 160

3-Methoxy-2,2-dimethylpropionic acid

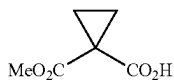


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 159 in a similar manner to Referential Example 158.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.22(6H,d,J=0.7 Hz), 3.38(3H,d,J=0.7 Hz), 3.40(2H,d,J=0.7 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 161

1-(Methoxycarbonyl)cyclopropanecarboxylic acid



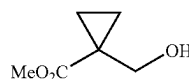
162

Dimethyl 1,1-cyclopropanecarboxylate (25 g) was dissolved in methanol (250 ml), and the solution was cooled with ice. A 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide (158 ml) was then added dropwise, and the resultant mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. After methanol was distilled off, the residue was washed with chloroform, and a water layer was cooled with ice, adjusted to pH 2 with concentrated hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (16.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.76-1.80(2H,m), 1.82-1.88(2H,m), 3.79(3H,s), 12.73(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 162

Methyl 1-(hydroxymethyl)cyclopropanecarboxylate

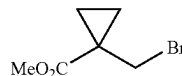


The compound (9.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 161 and triethylamine (9.7 ml) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (180 ml), and the solution was cooled to -10° C., to which isobutyl chloroformate (9.1 ml) was added dropwise, and the resultant mixture was stirred for 1 hour. On the other hand, sodium borohydride (7.1 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (100 ml)-water (25 ml) and cooled with ice. While removing insoluble matter by filtration, the solution prepared previously was added dropwise, and the resultant mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into a cooled 10% aqueous solution of citric acid to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. After the extract was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:9-2:1) to obtain the title compound (4.25 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.87-0.93(2H,m), 1.28-1.30(2H,m), 3.63(2H,s), 3.70(3H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 163

Methyl 1-(bromomethyl)cyclopropanecarboxylate



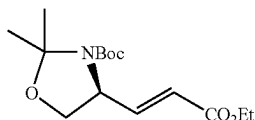
Triphenylphosphine (10 g) and carbon tetrabromide (16 g) were added to a solution of the compound (4.20 g) obtained in Referential Example 162 in methylene chloride (168 ml) at room temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere. After 2 minutes, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added thereto. After the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:19) to obtain the title compound (2.15 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.00-1.05(2H,m), 1.52-1.59(2H,m), 3.61(2H,s), 3.73(3H,s).

163

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 164

tert-Butyl (4S)-4-[(E)-3-ethoxy-3-oxo-1-propenyl]-
2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate

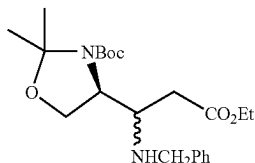


A mixture solution composed of tert-Butyl (4R)-4-formyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate (11.7 g), (carboethoxymethylene)triphenylphosphorane (20.7 g) and toluene (100 ml) was heated and stirred at 100° C. for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=8:1) to obtain the title compound (17 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.29(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.43-1.56 (15H,m), 3.80(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.4 Hz), 4.09(1H,dd,J=9.0,6.6 Hz), 4.11-4.23(2H,m), 4.30-4.61(1H,m), 5.83-6.02(1H,m), 6.74-6.89(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 165

tert-Butyl (4S)-4-[1-(benzylamino)-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl]-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate

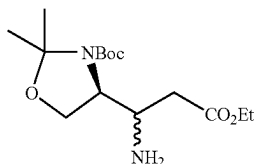


A mixture solution composed of the compound (22.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 164, benzylamine (16 g) and ethanol (100 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=8:1) to obtain the title compound (26 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.42-1.63 (15H,m), 2.24-2.33(0.5H,m), 2.40-2.50(1H,m), 2.63-2.74 (0.5H,m), 3.41-3.52(1H,m), 3.67-3.80(1H,m), 3.83(2H,s), 3.89-4.00(1H,m), 4.03-4.22(4H,m), 7.23-7.45(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 166

tert-Butyl (4S)-4-(1-amino-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate



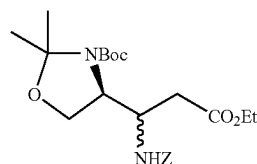
164

10% Palladium on carbon (10 g) was added to a solution of the compound (13.6 g) obtained in Referential Example 165 in ethanol (200 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 2 days under a hydrogen atmosphere. Insoluble matter was removed through Celite pad, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (10.5 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.19(1.5H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.20 (1.5H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.32-1.50(15H,m), 2.63-2.81(2H,m), 3.22-3.34(2H,m), 3.93(1H,dd,J=10.0,6.8 Hz), 4.08(2H,q,J=6.6 Hz), 4.20-4.30(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 167

tert-Butyl (4S)-4-(1-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate

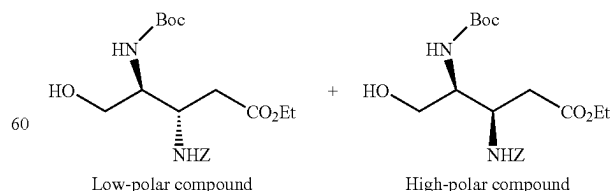


The compound (3.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 166 was suspended in a 9% aqueous solution (56 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate, and a solution of N-(benzyloxy-carbonyloxy)succinimide (2.3 g) in dioxane (12 ml) was added dropwise to the suspension under ice cooling. The resultant mixture was stirred for 3 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water, a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform) to obtain the title compound (3.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.23(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.48(9H,s), 1.56(6H,s), 2.40-2.51(2H,m), 2.63-2.70(2H,m), 3.92-4.04 (1H,m), 4.06-4.10(2H,m), 4.14-4.22(1H,m), 5.09(2H,s), 7.30-7.43(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 168

Ethyl (3S,4S)-3-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-hydroxyvalerate (low-polar compound) and ethyl (3R,4S)-3-[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-hydroxyvalerate (high-polar compound)



Trifluoroacetic acid (100 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (30 g) obtained in Referential Example 167 in methylene chloride (100 ml) under ice

165

cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 ml). Triethylamine (20 ml) and a solution of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (19 g) in methylene chloride (100 ml) were successively added dropwise to this solution under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 4 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain the title low-polar compound (7.6 g) and the title high-polar compound (10 g).

Low-polar Compound:

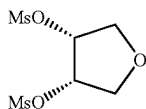
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.24(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.42(9H,s), 2.63(2H,d,J=4.4 Hz), 3.30-3.41(1H,m), 3.50(1H,t,J=9.7 Hz), 3.65(1H,t,J=9.7 Hz), 3.75(1H,d,J=11.7 Hz), 3.90-4.00(1H,m), 4.03-4.23(2H,m), 5.12(2H,s), 5.13-5.25(1H,m), 5.79-6.02(1H,m), 7.32-7.41(5H,m).

High-polar Compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.22(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.41(9H,s), 2.50-2.70(2H,m), 3.20-3.31(1H,m), 3.43-3.51(1H,m), 3.56-3.70(1H,m), 3.74-3.78(1H,m), 4.00-4.19(2H,m), 4.23-4.30(1H,m), 4.78-4.89(1H,m), 5.10(2H,s), 5.56-5.67(1H,m), 7.31-7.40(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 169

(3R,4S)-4-[(Methylsulfonyl)oxy]tetrahydro-3-furanyl methanesulfonate

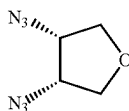


Triethylamine (12.0 ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (3.6 ml) were successively added dropwise to a solution of 1,4-anhydroerythritol (5.0 g) in methylene chloride (50 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes under ice cooling. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride and washed with 10% hydrochloric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (9.2 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.15(6H,s), 3.99(2H,dd,J=11.2,2.5 Hz), 4.16(2H,dd,J=11.2,4.6 Hz), 5.10-5.20(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 170

(3R,4S)-3,4-Diazidotetrahydrofuran



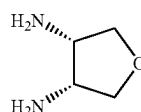
166

The compound (9.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 169 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 ml), sodium azide (18 g) was added, and the resultant mixture was heated and stirred at 100° C. for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (3.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.83(2H,dd,J=8.6,2.0 Hz), 3.96-4.12(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 171

(3R,4S)-Tetrahydro-3,4-furandiamine dihydrochloride

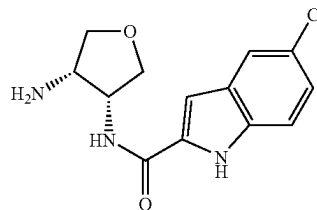


The compound (3.8 g) obtained in Referential Example 170 was dissolved in ethanol (50 ml), 10% palladium on carbon (1.0 g) was added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. Insoluble matter was removed through Celite pad, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. A 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid was added to the resultant residue, giving the hydrochloride salt. The hydrochloride was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of ethanol and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (2.0 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.90(2H,dd,J=9.0,3.7 Hz), 4.01-4.13(4H,m), 8.84(6H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 172

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-Aminotetrahydro-3-furanyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide



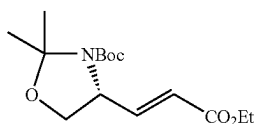
5-Chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (0.29 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (0.2 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.6 g) were successively added to a solution of the compound (0.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 171 in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and the mixture was heated and stirred at 50° C. for a day. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was diluted with a mixed solvent composed of chloroform and methanol (9:1) and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=95:5) to obtain the title compound (0.2 g).

167

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.80-1.92(1H,m), 3.62(1H,dd,J=9.3, 4.2 Hz), 3.68-3.80(2H,m), 4.06(1H,dd,J=9.3,5.6 Hz), 4.21(1H,dd,J=9.3,6.8 Hz), 4.36-4.52(2H,m), 6.87(1H,s), 7.24(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.36(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.44-7.56(1H,m), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.41(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 173

tert-Butyl (4R)-4-[(E)-3-ethoxy-3-oxo-1-propenyl]-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate

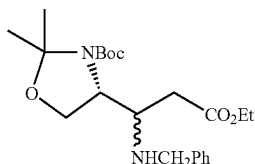


The title compound was obtained from tert-Butyl (4S)-4-formyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate in a similar manner to Referential Example 164.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.29(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.40-1.60(15H,m), 3.80(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.4 Hz), 4.09(1H,dd,J=9.0,6.6 Hz), 4.11-4.21(2H,m), 4.32-4.64(1H,m), 5.78-6.01(1H,m), 6.67-6.89(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 174

tert-Butyl (4R)-4-[1-(benzylamino)-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl]-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate

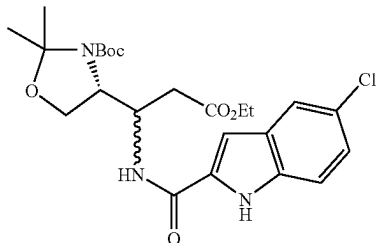


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 173 in a similar manner to Referential Example 165.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.40-1.61(15H,m), 2.21-2.32(0.5H,m), 2.40-2.51(1H,m), 2.61-2.72(0.5H,m), 3.43-3.50(1H,m), 3.67-3.80(1H,m), 3.83(2H,s), 3.90-4.03(1H,m), 4.04-4.22(4H,m), 7.20-7.40(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 175

tert-Butyl (4R)-4-(1-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl)-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-oxazolidine-3-carboxylate



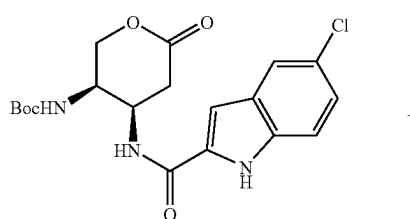
The title compound was obtained by reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 174 in a similar manner to Referential Example 166 to remove a benzyl group and then condensing it with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 172.

168

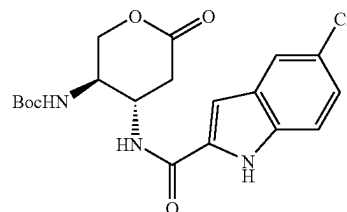
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.23(1.5H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.25(1.5H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.50(4.5H,s), 1.54(4.5H,s), 1.62(6H,s), 2.50-2.70(1.5H,m), 2.86(0.5H,dd,J=16.4,5.5 Hz), 3.80-3.90(0.5H,m), 4.00-4.31(5H,m), 4.41-4.67(0.5H,m), 6.85(0.5H,s), 6.87(0.5H,s), 7.10-7.20(1H,m), 7.34(0.5H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(0.5H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.57(0.5H,s), 7.63(0.5H,s), 7.88(0.5H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.54(0.5H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.40(0.5H,s), 9.54(0.5H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 176

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-6-oxotetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-ylcarbamate (low-polar compound) and tert-butyl; (3R,4S)-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-6-oxotetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-ylcarbamate (high-polar compound):



Low-polar compound



High-polar compound

A 1N aqueous solution (4.0 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to a solution of the compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 175 in ethanol (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 4 hours. Citric acid was added to the reaction mixture to adjust the pH of the reaction mixture to 4.0. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was dissolved in methanol (50 ml), and toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (0.1 g) was added to the solution to stir the resultant mixture for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=99:1) to obtain the title low-polar compound (0.3 g) and the title high-polar compound (0.3 g).

Low-polar Compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 2.70(1H,dd,J=16.5,4.9 Hz), 2.85(1H,dd,J=16.5,4.6 Hz), 3.50-3.61(1H,m), 3.71-3.81(2H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 5.30(1H,d,J=9.5 Hz), 6.89(1H,s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.93(1H,d,J=9.5 Hz), 9.30(1H,s).

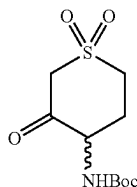
169

High-polar Compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.39(9H,s), 2.75(1H,dd,J=16.5,4.9 Hz), 2.82(1H,dd,J=16.5,4.6 Hz), 3.41-3.52(2H,m), 3.71-3.82(1H,m), 3.85-3.94(1H,m), 5.03(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 6.99(1H,s), 7.22-7.31(1H,m), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.61(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.83(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 9.28(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 177

tert-Butyl
1,1,3-trioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-ylcarbamate



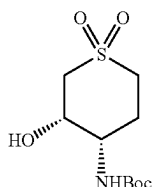
A solution of N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-L-methionine sulfone methyl ester (60.2 g) in tetrahydrofuran (900 ml) was cooled to -78° C., to which 0.5 M potassium bis-(trimethylsilyl)amide (toluene solution, 900 ml) was added dropwise, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours at -78° C. and for 4.5 hours at room temperature. A 1 M aqueous solution of ammonium chloride was added, and the mixture was stirred. The reaction mixture was subjected to liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was then washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and solids formed were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (12.4 g). The water layer separated previously was extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layers were combined, washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The water layers used in the washing were further combined, and extracted again with ethyl acetate, and the extract was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The ethyl acetate extracts were combined, dried and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (27.7 g) (total amount of the title compound: 40.1 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.85-1.96(1H,m), 2.76-2.78(1H,m), 3.34-3.46(2H,m), 4.05(1H,dd,J=13.5,3.7 Hz), 4.14(1H,d,J=13.5 Hz), 4.38-4.44(1H,m), 5.46(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 262(M-H)⁻.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 178

tert-Butyl (3R*,4R*)-3-hydroxy-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-ylcarbamate



Sodium borohydride (2.17 g) was added to a suspension of the compound (10.1 g) obtained in Referential Example

170

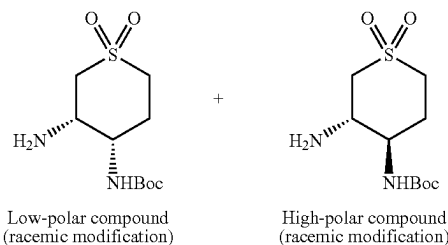
177 in methanol (200 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. After ethyl acetate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, the resultant water layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (9.96 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 2.21-2.36(2H,m), 3.03-3.17(2H,m), 3.26-3.28(2H,m), 3.77-3.80(2H,m), 4.26-4.28(1H,m), 5.05-5.07(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 264(M-H)⁻.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 179

tert-Butyl (3R*,4R*)-3-amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-ylcarbamate (low-polar compound) and tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-ylcarbamate (high-polar compound)



Diethyl azodicarboxylate (6.96 g) was added to a solution of the compound (9.66 g) obtained in Referential Example 178 and triphenylphosphine (10.5 g) in tetrahydrofuran (150 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4.5 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, diethyl ether was added to the residue, and solids formed were collected by filtration. The thus-collected solids were purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=7:3) to obtain a mixture (7.25 g) containing tert-butyl 1,1-dioxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyran-4-ylcarbamate as a colorless solid. The mother liquor was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=7:3) to obtain a mixture (9.18 g) containing tert-butyl 1,1-dioxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyran-4-ylcarbamate as a colorless solid (total amount: 16.4 g). The thus-obtained mixtures were dissolved in dioxane (60 ml), and 28% aqueous ammonia (60 ml) was added. The resultant mixture was stirred at 60° C. for 4.5 hours in a sealed tube. After allowing to cool, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. After dioxane was distilled off, the residue was extracted 5 times with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layers were combined and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=96:4) to obtain the title low-polar compound (2.31 g) and the title high-polar compound (4.31 g).

Low-polar Compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 2.14-2.28(2H,m), 3.01-3.08(3H,m), 3.23(1H,dd,J=13.8,3.9 Hz), 3.47-3.49(1H,m), 3.71-3.76(1H,m), 5.32(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 265(M+H)⁺.

171

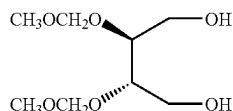
High-polar Compound:

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.94-2.01(1H,m), 2.37-2.44(1H,m), 2.91(1H,dd,J=11.2,14.1 Hz), 3.04-3.07(2H,m), 3.12-3.19(1H,m), 3.26-3.30(1H,m), 3.39-3.42(1H,m), 4.62(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 265(M+H⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 180

(2S,3S)-2,3-Bis(methoxymethoxy)-1,4-butanediol

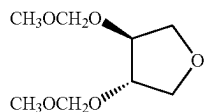


Chloromethyl methyl ether (4.8 ml) was added dropwise to a mixture solution composed of diethyl L-tartrate (8.6 g), diisopropylethylamine (40 ml) and methylene chloride (40 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with 10% hydrochloric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran. The solution was added dropwise to a tetrahydrofuran suspension of lithium aluminum hydride (2.2 g) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours under ice cooling. After a 10% aqueous solution of sodium hydrogensulfate was carefully added under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and extracted with ethyl acetate. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (3.0 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.55-1.64(2H,m), 3.44(6H,s), 3.70-3.81(6H,m), 4.70(2H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 4.76(2H,d,J=6.9 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 181

(3S,4S)-3,4-Bis(methoxymethoxy)tetrahydrofuran



Diethyl azodicarboxylate (2.46 ml) was added dropwise to a mixture solution composed of the compound (3.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 180, triphenylphosphine (4.5 g), tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) and toluene (40 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, a mixed solvent (160 ml) of hexane and diethyl ether (1:1) was added to the resultant residue, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours. Insoluble matter deposited was then collected by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated, and the

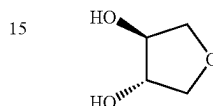
172

resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain the title compound (1.95 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.38(6H,s), 3.80(2H,dd,J=9.2,1.7 Hz), 4.00(2H,dd,J=9.2,4.4 Hz), 4.23(2H,dd,J=4.4,1.7 Hz), 4.67(2H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 4.71(2H,d,J=6.9 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 182

(3S,4S)-Tetrahydro-3,4-furandiol

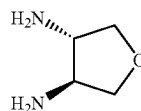


Concentrated hydrochloric acid (2.1 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (1.95 g) obtained in Referential Example 181 in methanol (6.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was diluted with chloroform and dried over potassium carbonate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.52 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.77(2H,d,J=4.7 Hz), 3.73(2H,d,J=10.2 Hz), 4.08(2H,dd,J=10.2,3.7 Hz), 4.18-4.34(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 183

(3S,4S)-Tetrahydro-3,4-furandiamine

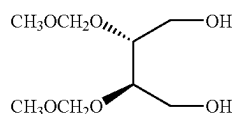


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 182 in a similar manner to the processes described in Referential Examples 169 to 171.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35-1.46(4H,m), 3.19(2H,dd,J=5.6, 4.1 Hz), 3.50(2H,dd,J=9.0, 4.1 Hz), 4.09(2H,dd,J=9.0,5.6 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 184

(2R,3R)-2,3-Bis(methoxymethoxy)-1,4-butanediol



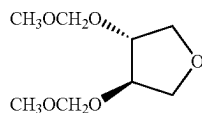
The title compound was obtained from diethyl D-tartrate in a similar manner to Referential Example 180.

¹H-NMR: The same as that of the enantiomer in Referential Example 180.

173

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 185

(3R,4R)-3,4-Bis(methoxymethoxy)tetrahydrofuran

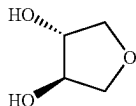


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 184 in a similar manner to Referential Example 181.

¹H-NMR: The same as that of the enantiomer in Referential Example 181.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 186

(3R,4R)-Tetrahydro-3,4-furandiol

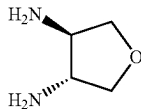


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 185 in a similar manner to Referential Example 182.

¹H-NMR: The same as that of the enantiomer in Referential Example 182.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 187

(3R,4R)-Tetrahydro-3,4-furandiamine

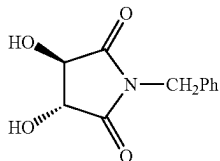


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 186 in a similar manner to Referential Example 183.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: The same as that of the enantiomer in Referential Example 183.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 188

(3R,4R)-1-Benzyl-3,4-dihydroxy-2,5-pyrrolidinedione



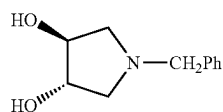
L-Tartaric acid (30 g) and benzylamine (22 ml) were added to xylene (150 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux at 150° C. for 3 hours using a Dean-Stark trap. After the reaction mixture was allowed to cool overnight, crystals were collected by filtration and washed with acetone. The resultant crude product was recrystallized from ethanol to obtain the title compound (23.2 g).

174

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.36-4.40(2H,m), 4.55(each 1H,AB type d,J=15 Hz), 6.26-6.30(2H,m), 7.25-7.35(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 189

(3S,4S)-1-Benzyl-3,4-pyrrolidinediol

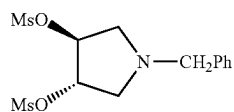


The compound (11 g) obtained in Referential Example 188 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (110 ml), and lithium aluminum hydride (5.69 g) was added portionwise to the solution under ice cooling. The mixture was heated to room temperature for 1 hour and heated under reflux and for additional a night. After allowing the reaction mixture to cool, water (5.7 ml), a 15% aqueous solution (5.7 ml) of sodium hydroxide and water (17.1 ml) were added under ice cooling in that order, and the mixture was heated to room temperature and stirred for 1 hour. After deposits were filtered through Celite, and the mother liquor was concentrated under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to obtain title compound (6.35 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.40-2.44(2H,m), 2.88-2.92(2H,m), 3.58(each 1H,AB type d,J=7.8 Hz), 4.04(2H,t,J=4.2 Hz), 7.25-7.34(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 190

(3S,4S)-1-Benzyl-4-[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]pyrrolidinyl methanesulfonate

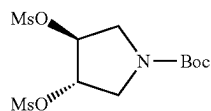


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 189 in a similar manner to Referential Example 169.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.76(2H,dd,J=11,4.6 Hz), 3.08(6H,s), 3.64(2H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 3.68-3.75(2H,m), 5.12-5.15(2H,m), 7.27-7.35(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 191

tert-Butyl (3S,4S)-3,4-bis[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]-1-pyrrolidinecarboxylate



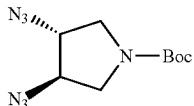
175

The compound (1.57 g) obtained in Referential Example 190 was dissolved in 1,2-dichloroethane (16 ml), 1-chloro-ethyl chloroformate (0.73 ml) was added at room temperature, and the resultant mixture was heated under reflux for 4 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, methanol (16 ml) was added to the resultant residue, and the resultant mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hour, allowed to cool and concentrated. Crystals obtained by recrystallization from ethyl acetate were collected by filtration to obtain (3S,4S)-3,4-bis-[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]pyrrolidine hydrochloride (1.30 g) as colorless crystals. Di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.15 ml) was added to a solution of the hydrochloride thus obtained and triethylamine (1.40 ml) in methylene chloride (26 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, the residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:9-1:1) to obtain the title compound (1.40 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 3.12(6H,s), 3.70-3.73(2H,m), 3.79(1H,d,J=4.5 Hz), 3.82(1H,d,J=4.5 Hz), 5.19(2H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 192

tert-Butyl
(3R,4R)-3,4-diazo-1-pyrrolidinecarboxylate

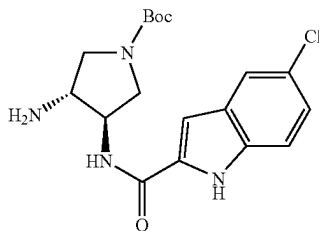


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 191 in a similar manner to Referential Example 170.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 3.37-3.46(2H,m), 3.64-3.71(2H,m), 3.96(2H,t,J=3.2 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 193

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-3-amino-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 192 in a similar manner to Referential Examples 171 and 172.

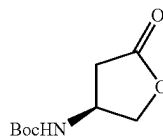
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39(9H,s), 2.95-3.00(1H,m), 3.09-3.13(1H,m), 3.52(1H,dd,J=10,6.5 Hz), 3.68(1H,dd,

176

J=10,7.8 Hz), 4.04-4.09(2H,m), 7.16(1H,s), 7.18(1H,s), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 8.50(1H,d,J=6.5 Hz), 11.77(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 194

tert-Butyl (3S)-5-oxotetrahydro-3-furanylcarbamate

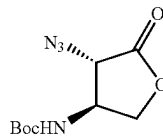


di-tert-Butyl dicarbonate (4.1 g) and 10% palladium on carbon (0.4 g) were added to a solution of benzyl (3S)-(-)-tetrahydro-5-oxo-3-furanylcarbamate (3.3 g) in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred for a day in a hydrogen atmosphere. After insoluble matter was filtered through Celite pad, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain the title compound (1.5 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 2.45(1H,dd,J=17.8,2.7 Hz), 2.86(1H,dd,J=17.8,7.3 Hz), 4.12-4.23(1H,m), 4.54-4.62(2H,m), 4.85-4.95(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 195

tert-Butyl
(3S,4S)-4-azido-5-oxotetrahydro-3-furanylcarbamate



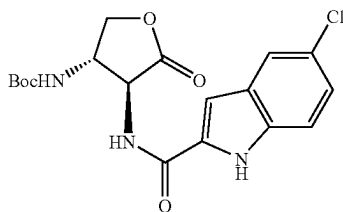
1 M Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (tetrahydrofuran solution, 8.65 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (0.87 g) obtained in Referential Example 194 in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) at -78° C., and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. After a solution of p-toluenesulfonylazide (1.02 g) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was then added, and the mixture was stirred for 5 minutes, trimethylchlorosilane (1.7 ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether, washed with 10% hydrochloric acid, a 5% saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain the title compound (0.62 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 4.09(1H,dt,J=15.3,7.6 Hz), 4.12-4.23(1H,m), 4.37-4.50(1H,m), 4.54(1H,dd,J=9.0, 7.6 Hz), 4.81-4.90(1H,m)

177

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 196

tert-Butyl (3S,4S)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-oxotetrahydro-3-furanylcarbamate

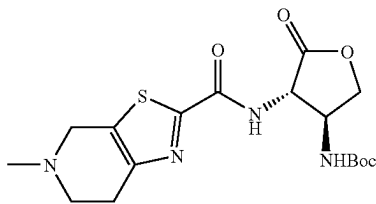


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 195 in a similar manner to Referential Examples 90 and 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 4.01-4.13(1H,m), 4.20-4.36(1H,m), 4.78-4.93(2H,m), 6.15(1H,s), 6.93(1H,s), 7.03-7.11(1H,m), 7.20-7.28(1H,m), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.61(1H,s), 9.27(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 197

tert-Butyl (3S,4S)-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-oxotetrahydro-3-furanylcarbamate

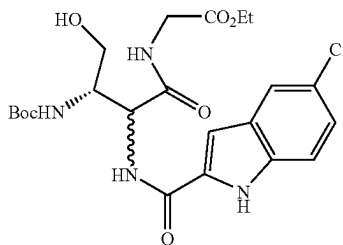


The title compound was obtained by getting tert-butyl (3S,4S)-4-amino-5-oxotetrahydro-3-furanylcarboxylate from the compound obtained in Referential Example 195 in a similar manner to Referential Example 90 and then reacting with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in accordance with the reaction conditions of Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 2.52(3H,s), 2.83(2H,t, J=5.9 Hz), 2.79-3.02(2H,m), 3.74(2H,s), 4.03-4.12(1H,m), 4.21-4.36(1H,m), 4.80-4.95(2H,m), 6.14-6.24(1H,m), 7.76-7.85(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 198

Ethyl 2-[[[(3S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-hydroxybutanoyl]amino]-acetate



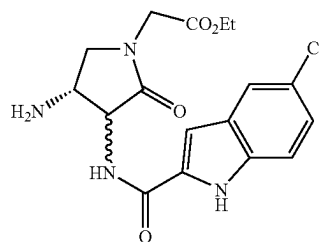
178

The compound (0.4 g) obtained in Referential Example 196, glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride (1.0 g) and triethylamine (1.0 ml) were added to ethanol (20 ml), and the mixture was heated and stirred at 60° C. for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with chloroform and washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=98:2) to obtain title compound (0.31 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.17(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 1.34(6H,s), 1.36(3H,s), 3.51-3.63(0.6H,m), 3.72-3.80(2H,m), 4.06(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 4.11-4.23(1.4H,m), 4.67-4.82(1H,m), 4.85-4.91(1H,m), 6.48(0.4H,d,J=9.5 Hz), 6.80(0.6H,d,J=9.5 Hz), 7.10-7.22(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(0.4H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.73(0.6H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.23-8.31(0.6H,m), 8.34-8.41(0.4H,m), 8.43-8.50(1H,m), 11.83(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 199

Ethyl 2-((4R)-4-amino-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl)acetate hydrochloride



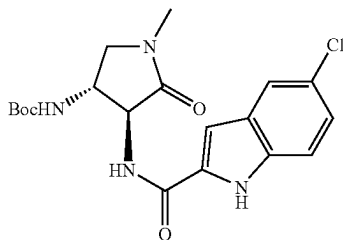
The title compound was obtained by converting the compound obtained in Referential Example 198 into a pyrrolidone derivative using the reaction conditions described in Referential Example 181 and then removing a tert-butoxycarbonyl group in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.17(2H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 1.23(1H,t, J=7.0 Hz), 3.31-3.40(0.6H,m), 3.57(0.4H,d,J=11.2 Hz), 3.90-4.23(4H,m), 4.42(0.6H,dd,J=12.0,6.1 Hz), 4.50-4.60(0.4H,m), 4.62(0.6H,dd,J=12.0,3.9 Hz), 5.12-5.23(0.4H,m), 7.17(0.4H,s), 7.20(0.4H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.28(0.6H,dd, J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.30(0.6H,s), 7.44(0.4H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.50(0.6H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.75(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.20-8.33(1H,m), 8.71-8.94(3.6H,m), 9.22-9.35(0.4H,m), 11.97(0.4H,s), 12.44(0.6H,s).

179

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 200

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbo-
nyl]-amino]-1-methyl-5-oxopyrrolidin-3-ylcarbam-
ate

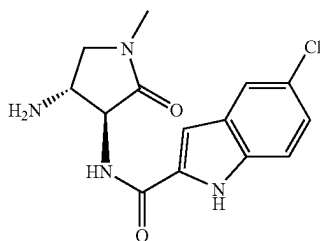


The title compound was obtained by treating a compound obtained by reaction of the compound obtained in Referential Example 196 with methylamine (40% methanol solution) in a similar manner to Referential Example 198 under the same conditions as those in Referential Example 181.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 4.26(1H, br.s), 4.36(2H,m), 4.51-4.52(1H,m), 5.35(1H,br.s), 6.95-6.99(2H,m), 7.22-7.32(3H,m), 7.63(1H,s), 8.95(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 201

N-[(3S,4R)-4-Amino-1-methyl-2-oxopyrrolidin-3-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide

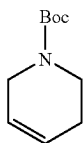


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 200 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.95(3H,d,J=5.1 Hz), 3.91-3.93(1H, m), 4.19(1H,d,J=3.7 Hz), 4.36(1H,dd,J=11.1,1.7 Hz), 4.48(1H,dd,J=11.2,2.0 Hz), 6.90-6.97(2H,m), 7.21-7.33(2H,m), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.90(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 202

tert-Butyl 3,6-dihydro-1-(2H)-pyridinecarboxylate



tert-Butyl dicarbonate (6.55 g) was added to a mixture of 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (2.50 g) and a 10% aqueous solution (3.0 ml) of sodium carbonate, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with ethyl

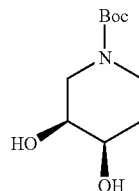
180

acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with 0.5N hydrochloric acid, water, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride in that order and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (5.08 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 2.12(2H,br.s), 3.48(2H, t,J=5.6 Hz), 3.88(2H,br.s), 5.60(1H,br.s), 5.78-5.90(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 203

tert-Butyl
(3R*,4S*)-3,4-dihydroxy-1-piperidinecarboxylate

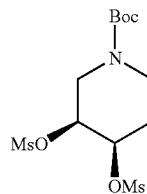


The compound (18.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 202 was dissolved in acetonitrile (200 ml), and water (38 ml), a 0.039 M aqueous solution (82 ml) of osmium tetroxide and N-methylmorpholine N-oxide (23.13 g) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 17 hours. An excessive oxidizing agent was treated with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfite to conduct extraction with water, 0.5N hydrochloric acid, water, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride in that order, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:3) to obtain the title compound (15.0 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.60-1.73(1H,m), 1.77-1.90(1H,m), 2.68(1H,br.s), 2.80-3.20(1H,br), 3.22-3.32(1H, m), 3.42(1H,dd,J=14.3,3.4 Hz), 3.50-3.62(2H,m), 3.77(1H, brs), 3.81-3.92(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 204

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3,4-bis[(methylsulfonyl)oxy]-1-piperidinecarboxylate



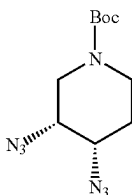
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 203 in a similar manner to Referential Example 169.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.85-1.97(1H,m), 2.08-2.20(1H,m), 3.00-4.20(4H,m), 3.12(6H,s), 4.85(1H,br.s), 4.94(1H,br.s).

181

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 205

tert-Butyl
(3R*,4S*)-3,4-diazo-1-piperidinecarboxylate

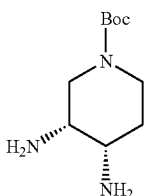


The title compound was obtained from the compound 15
obtained in Referential Example 204 in a similar manner to
Referential Example 170.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.70-1.80(1H,m), 1.90-
2.00(1H,m), 3.05-4.00(6H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 206

tert-Butyl
(3R*,4S*)-3,4-diamino-1-piperidinecarboxylate

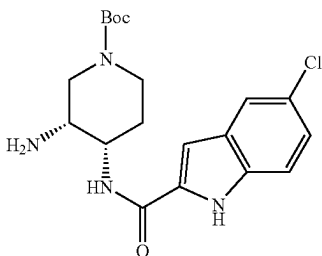


The title compound was obtained from the compound 35
obtained in Referential Example 205 in a similar manner to
Referential Example 171.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.48-1.60(2H,m), 1.80-
2.10(4H,br), 2.85-2.91(2H,m), 2.97(1H,br.s), 3.09(1H,dd,
J=13.6,2.7 Hz), 3.74(1H,dd,J=13.6,4.2 Hz), 3.81(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 207

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-{[(5-chloroindol-2-
yl)-carbonyl]amino}-1-piperidinecarboxylate



The compound (3.23 g) obtained in Referential Example 60
206 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml), and
triethylamine (2.08 ml) and the compound (3.80 g) obtained
in Referential Example 52 were added to the solution. The
mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The
reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure,
and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction
with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was
washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydro-
gencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium

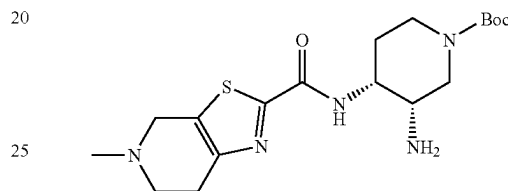
182

chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then
concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue
was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (meth-
ylene chloride:methanol=20:1-10:1) to obtain the title com-
pound (2.70 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.58(3H,m), 1.41(9H,s),
1.75-1.90(1H,m), 2.95(1H,br.s), 2.98-3.05(1H,m), 3.19-3.28
(1H,m), 3.74(1H,dd,J=19.5,15.4 Hz), 3.79(1H,br.s), 4.04-
4.12(1H,m), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.7,1.9 Hz), 7.21(1H,s), 7.42
(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.00(1H,br.d,J=7.6
Hz), 11.80(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 208

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,
7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]
amino}-1-piperidinecarboxylate

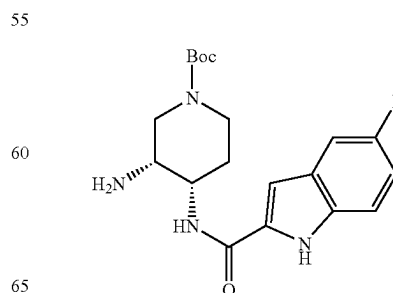


The compound (3.23 g) obtained in Referential Example
206 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml), and
triethylamine (2.08 ml) was added. The compound (3.83 g)
obtained in Referential Example 149 was then added, and
the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The
reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure,
and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction
with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was
washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydro-
gencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium
chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the
solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The result-
ant residue was purified by column chromatography on
silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=10:1-5:1) to obtain
the title compound (2.27 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.62(3H,m), 1.47(9H,s), 1.78-
1.88(1H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.81(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 2.85-2.98(3H,
m), 3.00-3.15(2H,m), 3.71(2H,s), 3.80-4.15(3H,m), 7.79
(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 209

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-{[(5-fluoroindol-2-
yl)-carbonyl]amino}-1-piperidinecarboxylate



183

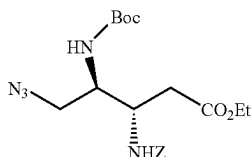
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 206 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 172.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.40-1.70(3H,m), 1.48(9H,s), 2.79-2.92(1H,m), 2.99-3.14(1H,m), 4.00-4.23(3H,m), 6.85(1H,s), 7.04(1H,td,J=9.0,2.4 Hz), 7.07-7.20(1H,br), 7.27(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.4 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=9.0,4.4 Hz), 9.25-9.50(1H,br).

MS (ESI)m/z: 377(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 210

Ethyl (3R,4R)-5-azido-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]valerate



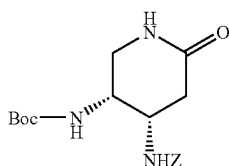
Triethylamine (4.80 ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (1.55 ml) were successively added dropwise to a solution of the (3S,4S)-compound obtained in Referential Example 168 (low-polar compound) (7.1 g) in methylene chloride (100 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes under ice cooling. The reaction mixture was diluted with chloroform and washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain a methanesulfonyl derivative (9.20 g). A mixture solution composed of the thus-obtained methanesulfonyl derivative, sodium azide (5.64 g) and N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml) was stirred at 80° C. for 20 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform) to obtain the title compound (5.42 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.24(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.43(9H,s), 2.56-2.68(2H,m), 3.48-3.60(2H,m), 3.88-3.97(1H,m), 4.04-4.20(3H,m), 4.88-4.97(1H,br), 5.10(2H,s), 5.60-5.75(1H,br), 7.30-7.40(5H,m)

MS (ESI) m/z: 436(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 211

Benzyl (4S,5R)-5-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-piperidin-4-ylcarbamate



A Lindlar catalyst (2.71 g) was added to a solution of the compound (5.42 g) obtained in Referential Example 210 in a mixed solvent of ethanol (150 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (10.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere and then for 14 hours under nitrogen

184

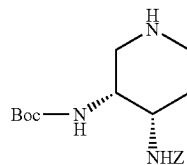
conditions. After insoluble matter was removed through Celite pad, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml), and triethylamine (3.0 ml) was added thereto. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=25:1) to obtain the title compound (2.50 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 2.30-2.50(1H,br), 2.65-2.90(1H,br), 3.15-3.30(1H,br), 3.35-3.65(1H,br), 4.00-4.25(2H,br), 5.11(2H,s), 5.55-5.60(1H,br), 5.65-5.90(1H,br), 6.25-6.55(1H,br), 7.28-7.40(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 364(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 212

Benzyl (3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]piperidin-4-ylcarbamate



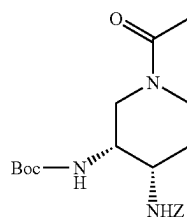
1 M Borane.tetrahydrofuran complex (tetrahydrofuran solution, 34.0 ml) was added dropwise to a Tetrahydrofuran solution (70 μl) of the compound (2.49 g) obtained in Referential Example 211 under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. Methanol (100 ml) was added to the reaction mixture, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Ethanol (45 ml), water (5 ml) and triethylamine (10 ml) were added to the residue, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 24 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol: water=7:3:1, lower layer) to obtain the title compound (1.61 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.65-1.72(2H,m), 2.67(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 2.82(1H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 2.90-3.10(1H,br), 3.60-3.80(2H,m), 3.90-4.00(1H,m), 5.00-5.20(2H,m), 5.40-5.60(2H,br), 7.25-7.74(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 350(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 213

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-1-acetyl-4-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-piperidin-3-ylcarbamate



185

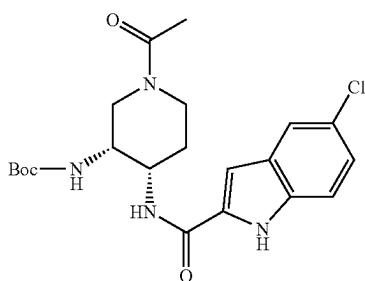
The title compound was obtained by reaction of the compound obtained in Referential Example 212 with acetyl chloride and triethylamine in methylene chloride.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.85-2.15(2H,m), 2.07(1.5H,s), 2.14(1.5H,s), 2.75-2.90(1H,m), 3.10-3.20(0.5H,m), 3.25-3.35(0.5H,br,d,J=14.2 Hz), 3.65-4.05(3H,m), 4.38-4.47(0.5H,br,d,J=13.0 Hz), 4.5,4-4.63(0.5H,m), 4.69-4.83(1H,br), 4.98-5.20(2.5H,m), 5.90-6.05(0.5H,br), 7.30-7.40(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 392(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 214

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-1-acetyl-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}piperidin-3-ylcarbamate



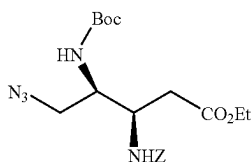
10% Palladium on carbon (532 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (745 mg) obtained in Referential Example 213 in ethanol (50 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. Insoluble matter was removed by filtration through Celite, and the filtrate was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was treated with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (467 mg) in a similar manner to Referential Example 68 to obtain the title compound (650 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52(9H,s), 1.60-1.80(2H,m), 2.12(1H,s), 2.16(2H,s), 2.30-2.45(0.5H,m), 2.67-2.82(0.3H,m), 2.89(0.7H,d,J=13.7 Hz), 3.23(0.7H,t,J=12.9 Hz), 3.37(0.3H,d,J=13.7 Hz), 3.81-3.95(1H,m), 4.05-4.33(2H,m), 4.62-4.72(0.3H,br), 4.77(0.7H,d,J=13.7 Hz), 5.10-5.27(1H,m), 6.81(0.3H,br,s), 6.85(0.7H,s), 7.21(1H,br,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.57(0.3H,br,s), 7.61(0.7H,s), 8.55-8.65(0.5H,br), 9.43-9.53(0.7H,br), 9.60-9.70(0.3H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 435(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 215

Ethyl (3R,4R)-5-azido-3-[[5-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]valerate



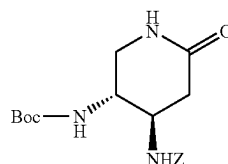
The title compound was obtained from the (3R,4S)-compound (high-polar compound) obtained in Referential Example 168 in a similar manner to Referential Example 210.

186

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.23(3H,t,J=6.6 Hz), 1.42(9H,s), 2.51-2.63(2H,m), 3.43-3.50(2H,m), 3.84-3.92(1H,m), 4.03-4.23(3H,m), 5.10(2H,s), 5.11-5.24(1H,m), 5.54-5.60(1H,m), 7.32-7.44(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 216

Benzyl (4R,5R)-5-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-2-oxo-piperidin-4-ylcarbamate

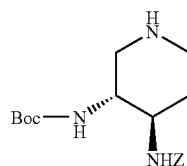


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 215 in a similar manner to Referential Example 211.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35(9H,s), 2.19(1H,dd,J=17.4, 9.1 Hz), 2.41-2.51(1H,m), 2.97(1H,t,J=9.1 Hz), 3.00-3.11(1H,m), 3.51-3.64(1H,m), 3.67-3.73(1H,m), 5.00(2H,s), 6.71-6.80(1H,m), 7.20-7.30(5H,m), 7.44-7.52(1H,m), 8.30(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 217

Benzyl (3R,4R)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]piperidin-4-ylcarbamate

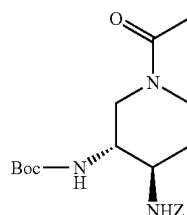


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 216 in a similar manner to Referential Example 212.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.39(9H,s), 2.05(2H,d,J=12.9 Hz), 2.40(1H,t,J=11.0 Hz), 2.63(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 3.09(1H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 3.31(1H,d,J=11.0 Hz), 3.42-3.53(2H,m), 4.80-4.91(1H,m), 5.09(2H,s), 5.23-5.32(1H,m), 7.34-7.41(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 218

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-1-acetyl-4-[[5-(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-piperidin-3-ylcarbamate



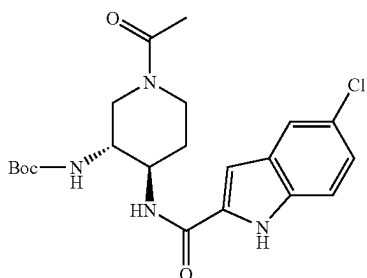
187

The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 217 in a similar manner to Referential Example 213.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.42(9H,s), 1.53-1.67(1H,m), 1.89-2.00(1H,m), 2.09(1.5H,s), 2.15(1.5H,s), 2.57(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 2.78(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 3.20-3.30(1H,m), 3.40-3.56(2H,m), 4.23-4.31(1H,m), 4.45-4.56(1H,m), 5.01-5.08(1H,m), 5.10(2H,s), 7.32-7.44(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 219

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-1-acetyl-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]piperidin-3-yl]carbamate

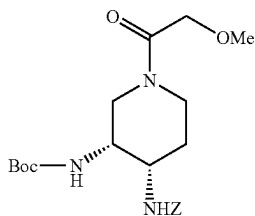


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 218 in a similar manner to Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35(9H,s), 1.42-1.56(2H,m), 2.00-2.10(1H,m), 2.12(1.5H,s), 2.17(1.5H,s), 2.31-2.43(1H,m), 2.67-3.00(1H,m), 3.55-3.63(1H,m), 3.78-4.00(1H,m), 4.03-4.21(1H,m), 4.78-5.24(2H,m), 6.91(0.5H,s), 6.92(0.5H,s), 7.22-7.32(1H,m), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.58(1H,s), 9.45(0.5H,s), 9.51(0.5H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 220

Benzyl (3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-4-ylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 212 and methoxyacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Referential Example 213.

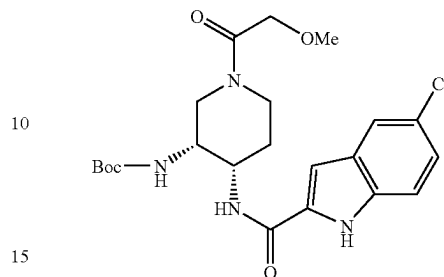
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.70-2.15(2H,m), 2.70-2.85(1H,m), 2.90-3.30(1H,m), 3.35-3.70(1H,m), 3.43(3H,s), 3.75-3.90(2H,m), 3.90-4.25(3H,m), 4.40-4.80(1H,m), 5.05-5.09(1H,m), 5.10(2H,br.s), 7.30-7.40(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 322(M+H⁺).

188

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 221

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]carbamate



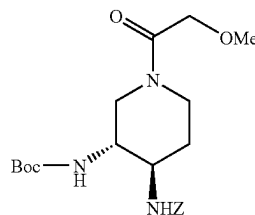
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 in a similar manner to Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52(9H,s), 1.60-1.80(1H,m), 2.20-2.40(1H,m), 2.70-2.80(0.6H,m), 2.90-3.00(0.4H,m), 3.15-3.30(0.4H,m), 3.32-3.40(0.6H,m), 3.46,3.49(total 3H, each s), 3.85-4.30(5H,m), 4.55-4.80(1H,m), 5.11(0.4H,br.s), 6.05(0.6H,br.s), 6.86(1H,s), 7.20(1H,dd,J=8.7,2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.61(1H,s), 8.40-8.60(1H,m), 9.41(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 465(M+H⁺)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 222

Benzyl (3R,4R)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-4-ylcarbamate

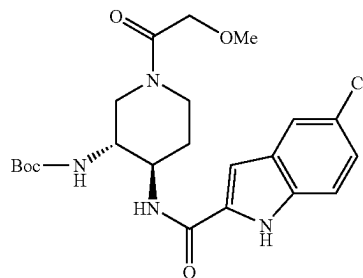


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 217 and methoxyacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Referential Example 213.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.41(9H,s), 1.45-1.67(1H,m), 2.01-2.14(1H,m), 2.63(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 2.75(1H,t,J=12.0 Hz), 3.20-3.30(1H,m), 3.32-3.41(5H,m), 3.44-3.56(2H,m), 4.21-4.32(1H,m), 4.50-4.63(1H,m), 5.03-5.08(1H,m), 5.09(2H,s), 7.32-7.40(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 223

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]carbamate



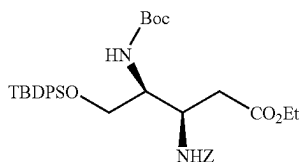
189

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 222 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35(9H,s), 1.41-1.56(2H,m), 2.11-2.23(0.5H,m), 2.34-2.50(0.5H,m), 2.78-2.89(0.5H,m), 3.01-3.12(0.5H,m), 3.42(5H,s), 3.45-3.56(1H,m), 3.78-3.89(1H,m), 4.00-4.21(2H,m), 4.78-5.21(2H,m), 6.91(0.5H,s), 6.93(0.5H,s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.59(1H,s), 9.37(0.5H,s), 9.54(0.5H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 224

Ethyl (3R,4S)-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[tert-butoxycarbonyl]amino]-5-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-valerate

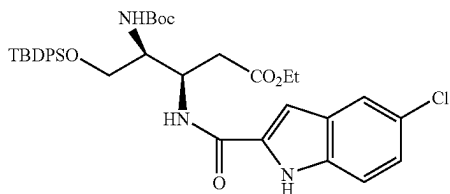


Triethylamine (0.47 ml), imidazole (0.19 g) and tert-butylchlorodiphenylsilane (0.7 ml) were successively added to a solution of the (3R,4S)-compound (high-polar compound) (0.74 g) obtained in Referential Example 168 in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=8:1) to obtain the title compound (0.85 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.19(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 1.40(9H,s), 2.40-2.50(1H,m), 2.60(1H,dd,J=15.9, 4.5 Hz), 3.56-3.67(1H,m), 3.74(1H,dd,J=11.2,4.5 Hz), 3.78-3.89(1H,m), 4.08(2H,q,J=7.4 Hz), 4.21-4.30(1H,m), 4.99-5.13(3H,m), 5.41-5.52(1H,m), 7.40-7.53(6H,m), 7.60-7.72(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 225

Ethyl (3R,4S)-4-[[tert-butoxycarbonyl]amino]-5-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]valerate



The title compound was obtained by removing the benzyloxycarbonyl group of the compound obtained in Refer-

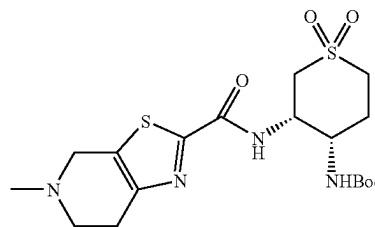
190

ential Example 224 and condensing with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.10(9H,s), 1.20(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 1.32(9H,s), 2.40-2.52(1H,m), 2.71(1H,dd,J=15.9,4.5 Hz), 3.67-3.81(2H,m), 4.00-4.20(2H,m), 4.56-4.74(1H,m), 5.00-5.11(1H,m), 6.81(1H,s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.40-7.50(6H,m), 7.58(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.63-7.74(5H,m), 9.01-9.14(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 226

tert-Butyl (3R*,4R*)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1,1-dioxo-hexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-ylcarbamate

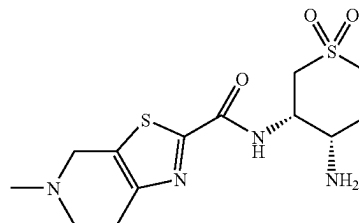


The title compound was obtained from the (3R*,4R*)-compound (low-polar compound) obtained in Referential Example 179 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Referential Example 68.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 2.30-2.37(2H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.82-2.85(2H,m), 2.92-2.95(2H,m), 3.17-3.20(4H,m), 3.40-3.43(1H,m), 3.69-3.77(2H,m), 3.97-3.98(1H,m), 4.98(1H,br), 5.25(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 227

N-(3R*,4R*)-4-Amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 226 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

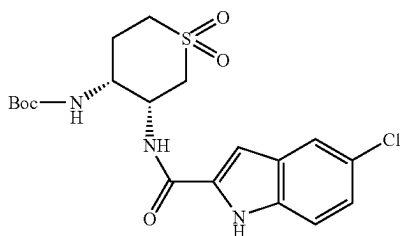
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.29-2.33(2H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.16(2H,br), 3.40(2H,br), 3.52(2H,br), 3.69-3.76(3H,m), 4.48(1H,br), 4.71-4.82(2H,m), 8.34(2H,br), 8.82(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 345(M+H)⁺.

191

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 228

tert-Butyl (3R*,4R*)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-yl]carbamate



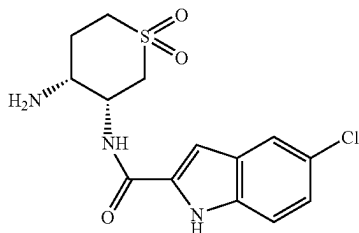
The title compound was obtained from the (3R*,4R*)-compound (low-polar compound) obtained in Referential Example 179 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 68.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.34(9H,s), 2.09(2H,br), 3.07(1H,d,J=12.6 Hz), 3.24-3.28(1H,m), 3.48(2H,br), 4.12(1H,br), 4.53(1H,br), 7.04(1H,s), 7.16-7.18(2H,m), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.67(1H,s), 8.37(1H,br), 11.81(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 442(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 229

N-[(3R*,4R*)-4-Amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 228 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

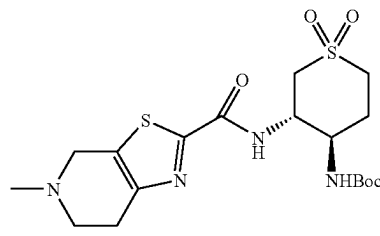
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.24-2.33(2H,m), 3.43-3.55(3H,m), 3.60-3.66(1H,m), 3.77(1H,br), 4.75-4.79(1H,m), 7.18-7.21(2H,m), 7.46(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.39(2H,br), 8.58(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 11.93(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 342(M+H)⁺.

192

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 230

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-yl]carbamate



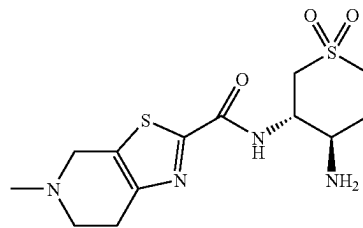
The title compound was obtained from the (3R*,4S*)-compound (high-polar compound) obtained in Referential Example 179 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Referential Example 98.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.32(9H,s), 2.14-2.24(1H,m), 2.33-2.38(1H,m), 2.50(3H,s), 2.78-2.83(2H,m), 2.86-2.95(2H,m), 3.08-3.14(3H,m), 3.55(1H,d,J=13.4 Hz), 3.68(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 3.72(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 3.86-3.88(1H,m), 4.45-4.53(1H,m), 4.75(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.76(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 445(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 231

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-Amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 230 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

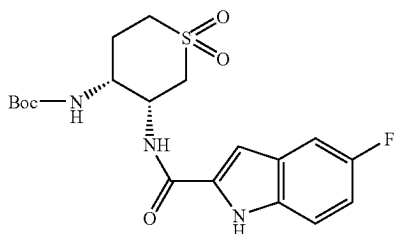
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.03-2.12(1H,m), 2.51(1H,br), 2.93(3H,s), 3.14(2H,d,J=12.2 Hz), 3.28(2H,br), 3.33(2H,br), 3.48(3H,br), 3.72(2H,br), 4.49(2H,br), 4.71-4.74(1H,m), 8.38(2H,br), 9.21-9.24(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 345(M+H)⁺.

193

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 232

tert-Butyl (3R*,4R*)-3-[[[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-yl]carbamate



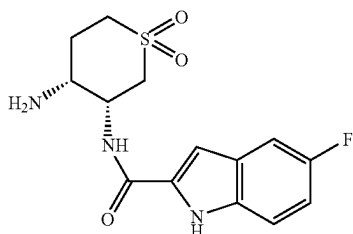
The title compound was obtained from the (3R*,4R*)-compound (low-polar compound) obtained in Referential Example 179 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 68.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.37(9H,s), 2.10-2.13(2H,m), 3.06(1H,br), 3.37-3.49(3H,m), 4.13(1H,br), 4.57(1H,br), 6.95-7.01(2H,m), 7.14(1H,br), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.41(1H,dd,J=8.8,4.5 Hz), 8.28(1H,br), 11.68(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 426(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 233

N-[(3R*,4R*)-4-Amino-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl]-5-fluoroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 232 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.25-2.31(1H,m), 2.47(1H,br), 3.30(1H,br), 3.49-3.53(2H,m), 3.60-3.66(1H,m), 3.78(1H,br), 4.79(1H,br), 7.01-7.05(1H,m), 7.21(1H,s), 7.38(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.44(1H,dd,J=8.8,4.4 Hz), 8.40(2H,br), 8.56(1H,br), 11.81(1H,s).

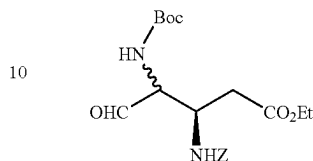
MS (ESI) m/z: 326(M+H)⁺.

194

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 234

Ethyl (3R)-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-oxovalerate

5



Sulfur trioxide-pyridine complexes (1.5 g) was gradually added to a mixed solvent composed of the (3R,4S)-compound (high-polar compound) (0.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 168, dimethyl sulfoxide (6.8 ml) and triethylamine (2.6 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (0.51 g).

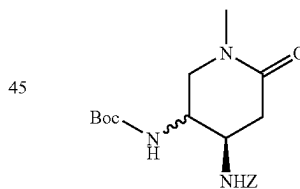
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 1.44(9H,s), 2.51-2.70(2H,m), 4.01-4.23(2H,m), 4.45-4.67(1H,m), 5.00-5.23(2H,s), 5.24-5.42(1H,m), 7.23-7.43(5H,m), 9.63(0.5H,s), 9.67(0.5H,s).

35

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 235

Benzyl (4R)-5-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-methyl-2-oxopiperidin-4-ylcarbamate

40



Acetic acid (0.27 ml) and 2 M methylamine (tetrahydrofuran solution, 1.0 ml) were successively added to a solution of the compound (0.51 g) obtained in Referential Example 234 in ethanol (10 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. Sodium cyanoborohydride (0.15 g) was added to stir the mixture for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with chloroform and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in toluene (20 ml). Triethylamine (2 ml) was added to this solution, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column

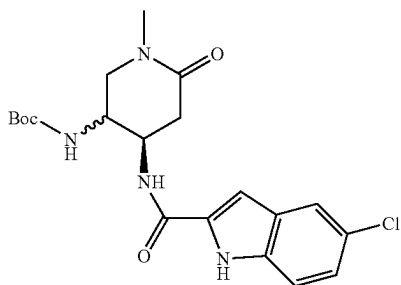
195

chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=98:2) to obtain the title compound (0.28 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.36(3.6H,s), 1.38(5.4H,s), 2.22-2.43(1H,m), 2.44-2.61(1H,m), 2.72(1.2H,s), 2.80(1.8H,s), 3.10(0.5H,dd,J=12.5,8.3 Hz), 3.21-3.30(0.5H,m), 3.33-3.45(1H,m), 3.56-3.82(1H,m), 3.89-4.00(1H,m), 4.94(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 5.00(1.2H,s), 5.01(0.8H,s), 6.89-7.02(0.5H,m), 7.23-7.44(5.5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 236

tert-Butyl (4R)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-methyl-6-oxopiperidin-3-yl]carbamate

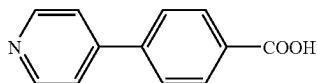


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 235 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.24(5.4H,s), 1.35(3.6H,s), 2.43-2.56(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 3.10-3.20(1H,m), 3.30-3.52(1H,m), 3.83-3.91(0.4H,m), 4.02-4.10(0.6H,m), 4.20-4.31(0.6H,m), 4.43-4.54(0.4H,m), 6.94(0.6H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 7.08(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.30(0.4H,s), 8.36(0.4H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.43(0.6H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.75(0.6H,s), 11.78(0.4H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 237

4-(Pyridin-4-yl)benzoic acid hydrochloride



4-Bromopyridine hydrochloride (11.7 g) and 4-carboxyphenylboric acid (10.0 g) were dissolved in a mixed solvent of toluene (250 ml) and water (250 ml), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (5.0 g) and anhydrous sodium carbonate (25.4 g) were successively added, and the mixture was heated under reflux at 120° C. for 19 hours. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, ethyl acetate was added to the reaction mixture to extract it with water. Concentrated hydrochloric acid was added to the water layer to acidify it. The water layer was washed with ethyl acetate and then concentrated, and solids deposited were collected to obtain the title compound (8.37 g).

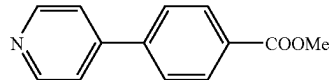
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 8.11(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.14(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.35(2H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 8.97(2H,d,J=6.6 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 200(M+H)⁺.

196

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 238

Methyl 4-(Pyridin-4-yl)benzoate

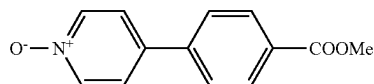


The compound (12.4 g) obtained in Referential Example 237 was dissolved in methanol (200 ml), concentrated sulfuric acid (5 ml) was added at room temperature, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 3 hours. After completion of the reaction, the solvent was distilled off, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the residue to extract it with ethyl acetate. The extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off, and hexane was added to the residue to solidify it, thereby obtaining the title compound (9.86 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.96(3H,s), 7.54(2H,d,J=5.9 Hz), 7.71(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.16(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.71(2H,d,J=5.9 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 239

4-[4-(Methoxycarbonyl)phenyl]pyridine N-oxide



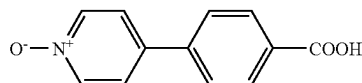
The compound (1.49 g) obtained in Referential Example 238 was dissolved in methylene chloride (30 ml), 70% m-chloroperbenzoic acid (3.46 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. An aqueous solution of sodium sulfite was added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (1.33 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO) δ: 3.88(3H,s), 7.86(2H,d,J=7.2 Hz), 7.94(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.05(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.30(2H,d,J=7.2 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 230(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 240

4-(4-Carboxyphenyl)pyridine N-oxide



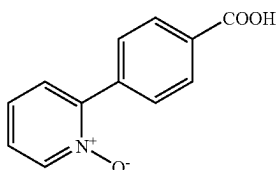
The compound (802 mg) obtained in Referential Example 239 was dissolved in dioxane (20 ml), a 1N aqueous solution (5 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added, and the mixture was refluxed for 1 hour and then stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (5 ml) was added to neutralize it. Further, water (5 ml) was added, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (627 mg).

197

¹H-NMR (DMSO) δ: 7.85(2H,d,J=7.2 Hz), 7.91(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.03(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.30(2H,d,J=7.2 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 241

2-(4-Carboxyphenyl)-1-pyridine N-oxide



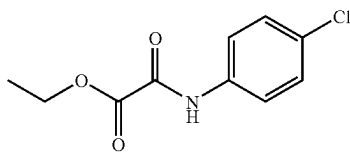
The title compound was obtained from 2-bromopyridine in similar manners to Referential Examples 237, 238, 239 and 240.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.41-7.45(2H,m), 7.65-7.69(1H,m), 7.94(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.02(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.34-8.38(1H,m), 13.09(1H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z: 216(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 242

Ethyl 2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoacetate



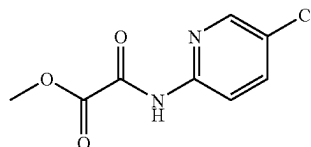
Triethylamine (1.52 ml) and ethyl chlorooxoacetate (1.11 ml) were successively added to a solution of 4-chloroaniline (1.16 g) in methylene chloride (26 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. After a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was successively washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure, hexane was added to the residue to deposit crystals, and the crystals were collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (1.89 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.42(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 7.34(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.60(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.86(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI)m/z: 228(M+H)⁺.

198

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 243

Methyl
2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate

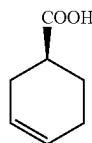
2-Amino-5-chloropyridine (1.16 g) and triethylamine (1.51 ml) were dissolved in methylene chloride (26 ml), ethyl chlorooxoacetate (1.10 ml) was added to the solution under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. After a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methanol (20 ml), and the solution was stirred at 50° C. for 11 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and crystals deposited were collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (0.43 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 7.73(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.2 Hz), 8.24(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.31(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 9.39(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 215(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 244

(1S)-3-Cyclohexene-1-carboxylic acid



The (R)-(+)-α-methylbenzylamine salt (J. Am. Chem. Soc., Vol. 100, pp. 5199-5203, 1978) (95.0 g) of (1S)-3-cyclohexene-1-carboxylic acid was dissolved in a mixture of ethyl acetate (1.6 l) and 2N hydrochloric acid (1.6 l). After an organic layer was taken out, a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (500 ml×2 times). The resultant organic layers were combined and washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (300 ml×2 times) to take out an organic layer. After a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (200 ml), the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (100 ml). All organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (48.3 g).

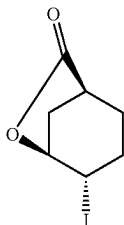
[α]_D²⁵=-104° (c=1, chloroform).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.66-1.77(1H,m), 2.00-2.20(3H,m), 2.20-2.38(2H,m), 2.57-2.65(1H,m), 5.65-5.75(2H,m).

199

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 245

(1S,4S,5S)-4-Iodo-6-oxabicyclo[3.2.1]octan-7-one



Iodine (125.4 g) was added to a mixture of the compound (48.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 244, methylene chloride (580 ml), potassium iodide (82.1 g), sodium hydrogencarbonate (42.0 g) and water (530 ml) at an internal temperature of 5° C., and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. After a 1N aqueous solution (800 ml) of sodium thiosulfate was added to the reaction mixture, the resultant mixture was extracted with methylene chloride (1 L, 500 ml). The resultant organic layer was washed with an aqueous solution (300 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate, water (500 ml) and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (300 ml), dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated. Crystals deposited were collected by filtration, washed with hexane and then dried to obtain the title compound (89.5 g).

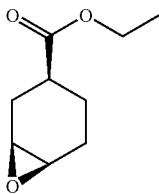
Mp. 130-131° C.

[α]_D²⁵ = -41° (c=1, chloroform).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.78-1.96(2H,m), 2.12(1H,dd, J=16.5 Hz, 5.2 Hz), 2.35-2.50(2H,m), 2.65-2.70(1H,m), 2.80(1H,d, J=12.2 Hz), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 4.77-4.87(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 246

Ethyl (1S,3S,6R)-7-oxabicyclo[4.1.0]heptane-3-carboxylate



A 2N aqueous solution (213 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to an ethanol (810 ml) suspension of the compound (89.3 g) obtained in Referential Example 245, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure on a hot bath of 35° C., and water (500 ml) was added to the resultant oil to conduct extraction with methylene chloride (500 ml and 300 ml). The extract was washed with water (300 ml) and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant oil was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=85:15) to obtain the title compound (41.3 g).

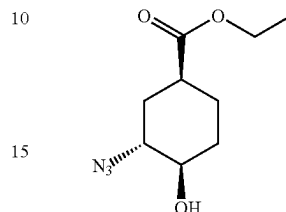
[α]_D²⁵ = -58° (c=1, chloroform).

200

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.25(3H,t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.50-1.70(2H,m), 1.71-1.82(1H,m), 2.08-2.28(4H,m), 3.16(2H,s), 4.12(2H,q, J=7.2 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 247

Ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-3-azido-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



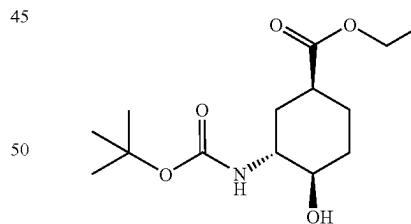
A mixture of the compound (41.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 246, N,N-dimethylformamide (300 ml), ammonium chloride (19.3 g) and sodium azide (23.5 g) was stirred at 76° C. for 13 hours. After insoluble matter was taken out by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure without solidifying, and the product previously taken out by filtration was added to the residue, and the mixture was dissolved in water (500 ml). The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (500 ml and 300 ml), and the extract was washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated to obtain the title compound (51.5 g).

[α]_D²⁵ = +8° (c=1, chloroform)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.28(3H,t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.37-1.64(3H,m), 1.86-1.95(1H,m), 2.04-2.16(1H,m), 2.32-2.41(1H,m), 2.44(1H,br.s), 2.68-2.78(1H,m), 3.45-3.60(2H,m), 4.17(2H,q, J=7.1 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 248

Ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-hydroxycyclohexanecarboxylate



A mixture of the compound (51.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 247, di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (68.1 g), 5% palladium on carbon (5.0 g) and ethyl acetate (1000 ml) was stirred overnight at room temperature under a hydrogen pressure (7 kg/cm²). An oil obtained by filtering the reaction mixture and concentrating the filtrate was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1→3:1). The purified product was crystallized from hexane to obtain the title compound (46.9 g). The mother liquor was additionally purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=100:1) to obtain the title compound (6.74 g).

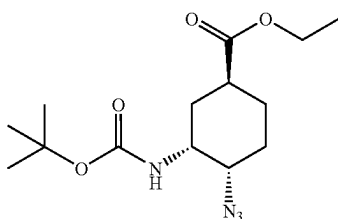
[α]_D²⁵ = +25° (c=1, chloroform).

201

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.28(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.38-1.57(3H, m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.86-1.95(1H,m), 2.05-2.17(1H,m), 2.29-2.39(1H,m), 2.61-2.68(1H,m), 3.34(1H,br.s), 3.39-3.48(1H, m), 3.53-3.64(1H,m), 4.10-4.24(2H,m), 4.54(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 249

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate



Methanesulfonyl chloride (42 ml) was added dropwise to a solution containing the compound (53.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 248, methylene chloride (500 ml) and triethylamine (130 ml) over 20 minutes at -10° C. to -15° C. The mixture was heated to room temperature over 2 hours and stirred for 2 hours. 0.5N Hydrochloric acid (800 ml) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture at 0° C. to acidify it, and extraction was conducted with methylene chloride (500 ml and 300 ml). The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The crystals thus obtained were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (335 ml), sodium azide (60.5 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 67° C. to 75° C. for 16 hours. After the reaction mixture was filtered, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to distill off 250 ml of the solvent. The residue was combined with the product previously taken out by filtration, and the mixture was dissolved in water (500 ml). The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (1 L and 300 ml), and the extract was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride (400 ml and 200 ml), dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and then concentrated. The crystals thus obtained were purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain the title compounds (18.4 g).

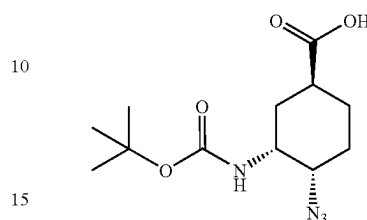
[α]_D²⁵=+62° (c=1, chloroform).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.35-2.00 (15H,s), 2.60-2.68(1H,m), 3.80-3.96(2H,m), 4.15(2H,q, J=7.1 Hz), 4.61(1H,br.s).

202

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 250

(1S,3R,4S)-4-Azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

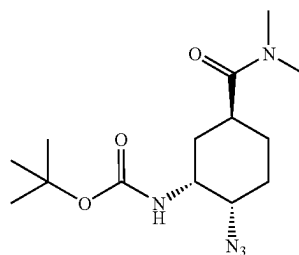


Lithium hydroxide (102 mg) and water (5 ml) were added to a solution of the compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 249 in tetrahydrofuran (25 ml). After stirring for 17 hours, lithium hydroxide (50 mg) was additionally added to stir the mixture for 4 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (6.3 ml) was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. After the resultant organic layer was dried, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (980 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-2.20(6H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 2.70-2.80(1H,m), 3.94(2H,br.s), 4.73(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 251

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-azido-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



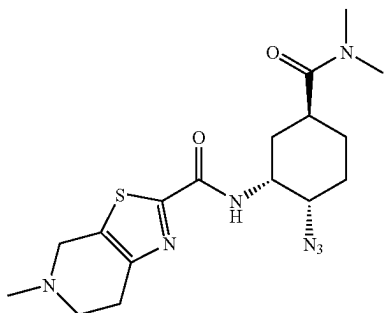
The compound (4.77 g) obtained in Referential Example 250 was dissolved in methylene chloride (150 ml), to which dimethylamine hydrochloride (3.26 g), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide hydrochloride (4.60 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (3.24 g) and N-methylmorpholine (8.09 g) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was then dried, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:50) to obtain the title compound (4.90 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.90(4H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.97-2.18(2H,m), 2.75-2.85(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 3.68-3.80(1H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.55-4.75(1H,m).

203

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 252

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-Azido-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide

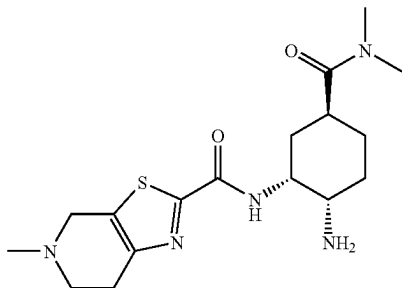


The compound (9.13 g) obtained in Referential Example 251 was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 ml), and an ethanol solution (100 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1 minute. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (200 ml). To the solution were added the compound (7.75 g) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (4.47 g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (11.2 g) and triethylamine (2.02 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The compound (2.38 g) obtained in Referential Example 10 and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (5.60 g) were additionally added to stir the mixture for 3 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was then purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=47:3) to obtain the title compound (7.38 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72-1.97(4H,m), 2.10-2.27(2H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.77-3.05(11H,m), 3.68(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.74(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.86-3.93(1H,m), 4.54-4.60(1H,m), 7.25(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 253

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-Amino-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide



10% Palladium on carbon (6.0 g) was added to a solution of the compound (9.0 g) obtained in Referential Example

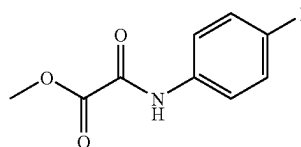
204

252 in methanol (300 ml), and the mixture was vigorously stirred at room temperature for 11 hours under a hydrogen pressure of 4 atm. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (7.67 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.42-1.54(1H,m), 1.66-1.89(5H,m), 2.30-2.40(1H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.68-3.05(6H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.10-3.18(1H,m), 3.65-3.77(2H,m), 4.21-4.28(1H,m), 7.52(1H,d,J=6.1 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 254

Methyl 2-(4-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetate



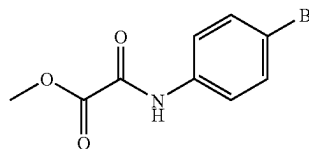
The title compound was obtained from 4-fluoroaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.98(3H,s), 7.00-7.14(2H,m), 7.55-7.68(2H,m), 8.85(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 198(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 255

Methyl 2-(4-bromoanilino)-2-oxoacetate



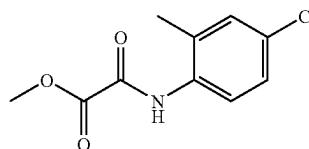
The title compound was obtained from 4-bromoaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.98(3H,s), 7.49(2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.55(2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.85(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB)m/z: 258 M⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 256

Methyl 2-(4-chloro-2-methylanilino)-2-oxoacetate



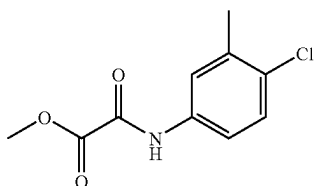
The title compound was obtained from 4-chloro-2-methylaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to Referential Example 242.

205

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.31(3H,s), 3.99(3H,s), 7.15-7.30 (2H,m), 7.98(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.77(1H,br).
MS (FAB) m/z: 228(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 257

Methyl 2-[(4-chloro-3-methylanilino)-2-oxoacetate



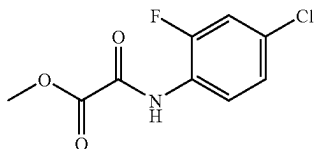
The title compound was obtained from 4-chloro-3-methylaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to Reference Example 242.

¹H-NMR(CDCl₃) δ: 2.39(3H,s), 3.98(3H,s), 7.33(1H,d, J=12.5 Hz), 7.44(1H,dd, J=12.5, 2.5 Hz), 7.53(1H,d, J=2.5 Hz), 8.81(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI)m/z: 228(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 258

Methyl 2-(4-chloro-2-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetate



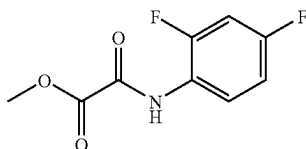
The title compound was obtained from 4-chloro-2-fluoroaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 7.15-7.24(2H,m), 8.33 (1H,t, J=8.4 Hz), 9.05(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 232(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 259

Methyl 2-(2,4-difluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetate



The title compound was obtained from 2,4-difluoroaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

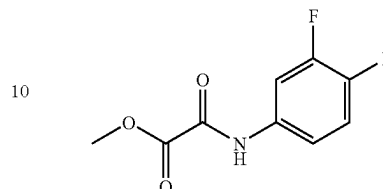
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 6.87-7.00(2H,m), 8.29-8.38(1H,m), 8.99(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 215 M⁺.

206

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 260

Methyl 2-(3,4-difluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetate



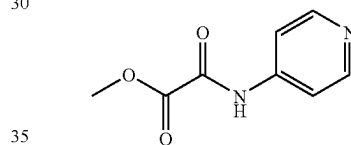
The title compound was obtained from 3,4-difluoroaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.98(3H,s), 7.10-7.28(2H,m), 7.67-7.78(1H,m), 8.83(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 215 M⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 261

Methyl 2-oxo-2-(pyridin-4-ylamino)acetate



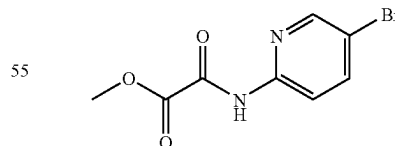
The title compound was obtained from 4-aminopyridine and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 7.58(2H,dd, J=4.8, 1.6 Hz), 8.60(2H,dd, J=4.8, 1.6 Hz), 9.04(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 181(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 262

Methyl 2-[(5-bromopyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-bromopyridine and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

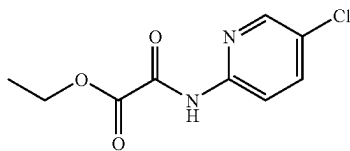
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 7.87(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.19(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.41(1H,d, J=2.4 Hz), 9.38(1H, br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 259 M⁺.

207

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 263

Ethyl 2-[(6-chloropyridin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate

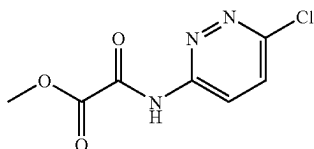


5-Amino-2-chloropyridine (386 mg) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (8 ml), and potassium 2-ethoxy-2-oxoacetate (469 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (863 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (203 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 days. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, methylene chloride and saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain residue (200 mg) containing the title compound.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.43(3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 4.44(2H,q,J=7.2 Hz), 7.36(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 8.24(1H,dd,J=8.7,2.7 Hz), 8.55(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 9.03(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 264

Methyl 2-[(6-chloropyridazin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



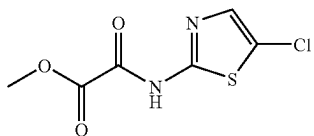
3-Amino-6-chloropyridazine (516 mg) was dissolved in pyridine (26 ml), and triethylamine (665 μl) and methyl chlorooxacetate (441 μl) were successively added under ice cooling to stir the mixture at room temperature for 14 hours. After water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (748 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 4.03(3H,s), 7.59(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.52(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 9.88(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 215M $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 265

Methyl 2-[(5-chlorothiazol-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



208

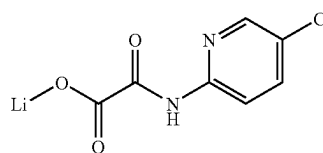
The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-chlorothiazole and methyl chlorooxacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 4.02(3H,s), 7.48(1H,s), 11.03(1H,br.s)

MS (ESI) m/z: 221(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 266

Lithium 2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate

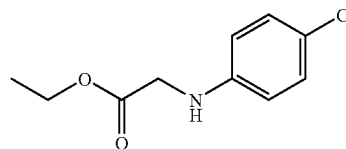


Water (5.0 ml) and lithium hydroxide (128 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (1.12 g) obtained in Referential Example 243 in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 5 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, hexane (30 ml) was added to the resultant white solids, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The solids were collected by filtration and then dried to obtain the title compound (1.02 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 7.90(1H,dd,J=8.9, 2.6 Hz), 8.12(1H,d,J=8.9 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=2.6 Hz), 10.18(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 267

Ethyl 2-(4-chloroanilino)acetate



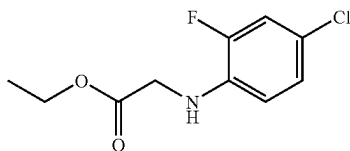
4-Chloroaniline (2.0 g) was dissolved in acetonitrile (20 ml), and ethyl bromoacetate (2.1 g) and potassium carbonate (2.2 g) were added to stir the mixture at 60 $^\circ$ C. for 2 days. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite pad, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:chloroform=2:1) to obtain the title compound (2.3 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.30(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 3.86(2H,s), 4.24(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 4.26-4.35(1H,m), 6.53(2H,dd,J=6.6, 2.2 Hz), 7.14(2H,dd,J=6.6, 2.2 Hz).

209

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 268

Ethyl 2-(4-chloro-2-fluoroanilino)acetate

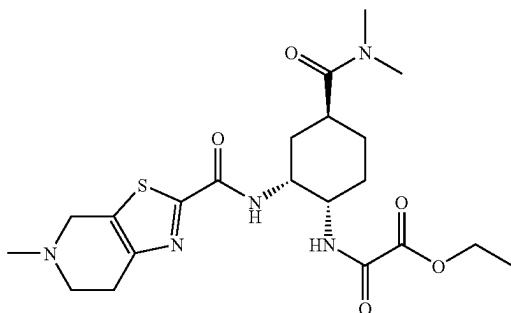


The title compound was obtained from 4-chloro-2-fluoroaniline and ethyl bromoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 267.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.29(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 3.91(2H,s), 4.22(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 4.42-4.51(1H,m), 6.49(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 6.98(1H,dt,J=8.8,2.5 Hz), 7.01(1H,dd,J=11.3, 2.5 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 269

Ethyl 2-[[[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



The compound (1.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 253 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 ml), and potassium 2-ethoxy-2-oxoacetate (962 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.18 g) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (227 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 14 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=47:3) to obtain the title compound (1.13 g).

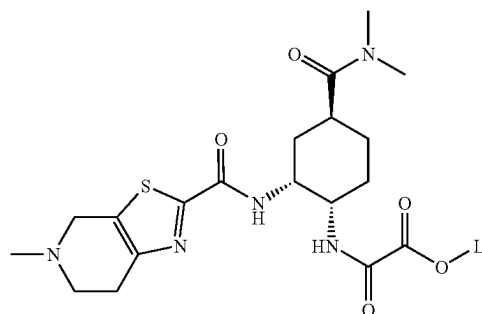
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.37(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.55-2.15(6H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.77-2.89(3H,m), 2.94(5H,br.s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.71(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 3.73(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 4.06-4.13(1H,m), 4.32(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.60-4.63(1H,m), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.83(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 466(M+H) $^+$.

210

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 270

Lithium 2-[[[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)amino]-2-oxoacetate

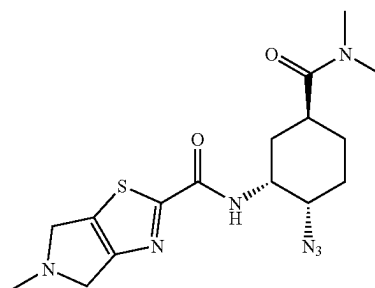


The compound (1.13 g) obtained in Referential Example 269 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), methanol (10 ml) and water (10 ml), and lithium hydroxide (58 mg) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.10 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 1.41-1.73(4H,m), 2.00-2.07(2H,m), 2.39(3H,s), 2.74-2.99(11H,m), 3.67(2H,s), 3.82-3.88(1H,m), 4.28-4.30(1H,m), 8.66-8.70(2H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 271

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-Azido-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 251 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 252.

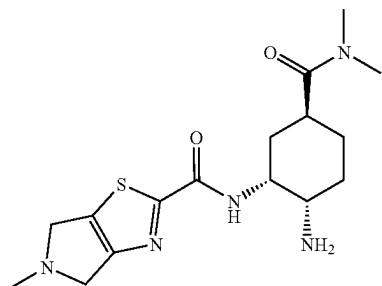
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.73-1.87(4H,m), 2.11-2.20(2H,m), 2.67(3H,s), 2.85-2.90(1H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.90-4.10(5H,m), 4.57-4.62(1H,m), 7.20-7.22(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 378(M+H) $^+$.

211

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 272

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-Amino-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo [3,4-d]-thiazole-2-carboxamide

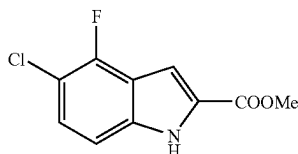


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 271 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 253.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.67-1.97(6H,m), 2.36-2.40(1H,m), 2.67(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.07-3.18(1H,m), 3.92-3.95(2H,m), 4.02-4.06(2H,m), 4.23-4.26(1H,m), 7.50-7.52 (1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 273

Methyl 5-chloro-4-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate



Ethanol (100 ml) was added to sodium hydride (content: 60%, 4.7 g) at 0° C. under an argon atmosphere, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. After 2-nitropropane (11 ml) was added to the reaction mixture to stir the mixture for 10 minutes, 1-(bromomethyl)-3-chloro-2-fluorobenzene (10 g) was added to stir the resultant mixture at room temperature for 3.5 hours. Precipitate was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned in diethyl ether and water, and an organic layer was successively washed with a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide, water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=3:7) to obtain crude 3-chloro-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (5.5 g) as a pale yellow oil. Methanol (20 ml) was added to sodium hydride (content: 60%, 1.6 g) at 0° C. under an argon atmosphere, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to -20° C., and the crude 3-chloro-2-fluorobenzaldehyde (5.5 g) and a solution of methyl 2-azidoacetate (5.0 g) in methanol (10 ml) were added within 20 minutes. The temperature of the reaction mixture was raised to 0° C., and after the mixture was stirred for 2.5 hours, water (40 ml) was added thereto. The reaction mixture was

212

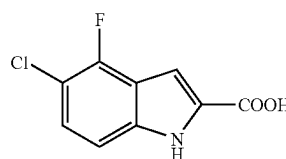
concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was extracted with a mixed solvent of methylene chloride and ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (toluene:hexane=3:17) to obtain crude methyl 2-azido-3-[(3-chloro-2-fluoro)phenyl]acrylate (2.6 g). This product was dissolved in xylene (50 ml), and the solution was stirred at 130° C. to 140° C. for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) and then crystallized from diethyl ether-hexane to obtain the title compound (440 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.08(3H,s), 7.20(1H,s), 7.31-7.38(2H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 228(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 274

5-Chloro-4-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid



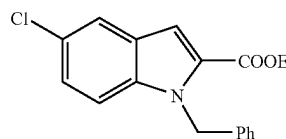
The compound (440 mg) obtained in Referential Example 273 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml), an aqueous solution (5 ml) of lithium hydroxide (160 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. After an aqueous solution (5 ml) of lithium hydroxide (240 mg) was additionally added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred for additional 1 hour, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (390 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 6.79(1H,s), 7.16-7.26(2H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 214(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 275

Ethyl 1-benzyl-5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate



Ethyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate (1.4 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 ml), and potassium carbonate (2.9 g) and benzyl chloride (2.4 ml) were added. The mixture was heated and stirred for 1.5 hours on a hot bath controlled to 100° C. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was poured into ice

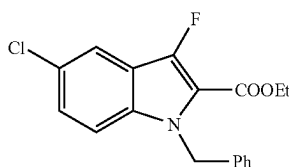
213

water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:19) and crystallized from diethyl ether-hexane to obtain the title compound (1.6 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.36(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.33(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 5.83(2H,s), 7.00-7.02(2H,d), 7.20-7.38(6H,m), 7.67(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 276

Ethyl
1-benzyl-5-chloro-3-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate

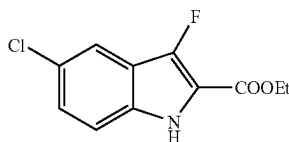


1-Fluoro-2,6-dichloropyridinium triflate (4.4 g) was added to a methylene chloride solution (30 ml) of the compound (2.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 275, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 3 days. The reaction mixture was partitioned in ethyl acetate and water, and a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, successively washed with 1N hydrochloric acid, water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:24) to obtain the crude title compound (2.8 g). A part of this product was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel to obtain the title compound.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.29(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 5.77(2H,s), 6.97-6.99(2H,m), 7.18-7.28(3H,m), 7.39(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.1 Hz), 7.69(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.1 Hz), 7.78(1H,d,J=2.1 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 277

Ethyl 5-chloro-3-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate



The crude compound (1.4 g) obtained in Referential Example 276 was dissolved in anisole (30 ml), and aluminum chloride (2.9 g) was added portionwise to the solution under ice cooling. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, and aluminum chloride (2.9 g) was additionally added to stir the mixture for 18 hours. Aluminum chloride (8.0 g) was added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred for 5 hours, to which water

214

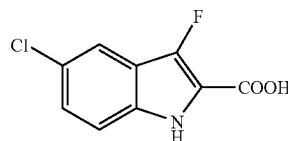
was added. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, the resultant organic layers were combined, successively washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride) to obtain the title compound (470 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 4.45(2H,q,J=7.2 Hz), 7.25-7.31(2H,m), 7.66(1H,d,J=0.73 Hz), 8.53(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 242(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 278

5-Chloro-3-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid



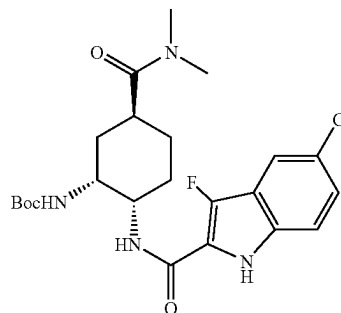
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 277 in a similar manner to Referential Example 274.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.31(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.42(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 11.78(1H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z: 214(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 279

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-{[(5-chloro-3-fluoroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 278 in a similar manner to Referential Example 97.

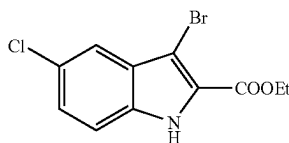
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.73-2.11(6H,m), 2.65(1H,br.s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.20(1H,br.s), 4.28(1H,br.s), 4.78(1H,br), 7.23-7.30(3H,m), 7.58(1H,s), 9.03(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 481(M+H)⁺.

215

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 280

Ethyl 3-bromo-5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate



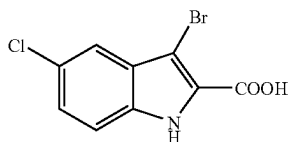
N-Bromosuccinimide (440 mg) was added to a solution of ethyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate (500 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned in ethyl acetate and water, and a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:9), and white powder thus obtained was washed with hexane to obtain the title compound (680 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.42-1.48(3H,m), 4.43-4.49(2H,m), 7.30-7.32(2H,m), 7.65(1H,d,J=0.74 Hz), 9.11(1H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z : 303(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 281

3-Bromo-5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid



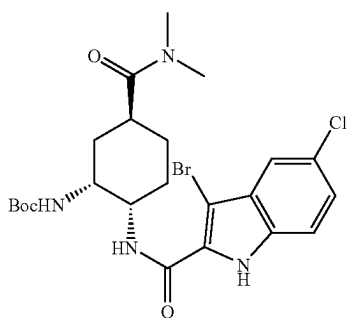
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 280 in a similar manner to Referential Example 274.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 7.35(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.48-7.53(2H,m), 12.33(1H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z : 275(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 282

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(3-bromo-5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-carbamate



216

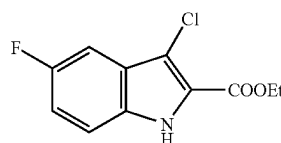
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 281 in a similar manner to Referential Example 97.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.42(9H,s), 1.58-2.17(6H,m), 2.70(1H,br.s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.23-4.28(2H,m), 4.83(1H,br), 7.34-7.41(3H,m), 7.52(1H,s), 9.76(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 542(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 283

Ethyl 3-chloro-5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate

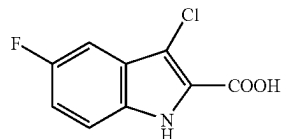


Ethyl 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylate (2.0 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and a solution of N-chlorosuccinimide (1.4 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml) was added dropwise to the solution under ice cooling. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, and the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and successively washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The resultant organic layer was then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=5:1) to obtain the title compound (1.9 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.45(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 4.46(2H,q,J=7.4 Hz), 7.14(1H,dt,J=8.0,2.7 Hz), 7.32-7.36(2H,m), 8.91(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 284

3-Chloro-5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid



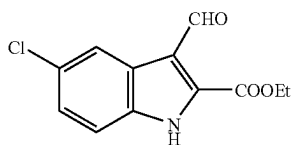
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 283 in a similar manner to Referential Example 274.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 7.20(1H,dt,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.31(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.46(1H,dd,J=8.8,4.4 Hz), 12.12(1H,br).

217

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 285

Ethyl 5-chloro-3-formylindole-2-carboxylate

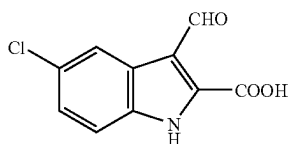


After phosphorus oxychloride (2.0 ml) was added to 15 N-methylformanilide (2.9 g), and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes, 1,2-dichloroethane (50 ml) and ethyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate (4.0 g) were added, and the resultant mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was poured into an aqueous solution (28 ml) of 20 sodium acetate (14 g) under ice cooling. After stirring for 18 hours, insoluble matter was collected by filtration. This product was successively washed with water and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (3.56 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.44(2H,q, 25 J=7.1 Hz), 7.38(1H,dd,J=8.0,1.4 Hz), 7.56(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.19(1H,d,J=1.4 Hz), 10.53(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 286

5-Chloro-3-formylindole-2-carboxylic acid

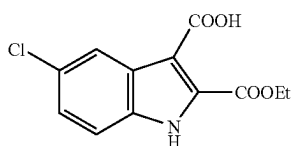


The compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 285 was dissolved in ethanol (10 ml), and a 1N aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added dropwise to stir the mixture at 50° C. for 2 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (11 ml) was added to the reaction mixture, the resultant mixture was stirred, and insoluble matter was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (0.86 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.39(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.55(1H, 50 d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.20(1H,s), 10.58(1H,s), 12.90(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 287

5-Chloro-2-ethoxycarbonylindole-3-carboxylic acid



The compound (1.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 286 and sulfamic acid (1.7 g) were dissolved in tert-butanol (30 ml)-water (30 ml), and sodium chlorite (1.6 g) was 65

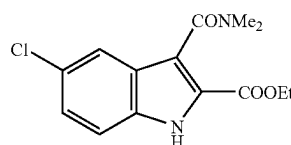
218

added to stir the mixture for 8 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate, and the extract was successively washed with 1N hydrochloric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and 5 dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of isopropyl ether and hexane to obtain the title compound (0.7 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.34(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.38(2H,q, 10 J=7.1 Hz), 7.33(1H,dd,J=8.0,1.4 Hz), 7.52(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.97(1H,d,J=1.4 Hz), 12.75(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 288

Ethyl 5-chloro-3-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]indole-2-carboxylate

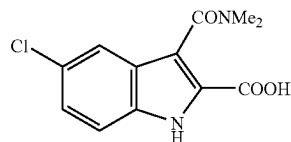


The compound (0.7 g) obtained in Referential Example 287 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and 30 dimethylamine hydrochloride (0.26 g), 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (0.43 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.0 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 days. After the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with 1N hydrochloric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride in that order, the resultant organic layer 35 was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of isopropyl ether and hexane to obtain the title compound (0.6 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.29(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 2.78(3H,s), 3.04(3H,s), 4.30(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 7.31(1H,dd,J=8.0,1.4 Hz), 7.45(1H,d,J=1.4 Hz), 7.48(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 12.29(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 289

5-Chloro-3-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]indole-2-carboxylic acid



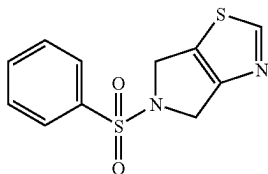
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 288 in a similar manner to Referential Example 286.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.91(6H,s), 7.29(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.47(1H,s), 12.16(1H,s).

219

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 290

5-(Phenylsulfonyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole



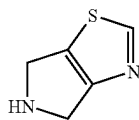
Benzenesulfonamide (638 mg) and 4,5-bis(bromo-methyl)thiazole (M. Al. Hariri, O. Galley, F. Pautet, H. Fillion, Eur. J. Org. Chem., 1998, 593-594.) (1.10 g) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 357 mg) was added at a time, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. Water and methylene chloride were added to conduct liquid separation. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:ethyl acetate=9:1) to obtain the title compound (137 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.60-4.63(2H,m), 4.70-4.73(2H,m), 7.52-7.64(3H,m), 7.88-7.92(2H,m), 8.71(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 267(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 291

5,6-Dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole dihydrobromide



A mixture of the compound (800 mg) obtained in Referential Example 290, phenol (800 μl) and 47% hydrobromic acid (5.00 ml) was heated under reflux for 2 hours. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, ethyl acetate and water were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was concentrated under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue, precipitate was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (521 mg).

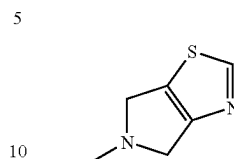
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.42(2H,br.s), 4.56(2H,br.s), 9.14(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 127(M+H)⁺.

220

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 292

5-Methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole



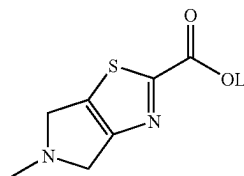
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 291 in a similar manner to Referential Example 9.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.67(3H,s), 3.95-3.99(2H,m), 4.01-4.05(2H,m), 8.69(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 141(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 293

Lithium 5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxylate

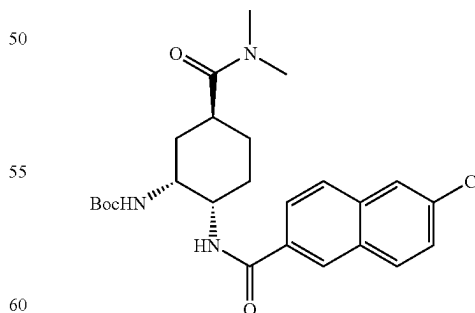


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 292 in a similar manner to Referential Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.52(3H,s), 3.73(2H,t,J=3.2 Hz), 3.87(2H,t,J=3.2 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 294

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[(6-chloro-2-naphthoyl)amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and 6-chloronaphthalene-2-carboxylic acid (Eur. J. Chem-Chim. Ther., 1984, Vol. 19, pp. 205-214) in a similar manner to Referential Example 97.

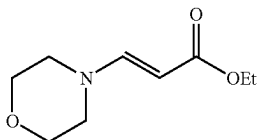
221

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-2.00(15H,m), 2.60-2.80(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.09(3H,s), 4.00-4.20(1H,m), 4.20-4.30(1H,m), 4.75-4.95(1H,m), 7.44(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.70-7.95(5H,m), 8.31(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 474(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 295

Ethyl (E)-3-(morpholin-4-yl)-2-acrylate



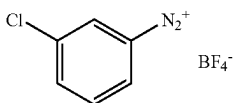
Ethyl propionate (2.0 ml) was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml), and morpholine (1.70 ml) was added dropwise under ice cooling. After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1) to obtain the title compound (3.72 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 3.21(4H,t,J=5.1 Hz), 3.71(4H,t,J=5.1 Hz), 4.14(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.70(1H,d,J=13.4 Hz), 7.36(1H,d,J=13.4 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 186(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 296

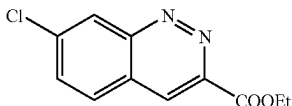
3-Chlorobenzenediazonium tetrafluoroborate



3-Chloroaniline (2.0 g) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of water (30 ml) and concentrated hydrochloric acid (3.5 ml), and sodium nitrite (1.30 g) was added under ice cooling to stir the mixture for 10 minutes. After concentrated hydrochloric acid (5.3 ml) and sodium tetrafluoroborate (6.90 g) were added to the reaction mixture to stir the mixture for 30 minutes under ice cooling, precipitate was collected by filtration and washed with water, methanol and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (2.63 g). This compound was used in the next reaction as it was.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 297

Ethyl 7-chlorocinnoline-3-carboxylate



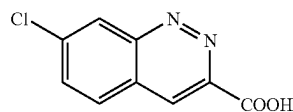
222

The compound (1.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 295 was dissolved in acetonitrile (100 ml), and the compound (1.73 g) obtained in Referential Example 296 was added. After stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, the mixture was heated under reflux for 7 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride→methylene chloride:ethyl acetate=10:1, then, hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1→1:1) to obtain the title compound (0.25 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.62(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 7.80(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.95(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.64(1H,s), 8.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 298

7-Chlorocinnoline-3-carboxylic acid



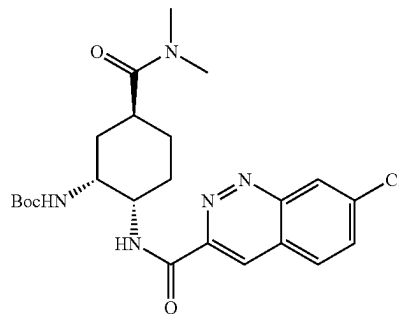
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 297 in a similar manner to Referential Example 286.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 8.02(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.70(1H,s), 8.90(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 209(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 299

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(7-chlorocinnolin-3-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]carbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 298 in a similar manner to Referential Example 97.

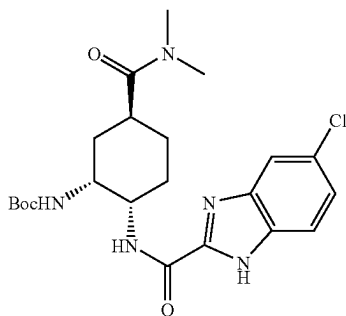
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.36(9H,s), 1.80-2.20(5H,m), 2.72(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 3.49(1H,d,J=3.7 Hz), 4.30-4.45(2H,m), 4.87(1H,br), 7.77(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.96(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.59(2H,br), 8.72(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 476(M+H)⁺.

223

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 300

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[5-chloro-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



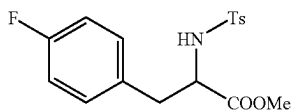
10% Palladium on carbon (50 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (235 mg) obtained in Referential Example 143 in tetrahydrofuran (5.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature under a hydrogen atmosphere. To a solution of the product obtained by filtering the reaction mixture and concentrating the filtrate and 5-chlorobenzimidazole-2-carboxylic acid (Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn., Vol. 62, p. 2668, 1989) (165 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (5.0 ml) were added 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (100 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (171 mg) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days. After concentrating the reaction mixture, methylene chloride, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and water were added to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. After the resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=10:1) to obtain the title compound (250 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.01-2.00(6H,m), 1.34(9H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.80-2.95(1H,m), 2.98(3H,s), 3.89-4.06(2H,m), 7.08(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 7.31(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.62(2H,br.s), 8.47(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 13.46(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 466(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 301

Methyl 3-(4-fluorophenyl)-2-[[[4-methylphenyl]sulfonyl]-amino]propionate



Methyl 2-amino-3-(4-fluorophenyl)propionate (2.01 g), p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (2.25 g) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (309 mg) were dissolved in chloroform (30 ml), and pyridine (3.0 ml) was added to heat the mixture under reflux for 4.5 hours. P-Toluenesulfonyl chloride (2.20 g) was additionally added, and the mixture was heated under reflux

224

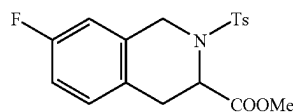
for 3.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into ice and 1N hydrochloric acid (17 ml) to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was successively washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=9:1→2:1) to obtain the title compound (2.89 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.41(3H,s), 2.90-3.10(2H,m), 3.51(3H,s), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 5.04(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 6.85-6.95(2H,m), 7.00-7.10(2H,m), 7.20-7.30(2H,m), 7.60-7.70(2H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 352(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 302

Methyl 7-fluoro-2-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylate



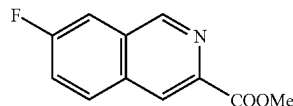
The compound (1.50 g) obtained in Referential Example 301 and paraformaldehyde (207 mg) were dissolved in chloroform (40 ml), and the system was purged with argon. Trifluoroborane-diethyl ether complex (1.20 ml) was then added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 7.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into ice and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (1.45 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.42(3H,s), 3.15(2H,d,J=3.9 Hz), 3.46(3H,s), 4.45(1H,d,J=15.9 Hz), 4.69(1H,d,J=15.9 Hz), 5.01(1H,t,J=4.4 Hz), 6.70-6.80(1H,m), 6.80-6.90(1H,m), 7.00-7.10(1H,m), 7.29(2H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 7.72(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 364(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 303

Methyl 7-fluoroisoquinoline-3-carboxylate



The compound (1.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 302 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (40 ml). Oxygen was introduced into this solution, and the solution was stirred at 100° C. for 3.5 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was successively washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and

225

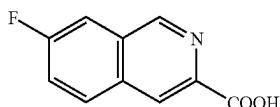
saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1) to obtain the title compound (0.59 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.07(3H,s), 7.55-7.65(1H,m), 7.65-7.75(1H,m), 8.00-8.05(1H,m), 8.61(1H,s), 9.30(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 206(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 304

7-Fluoroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic hydrochloride



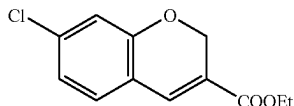
The compound (1.45 g) obtained in Referential Example 303 was dissolved in concentrated hydrochloric acid (18 ml), and the solution was heat under reflux for 2.5 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, and crystals were collected by filtration, washed with water and then dried to obtain the title compound (0.46 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.90-8.00(1H,m), 8.15-8.25(1H,m), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 8.82(1H,s), 9.55(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 192(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 305

Ethyl 7-chloro-2H-chromene-3-carboxylate



4-Chloro-2-hydroxybenzaldehyde (Acta. Chem. Scand., Vol. 53, p. 258, 1999) (510 mg) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (40 ml), sodium hydride (60% in oil, 157 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. A tetrahydrofuran solution (10 ml) of ethyl 2-diethylphosphonoacrylate (J. Org. Chem., Vol. 43, P. 1256, 1978) (769 mg) was added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then heated overnight under reflux. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, water and diethyl ether were added to conduct liquid separation. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=10:1) to obtain the title compound (247 mg).

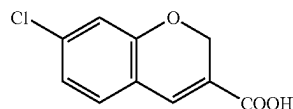
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.33(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.27(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.99(2H,d,J=1.2 Hz), 6.85(1H,d,J=1.2 Hz), 6.89(1H,dd,J=8.1,2.0 Hz), 7.04(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=1.0 Hz).

MS (EI) m/z: 238(M⁺).

226

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 306

7-Chloro-2H-chromene-3-carboxylic acid



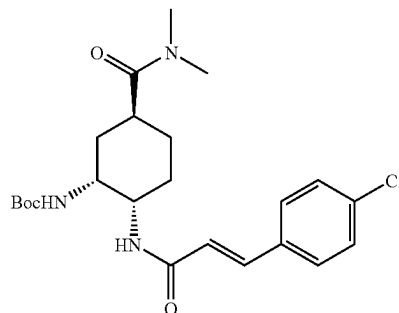
The title-compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 305 in a similar manner to Referential Example 274.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.92(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 6.95(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.01(1H,dd,J=8.1,2.2 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 7.44(1H,s).

MS (EI) m/z: 210 M⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 307

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[(E)-3-(4-chlorophenyl)-2-propenoyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



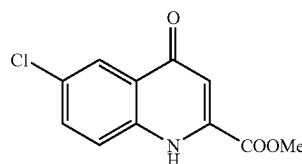
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and 4-chlorocinnamic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 97.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.30-1.55(3H,m), 1.48(9H,s), 1.60-2.30(4H,m), 2.57-2.70(1H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 4.01(1H,br s), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.78(1H,br s), 6.30(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 7.02(1H,s), 7.31(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.40(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.52(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz).

MS (ESI)m/z: 450(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 308

Methyl
6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinoline-2-carboxylate



Dimethyl acetylenedicarboxylate (13.5 ml) was added to a solution of 4-chloroaniline (12.76 g) in methanol (150 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 8 hours. The

227

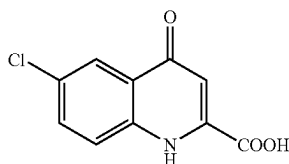
reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in diphenyl ether (70 ml), and the solution was heated under reflux at 240° C. for 4 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture, a mixed solvent of hexane and diethyl ether was added, and crystals deposited were collected by filtration and washed to obtain the title compound (11.09 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.97(3H,s), 7.76(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.5 Hz), 7.90-8.05(2H,m), 12.28(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 238(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 309

6-Chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinoline-2-carboxylic acid



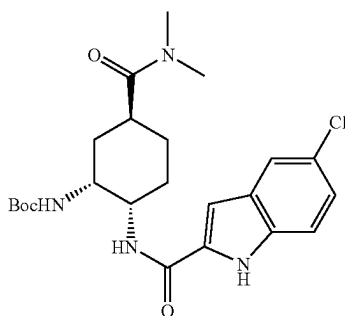
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 308 in a similar manner to Referential Example 286.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 6.90-7.05(1H,m), 7.90-8.05(2H,m), 10.10-10.30(1H,m), 12.13(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 224(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 310

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



Water (10 ml) and lithium hydroxide (263 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (5.00 g) obtained in Referential Example 97 in tetrahydrofuran (40 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered, the filtrate was concentrated, and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (1.75 g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.32 g) and diisopropylethylamine (11.3 ml) were added to a solution of the resultant residue and dimethylamine hydro-

228

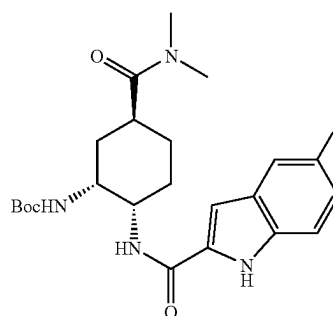
chloride (1.85 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 ml) at room temperature. The resultant mixture was stirred for 2 days. After concentrating the reaction mixture, methylene chloride, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen-carbonate and water were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. The organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: acetone=2:1→1:1) to obtain the title compound (4.59 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.60-1.76(2H,m), 1.73(9H,s), 1.76-1.87(1H,m), 1.93(1H,br.s), 2.14(1H,br.s), 2.28(1H,br.s), 2.65(1H,br.s), 2.95(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 4.01(1H,br.s), 4.21(1H,br.s), 4.84(1H,br.s), 6.81(1H,br.s), 7.20(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.9 Hz), 7.36(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.59(1H,br.s), 8.02(1H,br.s), 10.06(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 465(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 311

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



1) Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-{[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexane-carboxylate was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 96 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.52(9H,s), 1.67-2.41(7H,m), 3.97(1H,br.s), 4.15(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.08-4.22(1H,m), 6.83(1H,s), 7.00-7.05(1H,m), 7.32-7.36(1H,m), 8.02(1H,s), 9.51(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 448(M+H)⁺.

2) The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained above in a similar manner to Referential Example 310.

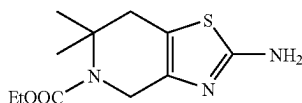
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52(9H,s), 1.57-1.79(2H,m), 1.79-2.00(2H,m), 2.14(1H,br.s), 2.31(1H,br.s), 2.65(1H,br.s), 2.95(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.02(1H,br.s), 4.17-4.25(1H,m), 4.80(1H,br.s), 6.82(1H,br.s), 7.02(1H,dt,J=2.3,9.0 Hz), 7.24(1H,br.s), 7.35(1H,dd,J=9.0,4.3 Hz), 7.91(1H,br.s), 9.49(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 447(M+H)⁺.

229

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 312

Ethyl 2-amino-6,6-dimethyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate

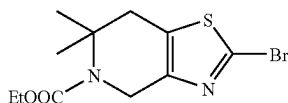


After copper(I) cyanide (918 mg) was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) under an argon atmosphere, and the suspension was cooled to -20°C ., n-butyllithium (1.56 N hexane solution, 6.41 ml) was added dropwise over 5 minutes, and the mixture was stirred at -20°C . for 30 minutes. After the reaction mixture was cooled to -50°C ., diisobutylaluminum hydride (1.00 M hexane solution) was added dropwise over 20 minutes, and the mixture was stirred at -50°C . for 1 hour. A solution of ethyl 2,2-dimethyl-5-oxo-5,6-dihydro-2H-pyridine-1-carboxylate (Helv. Chim. Acta, Vol. 81, p. 303, 1998) (986 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 5 minutes, and the mixture was stirred at -50°C . for 2 hours. After raising the temperature of the reaction mixture to -20°C ., bromine (4.90 ml) was added at a time, and the mixture was stirred at -20°C . for 30 minutes. Water and ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium sulfite and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), thiourea (760 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at 50°C . After the solvent was distilled off, methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=4:1) to obtain the title compound (412 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.25(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.54(6H,s), 2.65-2.67(2H,m), 4.09(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.44-4.46(2H,m), 4.78(2H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 313

Ethyl 2-bromo-6,6-dimethyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate



Copper(II) bromide (431 mg) was suspended in acetonitrile (8 ml), and tert-butyl nitrite (249 mg) was added dropwise at room temperature. After an acetonitrile solution (8 ml) of the compound (412 mg) obtained in Referential Example 312 was added to the reaction mixture under ice cooling, the mixture was heated to 50°C . and stirred for 15

230

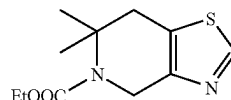
minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and diethyl ether and 10% hydrochloric acid were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=6:1) to obtain the title compound (151 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.26(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.55(6H,s), 2.79-2.81(2H,m), 4.10(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.65-4.67(2H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 319(M+H) $^{+}$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 314

Ethyl 6,6-dimethyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate

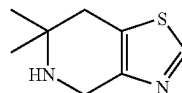


n-Butyllithium (1.56N hexane solution, 1.04 ml) was added to a solution with the compound (432 mg) obtained in Referential Example 313 in diethyl ether (5 ml) at -78°C ., and the mixture was stirred at -78°C . for 30 minutes. Water and diethyl ether were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (307 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.28(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.55(6H,s), 2.90(2H,s), 4.12(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.75(2H,m), 8.63(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 315

6,6-Dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine



The compound (307 mg) obtained in Referential Example 314 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of water (5 ml), ethanol (5 ml) and dioxane (5 ml), and lithium hydroxide (598 mg) was added to this reaction mixture to heat the mixture under reflux for 7 days. After allowing the reaction mixture to cool to room temperature, water and methylene chloride were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted 6 times with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layers were dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (207 mg).

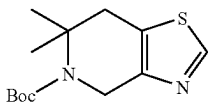
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.23(6H,s), 2.71-2.73(2H,m), 4.09-4.11(2H,m), 8.61(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 168(M $^{+}$).

231

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 316

tert-Butyl 6,6-dimethyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate



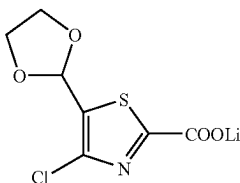
The compound (207 mg) obtained in Referential Example 315 was dissolved in methylene chloride (5 ml), and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (404 mg) and 4-(N,N-dimethylamino)-pyridine (151 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours. Di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (404 mg) was additionally added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Further, di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.00 g) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Methylene chloride and 10% hydrochloric acid were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain the title compound (95.4 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.47(9H,s), 1.52(6H,s), 2.87(2H,s), 4.69(2H,s), 8.62(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 269(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 317

Lithium 4-chloro-5-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)thiazole-2-carboxylate

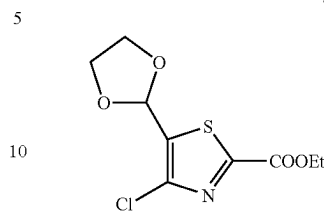


2,4-Dichlorothiazole-5-carbaldehyde ethyleneacetal (J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. 1, 1992, p. 973) (2.26 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), and n-butyllithium (1.5N hexane solution, 6.8 ml) was added under cooling with dry ice-acetone to stir the mixture for 20 minutes. At the same temperature, carbon dioxide was then introduced. The reaction mixture was gradually heated to room temperature over 1.5 hours and then concentrated. Hexane was added to the reaction mixture to powder the product. The product was collected by filtration and suspended in ethyl acetate, and formed powder was collected again by filtration to obtain the title compound (1.65 g).

232

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 318

Ethyl 4-chloro-5-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)thiazole-2-carboxylate



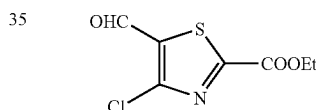
The compound (242 mg) obtained in Referential Example 317 and ethanol (0.2 ml) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (136 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (250 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for a night. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and diethyl ether and diluted hydrochloric acid were added to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was washed with water and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (170 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.43(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 4.00-4.10(2H,m), 4.10-4.20(2H,m), 4.48(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 6.15(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 264(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 319

Ethyl 4-chloro-5-formylthiazole-2-carboxylate

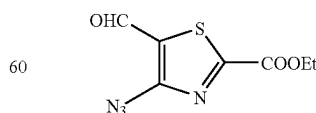


The compound (132 mg) obtained in Referential Example 318 was dissolved in diethyl ether (5 ml), and 20% hydrochloric acid (0.3 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 7 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with diethyl ether. The extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (110 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.46(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.52(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 10.12(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 320

Ethyl 4-azido-5-formylthiazole-2-carboxylate



The compound (5.15 g) obtained in Referential Example 319 was dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide (30 ml), and sodium azide (1.52 g) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2.5 hours. Ice water was added to the

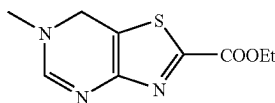
233

reaction mixture to conduct extraction with diethyl ether. The extract was washed twice with water and then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (1.78 g)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.50(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 9.95(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 321

Ethyl 6-methyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyrimidine-2-carboxylate



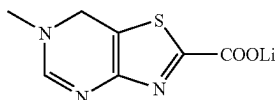
The compound (1.56 g) obtained in Referential Example 320 was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml), and acetic acid (2 ml), methylamine (2N tetrahydrofuran solution, 21 ml) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (2.98 g) were added to stir the mixture. After 1 hour, sodium triacetoxyborohydride (2.98 g) was additionally added, and the stirring was continued for additional 4.5 hours. A 0.5N aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction mixture to alkaliify it. After the reaction mixture was extracted with methylene chloride, the extract was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain a brown oil (1.43 g). This oil was dissolved in ethanol (50 ml), 10% palladium on carbon (2.0 g) was added to conduct hydrogenation at normal temperature and pressure. After 2.5 hours, the catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (30 ml), and trimethyl orthoformate (0.7 ml) and boron trifluoride-diethyl ether complex (0.3 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 15 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=97:3) to obtain the title compound (100 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.41(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 2.95(3H,s), 4.44(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.87(2H,s), 7.06(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 226(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 322

Lithium 6-methyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyrimidine-2-carboxylate



The compound (463 mg) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), and lithium hydroxide (54.1 mg) and water (4 ml)

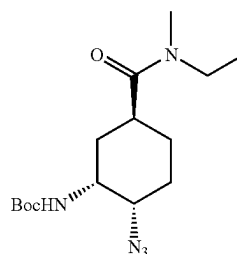
234

were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4.5 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dried by means of a vacuum pump to obtain the title compound (460 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.86(3H,s), 4.71(2H,s), 7.03(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 323

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-azido-5-[[ethyl(methyl)amino]-carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



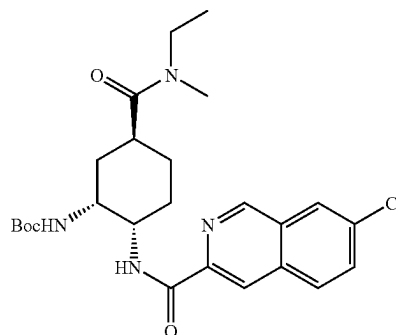
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 250 with ethylmethylamine.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.08,1.18(total 3H,each t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.46(9H,s), 1.52-1.80(4H,m), 2.04-2.08(2H,m), 2.71-2.77(1H,m), 2.89,2.98(total 3H,each s), 3.32,3.39(total 2H,each q,J=7.1 Hz), 3.74-3.76(1H,m), 4.09-4.11(1H,m), 4.60(1H,br.s).

MS (EI) m/z: 326(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 324

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(7-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl)-carbonyl]amino]-5-[[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (1.44 g) obtained in Referential Example 323 was dissolved in methanol (20 ml), 10% palladium on carbon (150 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred under a hydrogen atmosphere. After 24 hours, the catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvent was then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a colorless oil. This oil was used in the next reaction as it is.

The above-obtained oil was dissolved in methylene chloride (30 ml), and the compound (850 mg) obtained in Referential Example 57, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopro-

235

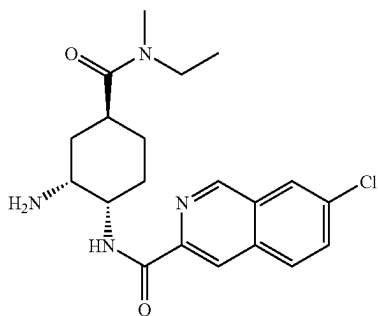
pyl)-carbodiimide hydrochloride (1.27 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (900 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (1.34 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature. After 17 hours, methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:50) to obtain the title compound (1.61 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.10, 1.22 (total 3H, each t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.43 (9H, s), 1.84-2.17 (6H, m), 2.66 (1H, br. s), 2.92, 3.03 (total 3H, each s), 3.35-3.44 (2H, m), 4.20-4.30 (2H, m), 5.30 (1H, br. s), 7.70 (1H, d, J=8.6 Hz), 7.92 (1H, d, J=8.6 Hz), 8.00 (1H, s), 8.40 (1H, br. s), 8.56 (1H, s), 9.03 (1H, s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 489(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 325

N-((1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(7-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl)-carbonyl]-4-{[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl}cyclohexyl)-7-chloroisoquinoline-3-carboxamide



The compound (1.60 g) obtained in Referential Example 324 was dissolved in an ethanol solution (25 ml) of hydrochloric acid, and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride, and organic layers were combined and dried over potassium carbonate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, hexane was added to the residue, and precipitate was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (1.22 g).

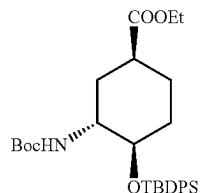
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.10, 1.23 (total 3H, each t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.26 (2H, br. s), 1.69-2.11 (6H, m), 2.89 (1H, br. s), 2.93, 3.05 (total 3H, each s), 3.38-3.45 (2H, m), 3.52 (1H, s), 4.18 (1H, br. s), 7.70 (1H, dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.94 (1H, d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.02 (1H, d, J=2.0 Hz), 8.50 (1H, br. s), 8.59 (1H, s), 9.11 (1H, s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 389(M+H)⁺.

236

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 326

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-{[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy}cyclohexanecarboxylate

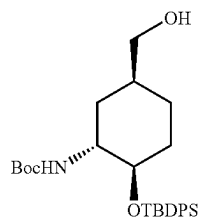


The compound (28.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 88 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (500 ml), and tert-butyldiphenylsilyl chloride (63.5 ml) and imidazole (19.9 g) were added. After the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 hours, ethyl acetate and water were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate, and organic layers were combined, washed twice with water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=1:0→47:3) to obtain the title compound (52.5 g) containing 0.4 molecules of N,N-dimethylformamide.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07 (9H, s), 1.27 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.38 (9H, s), 1.43-1.59 (3H, m), 1.63-1.67 (1H, m), 1.92-1.98 (1H, m), 2.25-2.32 (1H, m), 2.37-2.42 (1H, m), 3.66 (1H, br. s), 3.80 (1H, br. s), 4.16 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 4.32 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 7.34-7.46 (6H, m), 7.65-7.73 (4H, m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 327

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-{[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]-oxy}-5-(hydroxymethyl)cyclohexanecarboxylate



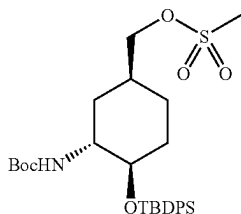
Lithium aluminum hydride (7.11 g) was suspended in absolute diethyl ether (100 ml) at 0° C. while purging with argon, and a diethyl ether solution (500 ml) of the compound (52.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 326 was added dropwise over 30 minutes. After stirring at 0° C. for 30 minutes, methanol (100 ml) was added dropwise to the reaction mixture. The resultant slurry was removed by filtration through Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate 3:1) to obtain the title compound (29.6 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07 (9H, s), 1.32-1.74 (16H, m), 1.87 (1H, t, J=10.4 Hz), 3.35-3.55 (2H, m), 3.71 (1H, br. s), 3.79 (1H, br. s), 4.36 (1H, br. s), 7.34-7.44 (6H, m), 7.65-7.72 (4H, m).

237

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 328

((1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[[tert-Butoxycarbonyl]amino]-4-
[[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy}cyclohexyl)methyl
methane-sulfonate



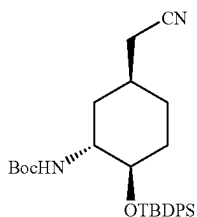
The compound (29.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 327 was dissolved in methylene chloride (200 ml) and pyridine (20 ml), and methanesulfonyl chloride (9.5 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 6 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and ethyl acetate and water were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate, and organic layers were combined, washed twice with water and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain the title compound (29.8 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.08(9H,s), 1.38(9H,s), 1.43-1.61 (5H,m), 1.86-1.89(2H,m), 3.02(3H,s), 3.77(1H,br.s), 3.81 (1H,br.s), 4.10(2H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 4.32(1H,br.s), 7.35-7.45 (6H,m), 7.64-7.68(4H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 562(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 329

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)
silyl]-oxy}-5-(cyanomethyl)cyclohexanecarbamate



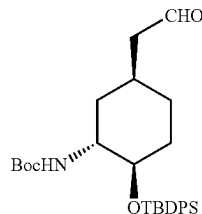
The compound (29.8 g) obtained in Referential Example 328 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (400 ml), and sodium cyanide (3.64 g) was added to stir the mixture at 80° C. for 11 hours. Ethyl acetate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and organic layers were combined, washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=5:1) to obtain the title compound (20.6 g).

238

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.08(9H,s), 1.38(9H,s), 1.43-1.68 (5H,m), 1.79-1.85(1H,m), 1.88-1.95(1H,m), 2.32(2H,d, J=7.1 Hz), 3.77(1H,br.s), 3.82(1H,br.s), 4.32(1H,br.d,J=6.8 Hz), 7.35-7.45(6H,m), 7.65-7.71(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 330

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)
silyl]-oxy}-5-(2-oxoethyl)cyclohexanecarbamate



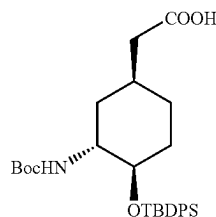
The compound (2.00 g) obtained in Referential Example 329 was dissolved in absolute methylene chloride (20 ml), and the system was purged with argon and then cooled to -78° C. To the solution, was added dropwise diisobutylaluminum hydride (0.95 M hexane solution, 8.55 ml). The temperature of the mixture was then allowed to raise to room temperature and stirred for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0° C., and methanol (10 ml) was added dropwise. The resultant slurry was removed by filtration through Celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=1:0→49:1) to obtain the title compound (1.45 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.38(9H,s), 1.43-1.54 (5H,m), 1.82-1.88(1H,m), 2.06(1H,br.s), 2.42-2.43(2H,m), 3.72(1H,br.s), 3.77(1H,br.s), 4.38(1H,br.s), 7.34-7.44(6H,m), 7.65-7.68(4H,m), 9.77(1H,t,J=1.7 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 496(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 331

2-((1R*,3S*,4S*)-3-[(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-
[[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy}cyclohexyl)acetic
acid



The compound (8.40 g) obtained in Referential Example 330 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of water (33 ml) and tert-butanol (120 ml), and 2-methyl-2-butene (8.08 ml), sodium dihydrogenphosphate dihydrate (2.64 g) and sodium chlorite (3.45 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Methylene chloride and water were added to the reaction mixture to dilute it. The resultant

239

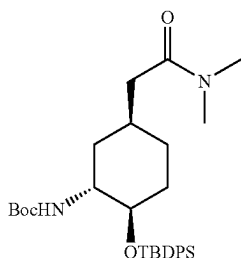
water layer was adjusted to pH of about 4 with 1N hydrochloric acid. Liquid separation was conducted, and the resultant water layer was extracted twice with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1→1:1) to obtain the title compound (7.62 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.22-1.63(15H,m), 1.82(1H,br.s), 2.17(1H,br.s), 2.27-2.33(1H,m), 3.69(1H,br.s), 3.84(1H,br.s), 7.00(1H,br.s), 7.33-7.42(6H,m), 7.63-7.65(4H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 512(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 332

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]-oxy]-5-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]cyclohexanecarbamate



The compound (7.62 g) obtained in Referential Example 331 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (150 ml), and dimethylamine hydrochloride (6.07 g), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (8.56 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (1.01 g) and triethylamine (10.3 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was extracted with methylene chloride, and organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1). The solvent was distilled off, hexane was added to the residue, and formed white precipitate was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (6.42 g).

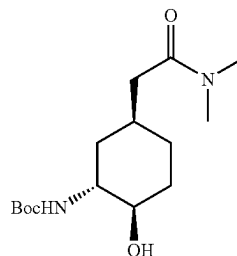
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.08(9H,s), 1.38(9H,br.s), 1.43-1.55(5H,m), 1.79-1.86(1H,m), 2.03(1H,br.s), 2.21-2.32(2H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.74(1H,br.s), 3.80(1H,br.s), 4.49(1H,br.s), 7.33-7.44(6H,m), 7.64-7.69(4H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 539(M+H)⁺.

240

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 333

tert-Butyl (1R*,2R*,5S*)-5-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]-2-hydroxycyclohexanecarbamate



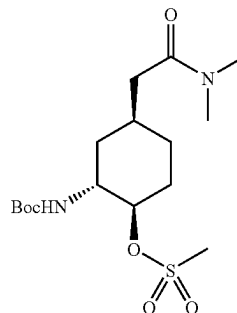
The compound (6.36 g) obtained in Referential Example 332 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1N tetrahydrofuran solution, 17.85 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 13 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (3.49 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.46-1.60(4H,m), 1.79-1.84(2H,m), 2.28-2.35(3H,s), 2.82(1H,br.s), 2.95(3H,s), 3.01(3H,s), 3.56(2H,br.s), 4.67(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 301(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 334

((1R*,2R*,4S*)-2-[(tert-Butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]cyclohexyl methane-sulfonate



The compound (8.05 mg) obtained in Referential Example 333 was dissolved in methylene chloride (50 ml), and the solution was cooled to -78° C. under an argon atmosphere to add dropwise methanesulfonyl chloride (2.70 ml). After the temperature of the mixture was allowed to raise to 0° C. and stirred for 30 minutes, it was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined, washed with water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1→0:1) to obtain the title compound (3.63 g).

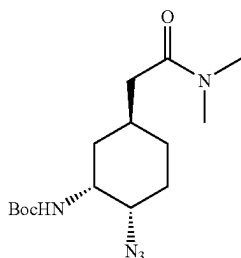
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 1.59-1.74(4H,m), 1.85-2.30(5H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.10(3H,s), 3.79-3.83(1H,m), 4.72(1H,br.s), 4.91(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 379(M+H)⁺.

241

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 335

tert-Butyl (1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-azido-5-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]cyclohexanecarbamate



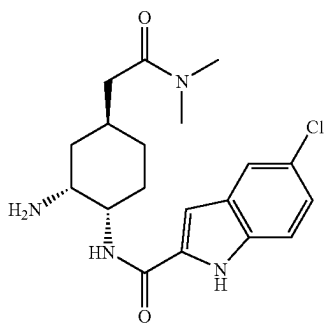
The compound (3.62 g) obtained in Referential Example 334 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and sodium azide (3.11 g) was added to stir the mixture at 75° C. for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into a mixed solvent of water and ethyl acetate to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and organic layers were combined, washed with water, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound (1.30 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.14-1.21(1H,m), 1.33-1.40(1H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.61-1.71(1H,m), 1.78-1.91(3H,m), 2.22-2.27(3H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.60-3.62(1H,m), 3.97(1H, br.s), 4.76(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 326(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 336

N-{(1R*,2S*,4R*)-2-Amino-4-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating, in a similar manner to Referential Example 69, a product obtained by catalytically reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 335 in a similar manner to Referential Example 324 and then condensing it with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid.

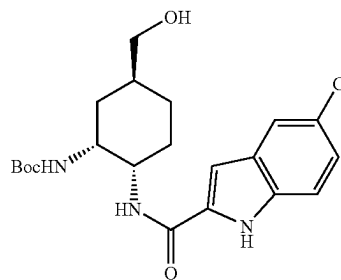
242

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.16-1.19(1H,m), 1.51-1.56(1H,m), 1.70-1.73(1H,m), 1.81-1.91(2H,m), 1.99-2.03(1H,m), 2.19-2.30(3H,m), 2.83(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.63(1H,br.s), 4.08(1H,br.s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.7,1.7 Hz), 7.35(1H,s), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.22(3H,br.s), 8.62(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 11.91(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 377(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 337

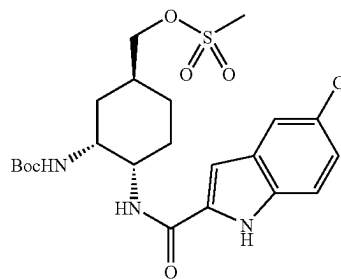
tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-(hydroxymethyl)cyclohexanecarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 97 in a similar manner to step 2) of Referential Example 129.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 338

((1S,3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)methyl methanesulfonate



The compound (500 mg) obtained in Referential Example 337 and triethylamine (329 ml) were suspended in tetrahydrofuran (8 ml)-methylene chloride (8 ml), and the suspension was cooled to -78° C. After methanesulfonyl chloride (138 ml) was added dropwise to the suspension, the temperature of the suspension was gradually raised to -5° C., and the suspension was stirred for 15 hours at the same temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, water was added to the residue to conduct extraction 3 times with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (654 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.57(9H,s), 1.84-2.01(4H,m), 2.28-2.31(1H,m), 3.04(3H,s), 3.68(1H,s), 3.74-3.75(1H, m),

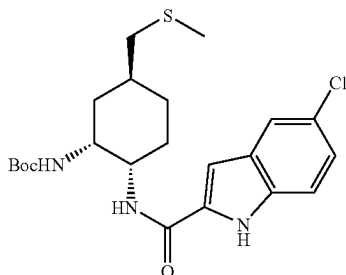
243

3.91-3.93(1H,m), 4.02-4.12(2H,m), 4.18-4.20(1H,m), 4.85 (1H,br.s), 6.81(1H,s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=2.0,8.8 Hz), 7.34(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.60(1H,s), 8.02(1H,br.s), 9.27(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 500(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 339

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbo-
nyl]-amino]-5-[(methylsulfanyl)methyl]cyclohexan-
ecarbamate



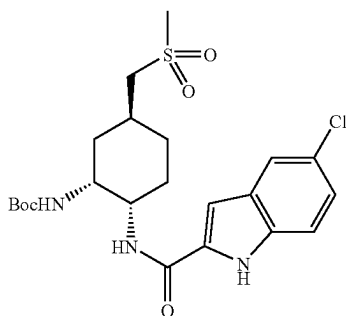
The compound (654 mg) obtained in Referential Example 338 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (8 ml), and a 15% aqueous solution (1.8 ml) of sodium thiomethoxide was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (492 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52(9H,s), 1.87-3.04(13H,m), 3.91-3.94(1H,m), 4.12-4.15(1H,m), 4.95(1H,br.s), 6.81(1H,s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.2 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.57(1H,s), 9.82(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 452(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 340

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbo-
nyl]-amino]-5-[(methylsulfonyl)methyl]cyclohexan-
ecarbamate



The compound (300 mg) obtained in Referential Example 339 was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and m-chloroperbenzoic acid (70%, 400 mg) was added at 0° C. under stirring. After stirring was continued for 1 hour, as it

244

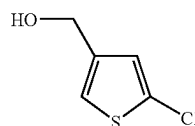
is, the reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated.

5 After the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1), liquid separation was conducted with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was concentrated to obtain the title compound (254 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44-2.19(13H,m), 2.22-2.30(2H,m), 2.89-3.25(7H,m), 3.93-4.15(2H,m), 4.98(1H,br.s), 6.82 (1H,s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.60(1H,br.s), 9.54 (1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 341

(5-Chlorothiophen-3-yl)methanol

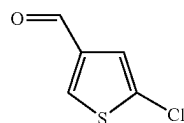


5-Chlorothiophene-3-carboxylic acid (Monatsh. Chem., Vol. 120, p. 53, 1989) (6.93 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (750 ml), and triethylamine (27.3 ml) and ethyl chloroformate (18.7 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2.5 hours. An aqueous solution (41 ml) of sodium borohydride (19.3 g) was added dropwise over 10 minutes, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18.5 hours. After acetic acid was added to the reaction mixture to acidify it, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Water and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was washed with water and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. After drying the organic layer, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:4) to obtain the title compound (5.17 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.63(1H,t,J=5.8 Hz), 4.59(2H,d, J=5.3 Hz), 6.91(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 6.98-6.99(1H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 342

5-Chlorothiophene-3-carbaldehyde



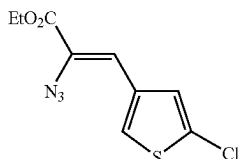
60 The compound (5.17 g) obtained in Referential Example 341 was dissolved in methylene chloride (400 ml), and manganese dioxide (51.3 g) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 15 hours. After the reaction mixture was filtered, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (2.84 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 7.35(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.88(1H,d, J=1.7 Hz), 9.75(1H,s).

245

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 343

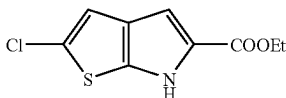
Ethyl 2-azido-3-(5-chlorothiophen-3-yl)acrylate



After ethanol (15 ml) was added to a 20% ethanol solution (10.7 ml) of sodium ethoxide, and the mixture was cooled to 0° C., a mixture of the compound (1.01 g) obtained in Referential Example 342 and ethyl azidoacetate (3.55 g) was added dropwise over 30 minutes, and the resultant mixture was stirred at 0° C. for 3 hours. A cooled aqueous solution of ammonium chloride was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction 3 times with diethyl ether. Organic layers were combined, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate:hexane=1:49) to obtain the title compound (1.04 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.38(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.34(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 6.75(1H,s), 7.39(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.54(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 344

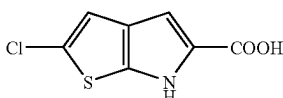
Ethyl
2-chloro-6H-thieno[2,3-b]pyrrole-5-carboxylate

The compound (0.97 g) obtained in Referential Example 343 was dissolved in xylene (20 ml), and the solution was heated under reflux for 30 minutes. After allowing the reaction mixture to cool, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Hexane was added to the residue, solids formed were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (0.608 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.38(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 4.35(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 6.90(1H,s), 7.00(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 9.32(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 345

2-Chloro-6H-thieno[2,3-b]pyrrole-5-carboxylic acid



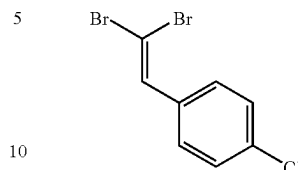
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 344 in a similar manner to Referential Example 274.

¹H-NMR (CD₃OD) δ: 3.35(1H,s), 6.94(1H,s), 6.96(1H,s). MS (ESI) m/z: 200(M-H)⁻.

246

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 346

1-Chloro-4-(2,2-dibromovinyl)benzene



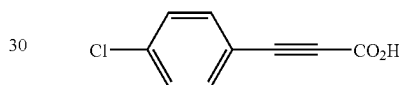
4-Chlorobenzaldehyde (2.81 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (300 ml), and carbon tetrabromide (13.3 g) and triphenylphosphine (21.0 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 90 minutes. After insoluble matter deposited was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=20:1) to obtain the title compound (5.54 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 7.33(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.43(1H,s), 7.47(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz).

MS (EI) m/z: 296(M⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 347

3-(4-Chlorophenyl)-2-propionic acid



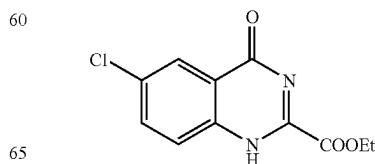
The compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 346 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml), and n-butyllithium (1.59 N hexane solution, 4.46 ml) was added dropwise at -78° C. under an argon atmosphere. The temperature of the reaction mixture was allowed to raise to room temperature and stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled again to -78° C., stirred for 2 minutes under a carbon dioxide atmosphere and then warmed to room temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and ethyl acetate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. 3N Hydrochloric acid was added to the resultant water layer to acidify it, and extraction was conducted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (453 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.55(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.66(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 13.90(1H,br.s).

MS (EI) m/z: 180(M⁺).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 348

Ethyl 6-chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazoline-2-carboxylate



247

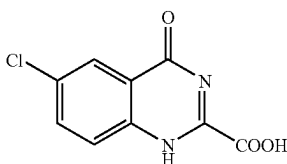
Ethyl chlorooxoacetate (2.0 ml) was added to a solution of 2-amino-5-chlorobenzamide (2.50 g) in pyridine (15 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in acetic acid (50 ml). Acetic anhydride (5.0 ml) was added to the solution, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 16 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and ethanol was added to the residue. Crystals deposited were collected by filtration and washed to obtain the title compound (2.71 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.38(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 7.85(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.91(1H,dd,J=8.6,2.3 Hz), 8.10(1H,d,J=2.3 Hz), 12.85(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 253(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 349

6-Chloro-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazoline-2-carboxylic acid



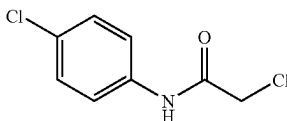
Lithium hydroxide (263 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (1.26 g) obtained in Referential Example 348 in a mixed solvent of water (5 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid (11 ml) under ice cooling and stirred for 1 hour. Crystals deposited were collected by filtration and washed with water to obtain the title compound (0.96 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.50-8.20(3H,m), 12.44(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 265(M+H+CH₃CN)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 350

2-Chloro-N-(4-chlorophenyl)acetamide



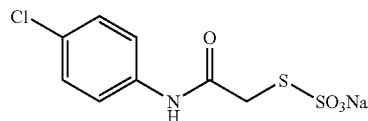
p-Chloroaniline (3.82 g) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (30 ml), and chloroacetyl chloride (2.39 ml) was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 1 hour. After the reaction mixture was heated and stirred at 60° C. for 3.5 hours, crystals deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (4.78 g). The filtrate was concentrated to about 1/4, and crystals deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (1.01 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.19(2H,s), 7.33(2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.51(2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.22(1H,br.s).

248

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 351

Sodium S-[2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoethyl]thiosulfate

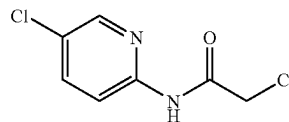


The compound (5.79 g) obtained in Referential Example 350 was dissolved in ethanol (140 ml), and an aqueous solution (140 ml) of sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate (7.04 g) was added at a time at 70° C. to heat the mixture under reflux for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to about 1/10, and crystals deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (8.20 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.73(2H,s), 7.35(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.57(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 10.30(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 352

2-Chloro-N-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)acetamide hydrochloride

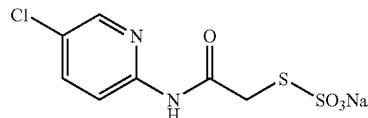


2-Amino-5-chloropyridine (3.85 g) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (60 ml), and chloroacetyl chloride (2.39 ml) was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 1 hour. After the reaction mixture was heated and stirred at 60° C. for 30 minutes, chloroacetyl chloride (0.5 ml) was additionally added, and the mixture was stirred at 60° C. for additional 1 hour. Powder deposited was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (6.18 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.36(2H,s), 7.94(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.7 Hz), 8.09(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.40(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 11.03 (1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 353

Sodium S-{2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethyl}thiosulfate



An aqueous solution (130 ml) with sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate (6.35 g) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (2.15 g) dissolved therein was added to a solution with the compound (6.18 g) obtained in Referential Example 352 dissolved in ethanol (130 ml) at a time at 80° C. under stirring, and the mixture was heated under reflux at 110° C. for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to solids under reduced pressure, and ethanol (500 ml) was added to

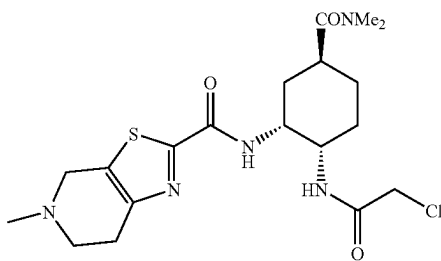
249

the residue. The resultant mixture was heated and extracted twice. The extract was concentrated to about 1/20, and diethyl ether was added. Insoluble matter deposited was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (6.65 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.77(2H,s), 7.89(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.7 Hz), 8.09(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 10.57(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 354

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(2-chloroacetyl)amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrathiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



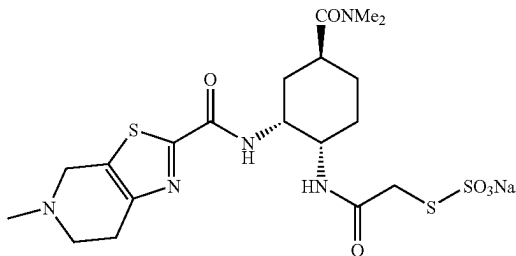
The compound (100 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 was dissolved in ethyl acetate (10 ml), and chloroacetyl chloride (21.6 μl) was added to heat and stir the mixture at 60° C. for 30 minutes. After allowing the reaction mixture to cool, insoluble matter was collected by filtration and dissolved in methylene chloride-methanol, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the crude title compound (112 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(1H,m), 1.55-2.00(5H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 3.00-3.25(5H,m), 3.17(3H,s), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 3.96(1H,d,J=12.9 Hz), 4.00-4.15(1H,m), 4.02(1H,d,J=12.9 Hz), 4.45-4.70(2H,m), 7.85-8.00(1H,br), 8.12(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.35(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 442(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 355

Sodium S-[2-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrathiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)amino]-2-oxoethyl]thiosulfate



The compound (106 mg) obtained in Referential Example 354 was dissolved in ethanol (1.5 ml), and an aqueous solution (1.5 ml) of sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate (55 mg) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (18.6 mg) dissolved therein

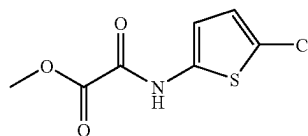
250

was added at a time at 90° C. under stirring. The resultant mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated to solids under reduced pressure, and ethanol (10 ml) was added to the residue. The resultant mixture was heated and extracted. The extract was concentrated to about 1/2, and isopropyl ether (10 ml) was added. Insoluble matter deposited was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (72 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(1H,m), 1.55-1.90(5H,m), 2.40(3H,s), 2.78(3H,s), 2.80-3.10(5H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.44(1H,d,J=14.2 Hz), 3.50(1H,d,J=14.2 Hz), 3.68(2H,s), 3.75-3.90(1H,m), 4.45-4.50(1H,m), 8.01(1H,d,J=7.4 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 356

Methyl 2-[(5-chlorothiophen-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



Triethylamine (1.25 ml) and diphenylphosphoryl azide (1.55 ml) were added to a suspension of 5-chlorothiophene-2-carboxylic acid (0.99 g) in toluene (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 80° C. for 1 hour. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, tert-butanol (2 ml) was added, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 19 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (200 ml) was added to the resultant residue. The resultant mixture was successively washed with distilled water, a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid, distilled water, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=4:1) to obtain tert-butyl 5-chloro-2-thienylcarbamate (1.05 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.51(9H,s), 6.21(1H,d,J=3.1 Hz), 6.60(1H,d,J=3.1 Hz), 6.91(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 234(M+H)⁺.

After the product (1.87 g) obtained above was added to a 4N dioxane solution (40 ml) of hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), and sodium hydrogencarbonate (2.02 g) and methyl chlorooxoacetate (0.883 ml) were added under ice cooling to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1), and the solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (1.44 g).

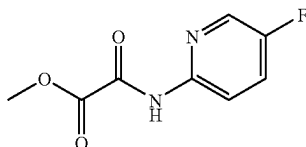
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.98(3H,s), 6.61(1H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 6.75(1H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 9.42(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 220(M+H)⁺.

251

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 357

Methyl
2-[(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



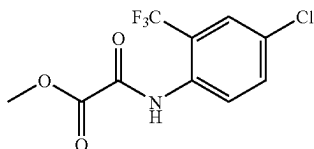
The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-fluoropyridine and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.99(3H,s), 7.48-7.53(1H,m), 8.21(1H,d,J=2.9 Hz), 8.27-8.31(1H,m), 9.41(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 198(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 358

Methyl 2-[4-chloro-2-(trifluoromethyl)anilino]-2-oxoacetate



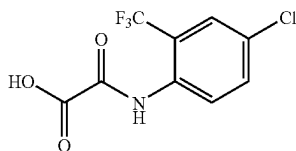
The title compound was obtained from 4-chloro-2-trifluoroaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 4.01(3H,s), 7.58(1H,dd, J=8.8,2.2 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 9.30(1H,br.s).

MS (EI) m/z : 281(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 359

2-[4-Chloro-2-(trifluoromethyl)anilino]-2-oxoacetic acid



Lithium hydroxide (28 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (297 mg) obtained in Referential Example 358 in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (7 ml) and water (3 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (8 ml) and methylene chloride (20 ml) were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation.

252

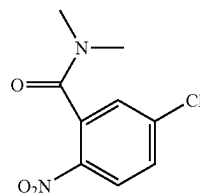
ration. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dried to obtain the title compound (291 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 7.61(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.5 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 8.26(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 9.36(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI, anion) m/z : 267(M-H) $^-$

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 360

5-Chloro-N,N-dimethyl-2-nitrobenzamide

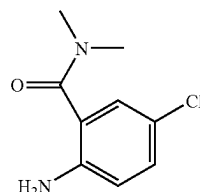


The title compound was obtained by condensing 5-chloro-2-nitrobenzoic acid with dimethylamine in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 143.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.86(3H,s), 3.16(3H,s), 7.38(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 7.51(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.2 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 361

2-Amino-5-chloro-N,N-dimethylbenzamide



Iron(III) chloride hexahydrate (9.93 g) and zinc powder (8.01 g) were added to a solution of the compound (2.8 g) obtained in Referential Example 360 in a mixed solvent of N,N-dimethylformamide (80 ml) and water (40 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 20 minutes. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite 545, and ethyl acetate (200 ml) was added to the filtrate to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was washed with ethyl acetate (100 ml \times 2), and organic layers were combined, washed with distilled water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:hexane=1:1 \rightarrow 1:0 \rightarrow methanol:methylene chloride=1:100) to obtain the title compound (2.41 g).

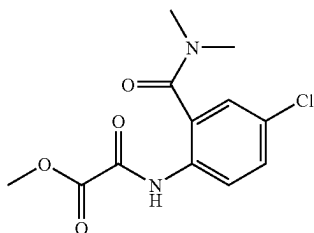
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.13(6H,s), 4.33(2H,br), 6.65(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.07(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 7.11(1H,dd,J=8.5,2.2 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z : 240(M+MeCN) $^+$.

253

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 362

Methyl 2-{4-chloro-2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]anilino}-2-oxoacetate



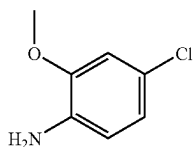
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 361 and methyl chloroacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.09(6H,br), 3.96(3H,s), 7.30(1H,d, $J=2.4$ Hz), 7.41(1H,d, $J=8.8$, 2.4 Hz), 8.34(1H,d, $J=8.8$ Hz), 10.46(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z : 285(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 363

4-Chloro-2-methoxyaniline



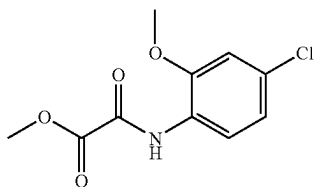
The title compound was obtained from 5-chloro-2-nitroanisole in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 361.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.65-3.95(2H,br), 3.87(3H,s), 6.61(1H,d, $J=8.8$ Hz), 6.74-6.78(2H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z : 199(M+MeCN+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 364

Methyl 2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyanilino)-2-oxoacetate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 363 and methyl chloroacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

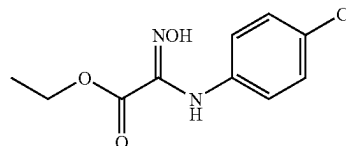
254

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.92(3H,s), 3.97(3H,s), 6.90(1H,d, $J=2.2$ Hz), 6.98(1H,dd, $J=8.8,2.2$ Hz), 8.35(1H,d, $J=8.8$ Hz), 9.33-9.44(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z : 244(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 365

Ethyl 2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-(hydroxyimino)-acetate



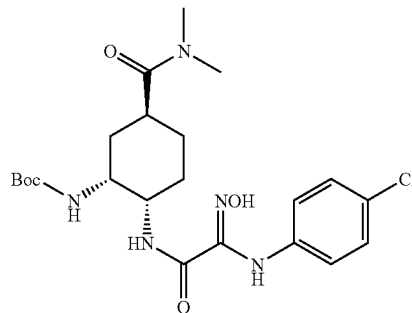
The title compound was obtained from 4-chloroaniline (3.03 g) and ethyl 2-chloro-2-hydroxyiminoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in literature (Gilchrist, T. L.; Peek, M. E.; Rees, C. W.; J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun., 1975, 913).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.26(3H,t, $J=7.1$ Hz), 1.60-1.80(1H,br), 4.28(2H,q, $J=7.1$ Hz), 6.85(2H,d, $J=8.6$ Hz), 7.24(2H,d, $J=8.6$ Hz), 8.15-8.45(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z : 243(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 366

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-(hydroxyimino)acetyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (597 mg) obtained in Referential Example 144 was added to a solution of the compound (350 mg) obtained in Referential Example 365 in ethanol (5.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at 70° C. for 3 days. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=30:1) to obtain the title compound (180 mg).

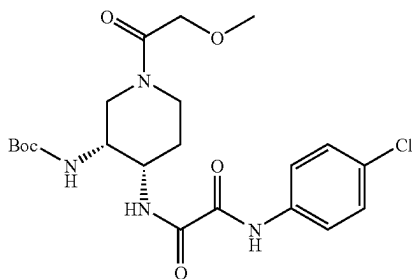
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CD_3OD) δ : 1.46(9H,s), 1.47-1.84(6H,m), 1.88-1.95(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 3.90-3.97(1H,m), 4.11-4.17(1H,m), 6.84(2H,d, $J=8.8$ Hz), 7.18(2H,d, $J=8.8$ Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z : 504(M+Na) $^+$.

255

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 367

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-([2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoacetyl]amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate



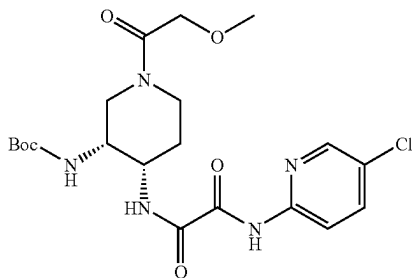
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 374 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.55-1.75(1H,br), 1.94-2.07(1H,br), 2.70-3.00(1H,m), 3.10-3.37(1H,m), 3.44(3H,s), 3.88-4.22(4H,m), 4.55-4.69(1H,br), 4.80-4.90(0.5H,br), 5.36-5.48(0.5H,br), 7.20-7.30(1H,br), 7.32(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.20-8.40(1H,br), 9.15-9.25(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 469(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 368

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-([2-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl)amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 266 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

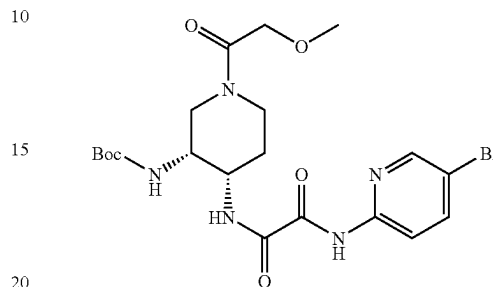
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.65-2.30(2H,br), 2.68-3.02(1H,m), 3.10-3.35(1H,m), 3.44(3H,s), 3.80-4.25(4H,m), 4.45-4.70(1H,m), 5.05-5.20(0.5H,m), 5.80-5.93(0.5H,m), 7.30-7.40(1H,br), 7.71(1H,br d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.95-8.05(0.3H,br), 8.19(1H,br d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.31(1H,br.s), 8.38-8.53(0.7H,br), 9.74-9.84(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 470(M+H)⁺.

256

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 369

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-([2-[(5-bromopyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl]amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate

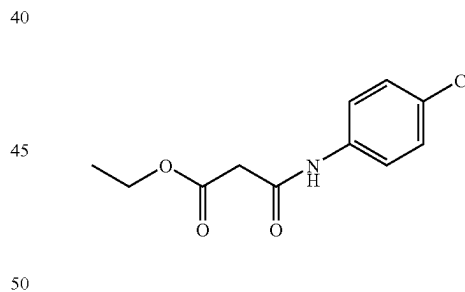


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 375 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.50-1.75(1H,m), 1.95-2.13(1H,br), 2.70-2.98(1H,m), 3.05-3.36(1H,m), 3.45(3H,s), 3.80-4.24(4H,m), 4.57-4.73(1H,br), 4.85-4.95(0.25H,br), 5.10-5.15(0.25H,br), 5.45-5.58(0.5H,br), 7.30-7.38(1H,m), 7.84(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.2 Hz), 8.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.30-8.55(1H,br), 8.40(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 9.68(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 370

Ethyl 3-(4-chloroanilino)-3-oxopropionate



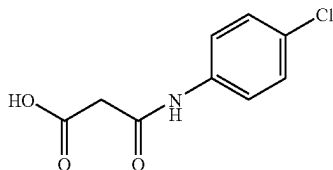
Potassium ethyl malonate (3.2 g), 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole (2.1 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (4.5 g) were successively added to a solution of 4-chloroaniline (2.0 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate, a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (4.0 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.33(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 3.47(2H,s), 4.26(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 7.29(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.51(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 9.32(1H,br.s).

257

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 371

3-(4-Chloroanilino)-3-oxopropionic acid

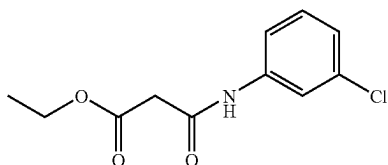


A 1N aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 370 in ethanol (10 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours. 1N Hydrochloric acid (10 ml) was added to the reaction mixture, the mixture was stirred, and insoluble matter deposited was then collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (0.5 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 3.34(2H,s), 7.35(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.59(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 10.26(1H,s), 12.66(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 372

Ethyl 3-(3-chloroanilino)-3-oxopropionate

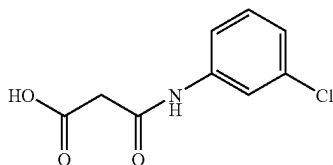


The title compound was obtained by condensing 3-chloroaniline with potassium ethyl malonate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 370.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.33(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 3.47(2H,s), 4.26(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 7.09(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.22-7.26(1H,m), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 9.35(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 373

3-(3-Chloroanilino)-3-oxopropionic acid



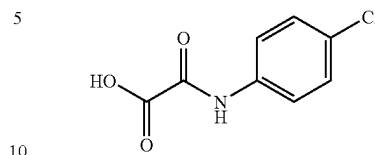
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 372 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 371.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 3.35(2H,s), 7.11(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.33(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.78(1H,s), 10.31(1H,s), 12.67(1H,br.s).

258

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 374

2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid

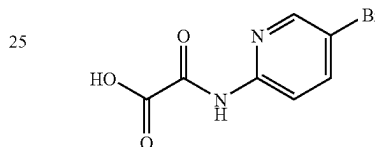


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 242 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 7.37(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.79(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 10.66(1H,s)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 375

2-[(5-Bromopyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetic acid

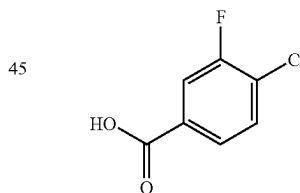


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 262 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 7.95-8.00(1H,m), 8.08(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 8.50(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 10.74(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 376

4-Chloro-3-fluorobenzoic acid



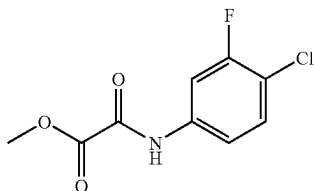
Sodium chlorite (17 g) was added portionwise to a mixture solution composed of 4-chloro-3-fluorobenzaldehyde (10 g), amidosulfuric acid (18 g), tert-butyl alcohol (50 ml) and water (50 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water, 1N hydrochloric acid and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of diisopropyl ether and hexane to obtain the title compound (11.2 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 7.72(1H,dt,J=8.3,1.5 Hz), 7.77(1H,dt,J=8.3,1.6 Hz), 7.82(1H,dt,J=9.7,1.5 Hz), 13.45(1H,s).

259

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 377

Methyl 2-(4-chloro-3-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetate

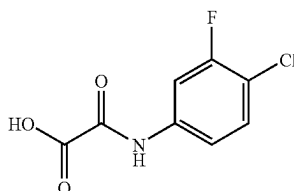


The title compound was obtained by subjecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 376 to Curtius rearrangement reaction and then condensing this product with methyl chlorooxacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 356.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.99(3H,s), 7.25-7.27(1H,m), 7.39(1H,t,J=8.5 Hz), 7.72(1H,dd,J=10.4, 2.4 Hz), 8.90(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 378

2-(4-Chloro-3-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid

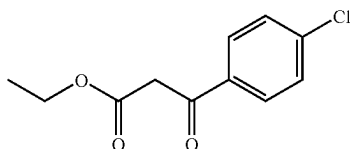


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 377 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.52(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 7.63(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.88(1H,dd,J=12.0, 2.2 Hz), 10.83(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 379

Ethyl 3-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-oxopropionate



Triethylamine (17 ml) and magnesium chloride (5.5 g) were added to a suspension of potassium ethyl malonate (8.2 g) in ethyl acetate (100 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 18 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. On the other hand, a suspension composed of 4-chlorobenzoic acid (5.0 g), thionyl chloride (12 ml), N,N-dimethylformamide (one drop) and toluene (100 ml) was heated under reflux for 1 hour, and the reaction mixture was then concentrated. The

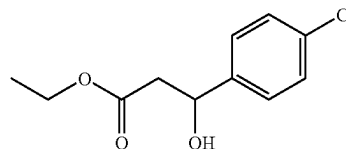
260

resultant residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and the solution was added dropwise to the reaction mixture previously prepared under ice cooling. The resultant mixture was stirred for 18 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. A 10% aqueous solution of citric acid was added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes to separate the resultant organic layer. The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was isolated and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform) to obtain the title compound (6.4 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.26(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 3.96(2H,s), 4.21(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 7.46(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.89(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 380

Ethyl 3-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropionate

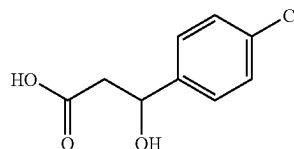


Sodium borohydride (0.2 g) was added portionwise under ice cooling to a solution of the compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 379 in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred for 2 hours while the temperature of the system was gradually raised to room temperature. A 10% aqueous solution of citric acid was added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was isolated and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform) to obtain the title compound (0.56 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.27(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 2.70(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 2.71(1H,d,J=3.4 Hz), 3.37(1H,d,J=3.4 Hz), 4.18(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 5.09-5.13(1H,m), 7.30-7.35(5H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 381

3-(4-Chlorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropionic acid



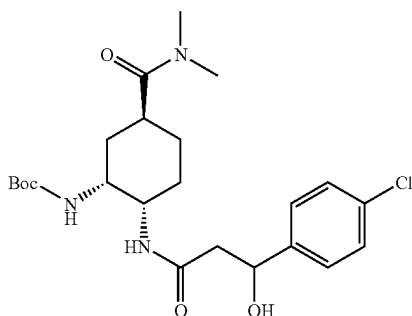
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 380 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.25-3.32(1H,m), 4.89-4.95(1H,m), 5.45-5.53(1H,m), 7.35-7.36(5H,m), 12.11-12.18(1H,m). MS (ESI,anion) m/z: 198(M-H)⁻.

261

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 382

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[3-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-hydroxypropanoyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



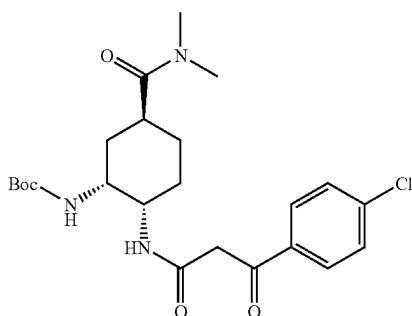
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 381 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.21-1.44(2H,m), 1.46(9H,s), 1.76-1.92(2H,m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 2.40-2.55(2H,m), 2.55-2.68(1H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 3.82-3.96(1H,m), 4.02-4.17(1H,m), 4.65-4.80(2H,m), 5.03-5.13(1H,m), 7.28-7.33(5H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 468(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 383

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-{[3-(4-chlorophenyl)-3-oxopropanoyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



Manganese dioxide (0.47 g) was added to a solution of the compound (0.5 g) obtained in Referential Example 382 in 1,4-dioxane (20 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days. Insoluble matter was removed by filtration through Celite pad, and the resultant filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.46 g).

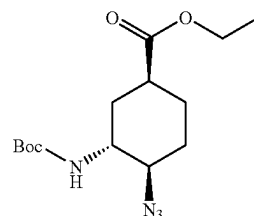
262

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.28-1.39(1H,m), 1.40(9H,s), 1.41-1.63(3H,m), 2.25-2.42(2H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.90-2.97(1H,m), 2.98(3H,s), 3.56(2H,s), 3.89-3.97(1H,m), 4.88-4.98(1H,m), 6.65-6.70(1H,m), 7.30-7.35(4H,m), 7.33(1H,dd, J=2.9, 1.7 Hz).

MS (ESI,anion) m/z: 464(M-H)⁻.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 384

Ethyl (1S,3R,4R)-4-azido-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate



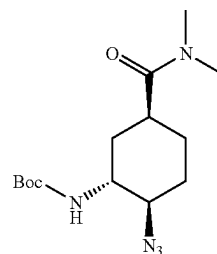
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 248 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 249.

[α]_D²⁵+62° (c=1, chloroform)

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.27(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.46(9H,s), 1.61(1H,s), 1.61-1.71(2H,m), 1.81-1.90(1H,m), 1.97-2.03(1H,m), 2.22-2.28(1H,m), 2.56-2.60(1H,m), 3.54(1H,br.s), 3.63-3.68(1H,m), 4.16(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.58(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 385

tert-Butyl (1R,2R,5S)-2-azido-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



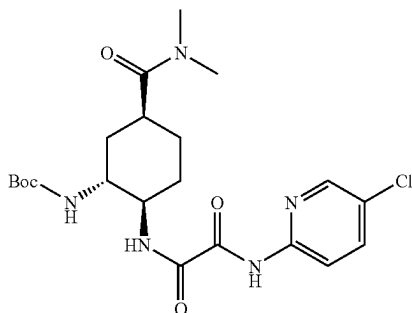
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 384 in similar manners to Referential Examples 250 and 251.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.40-2.20(6H,m), 2.70-2.80(1H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.60-3.78(1H,m), 3.83-3.95(1H,m), 4.65(1H,d,J=7.2 Hz).

263

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 386

tert-Butyl (1R,2R,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



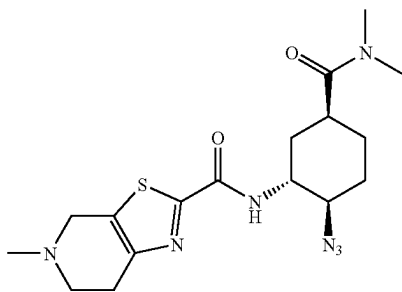
The title compound was obtained by converting the azide group of the compound obtained in Referential Example 385 into an amino group in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 90 and then condensing this product with the compound obtained in Referential Example 266 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.13-2.25(16H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.60-3.78(1H,m), 4.13-4.31(1H,m), 4.45-4.65(1H,m), 7.80(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.03(1H,br.s), 8.21(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.29(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 9.71(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 468(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 387

N-{(1R,2R,5S)-2-Azido-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 385 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 252.

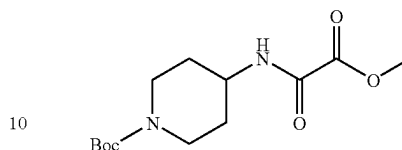
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.75-2.08(6H,m), 2.20-2.32(1H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.75-2.97(4H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.04(3H,s), 3.65-3.80(3H,m), 4.27-4.39(1H,m), 7.17-7.28(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 392(M+H)⁺.

264

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 388

tert-Butyl 4-[(2-methoxy-2-oxoacetyl)amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate



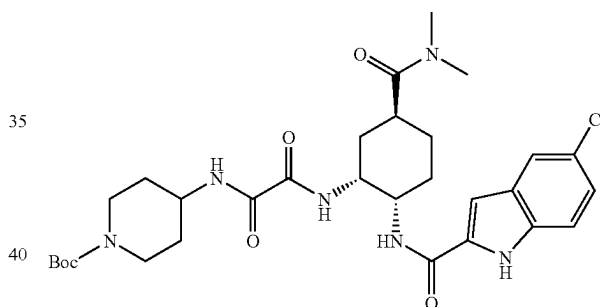
The title compound was obtained from (4-amino-N-tert-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine and methyl chlorooxacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.34-1.51(2H,m), 1.89-1.98(2H,m), 2.82-2.96(2H,m), 3.91(3H,s), 3.88-4.14(3H,m), 6.96-7.07(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 287(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 389

tert-Butyl 4-[[2-({(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-amino]-2-oxoacetyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate



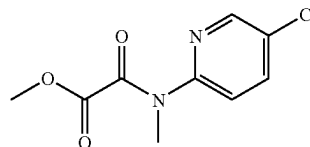
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 310 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 388 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.35-2.28(11H,m), 2.70-3.18(9H,m), 3.80-4.57(4H,m), 6.78(1H,s), 7.15-8.12(6H,m), 9.45(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 617(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 390

Methyl 2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)(methyl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



265

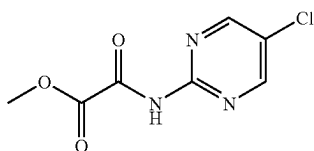
The title compound was obtained from 5-chloro-N-methyl-2-pyridineamine and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.43(3H,s), 3.81(3H,s), 7.08(1H, br.s), 7.68-7.78(1H,m), 8.27(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 229(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 391

Methyl
2-[(5-chloropyrimidin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



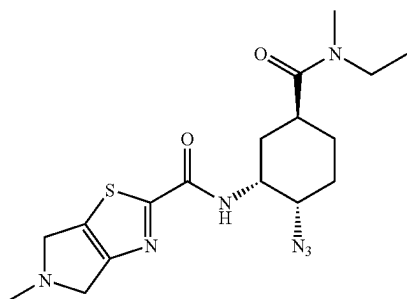
The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-chloropyrimidine and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 4.00(3H,s), 8.63(2H,s), 9.58(1H, br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 215(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 392

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-Azido-5-{[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl}-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]-thiazole-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 323 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 252.

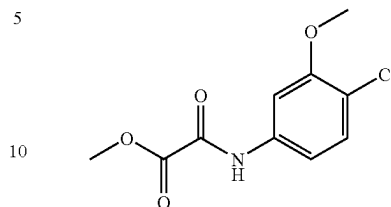
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.08,1.15(3H,each t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.74-1.88(4H,m), 2.12-2.22(2H,m), 2.67(3H,s), 2.81-2.86(1H,m), 2.89,2.96(3H,each s), 3.28-3.43(2H,m), 3.91-4.10(5H,m), 4.60-4.62(1H,m), 7.21(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z 392(M+H) $^+$.

266

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 393

Methyl 2-(4-chloro-3-methoxyanilino)-2-oxoacetate

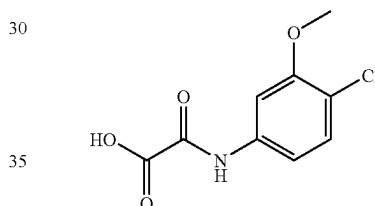


The title compound was obtained by reducing 2-chloro-5-nitroanisole in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 361 into an amino derivative and then condensing the amino derivative with methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.93(3H,s), 3.98(3H,s), 7.00(1H,dd, J=8.5, 2.4 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.57(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 8.89(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 394

2-(4-Chloro-3-methoxyanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid



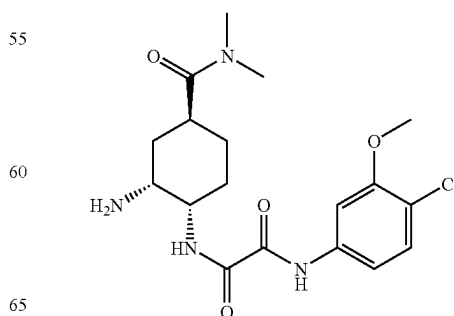
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 393 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 3.81(3H,s), 7.36(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 10.79(1H, s).

MS (ESI, anion) m/z : 228(M-H) $^-$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 395

N 1 -{(1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-N 2 -(4-chloro-3-methoxyphenyl)ethanediamide



267

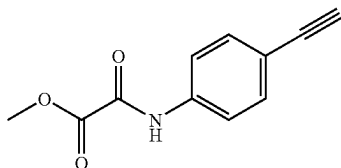
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 394 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 97, treating this product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 69 and then neutralizing it with a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.48-2.00(8H,m), 2.84-2.93(1H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 3.33-3.35(1H,m), 3.89-3.94(4H,m), 7.06(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.2 Hz), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.56(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 9.43(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 397(M^+).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 396

Methyl 2-(4-ethynylanilino)-2-oxoacetate

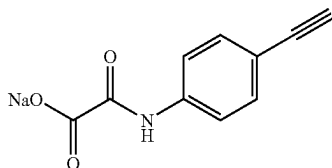


The title compound was obtained from 4-ethynylaniline and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.09(1H,s), 3.98(3H,s), 7.50(2H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.62(2H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 8.89(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 397

Sodium 2-(4-ethynylanilino)-2-oxoacetate



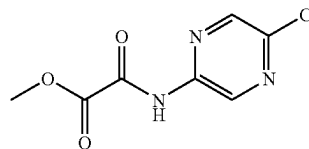
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 396 with sodium hydroxide in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 266.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 4.06(1H,s), 7.39(2H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.80(2H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 10.33(1H,br.s).

268

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 398

Methyl
2-[(5-chloropyrazin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



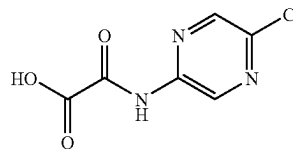
The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-chloropyrazine synthesized in accordance with literature (Sato, Nobuhiro et al., J. Heterocycl. Chem., 1982, 19(3), 673-4) and methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 4.02(3H,s), 8.35(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 9.37(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 9.41(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 216($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 399

2-[(5-Chloropyrazin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetic acid



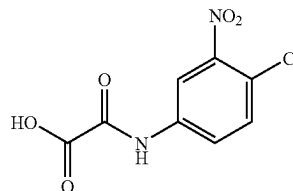
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 398 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 8.62(1H,s), 9.02(1H,br.s), 11.30(1H,s).

MS (EI) m/z : 201 M^+ .

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 400

2-(4-Chloro-3-nitroanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid



The title compound was obtained by condensing 4-chloro-3-nitroaniline with methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242 and then hydrolyzing this product in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

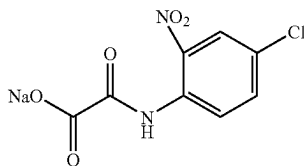
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 7.76(1H,dd,J=8.8 Hz), 8.04(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.55(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 11.24(1H,s). No proton attributable to the carboxylic acid was observed.

MS (EI) m/z : 244 M^+ .

269

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 401

Sodium 2-(4-chloro-2-nitroanilino)-2-oxoacetate

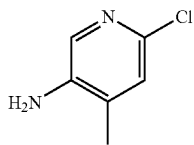


The title compound was obtained by condensing 4-chloro-2-nitroaniline with methyl chlorooxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242, hydrolyzing this product in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 266, dissolving the resultant residue in methanol, adding a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and collecting precipitate formed by filtration.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.84(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.5 Hz), 8.20(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 8.67(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 11.89(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 402

6-Chloro-4-methyl-3-pyridineamine

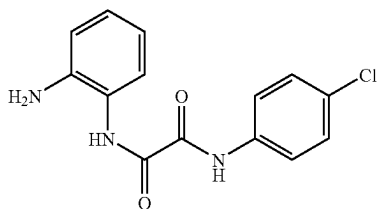


2-Chloro-4-methyl-5-nitropyridine (173 mg) was dissolved in ethanol (5 ml), and a catalytic amount of Raney nickel catalyst was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 9 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:2) to obtain the title compound (113 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃), δ: 2.13(3H,s), 3.85(2H,br.s), 6.96(1H,s), 7.74(1H,s).

MS (EI) m/z: 142 M⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 403

N¹-(2-Aminophenyl)-N²-(4-chlorophenyl)ethanamide

270

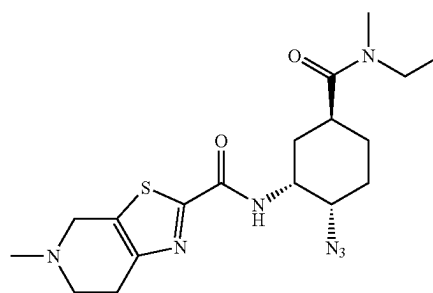
The title compound was obtained by condensing 1,2-benzenediamine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 374 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 59.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 5.00(2H,s), 6.59-6.63(1H,m), 6.78(1H,dd,J=8.1, 1.2 Hz), 6.96-7.01(1H,m), 7.25(1H,dd,J=7.8, 1.2 Hz), 7.44(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.91(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 10.04(1H,s), 10.91(1H,s).

MS (FAB): 290(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 404

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-Azido-5-[[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide

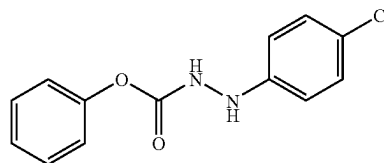


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 323 with hydrochloric acid, performing deprotection and then condensing this product with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 252.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.08(½ of 3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 1.14(½ of 3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 1.70-1.90(4H,m), 2.10-2.25(2H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.78-3.00(8H,m), 3.25-3.45(2H,m), 3.69(1H,d,J=13.4 Hz), 3.73(1H,d,J=13.4 Hz), 3.87-3.95(1H,m), 4.55-4.62(1H,m), 7.26(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 405

Phenyl 2-(4-chlorophenyl)-1-hydrazinecarboxylate



(4-Chlorophenyl)hydrazine hydrochloride (3.00 g) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), diethyl ether (50 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate. An organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated, giving (4-chlorophenyl)hydrazine as a brown solid. This product was dissolved in benzene (15 ml), and the solution was heated under reflux, to which a solution of diphenyl carbonate (5.22 g) in benzene (8.0 ml) was added dropwise over at least 30 minutes. After refluxing for 19 hours, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool and concentrated. Benzene (15 ml) was

271

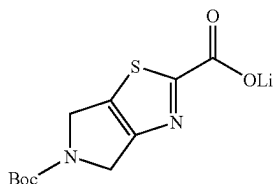
then added to the residue. The mixture was subjected to ultrasonic treatment, giving a suspension. After hexane (50 ml) was added to the suspension, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes, insoluble matter was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (1.05 g).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 5.86(1H,br.s), 6.83-6.92(3H,m), 7.17(1H,br.s), 7.20-7.32(4H,m), 7.37(2H,t,J=7.7 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z : 263(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 406

Lithium 5-tert-butoxycarbonyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxylate

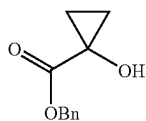


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 33 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 10.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ ($\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ : 1.46(9H,s), 4.30-4.70(4H,m).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 407

Benzyl 1-hydroxycyclopropanecarboxylate



Triethylamine (1.0 ml) and benzyl bromide (650 μl) were added to a solution of 1-hydroxycyclopropane-carboxylic acid (409 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (3.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 23 hours. Methylene chloride and 1N hydrochloric acid were added to the reaction mixture to separate the mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. A crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=41) to obtain the title compound (607 mg).

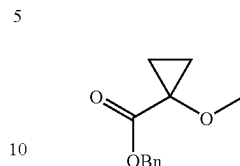
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.16(2H,dd,J=7.9, 4.9 Hz), 1.32(2H,dd,J=7.9, 4.9 Hz), 3.09(0.5H,s), 3.11(0.5H,s), 5.17(2H,s), 7.30-7.39(5H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z 192(M+H) $^+$.

272

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 408

Benzyl 1-methoxycyclopropanecarboxylate

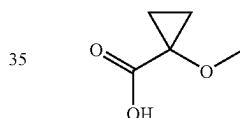


60% Sodium hydride in oil (345 mg) and methyl iodide (900 μl) were added to a solution of the compound (600 mg) obtained in Referential Example 407 in tetrahydrofuran (5.0 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 28 hours. Ethyl acetate and a saturated aqueous solution of ammonium chloride were added to the reaction mixture to separate the mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. A crude product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=10:1) to obtain the title compound (340 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.16(2H,dd,J=7.9, 4.8 Hz), 1.31(2H,dd,J=7.9, 4.8 Hz), 3.42(3H,s), 5.18(2H,s), 7.30-7.39(5H,m). MS (FAB) m/z : 207(M+H) $^+$.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 409

1-Methoxycyclopropanecarboxylic acid

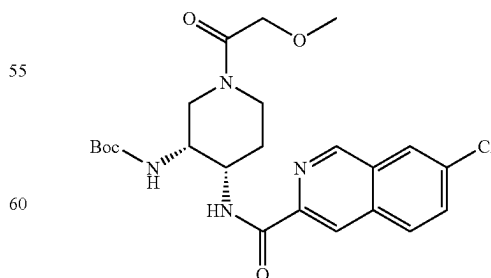


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 408 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 152.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.23(2H,dd,J=8.0, 4.9 Hz), 1.38(2H,dd,J=8.0, 4.9 Hz), 3.45(3H,s), 8.80-9.00(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 410

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-({7-chloroisoquinolin-3-yl}carbonyl)-amino}-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-ylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

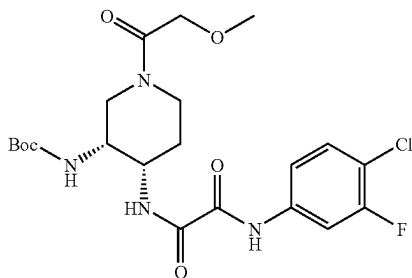
273

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,br s), 1.62-1.80(1H,m), 2.04-2.22(1H,m), 2.95-3.32(1H,m), 3.38-3.53(1H,m), 3.46(3H,s), 3.84-3.95(1H,m), 4.02-4.27(3H,m), 4.30-4.65(2H,m), 4.87-4.98(0.5H,br), 5.32-5.43(0.5H,br), 7.71(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz) 7.94(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.02(1H,s), 8.55-8.66(0.7H,br), 8.58(1H,s), 8.73-8.85(0.3H,br), 9.14(1H,br s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 477(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 411

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-{[2-(4-chloro-3-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoacetyl]amino}-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate



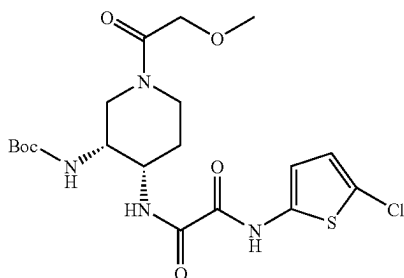
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 337 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.60-1.75(1H,m), 1.92-2.08(1H,m), 2.68-2.80(0.5H,m), 2.88-3.03(0.5H,m), 3.06-3.24(0.5H,m), 3.27-3.36(0.5H,m), 3.45(3H,s), 3.90-4.22(5H,m), 4.56-4.71(1H,m), 4.80-4.92(0.3H,br), 5.44-5.54(0.7H,br), 7.24(1H,d,J=12.9 Hz), 7.35(1H,t,J=8.3 Hz), 7.72(1H,dd,J=8.3, 2.3 Hz), 8.20-8.42(1H,br), 9.18-9.28(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 487(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 412

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-({2-[(5-chloro-2-thienyl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 and the lithium salt of a carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 356 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.55-1.75(1H,br), 1.90-2.10(1H,br), 2.68-2.80(0.7H,m), 2.90-3.03(0.3H,br), 3.07-

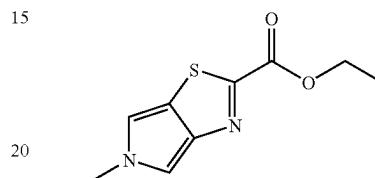
274

3.22(0.3H,br), 3.25-3.35(0.7H,br), 3.45(3H,s), 3.83-4.22(5H,m), 4.55-4.70(1H,br), 4.80-4.90(0.2H,br), 5.07-5.14(0.2H,br), 5.44-5.55(0.6H,br), 6.58-6.64(1H,br), 6.73(1H,d, J=3.9 Hz), 8.05-8.27(1H,br), 9.65-9.88(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 475(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 413

Ethyl
5-methyl-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazolo-2-carboxylate



1) Ethyl 2-thioxoacetate (26.75 g) was added to a solution of 3-bromo-2-butanone (26.36 g) in ethanol (250 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 14 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture, it was concentrated, and ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride were added to separate the mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=6:1) to obtain ethyl 4,5-dimethylthiazole-2-carboxylate (19.53 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.42(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 2.42(3H,s), 2.44(3H,s), 4.45(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz).

2) N-Bromosuccinimide (62.42 g) and 2,2'-azobis-isobutyronitrile (227 mg) were added to a solution of the above-described product (19.53 g) in 1,2-dichloroethane (500 ml), and the mixture was refluxed for 42 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture, water and methylene chloride were added to separate the mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude product (40.54 g) as a dark brown oil. Triethylamine (8.0 ml) and a 2 M tetrahydrofuran solution (11.0 ml) of methylamine were added to the crude product (8.41 g), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, methylene chloride and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride were added to the residue to separate the mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=3:1) to obtain the title compound (270 mg).

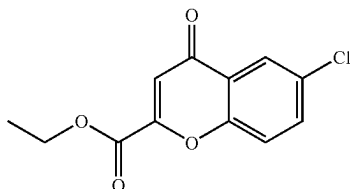
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 3.91(3H,s), 4.48(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 6.73(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.30(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 211(M+H)⁺.

275

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 414

Ethyl 6-chloro-4-oxo-4H-chromene-2-carboxylate



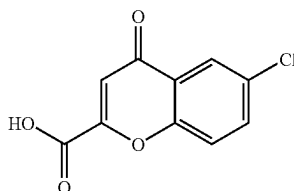
About 60% sodium hydride in oil (1.68 g) was added to ethanol (10 ml) under purging with argon, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. After diethyl oxalate (3.36 ml) was added, an ethanol solution (20 ml) of 5'-chloro-2'-hydroxyacetophenone (2.82 g) was added dropwise. Ethanol (40 ml) was additionally added, and the mixture was refluxed for 1.5 hours and stirred at 50° C. for 14 hours. Concentrated sulfuric acid (1.5 ml) and ethanol (10 ml) were added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the solvent was decreased to a half by concentration under reduced pressure. Toluene and a 1N aqueous solution (15 ml) of sodium hydroxide were added to the concentrated the reaction mixture. Extraction was conducted with ethyl acetate, and the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=7:1), the resultant solids were washed with hexane to obtain the title compound (1.20 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 4.47(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 7.12(1H,s), 7.58(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.69(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.7 Hz), 8.16(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 293(M⁺MeCN+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 415

6-Chloro-4-oxo-4H-chromene-2-carboxylic acid



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 414 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 359.

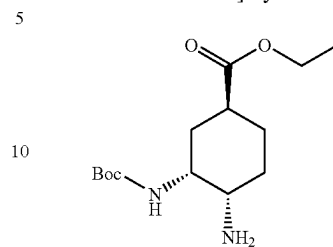
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 7.12(1H,s), 7.60(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.7 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 225(M+H)⁺.

276

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 416

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-amino-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate

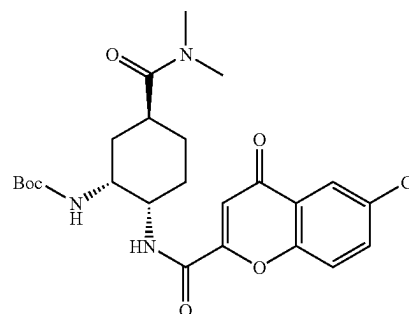


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 249 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 90.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20-1.80(4H,m), 1.25(3H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 1.46(9H,s), 1.85-2.00(1H,m), 2.10-2.20(1H,m), 2.30-2.45(1H,m), 2.90-3.00(1H,m), 3.84(1H,br s), 4.12(2H,q,J=7.3 Hz), 4.75(1H,br s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 417

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(6-chloro-4-oxo-4H-chromen-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-carbamate



N,N-Dimethylformamide (0.02 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (213 mg) obtained in Referential Example 415 in thionyl chloride (2.0 ml), and the mixture was refluxed for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (4.0 ml). To the solution were added triethylamine (500 μl) and the compound (294 mg) obtained in Referential Example 144, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes. Ethyl acetate and a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid to separate the reaction mixture into two layers. An organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=30:1) to obtain the title compound (230 mg).

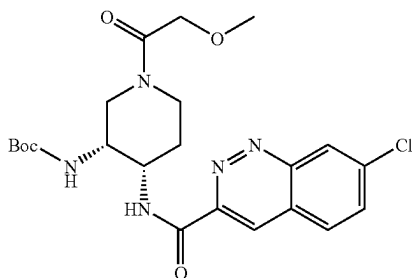
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.33-1.77(3H,m), 1.50(9H,s), 1.81-2.34(3H,m), 2.63-2.80(1H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.10(3H,s), 3.90-4.04(1H,br), 4.18-4.31(1H,br), 4.93-5.12(1H,br), 7.13(1H,s), 7.55(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.66(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.14(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 8.77-8.92(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 492(M+H)⁺.

277

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 418

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-[[[(7-chlorocinnolin-3-yl)carbo-
nyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-car-
bamate



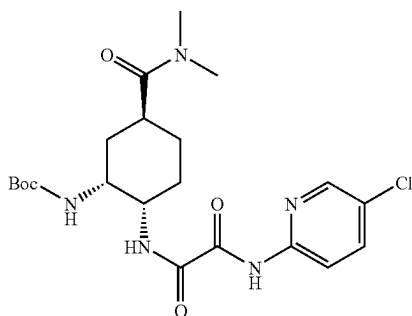
The title compound was obtained from the compound
obtained in Referential Example 220 and the lithium salt of
a carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolyzing the ester
described in Referential Example 297 in a similar manner to
the process described in Referential Example 214.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.38(9H,s), 1.65-1.90(1H,m), 1.90-
2.15(1H,m), 2.80-3.00(0.6H,m), 3.00-3.15(0.4H,m), 3.20-
3.50(1H,m), 3.46(3H,s), 3.80-4.70(6H,m), 4.87(0.4H,br s),
5.30(0.6H,br s), 7.78(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.97(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz),
8.61(1H,s), 8.62-8.90(1H,br), 8.73(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 478(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 419

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)
amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)
carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



The title compound was obtained by condensing the
compound obtained in Referential Example 144 with the
compound obtained in Referential Example 266 in a similar
manner to the process described in Referential Example 68.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35-1.65(1H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.65-
1.89(2H,m), 1.90-2.10(3H,m), 2.56-2.74(1H,br), 2.95(3H,
s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.94-4.01(1H,m), 4.18-4.27(1H,m), 4.70-
4.90(0.7H,br), 5.80-6.20(0.3H,br), 7.68(1H,dd,J=8.9, 2.6
Hz), 7.83(1H,br s), 8.14(1H,br d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.30(1H,s), 9.72
(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 468(M+H)⁺.

278

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 420

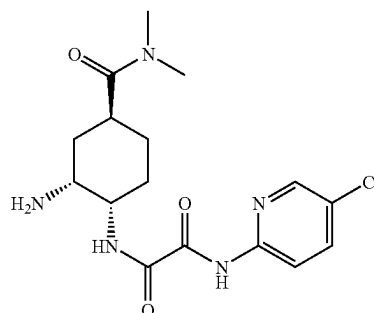
N¹-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbo-
nyl]-cyclohexyl}-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)
ethanediamide hydrochloride

5

10

15

20



The title compound was obtained from the compound
obtained in Referential Example 419 in a similar manner to
the process described in Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.51(1H,m), 1.65-1.85(3H,
m), 1.96-2.10(2H, m), 2.81(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 3.23-3.33
(1H,m), 3.74(1H,br s), 3.84-3.92(1H,m), 8.02(1H,dd,J=9.0,
2.5 Hz), 8.07(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.34(3H,br s), 8.46(1H,d,
J=2.5 Hz), 8.96(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 10.34(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 368(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 421

tert-Butyl 2-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-
2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethyl-
amino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]amino)-6,7-
dihydrothieno[3,2-c]-pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate

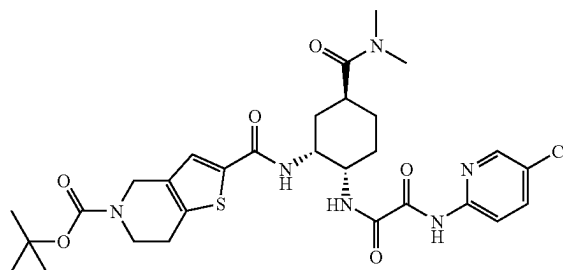
35

40

45

50

55



The title compound was obtained by condensing the
compound obtained in Referential Example 420 with 5-(tert-
butoxycarbonyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[3,2-c]pyridine-2-
carboxylic acid (WO94/21599).

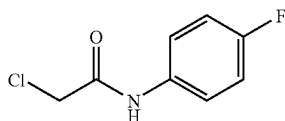
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50(9H,s), 1.73-1.95(3H,m), 1.95-
2.06(1H,m), 2.08-2.20(2H,m), 2.82(3H,br s), 2.94(3H,s),
3.03(3H,s), 3.60-3.80(2H,m), 3.96-4.08(1H,m), 4.44(2H,br
s), 4.66(1H,br s), 6.74(1H,br s), 7.20-7.32(1H,m), 7.66(1H,
dd,J=9.0, 2.4 Hz), 8.13(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.13-8.25(1H,m),
8.28(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 9.75(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 633(M+H)⁺.

279

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 422

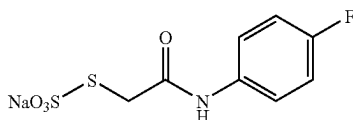
2-Chloro-N-(4-fluorophenyl)acetamide



The title compound was obtained from p-fluoroaniline in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 350.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.19(2H,s), 7.05(2H,t,J=8.6 Hz), 7.51(2H,dd,J=9.1, 4.7 Hz), 8.19(1H,br s).

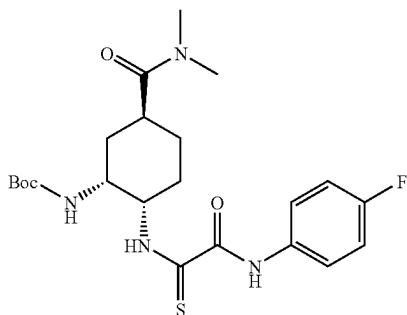
REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 423

Sodium
S-[2-(4-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoethyl]thiosulfate

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 422 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 351.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.72(2H,s), 7.14(2H,t,J=9.0 Hz), 7.56(2H,dd,J=9.0, 5.1 Hz), 10.21(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 424

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-
2-[(2-(4-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl)
amino]cyclohexyl-carbamate

The compound (1.1 g) obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound (1.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 423 were dissolved in N-methylmorpholine (20 ml), and the temperature of a bath was raised from room temperature to 140° C. over 15 minutes to heat and stir the mixture for 15 minutes at the same temperature. After allowing to cool, ice water was added to the reaction mixture to collect insoluble matter by filtration. This product was

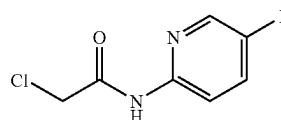
280

purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=200:1→197:3) to obtain the title compound (1.43 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.70-2.10(5H,m), 2.10-2.30(1H,m), 2.60-2.80(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.30-4.50(2H,m), 4.65-4.85(1H,m), 7.06(2H,t,J=8.5 Hz), 7.50-7.70(2H,m), 9.75-9.95(1H,m), 10.13(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 467(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 425

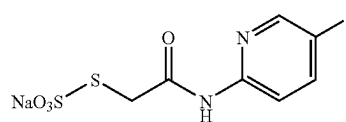
2-Chloro-N-(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)acetamide
hydrochloride

The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-fluoropyridine in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 352.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 4.35(2H,s), 7.74-7.82(1H,m), 8.10(1H,dd,J=9.0, 4.2 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=2.9 Hz), (1H,br s). MS (ESI) m/z: 188(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 426

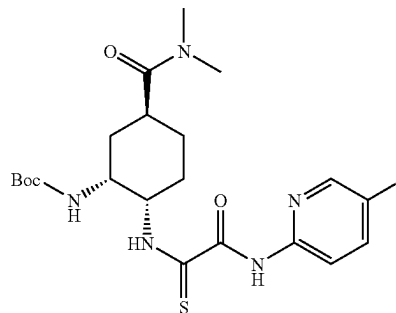
Sodium S-{2-[(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethyl}thiosulfate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 425 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 353.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.75(2H,s), 7.67-7.77(1H,m), 8.07(1H,dd,J=9.2, 4.2 Hz), 8.28(1H,d,J=2.9 Hz), 10.48(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 427

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-
2-[(2-[(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl)
amino]cyclohexyl-carbamate

281

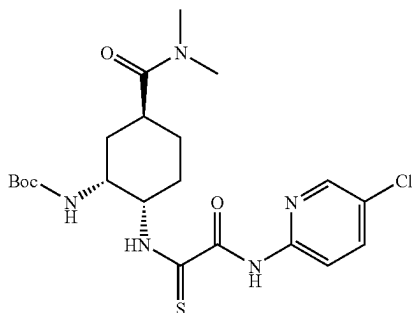
A solution of the compound (1.20 g) obtained in Referential Example 144 in pyridine (70 ml) was heated to 120° C., and the compound (2.42 g) obtained in Referential Example 426 was added. After stirring the mixture for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methylene chloride (100 ml), a saturated aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and water (50 ml) were added to the resultant residue to conduct liquid separation. A water layer was then extracted with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:tetrahydrofuran=1:1). After the resultant solids were slurried for 1 hour in isopropyl ether (40 ml), they were collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (920 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.70-2.10(5H,m), 2.27(1H,br s), 2.70(1H,br s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 4.34-4.44(2H,m), 4.77(1H,br s), 7.44-7.51(1H,m), 8.18-8.27(2H,m), 9.90(1H,br s), 10.57(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 468(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 428

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate

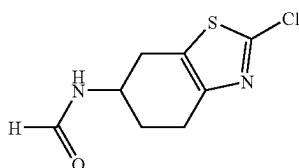


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 353 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 427.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 1.65-2.35(6H,m), 2.70(1H,br s), 2.95(3H,s), 3.09(3H,s), 4.30-4.60(2H,m), 4.87(½H,br s), 6.92(½H,br s), 7.69(1H,dd,J=8.9, 2.6 Hz), 7.95-8.20(1H,br), 8.29(1H,s), 9.67(½H,br s), 9.93(½H,br s), 10.54(1H,br s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 429

2-Chloro-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazol-6-ylformamide



Ammonium acetate (18.58 g) and sodium cyanoborohydride (10.68 g) were added to a solution of 2-chloro-5-oxo-

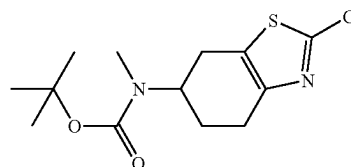
282

4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[d]thiazole (Helv. Chim. Acta., 1994, Vol. 77, p. 1256) (4.53 g) in methanol (200 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux. After 19 hours, hydrochloric acid was added to decompose excessive reagents before the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. After the residue was alkalified with a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide, methylene chloride was added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1), and the solvent was distilled off to obtain a pale yellow oil (2.42 g). This oil was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 ml), and formic acid (530 µl), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (3.68 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.60 g) and N-methylmorpholine (3.88 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature. After 20 hours, methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1) to obtain the title compound (2.21 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.93-2.11(2H,m), 2.63-2.69(1H,m), 2.83-2.89(2H,m), 3.13(1H,dd,J=16.2, 4.4 Hz), 4.46-4.48(1H,m), 5.76(1H,br s), 8.17(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 430

tert-Butyl N-(2-chloro-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazol-6-yl)-N-methylcarbamate



A 1 M tetrahydrofuran solution (14.6 ml) of borane-tetrahydrofuran complex was added to a solution of the compound (2.11 g) obtained in Referential Example 429 in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), and the mixture was heated under reflux. After 15 hours, a 1 M tetrahydrofuran solution (6.0 ml) of borane-tetrahydrofuran complex was additionally added to heat the mixture under reflux. After 4 hours, ethanol (10 ml) and 1N hydrochloric acid (15 ml) were added to heat the mixture under reflux. After 3 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. A 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (50 ml), and triethylamine (1.28 g) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (2.21 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature. After 30 minutes, methylene chloride and 1N hydrochloric acid were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by

283

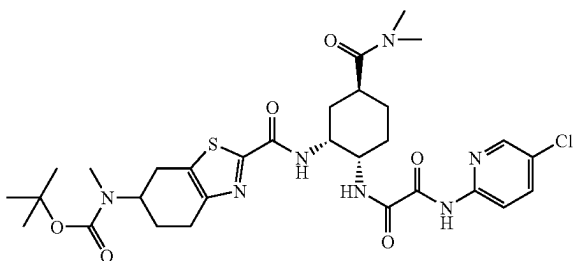
column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=2:1) to obtain the title compound (2.26 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.96-1.98(2H,m), 2.80-2.96(7H,m), 4.40-4.50(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 303(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 431

tert-Butyl N-(2-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl]amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylamino)carbonyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazol-6-yl)-N-methylcarbamate



After a solution of the compound (1.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 430 in diethyl ether (10 ml)-tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) was cooled -78° C., a 1.6N pentane solution (3.1 ml) of tert-butyllithium was added, and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes. Carbon dioxide was then introduced for 20 minutes. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure, giving lithium 6-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)(methyl)-amino]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazole-2-carboxylate.

The lithium salt (350.2 mg) of the carboxylic acid obtained by the above-described reaction, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (287.6 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (202.7 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (0.319 ml) were added to a solution of the compound (490.5 mg) obtained in Referential Example 420 in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was then successively washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=40:1 → 20:1) to obtain the title compound (323.9 mg).

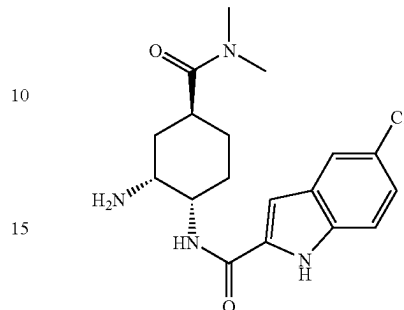
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48,1.49(total 9H,each s), 1.60-1.92(4H,m), 1.95-2.20(6H,m), 2.78-3.10(3H,m), 2.83(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 3.06, 3.07(total 3H,each s), 4.05-4.15(1H,m), 4.20-4.60(1H,m), 4.63-4.73(1H,m), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.68(1H,dt,J=8.8, 2.6 Hz), 7.95-8.10(1H,m), 8.13-8.22(1H,m), 8.30-8.35(1H,m), 9.72(1H,brs).

MS (ESI) m/z: 662(M+H)⁺.

284

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 432

N-[(1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



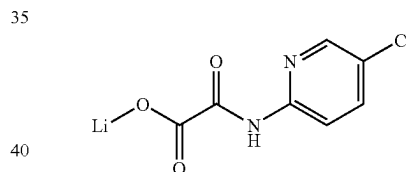
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 310 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.43-1.56(0.5H,m), 1.72-1.97(4.5H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.11-3.26(1H,m), 3.75-3.84(1H,m), 4.07-4.14(1H,m), 4.22-4.41(1H,m), 7.19(1H,dd,J=2.0, 8.8 Hz), 7.29(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.45(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,s), 8.07(3H,br), 8.47(1H,m), 11.85(1H,br).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 433

Lithium

2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate



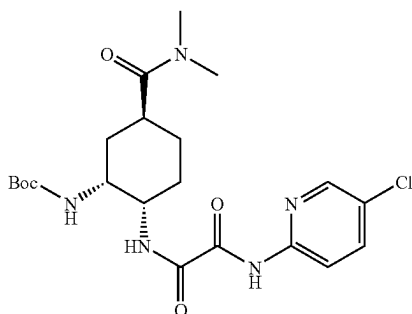
Methyl chlorooxoacetate (78.7 ml) was added dropwise to a suspension of 2-amino-5-chloropyridine (100 g) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (78.4 g) in tetrahydrofuran (2000 ml) at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. After the reaction mixture was added to a mixture of diethyl ether (2000 ml), ammonium chloride (62.4 g) and water (1000 ml), liquid separation was performed. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain methyl 2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate (162 g). Water (450 ml) and lithium hydroxide (18.2 g) were added to a solution of this ester (160 g) in tetrahydrofuran (1800 ml). After the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and hexane (3000 ml) was added to the resultant residue to stir the mixture for 3 hours. Solids were collected by filtration and dried. Acetonitrile (1000 ml) was added to the solids (190 g), and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Solids formed were collected by filtration, washed with diethyl ether (500 ml) and then dried to obtain the title compound (158 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 7.92(1H,dd,J=9.1, 2.7 Hz), 8.13(1H,dd,J=9.1, 0.5 Hz), 8.36(1H,dd,J=2.7, 0.5 Hz), 10.19(1H,s).

285

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 434

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate



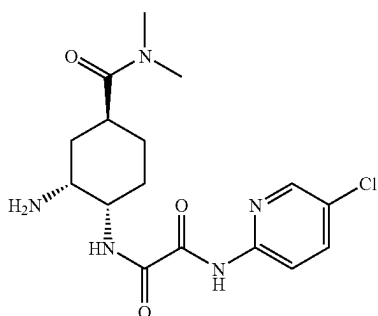
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 433 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25-1.55(1H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.60-2.15(5H,m), 2.56-2.74(1H,br), 2.95(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.90-4.01(1H,m), 4.18-4.27(1H,m), 4.70-4.85(0.7H,br), 5.70-6.00(0.3H,br), 7.70(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.75-8.00(1H,br), 8.16(1H,br d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.30(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 9.73(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 468(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 435

N¹-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 434 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.51(1H,m), 1.65-1.85(3H,m), 1.92-2.09(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.20-3.32(1H,m), 3.55-4.40(2H,br), 8.02(1H,dd,J=9.1, 2.5 Hz), 8.07(1H,d,J=9.1 Hz), 8.15-8.40(3H,br), 8.45(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 8.96(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 10.33(1H,s).

286

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 436

Benzyl (1S,2R,4S)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-4-[(methylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

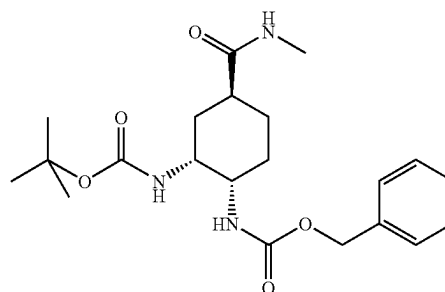
45

50

55

60

65



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 142 and methylamine hydrochloride in a similar manner to Referential Example 143.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39(9H,s), 1.40-1.61(4H,m), 1.63-1.73(1H,m), 1.75-1.85(1H,m), 2.23-2.48(1H,m), 2.53(3H,d,J=4.6 Hz), 3.48(1H,br,s), 3.80-3.91(1H,m), 5.01(1H, 1/2ABq,J=12.1 Hz), 5.03(1H, 1/2ABq,J=12.1 Hz), 6.28-6.40(1H,m), 6.82-6.98(1H,m), 7.25-7.40(5H,m), 7.50-7.60(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 406(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 437

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(methylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl-carbamate

35

40

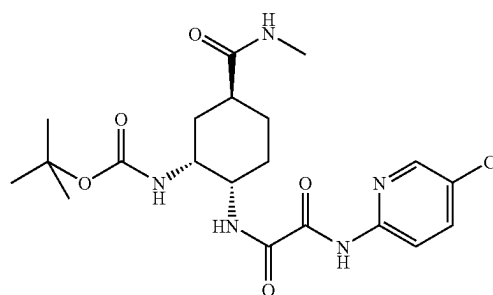
45

50

55

60

65



The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 436 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 144 and condensing the resultant amine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 433 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 91.

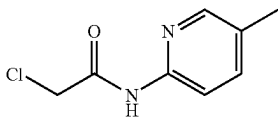
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.75(3H,m), 1.39(9H,s), 1.75-1.86(2H,m), 1.87-1.95(1H,m), 2.30-2.40(1H,m), 2.55(3H,d,J=4.6 Hz), 3.79-3.90(2H,m), 6.73-6.90(1H,m), 7.58-7.70(1H,m), 8.00-8.13(2H,m), 8.46(1H,dd,J=2.2, 1.0 Hz), 8.67(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 10.26(1H,s).

MS (ESI: negative) m/z: 452[(M-H)⁻, Cl³⁵], 454[(M-H)⁻, Cl³⁷].

287

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 438

2-Chloro-N-(5-methylpyridin-2-yl)acetamide
hydrochloride

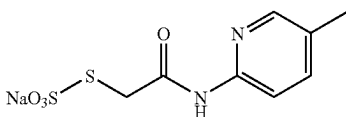


The title compound was obtained from 2-amino-5-picoline in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 425.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.30(3H,s), 4.40(2H,s), 7.83(1H, d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.91(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.21(1H,s), 11.40(1H,s)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 439

Sodium S-{2-[(5-methylpyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethyl}thiosulfate

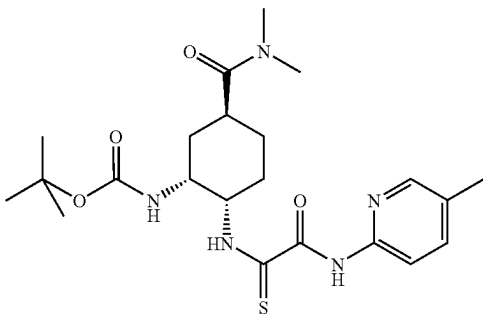


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 438 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 353.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.24(3H,s), 3.74(2H,s), 7.59(1H, d, J=8.5 Hz), 7.94(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.12(1H,s), 10.26(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 440

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-({2-[(5-methylpyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 439 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 427.

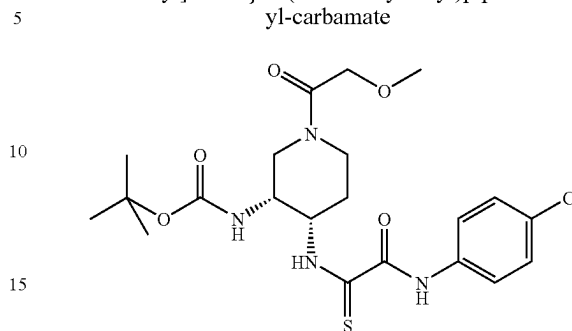
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.60-2.10(5H,m), 2.15-2.35(1H,m), 2.31(3H,s), 2.60-2.80(1H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.30-4.45(2H,m), 4.65-4.85(1H,m), 7.54(1H,dd, J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 8.06(1H,br,d), 8.18(1H,s), 9.70-9.90(1H,m), 10.48(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 464(M+H)⁺.

288

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 441

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-{[2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino}-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl-carbamate



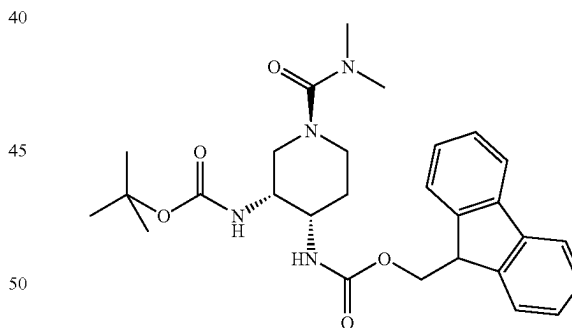
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 by catalytic reduction in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214 and condensing the resultant amine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 351 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 427.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.59-1.84(1H,m), 2.10-2.33(1H,m), 2.68-2.81(0.7H,m), 2.94-2.04(0.3H,m), 3.15-3.40(1H,m), 3.44(3H,s), 3.91-4.32(4H,m), 4.45-4.58(1H,m), 4.60-4.77(1H,m), 5.15-5.30(0.3H,br), 5.84-5.94(0.7H,m), 7.32(2H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.61(2H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 10.12(1H,s), 10.19-10.33(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 485[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 487[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 442

9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethyl (1S,2R,4S)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-amino]-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (856 mg) obtained in Referential Example 144 was dissolved in acetone (10 ml), to the solution were added 9-fluorenylmethyl pentafluorophenylcarbamate (1.34 g) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (302 mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. 9-Fluorenylmethyl pentafluorophenylcarbamate (609 mg) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (151 mg) were additionally added, and the resultant mixture was heated under reflux for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (SI-40B, methylene chloride:methanol=93:7) to obtain the title compound (1.47 g).

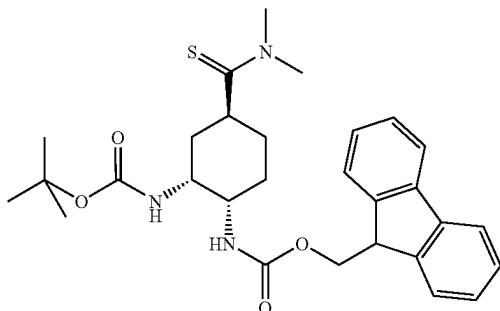
289

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.30-2.05(6H,m), 2.63(1H,br.s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.04(3H,s), 3.69(1H,br.s), 4.15(1H,br.s), 4.21(1H,br.s), 4.37(2H,br.s), 4.73(1H,br.s), 5.41(1H,br.s), 7.29(2H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 7.39(2H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 7.57(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 7.75(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 508(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 443

9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethyl (1S,2R,4S)-2-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-amino]-4-[(dimethylamino)carbothioyl]cyclohexylcarbamate

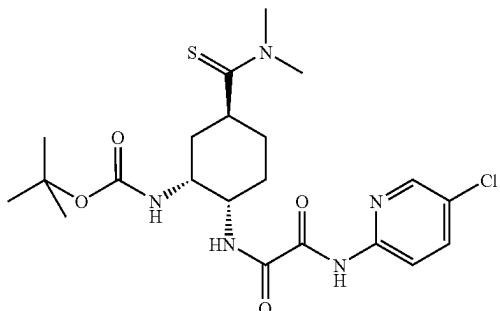


The compound (1.26 g) obtained in Referential Example 442 was dissolved in toluene (50 ml), to the solution was added a Lawesson's Reagent (1.00 g), and the mixture was stirred at 60° C. for 1 hour. Insoluble matter was removed by filtration, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethanol (50 ml), and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (541 mg) and sodium hydrogen-carbonate (208 mg) were added to the solution. The resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel (hexane:ethyl acetate=1:1→methylene chloride: methanol=9:1) to obtain the title compound (609 mg) as a white solid.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43(9H,s), 1.43-2.10(6H,m), 2.92(1H,br.s), 3.31(3H,s), 3.47(3H,s), 3.74(1H,br.s), 4.09-4.19(2H,m), 4.38(2H,br.s), 4.75(1H,br.), 5.29(1H,br.s), 7.29(2H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 7.38(2H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 7.55(2H,br.s), 7.75(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz)

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 444

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbothioyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



The compound (1.11 g) obtained in Referential Example 443 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 ml), to the solution was added piperazine (3.0 ml), and the mixture

290

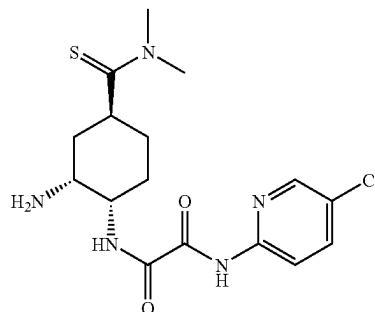
was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and ethyl acetate and water were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was condensed with the compound obtained in Referential Example 433 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 91 to obtain the title compound (629 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 1.48-2.23(6H,m), 2.98(1H,br.s), 3.36(3H,s), 3.49(3H,s), 3.98-4.04(1H,m), 4.22-4.25(1H,m), 4.75(1H,br.s), 7.70(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.7 Hz), 7.85(1H,br.s), 8.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.30(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 9.73(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 484[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 486[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 445

N¹-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-Amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbothioyl]-cyclohexyl}-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide dihydrochloride



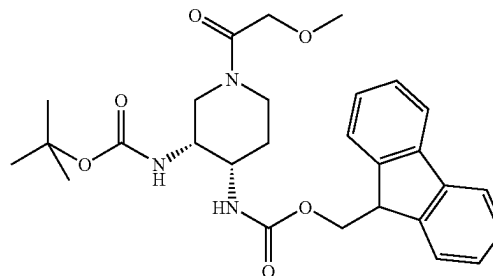
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 444 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.66-2.11(6H,m), 3.38(3H,s), 3.42(3H,s), 3.52(1H,br.s), 3.75(1H,br.s), 3.88(1H,br.s), 8.03-8.09(2H,m), 8.21(3H,br.s), 8.48(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 9.06(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 10.34(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 384[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 386[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 446

9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethyl (3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-4-yl-carbamate



291

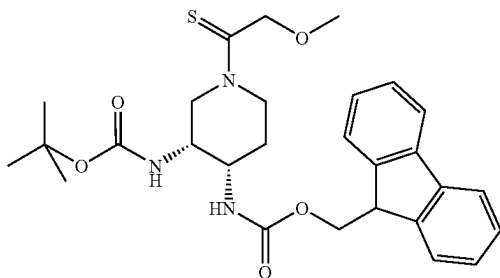
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 220 by catalytic reduction in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 214 and treating the resultant amine in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 442.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48(9H,s), 1.55-1.80(1H,m), 1.92-2.20(1H,m), 2.70-3.35(2H,m), 3.44(3H,s), 3.77-4.90(10H,m), 5.29-5.45(0.6H,br), 5.75-5.90(0.4H,br), 7.26-7.34(2H,m), 7.39(2H,t,J=7.6 Hz), 7.55-7.65(2H,m), 7.76(2H,d,J=7.6 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 510(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 447

9H-Fluoren-9-ylmethyl (3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-amino]-1-(2-methoxyethanethiyl)piperidin-4-ylcarbamate



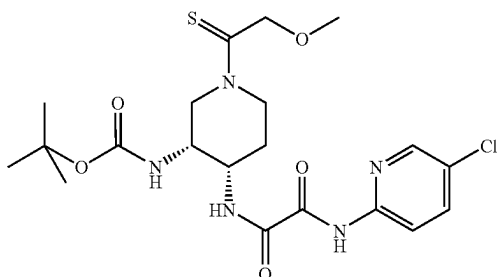
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 446 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 443.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48(9H,s), 1.50-1.80(1H,m), 2.07-2.23(1H,m), 3.04-3.18(0.5H,m), 3.25-3.37(0.5H,m), 3.44(1.5H,s), 3.47(1.5H,s), 3.88-4.75(9H,m), 5.00-5.70(2H,br), 5.98-6.23(1H,br), 7.26-7.29(2H,m), 7.39(2H,t,J=7.3 Hz), 7.55-7.68(2H,m), 7.77(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 526(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 448

tert-Butyl (3R,4S)-4-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-1-(2-methoxyethanethiyl)piperidin-3-ylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 447 with diethy-

292

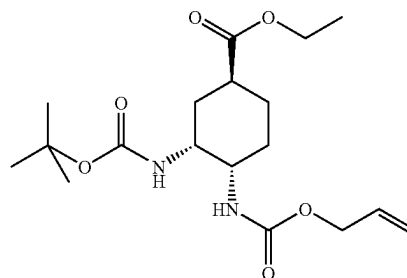
lamine in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 444 to conduct deprotection and then condensing the resultant compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 433.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.47(9H,s), 1.73-1.88(1H,m), 2.07-2.22(1H,m), 3.05-3.15(1H,m), 3.27-3.42(1H,m), 3.45(1H,s), 3.48(2H,s), 4.10-4.54(5H,m), 5.12-5.21(0.3H,br), 5.48-5.56(0.7H,br), 5.61-5.74(1H,br), 7.70(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 8.21(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.31(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.42-8.60(1H,br), 9.72(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 486[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 488[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 449

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-{[(allyloxy)carbonyl]amino}-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



A 10% palladium on carbon catalyst (10.2 g) was added to a solution of the compound (10.0 g) obtained in Referential Example 141 in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (40 ml) and ethanol (40 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 63 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. After the catalyst was removed by filtration, the resultant filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. After the resultant colorless oil was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (25 ml), and pyridine (2.3 ml) was added to the solution at room temperature, allylchloroformate (2.70 ml) was added dropwise at 0° C., and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes. After ice and ethyl acetate were added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was stirred for 5 minutes, A 10% aqueous solution of citric acid was added to acidify the mixture. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=40:1) to obtain the title compound (6.03 g).

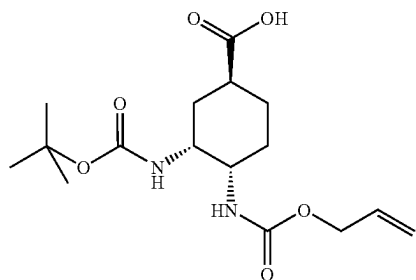
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.25(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.31-1.40(1H,m), 1.45(9H,s), 1.51-1.65(1H,m), 1.72-1.86(1H,m), 1.89-2.10(3H,m), 2.25-2.50(1H,br), 3.63-3.72(1H,m), 4.03-4.15(1H,br), 4.13(2H,q,J=7.1 Hz), 4.49-4.59(2H,m), 4.60-4.75(1H,m), 5.20(1H,d,J=10.5 Hz), 5.22-5.32(1H,br), 5.29(1H,dd,J=17.1, 1.7 Hz), 5.85-5.97(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 371(M+H)⁺.

293

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 450

(1S,3R,4S)-4-[[Allyloxy]carbonyl]amino}-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylic acid



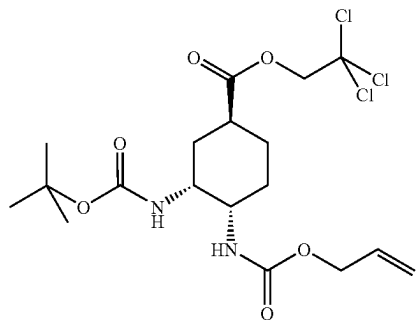
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 449 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 142.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35-2.15(6H,br), 1.45(9H,s), 2.35-2.65(1H,br), 3.65-3.75(1H,m), 4.00-4.15(1H,br), 4.48-4.63(2H,m), 4.63-4.80(1H,br), 5.03-5.33(1H,br), 5.21(1H,d, J=10.3 Hz), 5.29(1H,dd, J=17.1, 1.5 Hz), 5.86-5.97(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 343(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 451

2,2,2-Trichloroethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-[[allyloxy]carbonyl]-amino}-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexane-carboxylate



1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (4.99 g), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2.81 g), 2,2,2-trichloroethanol (4.15 ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (4.15 g) were added to a solution of the compound (5.93 g) obtained in Referential Example 450 in N,N-dimethylformamide (40 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, ethyl acetate and water were added to the residue. The resultant water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate, and organic layers were combined, washed with a 10% aqueous solution of citric acid, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=40:1) to obtain the title compound (8.88 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35-1.50(1H,m), 1.46(9H,s), 1.55-1.73(1H,m), 1.77-2.22(4H,m), 2.50-2.65(1H,br), 3.66-3.75(1H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.50-4.60(2H,m), 4.60-4.80(1H,

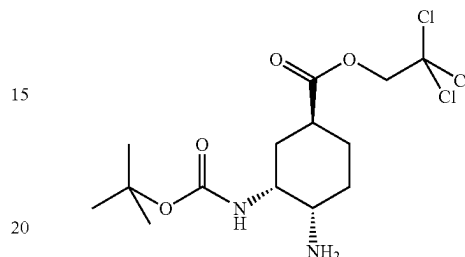
294

br), 4.71(1H,d, J=11.8 Hz), 4.77(1H,d, J=11.8 Hz), 5.18-5.34(1H,br), 5.20(1H,d, J=10.5 Hz), 5.30(1H,dd, J=17.4, 1.0 Hz), 5.86-5.97(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 473[(M+H)⁺, 3×Cl³⁵], 475[(M+H)⁺, 2×Cl³⁵, Cl³⁷], 477 [(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵, 2×Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 452

2,2,2-Trichloroethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-amino-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



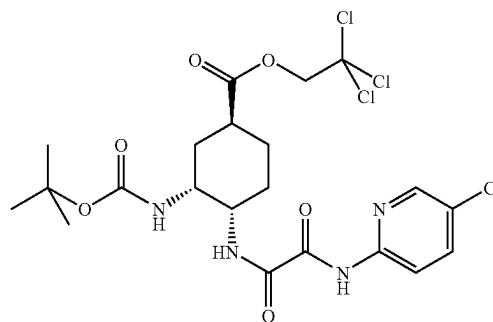
Diethylamine (20 ml) and tetrakis(triphenyl-phosphine) palladium (719 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (8.83 g) obtained in Referential Example 451 in tetrahydrofuran (35 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours under argon. A 10% aqueous solution (250 ml) of citric acid was added to the reaction mixture to acidify it, and diethyl ether was added thereto. After the resultant water layer was washed with diethyl ether, sodium carbonate was added to the water layer to alkalinify it, and the water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant methylene chloride layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (4.35 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20-1.50(3H,m), 1.46(9H,s), 1.58-1.69(1H,m), 1.70-1.81(2H,m), 1.98-2.07(1H,m), 2.22-2.31(1H,m), 2.55-2.66(1H,m), 2.97-3.04(1H,m), 3.79-3.93(1H,br), 4.70(1H,d, J=12.0 Hz), 4.75-4.85(1H,br), 4.78(1H,d, J=12.0 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 389[(M+H)⁺, 3×Cl³⁵], 391[(M+H)⁺, 2×Cl³⁵, Cl³⁷], 393[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵, 2×Cl³⁷]

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 453

2,2,2-Trichloroethyl (1S,3R,4S)-3-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-amino]-4-({2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}-amino)cyclohexanecarboxylate



295

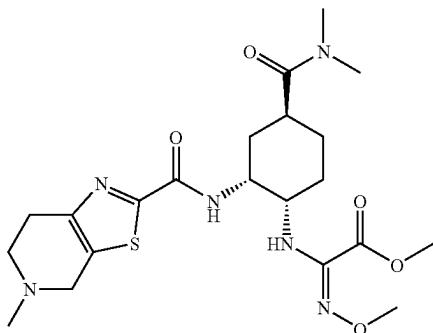
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 452 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 433 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,s), 1.50-1.63(1H,m), 1.65-1.79(2H,m), 1.87-2.08(2H,m), 2.10-2.22(2H,m), 2.50-2.70(1H,br), 3.94-4.02(1H,m), 4.17-4.30(1H,br), 4.73(1H,d, J=12.0 Hz), 4.78(1H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 7.70(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 7.90-8.07(1H,br), 8.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.31(1H,d, J=2.4 Hz), 9.72(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 571[(M+H)⁺,3×Cl³⁵], 573[(M+H)⁺,2×Cl³⁵,Cl³⁷], 575[(M+H)⁺,C³⁵,2×Cl³⁷]

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 454

Methyl 2-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbo-nyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]amino]-2-(methoxyimino)-acetate



The compound (435 mg) obtained in Referential Example 144 and methyl 2-(methoxyimino)-2-(methylsulfonyl)ac-etate (WO99/67209) (233 mg) were dissolved in tetrahy-drofuran (5 ml), triethylamine (332 μl) was added to this solution, and the mixture was stirred overnight at 70° C. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant oil layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After concentrating the oil layer, the resultant residue was purified by column chroma-tography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=91:9) to obtain the title compound (111 mg).

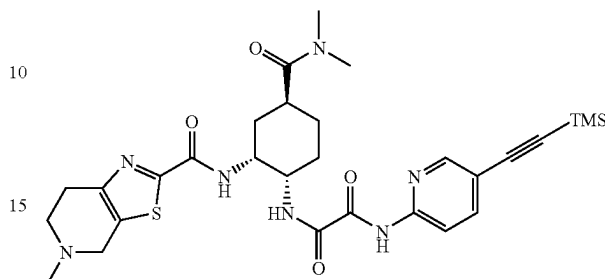
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.42-2.10(6H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.70-3.10(11H,m), 3.71(2H,br.s), 3.83(3H,s), 3.84(3H,s), 4.22-4.35(1H,m), 4.55-4.65(1H,m), 5.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.25-7.30(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 481(M+H)⁺.

296

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 455

N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbothioyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazol[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)-N²-{5-[2-(trimeth-ylsilyl)ethynyl]pyridin-2-yl}ethanediamide



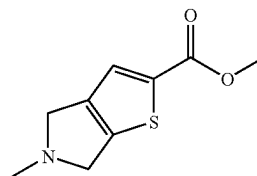
The compound (658 mg) obtained in Referential Example 204 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml), N,N-dimeth-ylformamide (10 ml) and triethylamine (20 ml), and triph-enylphosphine (87 mg), trimethylsilylacetylene (471 μl), palladium acetate (50 mg) were added to the solution. The resultant mixture was stirred at 80° C. for 14 hours under an argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, and the filtrate was fully washed with methylene chloride. Water was added to the filtrate to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was decolored with activated carbon (about 3 g) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=93:7) to obtain the title compound (360 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.25(9H,s), 1.66-2.13(6H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.78-2.96(8H,m), 3.05(3H,s), 3.70(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.73(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.08-4.15(1H,m), 4.66-4.69(1H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.77(1H,dd,J=8.4, 2.1 Hz), 8.03(1H, d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.13(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.43(1H,d,J=2.1 Hz), 9.74(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 610(M+H)⁺.

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 456

Methyl 5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c]pyr-ole-2-carboxylate



Methyl 4,5-bis(chloromethyl)-2-thiophenecarboxylic acid (D. J. Zwanenburg and Hans Wynberg, J. Org. Chem., 34, 333-340, (1969)) (520 mg) was dissolved in acetonitrile (600 ml), methylamine (40% methanol solution, 722 μl) was added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=1:0→19:1) to obtain the title compound (176 mg).

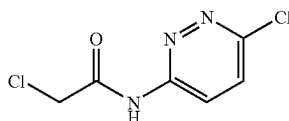
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.63(3H,s), 3.82-3.83(2H,m), 3.86(3H,s), 3.97-3.99(2H,m), 7.51(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 198(M+H)⁺.

297

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 457

2-Chloro-N-(6-chloropyridazin-3-yl)acetamide

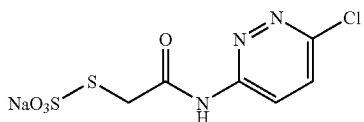


3-Amino-6-chloropyridazine (10.4 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (200 ml), chloroacetyl chloride (7.48 ml) was added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and ethyl acetate and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue. Solids deposited were collected by filtration and washed with ethyl acetate and water to obtain the title compound (9.39 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.30(2H,s), 7.56(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.51(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 9.68(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 458

Sodium S-{2-[(6-chloropyridazin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethyl}thiosulfate

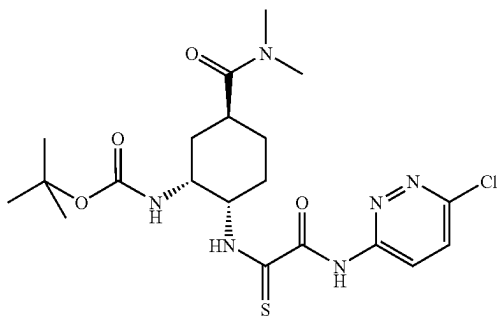


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 457 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 353.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.84(2H,s), 7.87(1H,d,J=9.4 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=9.4 Hz), 11.21(1H,br.s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 459

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(6-chloropyridazin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)-carbothioyl]cyclohexylcarbamate



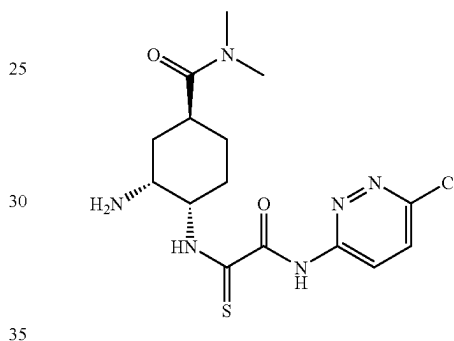
298

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 458 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 427.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.35-1.58(10H,m), 1.71-1.80(1H,m), 1.86-1.94(2H,m), 2.09(1H,br.s), 2.30(1H,br.s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 4.36(2H,br.s), 4.79(1H,br.s), 5.30(1H,br.s), 7.54(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.47(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 10.03(1H,br.s), 11.03(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 460

(1S,3R,4S)-3-Amino-4-({2-[(6-chloropyridazin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-N,N-dimethylcyclohexane-carboxamide hydrochloride



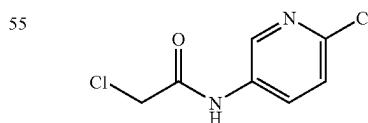
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 459 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.53(1H,m), 1.73-1.85(3H,m), 2.03-2.07(1H,m), 2.15-2.24(1H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 3.32-3.37(1H,m), 4.06(1H,br.s), 4.39(1H,br.s), 8.01(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.37(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.43(3H,br.s), 11.11(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 11.37(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 385[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 387[(M+H)⁺,C³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 461

2-Chloro-N-(6-chloropyridin-3-yl)acetamide



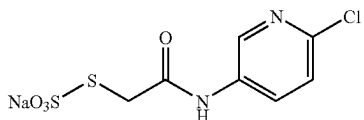
The title compound was obtained from 5-amino-2-chloropyridine in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 457.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 4.22(2H,s), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.14(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.7 Hz), 8.30(1H,br.s), 8.45(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz).

299

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 462

Sodium S-{2-[(6-chloropyridin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxo-ethyl}-thiosulfate

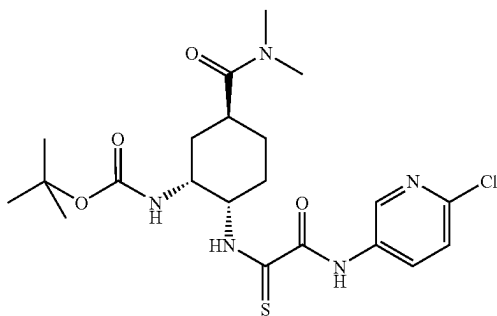


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 461 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 353.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 3.77(2H,s), 7.47(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.04(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.7 Hz), 8.57(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 10.51(1H,s).

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 463

tert-Butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(6-chloropyridin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexylcarbamate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 462 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 427.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46(9H,br.s), 1.60-2.23(6H,m), 2.68(1H,br.s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 4.34-4.38(2H,m), 4.78(1H,m), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.09(1H,br.s), 8.63(1H,s), 9.91(1H,br.s), 10.24(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 506[(M+Na)⁺,Cl³⁵], 508[(M+Na)⁺,Cl³⁷].

300

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 464

(1S,3R,4S)-3-Amino-4-(12-[(6-chloropyridin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-N,N-dimethylcyclohexane-carboxamide hydrochloride

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

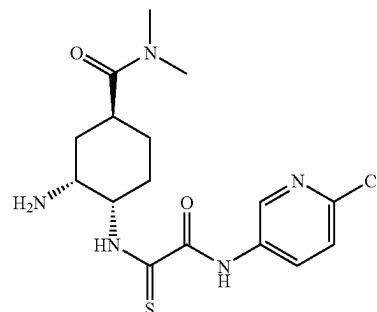
45

50

55

60

65



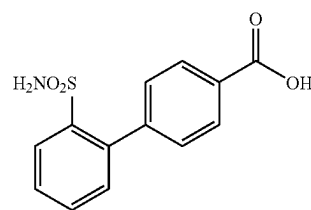
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 463 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 69.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46-1.49(1H,m), 1.79-1.81(3H,m), 1.99-2.03(1H,m), 2.14-2.16(1H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.25-3.28(1H,m), 3.99(1H,br.s), 4.30-4.60(1H,br), 7.55(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 8.26(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.4 Hz), 8.38(3H,br.s), 8.85(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 10.90(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 11.07(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 384[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 386[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

REFERENTIAL EXAMPLE 465

2'-Aminosulfonyl-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylic acid



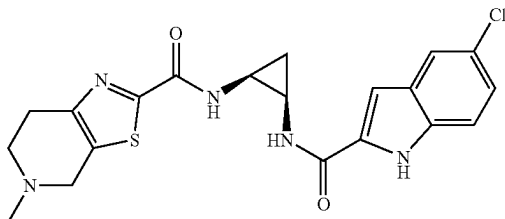
2-Bromobenzenesulfonamide (800 mg) and 4-carboxyphenylboronic acid (563 mg) were suspended in a mixed solvent of toluene (5 ml) and water (5 ml). Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (392 mg) and anhydrous sodium carbonate (1.08 g) were successively added to the suspension, and the mixture was heated under reflux overnight. After the reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, diethyl ether and water were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was extracted twice with water. The resultant water layers were all combined, and 12N hydrochloric acid was added to this solution to acidify it. The solution was concentrated to about 20 ml under reduced pressure. Colorless powder deposited was collected by filtration and dried under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (539 mg).

MS (EI) m/z: 277M⁺.

301

EXAMPLE 1

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopropyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



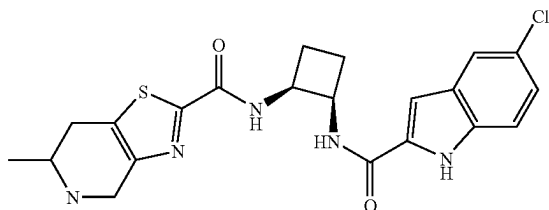
1-Hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (71 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (100 mg) were added to a solution with the compound (108 mg) obtained in Referential Example 59 and the compound (124 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10 dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 8 days. After concentrating the reaction mixture under reduced pressure using a vacuum pump, water (50 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (50 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=10:1). After 1N hydrochloric acid, methylene chloride and methanol were added to the thus-obtained amorphous substance, the mixture was concentrated to obtain the title compound (72 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.15-1.35(2H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 2.95-3.25(4H,m), 3.35-3.75(2H,m), 4.32-4.45(1H,m), 4.68(1H,br,J=15.4 Hz), 7.08(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.1 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.50(1H,br,J=11.0 Hz), 8.56(1H,br.s), 11.56(1H,br,J=19.3 Hz), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 430(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 2

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclobutyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (136 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (255 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (90 mg) were added to a solution with the compound (117

302

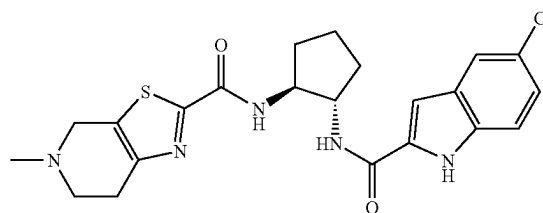
mg) obtained in Referential Example 60 dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure using a vacuum pump, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol: methylene chloride=7:93). After ethyl acetate and a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid were added to the thus-obtained compound to acidify it, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added again, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (56 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.00-2.35(4H,m), 2.88(3H,m), 3.10(2H,br.s), 3.20-3.75(3H,m), 4.20-4.85(3H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.63(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.85(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 10.85-11.20(1H,br), 11.81(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 444(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 3

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclopentyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



5-Chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (80 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (98 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (23 mg) and triethylamine (141 μl) were added to a solution with the compound (120 mg) obtained in Referential Example 62 dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7). After methylene chloride (5 ml) and a 1N ethanol solution (282 μl) of hydrochloric acid were added to the thus-obtained pale yellow solid, ethyl acetate was added, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (109 mg).

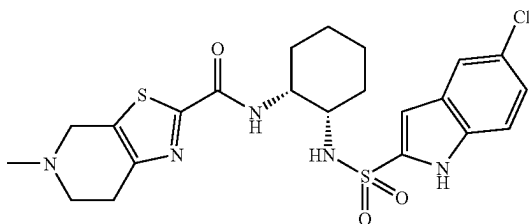
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.64-1.74(4H,m), 1.98-2.02(2H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.14(2H,br.s), 3.47-3.65(2H,m), 4.29-4.63(4H,m), 7.10(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.14(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.55(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.91(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.49(1H,br.s), 11.76(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 458(M+H)⁺.

303

EXAMPLE 4

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)sulfonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



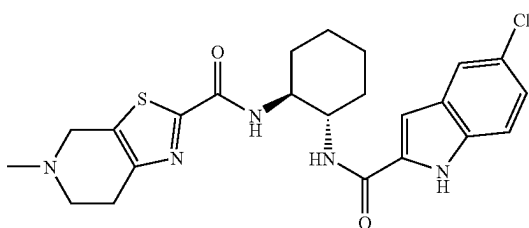
The compound (400 mg) obtained in Referential Example 67 was suspended in methylene chloride (10 ml), triethylamine (0.514 ml) and (5-chloro-1-phenylsulfonylindole-2-sulfonyl chloride (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2000-119253) (319 mg) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes. After water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain a pale yellow foamy substance. This substance was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml), and methanol (2 ml) and a 1N aqueous solution (1.5 ml) of sodium hydroxide were added to heat the mixture under reflux for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and 1N hydrochloric acid were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3). 1N Hydrochloric acid (1 ml) was added to the resultant product, and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (108 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.78(8H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.13(2H,br.s), 3.22-3.40(1H,m), 3.44-3.70(3H,m), 3.83-3.95(1H,m), 4.20-4.70(1H,m), 6.78(1H,s), 7.18-7.30(2H,m), 7.44(1H,s), 7.69(1H,br.s), 8.09(1H,br.s), 11.92(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 508(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 5

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



304

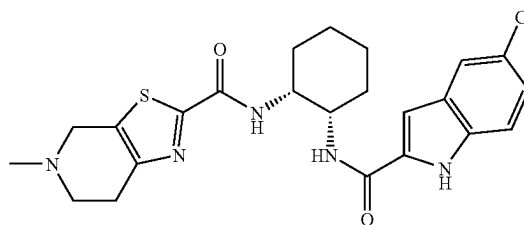
5-Chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (109 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (9 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (321 mg) and triethylamine (0.232 ml) were added to a solution with the compound (300 mg) obtained in Referential Example 65 dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure using a vacuum pump, and methylene chloride and water were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=25:1) to obtain a colorless foamy substance. This substance was suspended in 1N hydrochloric acid (1 ml), and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (203 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25-1.40(2H,m), 1.46-1.81(4H,m), 1.88-1.98(2H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-3.76(5H,m), 3.86-3.97(1H,m), 4.00-4.10(1H,m), 4.25-4.72(1H,m), 7.03(1H,s), 7.12(1H,dd,J=8.5, 1.2 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.64(1H,s), 8.28(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.54(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.70(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 472(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 6

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 67 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 5.

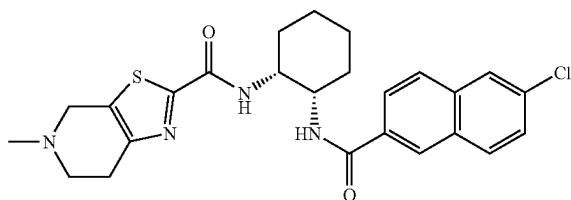
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.70(6H,m), 1.80-2.06(2H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-3.27(2H,m), 3.35-3.51(1H,m), 3.57-3.82(1H,m), 4.15-4.30(2H,m), 4.32-4.48(1H,m), 4.60-4.74(1H,m), 7.15(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.14(1H,br.s), 8.36-8.48(1H,m), 11.51(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 472(M+H)⁺.

305

EXAMPLE 7

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[(6-Chloronaphthoyl)amino]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



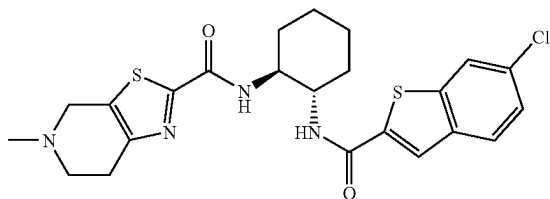
The title compound (186 mg) was obtained by dissolving the compound (275 mg) obtained in Referential Example 67, 6-chloronaphthalene-2-carboxylic acid (Eur. J. Chem. Chim. Ther., 1984, Vol. 19, pp. 205-214) (148 mg), triethylamine (0.298 ml) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (11 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml) and causing 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (412 mg) to react in a similar manner to Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.56(2H,m), 1.57-1.77(4H,m), 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.13(2H,br.s), 3.28-3.74(2H,m), 4.26(2H,br.s), 4.30-4.74(2H,m), 7.59(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.90(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.98(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.03-8.11(2H,m), 8.25-8.58(3H,m), 11.52(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 483(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 8

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[(6-Chloro-1-benzothiophen-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound (239 mg) was obtained by dissolving the compound (255 mg) obtained in Referential Example 65, 6-chlorobenzof[b]thiophene-2-carboxylic acid (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2000-119253) (141 mg), triethylamine (0.276 ml) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (10 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml) and causing 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (382 mg) to react in a similar manner to Example 5.

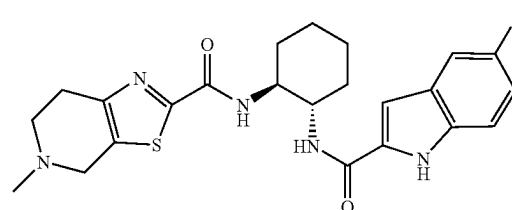
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.98(8H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.00-3.72(4H,m), 3.84-4.09(2H,m), 4.20-4.75(2H,m), 7.41(1H,dd,J=8.6, 1.7 Hz), 7.91(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.99(1H,s), 8.12(1H,s), 8.54-8.67(2H,m), 11.53(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 489(M+H)⁺.

306

EXAMPLE 9

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[(5-Fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



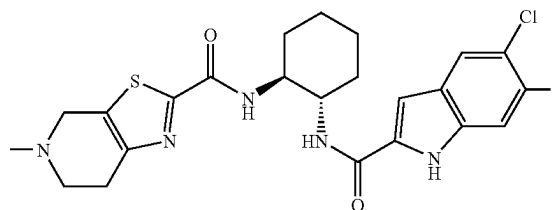
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 65 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.38(2H,m), 1.40-1.57(1H,m), 1.54-1.68(1H,m), 1.71(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 1.88(2H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 2.86(3H,s), 2.95-3.24(2H,m), 3.40(1H,br.s), 3.63(1H,br.s), 3.90(1H,br.s), 3.97-4.10(1H,m), 4.20-4.44(1H,m), 4.53-4.70(1H,m), 6.98(1H,dd,J=9.2, 2.3 Hz), 7.01(1H,s), 7.31-7.39(2H,m), 8.26(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.59(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 11.21(1/2H,br.s), 11.42(1/2H,br.s), 11.60(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 456(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 10

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[(5-Chloro-6-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 65 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 23 in a similar manner to Example 5.

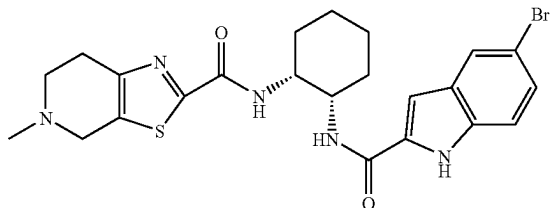
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20-1.40(2H,m), 1.40-1.80(4H,m), 1.80-2.00(2H,m), 2.87(3H,s), 3.01(2H,br.s), 3.30-3.80(2H,m), 3.81-3.97(2H,m), 4.20-4.80(2H,m), 7.06(1H,s), 7.28(1H,d,J=10.0 Hz), 7.86(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.32(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.59(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.77(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 490(M+H)⁺.

307

EXAMPLE 11

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-Bromoindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



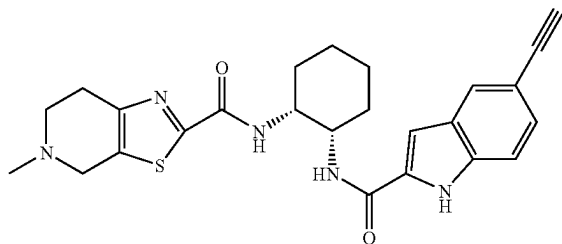
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 67 and 5-bromoindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.43(2H,br.s), 1.61(4H,br.s), 1.80-2.10(2H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.00-3.26(2H,m), 3.40(1H,br.s), 3.65(1H,br.s), 4.22(1H,br.s), 4.26(1H,br.s), 4.41(1H,br.s), 4.67(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 7.14(1H,s), 7.28(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.84(1H,s), 8.13(1H,br.s), 8.33-8.52(1H,m), 11.51(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s)

MS (ESI) m/z: 515(M⁺).

EXAMPLE 12

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-Ethynylindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



Triethylamine (6 ml), N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), trimethylsilylacetylene (0.250 ml) and palladium acetate (20 mg) were added to a tetrahydrofuran solution (2 ml) of the compound (300 mg) obtained in Example 11 and triphenylphosphine (70 mg) at room temperature. After stirring at 90° C. for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature, and methylene chloride (20 ml) and a saturated aqueous solution (30 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (3×10 ml), the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain residue. The resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:acetone:methanol=10:10:1) to obtain colorless solids. This product was dissolved in methanol (6 ml), potassium carbonate (120 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Methylene chloride (20 ml) and water (20 ml) were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant

308

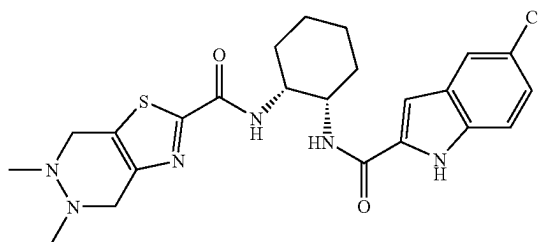
water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (2×15 ml), the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:acetone:methanol=10:10:1) and dissolved in water-methanol-methylene chloride. The resultant solution was then concentrated to obtain the title compound (72 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50-2.25(8H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.85(2H,br.s), 2.93(2H,br.s), 3.01(1H,s), 3.74(1H,d,J=14.1 Hz), 3.77(1H,d,J=14.1 Hz), 4.21(1H,br.s), 4.45(1H,br.s), 6.91(1H,s), 7.25-7.42(2H,m), 7.61(1H,br.s), 7.80-7.97(2H,m), 9.72(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 462(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 13

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)-5,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



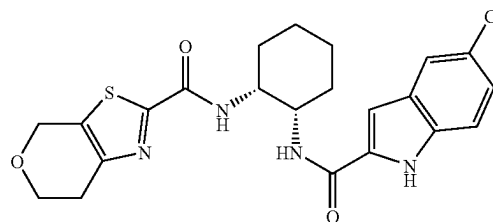
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 51 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(2H,m), 1.50-1.75(4H,m), 1.80-2.10(2H,m), 2.70(3H,br.s), 2.79(3H,br.s), 4.10-4.70(6H,m), 7.10-7.27(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.12(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.47(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 487(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 14

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)-6,7-dihydro-4H-pyrano[4,3-d]thiazole-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 26 in a similar manner to Example 2.

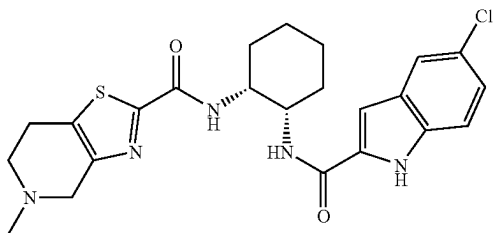
309

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.36-1.72(6H,m), 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.80-2.87(2H,m), 3.93(2H,t,J=5.6 Hz), 4.20-4.32(2H,m), 4.81(2H,s), 7.12(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.11(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 459(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 15

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



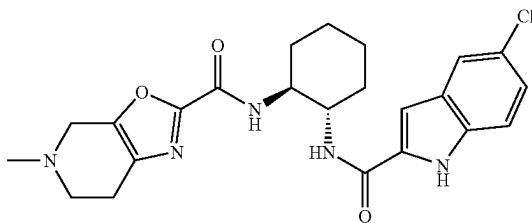
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 29 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32-1.74(6H,m), 1.82-2.10(2H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.12-3.50(3H,m), 3.69(1H,br.s), 4.13-4.39(3H,m), 4.51(1H,br.s), 7.10-7.19(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.10(1H,br.s), 8.40(1H,br.s), 11.41(1H,br.s), 11.87(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 472(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 16

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrooxazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 69 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 21 in a similar manner to Example 2.

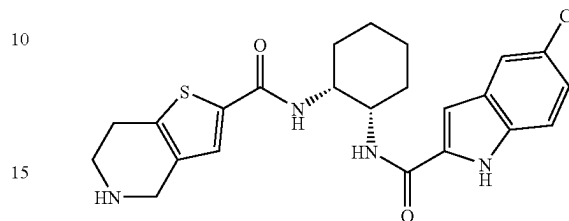
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.23-1.39(2H,m), 1.40-1.81(4H,m), 1.82-1.98(2H,m), 2.60-3.00(5H,m), 3.20-3.70(2H,m), 3.87-3.96(1H,m), 3.98-4.10(1H,m), 4.12-4.70(2H,m), 7.04(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.12(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.33(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.72(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 11.61(1H,br.s), 11.72(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 456(M+H)⁺.

310

EXAMPLE 17

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[3,2-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



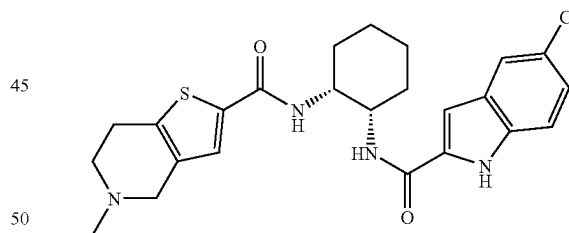
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 with 5-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[3,2-c]pyridine-2-carboxylic acid (WO94/21599) and treating the formed product with hydrochloric acid to deprotect in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42(2H,br.s), 1.56-1.76(4H,m), 1.98-2.11(2H,m), 3.04(2H,br.s), 3.32-3.45(2H,m), 4.15(3H,br.s), 4.26(1H,br.s), 7.14(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.23(1H,s), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(1H,s), 7.77(1H,s), 8.18-8.30(2H,m), 9.42(2H,br.s), 11.92(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 457(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 18

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[3,2-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (171 mg) obtained in Example 17 was suspended in methylene chloride (10 ml), and triethylamine (0.104 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 10 minutes. After acetic acid (0.059 ml) was added to the reaction mixture, a 35% aqueous formaldehyde solution (0.070 ml) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (118 mg) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After a 1N aqueous solution (3 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction mixture, water was added to conduct liquid separation. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=50:3) to obtain a colorless foamy substance. This substance was suspended in 1N

311

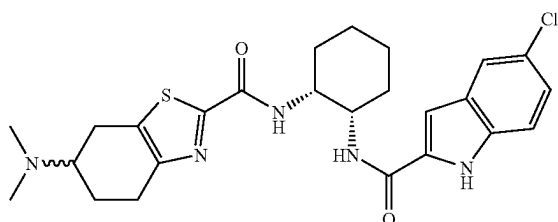
hydrochloric acid, and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (85 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40(2H,br.s), 1.50-1.71(4H,m), 1.97-2.05(2H,m), 2.87(3H,s), 2.98-3.20(1H,m), 3.30-3.38 (2H,m), 3.54-3.70(1H,m), 4.05-4.42(4H,m), 7.14(1H,d, J=8.6 Hz), 7.23(1H,s), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.63(1H,s), 7.77(1H,s), 8.17-8.27(2H,m), 10.83(1H,br.s), 11.92(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 471(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 19

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl] amino}-cyclohexyl)-6-(dimethylamino)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



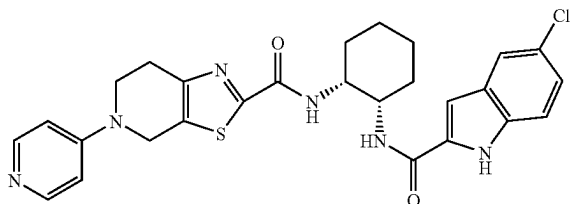
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 31 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44(2H,br.s), 1.52-1.68(4H,m), 1.87-2.08(3H,m), 2.30-2.40(1H,m), 2.65-2.75(1H,m), 2.77 (6H,s), 2.95-3.17(2H,m), 3.30-3.70(2H,m), 4.15-4.30(2H, m), 7.10-7.20(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.11 (1H,d,J=5.1 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 10.95(1H,br.s), 11.83(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 500(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 20

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl] amino}-cyclohexyl)-5-(pyridin-4-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



After n-butyllithium (1.60N hexane solution, 0.704 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the compound (204 mg) obtained in Referential Example 24 in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) at -78° C., the mixture was stirred at 0° C. for 30 minutes. After the reaction mixture was cooled to -78° C.

312

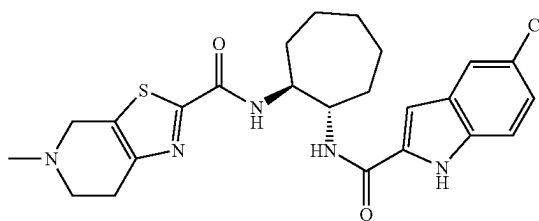
again, it was warmed to room temperature in 20 minutes while blowing carbon dioxide, and the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The compound (400 mg) obtained in Referential Example 71, 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (254 mg), 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (360 mg) and isopropylamine (0.491 ml) were added to a solution of the resultant residue in N,N-dimethylformamide (6 ml) at room temperature. After stirring for 3 days, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (30 ml), a saturated aqueous solution (100 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate and water (100 ml) were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (4×15 ml), the organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1→10:1) and dissolved in 1N hydrochloric acid-methanol-methylene chloride. The resultant solution was then concentrated to obtain the title compound (245 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42(2H,br.s), 1.60(4H,br.s), 1.84-1.94(1H,m), 1.94-2.08(1H,m), 2.97(2H,br.s), 3.97-4.13 (2H,m), 4.19(1H,br.s), 4.27(1H,br.s), 5.03(2H,s), 7.13(1H, br.s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.32(2H,br.s), 7.40(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.15(1H,br,J=7.3 Hz), 8.31 (2H,d,J=5.9 Hz), 8.39(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.90(1H,s), 14.03 (1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 535(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 21

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl] amino}-cycloheptyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 74 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

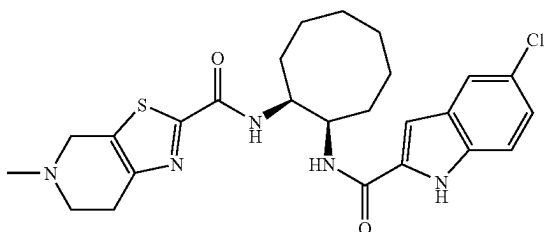
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.51-1.55(4H,m), 1.75-1.80(6H, m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.12(1H,br.s), 3.35-3.63(4H,m), 4.10-4.13 (1H,m), 4.29-4.61(2H,m), 7.06(1H,s), 7.14(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.46(1H,d, J=8.3 Hz), 8.77(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.21-11.35(1H,m), 11.71 (1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 486(M+H)⁺.

313

EXAMPLE 22

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclooctyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



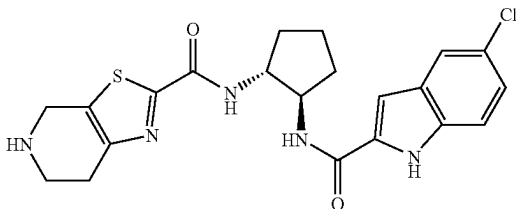
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 78 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.61-2.06(12H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.08-3.17(2H,m), 3.43-3.45(1H,br.s), 3.67(1H,br.s), 4.43(3H,br.s), 4.67(1H,br.s), 7.16-7.18(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.24(1H,br.s), 8.58(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.43,11.63(1H,each br.s), 11.80(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 500(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 23

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclopentyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating a product obtained by the reaction of the compound obtained in Referential Example 63 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 34 with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to Example 2.

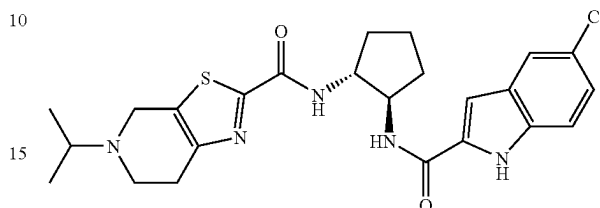
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.82(4H,m), 1.91-2.15(2H,m), 3.08(2H,s), 3.37-3.49(2H,m), 4.28-4.56(4H,m), 7.13(1H,s), 7.15(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.61(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.88(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.05(2H,br.s), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 444(M+H)⁺.

314

EXAMPLE 24

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclopentyl)-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



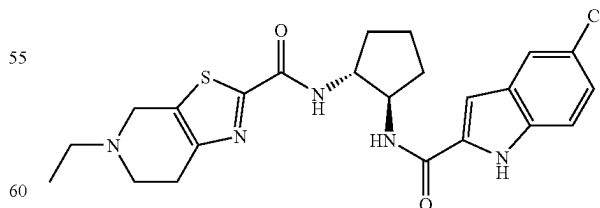
The compound (30 mg) obtained in Example 23 was suspended in methylene chloride (20 ml), and triethylamine (260 μl) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 15 minutes. Acetic acid (179 μl) and acetone (920 μl) were added to the reaction mixture, and the resultant mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 minutes. Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (796 mg) was added to the reaction mixture to stir them at room temperature for 5 hours. A 1N aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain a colorless foamy substance. This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, and a 1N ethanol solution (1 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (205 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.27-1.39(6H,m), 1.58-1.80(4H,m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 3.00-3.12(1H,m), 3.25-3.45(2H,m), 3.59-3.77(2H,m), 4.25-4.39(1H,m), 4.40-4.55(2H,m), 4.57-4.65(1H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.14(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.56(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.90(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.39(1H,br.s), 11.76(0.5H,s), 11.80(0.5H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 486(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 25

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclopentyl)-5-ethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (500 mg) obtained in Example 23 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and triethylamine (576 μl) and ethyl iodide (329 μl) were added to stir the mixture overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and water

315

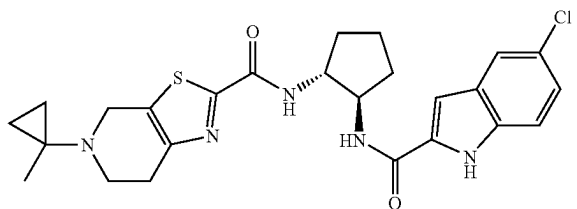
was added to the residue to collect insoluble matter by filtration. This product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain a pale brown foamy substance. This substance was suspended in 1N hydrochloric acid, and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (180 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.60-1.80(4H,m), 1.96-2.10(2H,m), 3.20-3.39(5H,m), 3.70-3.80(1H,m), 4.26-4.58(3H,m), 4.68-4.79(1H,m), 7.11(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 8.55(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.92(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.38(1H,br.s), 11.70-11.80(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 472(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 26

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclopentyl]-5-(1-methylcyclopropyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride:



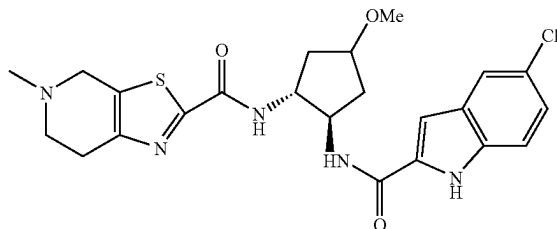
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 63 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 39 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.81(2H,br.s), 1.20-1.55(5H,br), 1.55-1.80(4H,m), 1.95-2.12(2H,m), 3.05-3.40(2H,br), 3.60-3.80(2H,br), 4.25-4.80(4H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.53(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.85-8.95(1H,m), 10.60-10.90(1H,br), 11.73(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 498(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 27

N-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-methoxycyclopentyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride (Stereoisomer A and Stereoisomer B)



A mixture of the title compounds, i.e., Stereoisomer A and Stereoisomer B was synthesized by condensing the compound (mixture of 4-position stereoisomers) (268 mg) obtained in Referential Example 82 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to

316

Example 2. The isomers were isolated by column chromatography on silica gel and then converted into hydrochlorides to obtain the title compounds [Stereoisomer A (75 mg) and Stereoisomer B (70 mg)].

Stereoisomer A

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-2.15(4H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.90(8H,m), 4.10-4.80(4H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.56(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.88(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.96(1H,br.s), 11.75(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 488(M+H)⁺.

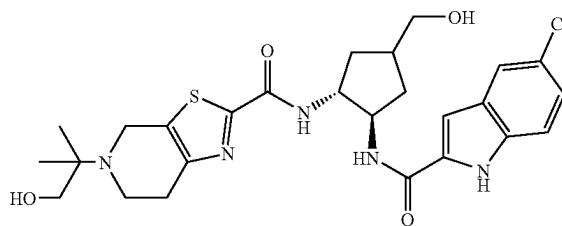
Stereoisomer B

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-2.10(4H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-3.70(7H,m), 3.70-3.90(1H,m), 4.20-4.80(4H,m), 7.05-7.20(2H,m), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.59(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.90(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.26(1H,br.s), 11.74(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 488(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 28

N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-(hydroxymethyl)cyclopentyl]-5-(1,1-dimethyl-2-hydroxyethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride (Stereoisomer A)



1) Stereoisomers A and B of N-((1R*,2R*)-4-[(benzyloxy)methyl]-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclopentyl]-5-(2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-1,1-dimethylethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide were obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 85 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 42 in a similar manner to Example 2.

Stereoisomer A

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.05(9H,s), 1.168, 1.171(6H,each s), 1.53-1.61(1H,m), 1.76-1.88(1H,m), 2.30-2.37(2H,m), 2.78-2.79(2H,m), 2.87-2.90(1H,m), 2.96-3.00(1H,m), 3.37-3.47(2H,m), 3.58(2H,s), 3.96(1H,q,J=13.1 Hz), 4.41-4.45(1H,m), 4.51-4.57(2H,m), 6.88(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.23-7.43(12H,m), 7.52(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.37(1H,br.s).

Stereoisomer B

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.05(9H,s), 1.17(6H,s), 1.43-1.47(1H,m), 1.85-1.88(1H,m), 2.09-2.14(1H,m), 2.58-2.63(1H,m), 2.78-2.79(2H,m), 2.86-2.90(1H,m), 2.96-3.00(1H,m), 3.38-3.46(2H,m), 3.59(2H,s), 3.95(1H,q,J=13.3 Hz), 4.15-4.20(1H,m), 4.45-4.56(3H,m), 6.74(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.27-7.43(12H,m), 7.57(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.48(1H,br.s).

317

2) The above Stereoisomer A (288 mg) was suspended in methylene chloride (20 ml), and dimethyl sulfide (1.15 ml) and anhydrous aluminum chloride (350 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1 hour. A 1N aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to the reaction mixture, and the mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=9:1) to obtain 5-(2-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-1,1-dimethylethyl)-N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-(hydroxymethyl)cyclopentyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) (184 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.04(9H,s), 1.15(6H,s), 1.54-1.62(1H,m), 1.73-1.81(1H,m), 1.99-2.25(2H,m), 2.34-2.38(2H,m), 2.67-2.85(3H,m), 2.92-2.97(1H,m), 3.48-3.62(4H,m), 3.93(1H,q,J=15.6 Hz), 4.20-4.28(1H,m), 4.47-4.56(1H,m), 6.89(1H,s), 7.11-7.18(1H,m), 7.24-7.27(1H,m), 7.32-7.43(6H,m), 7.54(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.63(4H,dd,J=7.8, 1.5 Hz), 7.90-7.92(2H,m), 10.13(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 784(M+H)⁺.

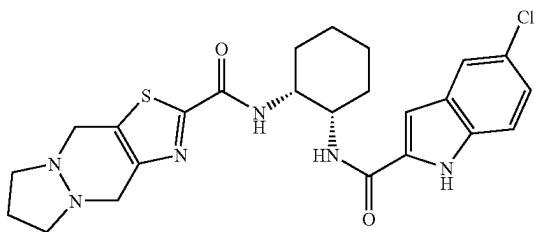
3) Stereoisomer A (180 mg) obtained in the step 2) described above was dissolved in a 1N tetrahydrofuran solution (2 ml) of tetrabutylammonium fluoride, and the solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. Methylene chloride, a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and sodium chloride were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=19:1). The thus-obtained powder was dissolved in methanol, and a 1N ethanol solution (229 μl) of hydrochloric acid was added, to which ethyl acetate was added. The solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (63 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.33-1.50(8H,m), 1.70-1.91(2H,m), 2.07-2.14(1H,m), 2.23-2.24(1H,m), 3.04-3.10(1H,m), 3.27-3.44(4H,m), 3.57-3.70(2H,m), 3.92-3.95(1H,m), 4.29-4.72(4H,m), 5.81(1H,br.s), 7.11(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.53-8.56(1H,m), 8.83(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.36(1H,br.s), 11.75, 11.77(1H,each s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 546(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 29

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-4,7,8,10-tetrahydro-6H-pyrazolo[1,2-a]-thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



318

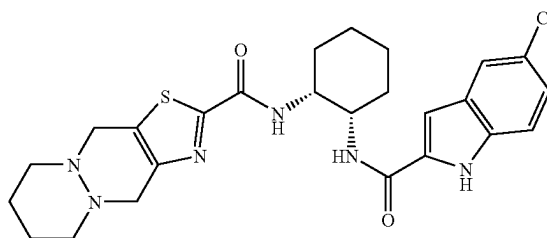
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 44 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(2H,m), 1.61(4H,br.s), 1.80-2.00(2H,m), 2.27(2H,br.s), 2.80-4.80(10H,m), 7.14(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.09(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.44(1H,br.s), 11.81(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 499(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 30

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-4,6,7,8,9,11-hexahydropyridazino[1,2-a]-thiazolo[4,5-d]pyridazine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



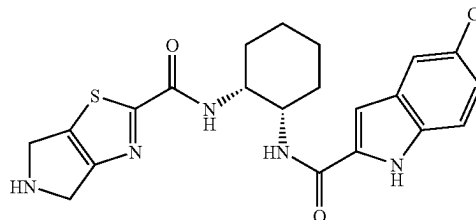
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 46 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.55(2H,m), 1.55-2.10(10H,m), 2.80-4.80(10H,m), 7.10-7.25(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.12(1H,br.s), 8.41(1H,br.s), 11.83(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 513(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 31

-5-Chloro-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-ylcarbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (171 mg) obtained in Referential Example 33 was dissolved in diethyl ether (5 ml) in an argon atmosphere, and the solution was cooled to -78° C., to which n-butyllithium (1.60N hexane solution, 385 μl) was added dropwise. After the reaction mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at -78° C., and carbon dioxide was blown into the reaction mixture for 20 minutes, it was warmed to room temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml). To the solution, were added the compound (184 mg) obtained in Referential Example 71, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (76 mg) and 1-(3-

319

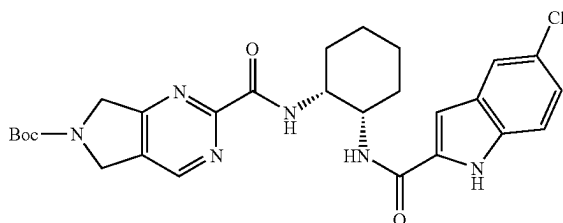
dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (215 mg). The resultant mixture was stirred for 3 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=3:97). After an ethanol solution (5 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to the thus-obtained product, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, and the reaction mixture was concentrated. Ethyl acetate was added to the residue to solidify it. The resultant powder was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (31 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.52(2H,m), 1.55-1.80(4H,m), 1.82-2.05(2H,m), 4.22(1H,br.s), 4.28(1H,br.s), 4.38(2H,s), 4.56(2H,s), 7.14-7.20(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.10(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 8.45(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 10.10-10.50(2H,br), 11.83(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 444(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 32

tert-Butyl 2-[[[(1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]amino]carbonyl]-5,7-dihydro-6H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-6-carboxylate



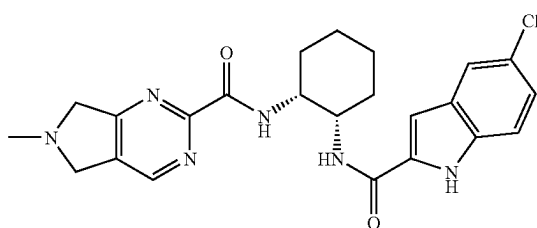
After the compound obtained in Referential Example 50 was hydrolyzed with lithium hydroxide, it was reacted with the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 in a similar manner to Example 2 to obtain the title compound.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.54(9H,s), 1.55-2.30(8H,m), 4.23(1H,br.s), 4.53(1H,br.s), 4.74-4.83(4H,m), 6.99(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.1 Hz), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.1 Hz), 8.11(1H,br.s), 8.48-8.53(1H,br), 8.70-8.76(1H,br), 9.60-9.70(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 539(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 33

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



320

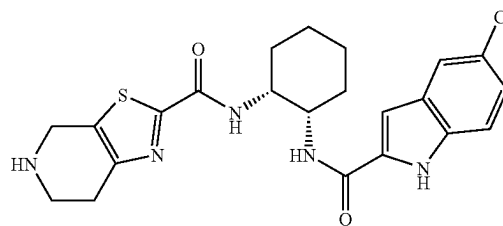
Trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (34.0 mg) obtained in Example 32 dissolved in methylene chloride (1 ml) at room temperature, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in methylene chloride (1 ml), to which triethylamine (17.6 μl), acetic acid (7.21 μl), 35% formalin (8.13 μl) and sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (20.1 mg) were added at room temperature. The resultant mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Methylene chloride (10 ml) and saturated aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=7:93). A 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and ethyl acetate were added to the product thus obtained to solidify it, and the resultant solids were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (8.0 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.55(2H,m), 1.55-1.75(4H,m), 1.80-2.05(2H,m), 2.98(3H,br.s), 4.28(2H,br.s), 4.65(4H,br.s), 7.14-7.20(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.17(1H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 8.65(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.93(1H,s), 11.73(1H,br.s), 11.82(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 453(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 34

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating a product obtained by the reaction of the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 34 with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to Example 2.

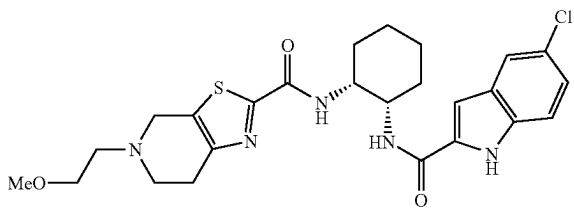
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39-1.52(2H,m), 1.62(4H,br.s), 1.86-2.09(2H,m), 3.03(2H,br.s), 3.40-3.47(2H,m), 4.17-4.32(2H,m), 4.44(2H,s), 7.15(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.10-8.15(1H,m), 8.40-8.47(1H,m), 9.69(2H,br.s), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 458(M+H)⁺.

321

EXAMPLE 35

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl)-5-(2-methoxyethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



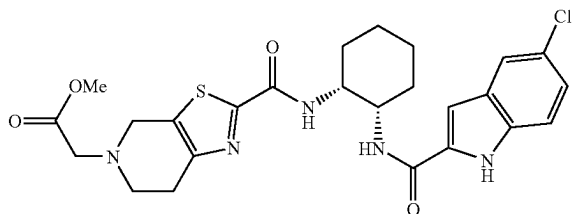
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and 2-methoxyethyl bromide in a similar manner to Example 25.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44(2H,br.s), 1.62(4H,br.s), 1.85-2.10(2H,m), 2.76-3.21(6H,m), 3.28(3H,s), 3.64(2H,br.s), 4.00-4.52(4H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.08-8.20(1H,m), 8.36-8.48(1H,m), 11.84(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 516(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 36

Methyl 2-[2-[[[(1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]amino]carbonyl]-6,7-dihydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-5(4H)-yl]acetate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and methyl bromoacetate in a similar manner to Example 25.

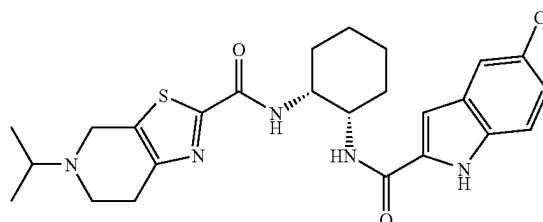
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52-1.98(7H,m), 2.17(1H,br.s), 2.87-3.10(4H,m), 3.49(2H,s), 3.76(3H,s), 3.93(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.99(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.22(1H,br.s), 4.45(1H,br.s), 6.86(1H,d,J=1.2 Hz), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.58-7.63(2H,m), 7.87(1H,br.s), 9.88(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 530(M+H)⁺.

322

EXAMPLE 37

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl)-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



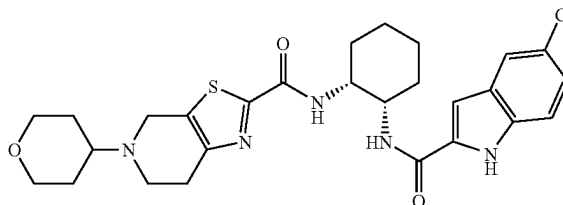
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and acetone in a similar manner to Example 24.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.18-1.73(8H,m), 1.81-2.10(2H,m), 2.97-3.16(1H,m), 3.20-3.41(2H,m), 3.52-3.80(2H,m), 4.19-4.31(2H,m), 4.34-4.77(2H,m), 7.17(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.15(1H,br.s), 8.28-8.51(1H,m), 11.31(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 500(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 38

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl)-5-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and tetrahydro-4H-pyran-4-one in a similar manner to Example 24.

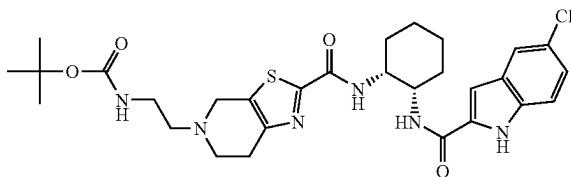
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-3.56(19H,m), 3.70-4.01(3H,m), 4.17-4.30(2H,m), 4.32-4.80(1H,m), 7.15(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.14(1H,br.s), 8.39(1H,br.s), 11.84 (1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 542(M+H)⁺.

323

EXAMPLE 39

tert-Butyl 2-[2-{{{(1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl]amino}carbonyl]-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-5(4H)-yl]ethylcarbamate



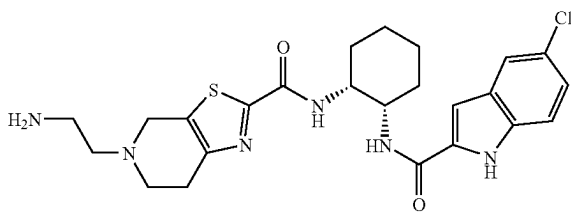
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)aminoacetaldehyde (J. Org. Chem., 1988, Vol. 53, p.3457) in a similar manner to Example 24.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.44(9H,s), 1.54-1.98(7H,m), 2.10-2.20(1H,m), 2.74(2H,br.s), 2.92(4H,br.s), 3.34(2H,br.s), 3.84(2H,br.s), 4.21(1H,br.s), 4.45(1H,br.s), 6.86(1H,s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.57-7.63(2H,m), 7.81(1H,br.s), 9.66(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 601(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 40

5-(2-Aminoethyl)-N-(((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (450 mg) obtained in Example 39 was dissolved in methylene chloride (5 ml), and a saturated ethanol solution (30 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1 minute. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, ethyl acetate was added to the residue, and solids deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (367 mg).

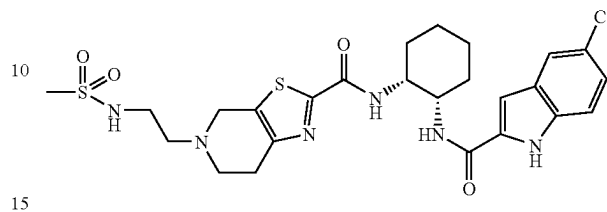
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.50(2H,m), 1.61(4H,br.s), 1.85-2.08(2H,m), 3.00-4.62(12H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.12(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 8.15-8.68(4H,m), 11.85(1H,s)

MS (FAB) m/z: 501(M+H)⁺.

324

EXAMPLE 41

N-(((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)-5-{2-[(methylsulfonyl)amino]ethyl}-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



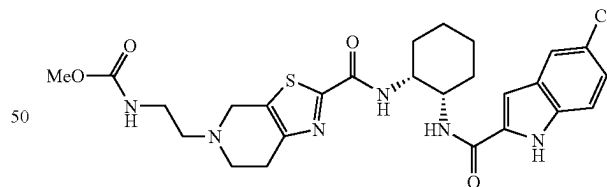
The compound (110 mg) obtained in Example 40 was dissolved in pyridine (3 ml), methanesulfonyl chloride (30 μl) was added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and a 85:15 mixed solvent of methylene chloride and methanol, and water were added to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=100:3) to obtain a pale yellow foamy substance. This product was suspended in 1N hydrochloric acid (0.3 ml), and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (63 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.50(2H,m), 1.55-1.70(4H,m), 1.86-2.05(2H,m), 2.97(3H,s), 3.02-3.25(2H,m), 3.30-3.60(5H,m), 3.78(1H,br.s), 4.18-4.30(2H,m), 4.45-4.86(2H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,br.s), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.09(1H,br.s), 8.43(1H,br.s), 11.18(1H,br.s), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 579(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 42

Methyl 2-[2-{{{(1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl]amino}carbonyl]-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-5(4H)-yl]ethylcarbamate hydrochloride



The compound (144 mg) obtained in Example 40 was dissolved in pyridine (3 ml), triethylamine (138 μl) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 minutes. A solution prepared by adding triphosgene (49 mg) to tetrahydrofuran (1 ml) containing methanol (20 μl) was added dropwise to this solution. After stirring for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in a 9:1 mixed solvent of methylene chloride and methanol. Water was added to the solution to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene

325

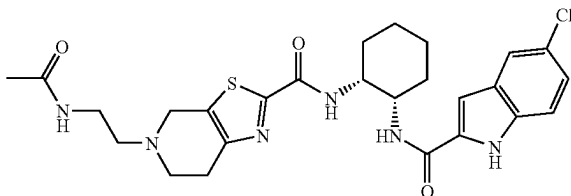
chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain a colorless foamy substance. This product was suspended in 1N hydrochloric acid (0.2 ml), and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (60 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.50(2H,m), 1.61(4H,br.s), 1.85-2.04(2H,m), 2.80-3.49(8H,m), 3.52(3H,s), 3.62-4.91(4H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,br.s), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.11(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.40(1H,br.s), 11.05(1H,br.s), 11.82(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 559(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 43

5-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



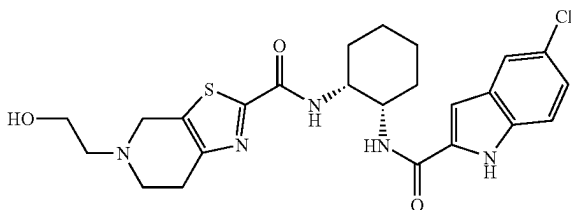
The compound (90 mg) obtained in Example 40 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml), triethylamine (65 μl) and acetic anhydride (22 μl) were added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a 0.3N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain a colorless foamy substance. This product was suspended in 1N hydrochloric acid (0.3 ml), and the suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (73 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39-1.52(2H,m), 1.54-1.70(4H,m), 1.83(3H,s), 1.84-2.06(2H,m), 3.02-3.87(8H,m), 4.16-4.32(2H,m), 4.40-4.52(1H,m), 4.78-4.88(1H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.07-8.17(1H,m), 8.22-8.30(1H,m), 8.38-8.52(1H,m), 11.14(1H,br.s), 11.83(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 543(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 44

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and 2-bromoethanol in a similar manner to Example 25.

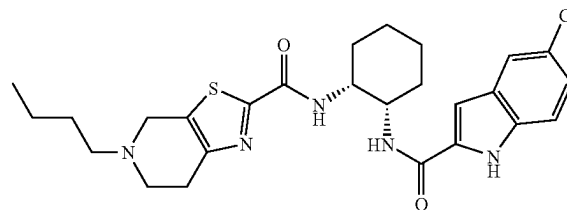
326

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.37-1.69(6H,m), 1.86-2.03(2H,m), 2.54-2.61(2H,m), 2.75-2.86(4H,m), 3.52-3.59(2H,m), 3.75(2H,s), 4.47(1H,t,J=5.4 Hz), 7.12(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.05-8.13(1H,m), 8.28-8.35(1H,m), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 502(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 45

5-Butyl-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



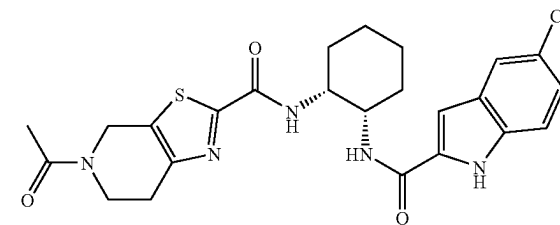
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 34 and n-bromobutane in a similar manner to Example 25.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.88(3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 1.20-1.70(10H,m), 1.87-2.05(2H,m), 2.55-3.40(8H,m), 4.16-4.30(2H,m), 7.13(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.05-8.14(1H,m), 8.35(1H,br.s), 11.81(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 514(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 46

5-Acetyl-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 34 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml), triethylamine (84 μl) and acetic anhydride (29 μl) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and 1N hydrochloric acid were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:3) to obtain the title compound (86 mg).

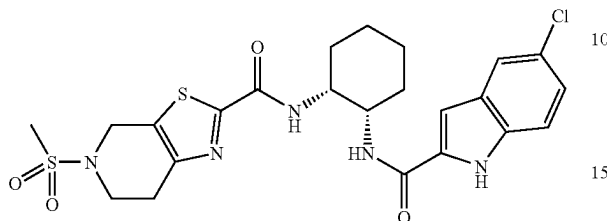
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.52-1.85(5H,m), 1.91(2H,br.s), 2.10-2.28(4H,m), 2.77-3.00(2H,m), 3.70-4.00(2H,m), 4.19-4.38(1H,m), 4.45(1H,br.s), 4.68-4.99(2H,m), 6.85(1H,s), 7.17-7.22(1H,m), 7.30-7.39(1H,m), 7.50-7.84(3H,m), 9.72-10.05(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 500(M+H)⁺.

327

EXAMPLE 47

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl]-5-(methylsulfonyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



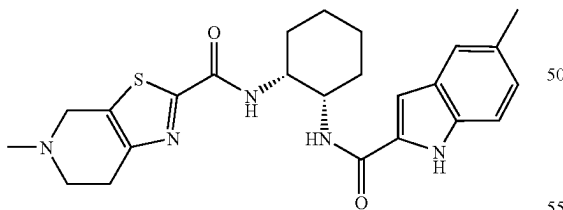
The compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 34 was dissolved in pyridine (3 ml), triethylamine (168 μ l) and methanesulfonyl chloride (48 μ l) were added, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and 1N hydrochloric acid were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=100:1) to obtain the title compound (79 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.50-1.82(5H,m), 1.90(2H,br.s), 2.13(1H,br.s), 2.89(3H,s), 2.91-2.98(2H,m), 3.60-3.70(2H,m), 4.30(1H,br.s), 4.44(1H,br.s), 4.58(2H,s), 6.87(1H,s), 7.19(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.61(3H,br.s), 9.91(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 536(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 48

5-Methyl-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-methylindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 67 and 5-methylindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 5.

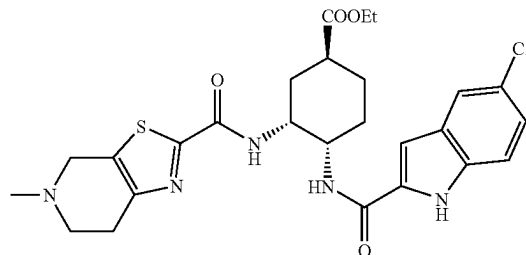
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.35-1.50(2H,m), 1.50-1.80(4H,m), 1.85-2.07(2H,m), 2.36(3H,s), 2.88(3H,s), 3.12(2H,br.s), 3.53(2H,br.s), 4.15-4.30(2H,m), 4.30-4.80(2H,br), 7.00(1H,dd,J=8.4, 1.5 Hz), 7.05(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.38(1H,s), 8.00(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.43(1H,br.s), 11.45(1H,br.s), 11.49(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 452(M+H)⁺.

328

EXAMPLE 49

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (1.40 g) obtained in Referential Example 91 was suspended in ethanol (8 ml), and a saturated ethanol solution (10 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-3-amino-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate hydrochloride (1.25 g).

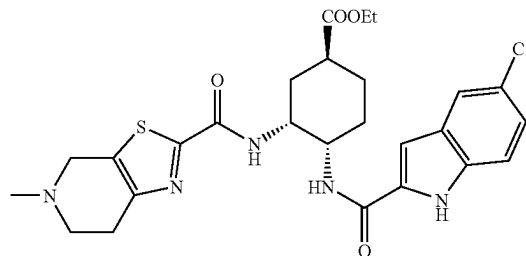
The title compound was obtained from the above-described product and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.29(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.52-1.80(2H,m), 2.03-2.37(4H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.57-2.71(1H,m), 3.73 and 3.78(total 1H,each d,J=14.4 Hz), 4.08-4.17(1H,m), 4.18(2H,q,J=7.2 Hz), 4.55-4.65(1H,m), 6.85(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.48(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 7.63(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.98(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.30(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 544(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 50

Ethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



The compound (4.2 g) obtained in Referential Example 97 was suspended in ethanol (25 ml), and a saturated ethanol solution (55 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 11 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain colorless solids (4.15 g).

This product (4.15 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (40 ml), and the compound (2.86 g) obtained in

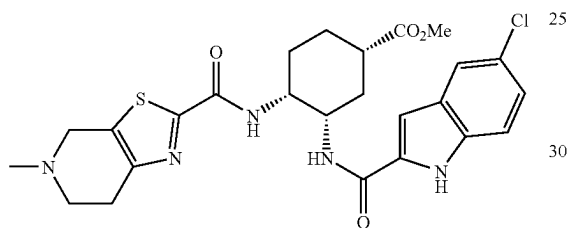
329

Referential Example 10, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (1.72 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbo-diimide hydrochloride (2.15 g) were added to this solution at room temperature to stir the mixture for 39 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with chloroform. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=100:1) to obtain the title compound (1.71 g).

$[\alpha]_D -94^\circ$ (C=1.0, chloroform)

EXAMPLE 51

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



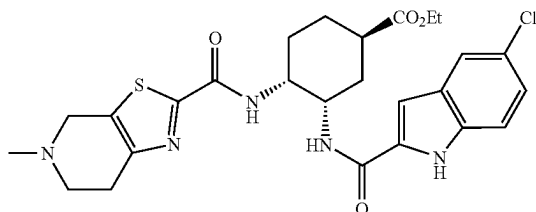
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 107 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing this compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 49.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.55-1.80(3H,m), 1.80-2.20(3H,m), 2.60-2.75(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.15-3.30(1H,m), 3.30-3.50(4H,m), 3.57(3H,s), 3.55-3.70(1H,m), 4.20-4.30(1H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 7.02(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.20-8.35(1H,m), 8.35-8.45(1H,m), 11.82(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 530(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 52

Ethyl (1R*,3S*,4R*)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 98 with a saturated

330

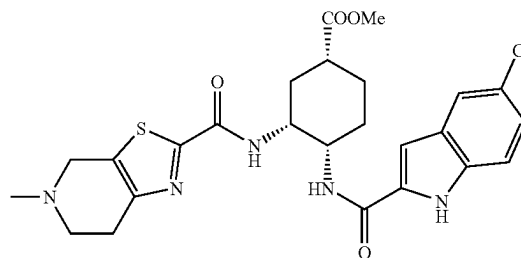
ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 49.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl $_3$) δ : 1.29(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.82-2.30(6H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 2.62-2.73(1H,m), 3.74-3.85(2H,m), 3.85-3.93(2H,m), 3.71(2H,s), 4.12-4.29(3H,m), 4.49-4.59(1H,m), 6.89(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.33(1H,br.s), 7.41(1H,br.s), 7.62(1H,br.s), 9.37(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 544(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 53

Methyl (1R*,3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



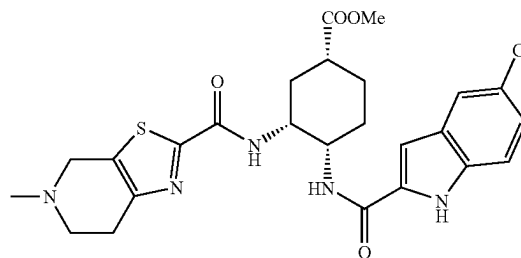
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 106 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 49.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.65-1.80(3H,m), 1.80-2.10(2H,m), 2.15-2.25(1H,m), 2.55-2.70(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.05-3.20(1H,m), 3.30-3.50(4H,m), 3.55-3.65(1H,m), 3.62(3H,s), 4.20-4.30(1H,m), 4.35-4.45(1H,m), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.2 Hz), 7.23(1H,s), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.73(1H,s), 8.03(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.73(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.15-11.38(1H,br), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 530(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 54

Methyl (1R,3R,4S)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 112 a 4N dioxane

331

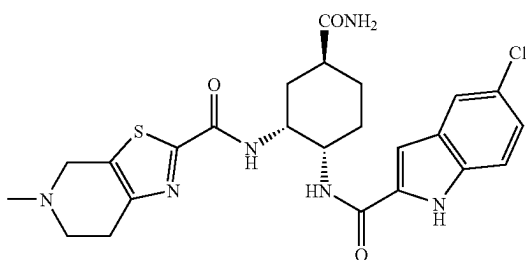
solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 49.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.67-1.76(3H,m), 1.88-1.91(1H,m), 2.01(1H,br.s), 2.13-2.22(1H,m), 2.52-2.67(4H,m), 2.86 (2H,br.s), 3.04(2H,br.s), 3.33-3.41(1H,m), 3.61(3H,s), 4.22-4.36(3H,m), 7.17-7.22(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72 (1H,s), 8.00(1H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 8.68(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 11.80 (1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 530(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 55

N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-5-(Aminocarbonyl)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



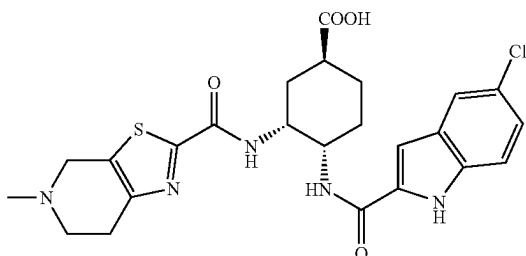
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 113 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.78-2.40(7H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.80-2.89(1H,m), 2.91-3.00(1H,m), 3.68-3.76(2H,m), 4.08-4.19 (1H,m), 4.54-4.65(1H,m), 6.80(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,dd,J=8.4, 1.6 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.38-7.43(1H,m), 7.49-7.55 (1H,m), 7.63(1H,br.s), 9.14(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 515(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 56

(1R*,3S*,4R*)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

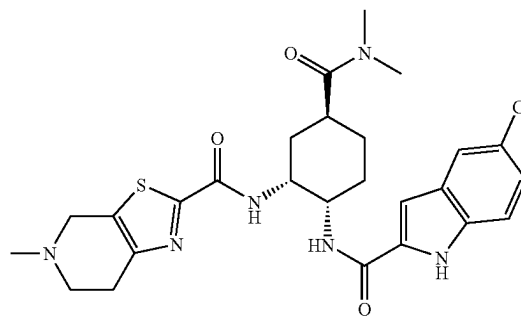


The compound (916 mg) obtained in Example 49 was suspended in a mixed solvent of ethanol (10 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (8 ml), and a 1N aqueous solution (3.3 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 12 hours at the same temperature. After adding 1N hydrochloric acid (3.3 ml), the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was washed with water and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (712 mg).

332

EXAMPLE 57

N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



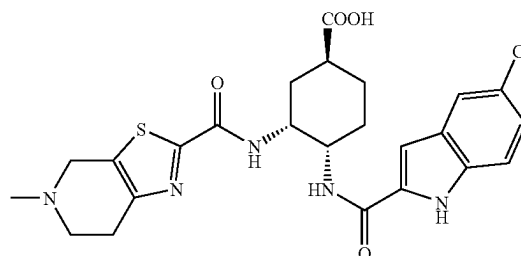
Triethylamine (0.25 ml), dimethylamine hydrochloride (133 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (53 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (75 mg) were added to a chloroform suspension (10 ml) of the compound (168 mg) obtained in Example 56, and the mixture was stirred for 72 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with chloroform. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7). The thus-obtained colorless solids (135 mg) were suspended in ethanol (5 ml), to which 1N ethanol solution (0.5 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours, and the solvent was distilled off to obtain the title compound (112 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-2.07(6H,m), 2.73-3.70 (10H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 4.03-4.20(1H,m), 4.51-4.67(1H,m), 7.04(1H,br.s), 7.16(1H,br,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,br.s), 8.32-8.47(2H,m), 10.76(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 543(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 58

(1S,3R,4S)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexanecarboxylic acid



The compound (1.6 g) obtained in Example 50 was suspended in a mixed solvent of ethanol (20 ml) and

333

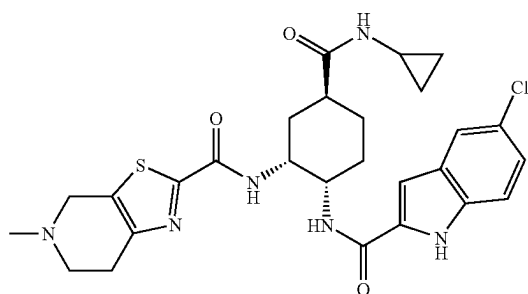
tetrahydrofuran (15 ml), and a 1N aqueous solution (5.9 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 12 hours at the same temperature. After adding 1N hydrochloric acid (5.9 ml), the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was washed with water and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (1.19 g).

m.p. 234-236° C.

$[\alpha]_D^{25} -57^\circ$ (C=1.0, methanol).

EXAMPLE 59

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(cyclopropylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



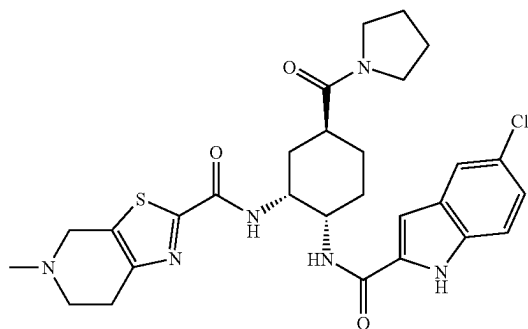
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 and cyclopropylamine in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.32-0.40(2H,m), 0.53-0.63(2H,m), 1.50-2.10(6H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 2.45-2.70(2H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.05-3.80(3H,m), 4.05-4.17(1H,m), 4.30-4.55(2H,m), 4.55-4.80(1H,m), 7.03(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.86(1H,br,J=3.4 Hz), 8.06(1H,br,s), 8.40(1H,br,J=7.6 Hz), 11.20-11.60(1H,br), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 555(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 60

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(pyrrolidin-1-ylcarbonyl)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



334

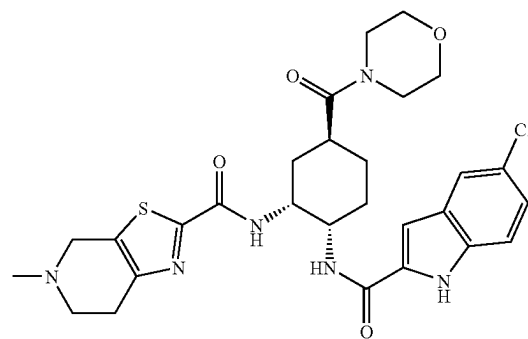
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 and pyrrolidine in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-2.10(10H,m), 2.75-2.90(2H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.10-3.70(1H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.25-4.80(3H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.32(1H,br,J=7.6 Hz), 8.38(1H,br,J=7.1 Hz), 11.22(1H,br,s), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 569(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 61

N-[(1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(4-morpholinylcarbonyl)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



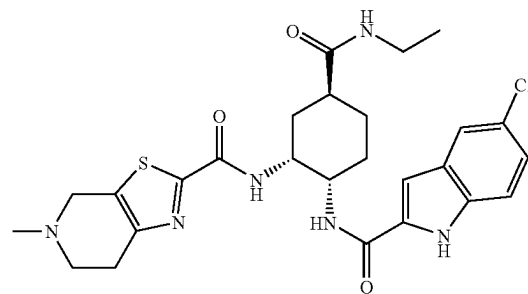
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 56 and morpholine in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.05(6H,m), 2.75-3.70(18H,m), 4.02-4.17(1H,m), 4.55-4.69(1H,m), 7.05(1H,br,s), 7.17(1H,br,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,br,s), 8.35(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.40(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 10.79(1H,br,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 585(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 62

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (150 mg) obtained in Example 58 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml), to which N-ethylamine hydrochloride (119 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriaz-

335

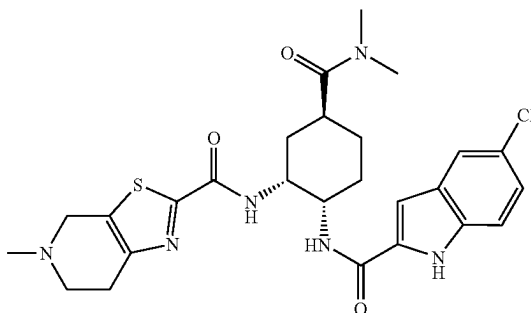
zole monohydrate (79 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (112 mg) and triethylamine (326 μ l) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the residue to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3). The thus-obtained solid was dissolved in methylene chloride, to which 1N ethanol solution (171 μ l) of hydrochloric acid was added. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue to collect precipitate formed by filtration, thereby obtaining the title compound (74 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 0.99(3H,t,J=7.2 Hz), 1.57-2.02(6H,m), 2.33-2.38(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.01-3.08(2H,m), 3.17-3.20(2H,s), 3.45-3.70(2H,m), 4.10-4.17(1H,m), 4.40-4.69(3H,m), 7.04(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.78-7.81(1H,m), 8.08-8.12(1H,m), 8.40(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.23(1H,br.s), 11.79(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 543(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 63

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (900 mg) obtained in Example 58 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 ml), to which dimethylamine hydrochloride (304 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (262 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (369 mg) and diisopropylethylamine (1.83 ml) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the residue to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3). The thus-obtained white solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, to which 1N ethanol solution (1.49 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and methanol and diethyl ether were

336

added to the residue to collect precipitate formed by filtration, thereby obtaining the title compound (777 mg).

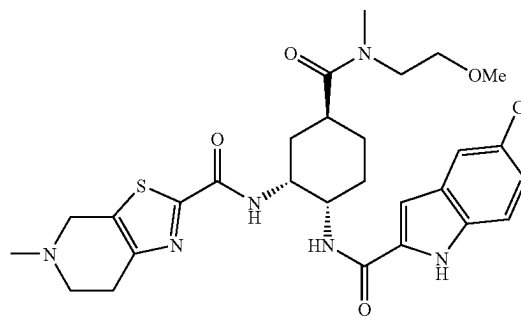
$[\alpha]_D^{20} = -53.9^\circ$ (18 $^\circ$ C., $c=0.505$, methanol).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.85(3H,m), 1.90-2.05(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.95-3.10(1H,m), 2.97(3H,s), 3.10-3.75(4H,m), 4.05-4.15(1H,m), 4.35-4.75(3H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.1 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.67(1H,s), 8.30-8.45(2H,m), 11.63(1H,br), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 543(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 64

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[[2-methoxyethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



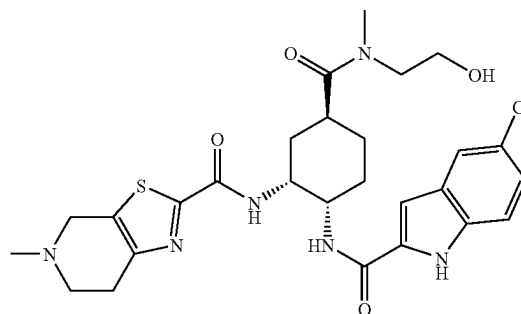
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 in a similar manner to Example 57.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.50-1.99(6H,m), 2.80,3.01(3H, each s), 2.91(3H,s), 3.03(1H,br.s), 3.16(2H,s), 3.23(3H,s), 3.35-3.67(6H,m), 4.09-4.16(1H,m), 4.43-4.67(3H,m), 7.04-7.06(1H,m), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,br.s), 8.29-8.41(2H,m), 11.59(1H,br.s), 11.80(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 587(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 65

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[[2-hydroxyethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



337

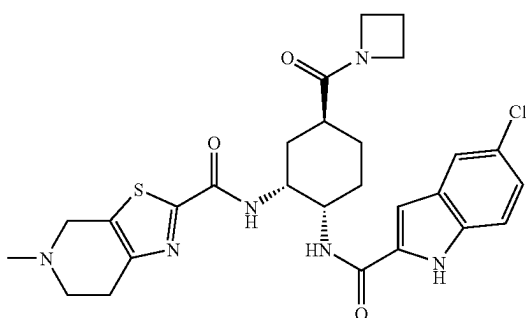
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.55(1H,m), 1.74-1.84(3H,m), 1.94-1.97(2H,m), 2.67,3.02(3H,each s), 2.91(3H,s), 3.10-3.68(9H,m), 4.11-4.13(1H,m), 4.43-4.66(4H, m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.34-8.40(2H,m), 11.47(1H,br.s), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 573(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 66

N-((1R,2S,5S)-5-(1-Azetidinylcarbonyl)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



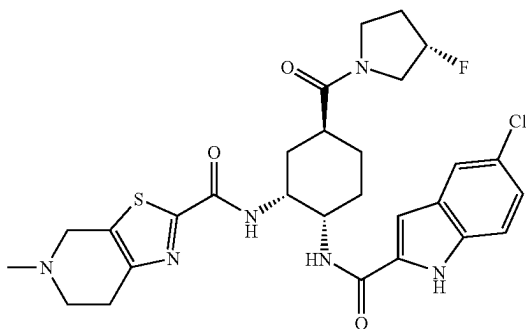
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 and azetidine hydrochloride in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.47-1.55(1H,m), 1.65-1.82(3H,m), 1.88-2.01(2H,m), 2.16(2H,quint.,J=7.6 Hz), 3.17-3.67(5H,m), 3.82(2H,t,J=7.6 Hz), 4.02-4.14(3H,m), 4.43-4.67(3H,m), 7.06(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.7, 1.7 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.69(1H,br.s), 8.31(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.38(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.41(1H,br.s), 11.80(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 555(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 67

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(3S)-3-fluoropyrrolidinyl]carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridinecarboxamide hydrochloride



338

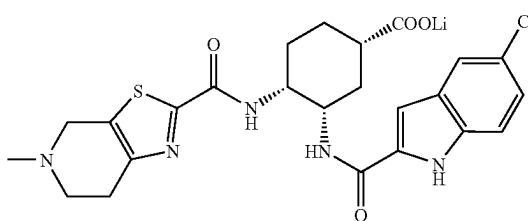
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 and (S)-3-fluoropyrrolidine (Synlett., 1995, p. 55) in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.23-3.77(22H,m), 4.11-4.16(1H,m), 4.58-4.51(1H,m), 5.23-5.42(1H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.34-8.37(2H,m), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 587(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 68

Lithium (1R*,3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexanecarboxylate

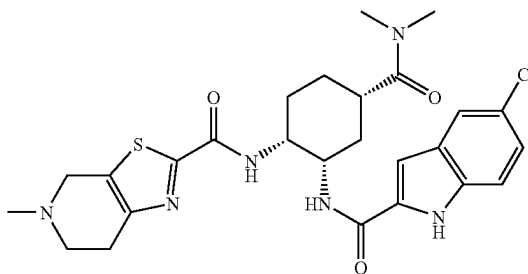


The compound (1.20 g) obtained in Example 51 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (32 ml), and lithium hydroxide (60.8 mg) and water (4 ml) were successively added under ice cooling to stir the mixture at room temperature for 14 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (1.12 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.55-1.70(2H,m), 1.70-2.05(4H,m), 2.10-2.20(1H,m), 2.25-2.40(4H,m), 2.50-2.80(4H,m), 3.45-3.65(3H,m), 4.10-4.30(2H,m), 7.00-7.20(2H,m), 7.50-7.65(2H,m).

EXAMPLE 69

N-((1R*,2S*,4S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 68 and dimethylamine in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.60(2H,m), 1.65-1.80(2H,m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 2.84(3H,s), 2.90-3.05(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.15-3.75(4H,m), 4.25-4.75(4H,m), 7.02(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.1 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,

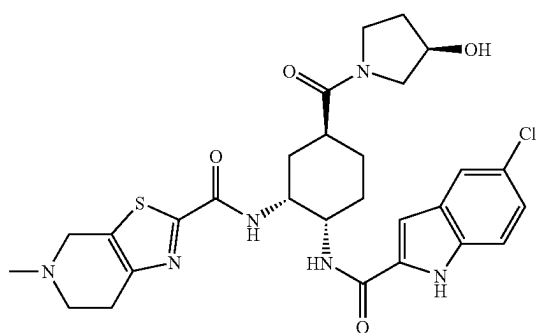
339

J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.1 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=7.7 Hz), 8.63(1H,d,J=7.7 Hz), 11.20(1H,br), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 543(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 70

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[[[(3R)-3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl]carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



1) The compound (1.18 g) obtained in Referential Example 58 was dissolved in methanol (12 ml), 1N hydrochloric acid (240 μ l) and palladium hydroxide (221 mg) were added, and hydrogen was introduced to conduct catalytic reduction under normal pressure at room temperature for 4.5 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated to solid under reduced pressure to obtain crude (3R)-3-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]pyrrolidine hydrochloride (984 mg).

The thus-obtained product (249 mg), the product (295 mg) obtained in Example 58, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (126 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (87 mg) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml). Diisopropylethylamine (450 μ l) was added dropwise to the solution under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=3:97) to obtain N-((1R,2S,5S)-5-[[[(3R)-3-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-pyrrolidinyl]carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (248 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 1.06(9H,s), 1.50-1.60(1H,m), 1.75-2.10(5H,m), 2.20-2.50(2H,m), 2.54(3H,d,J=2.8 Hz), 2.60-3.00(5H,m), 3.30-3.80(6H,m), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.40-4.70(2H,m), 6.85(1H,s), 7.15-7.25(1H,m), 7.30-7.50(8H,m), 7.60-7.70(5H,m), 7.90-8.00(1H,m), 9.38(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 823(M+H)⁺.

2) The above product (240 mg) was dissolved in pyridine (10 ml), and hydrogen fluoride-pyridine complex (3.0 ml) was added dropwise under ice cooling to stir the mixture at 0° C. for 4.5 hours. Ethyl acetate (80 ml) was added to the reaction mixture under ice cooling to dilute it. The diluted

340

reaction mixture was poured into ice. After sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to this solution to alkalinify it, liquid separation was conducted. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19 \rightarrow 1:9). The resultant crude purified product was dissolved in methylene chloride and methanol, to which 1N ethanol solution (225 μ l) of hydrochloric acid was added to dry it once. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue to solidify it, thereby obtaining the title compound (114 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.50-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-2.10(6H,m), 2.75-2.85(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.10-3.80(8H,m), 4.10-5.10(6H,m), 7.05(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.7 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.30-8.45(2H,m), 11.10-11.40(1H,m), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 585(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 71

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5,5-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4,4-dimethoxycyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 118 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ : 2.11-2.15(1H,m), 2.21-2.25(1H,m), 2.41-2.43(1H,m), 2.46(3H,s), 2.70-2.75(1H,m), 2.81-2.88(1H,m), 3.21(3H,s), 3.24(3H,s), 3.49(1H,s), 3.58(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 3.71(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 3.87-3.93(1H,m), 4.26-4.29(1H,m), 6.85(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.62(1H,s), 9.21(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 72

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-oxocyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-oxocyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

The compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 71 was dissolved in chloroform (2 ml), and trifluoroacetic acid (0.5 ml) and water (0.5 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 3.5 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=19:1). The thus-obtained white solids were dissolved in methanol (4 ml), to which a 1N ethanol solution (0.38 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (35 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.83-1.90(1H,m), 2.08-2.10(1H,m), 2.28-2.32(1H,m), 2.50-2.59(1H,m), 2.87(3H,s), 2.96(1H,t,J=13.0 Hz), 3.06-3.10(2H,m), 3.33-3.36(3H,m), 4.02-

341

4.04(2H,m), 4.55-4.57(2H,m), 7.03(1H,s), 7.15(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.43(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.91(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.75(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 73

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(hydroxyimino)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-(hydroxyimino)-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

The compound (133 mg) obtained in Example 72 was dissolved in a mixed solvent of pyridine (8 ml) and methanol (8 ml), and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (30 mg) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 3 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=97:3→17:3) to obtain the title compound (131 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.43-1.86(3H,m), 1.98-2.03(1H,m), 2.26-2.30(1H,m), 2.45(3H,s), 2.47-2.51(1H,m), 2.67-2.71(1H,m), 2.78-2.86(3H,m), 3.86-3.43(2H,m), 4.16-4.24(2H,m), 6.85(1H,s), 7.16-7.13(1H,m), 7.20-7.24(1H,m), 7.46, 7.50(total 1H,s), 7.56-7.64(2H,m), 9.59,9.62(total 1H,s).

EXAMPLE 74

N-((7R*,8S*)-8-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-1,4-dioxaspiro[4.5]dec-7-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-((7R*,8S*)-7-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-1,4-dioxaspiro-[4.5]dec-8-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 120 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.69-1.87(6H,m), 2.14-2.17(1H,m), 2.30-2.32(1H,m), 2.47(3H,s), 2.70-2.75(1H,m), 2.81-2.89(2H,m), 3.58(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.72(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.89-3.91(1H,m), 3.99(4H,s), 4.37-4.40(1H,m), 6.86(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.15(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 75

N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(methoxyimino)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-(methoxyimino)-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide

1) The compound (2.21 g) obtained in Referential Example 124 was dissolved in methylene chloride (30 ml), and trifluoroacetic acid (6 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated, dried with a vacuum pump and then dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), to which 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (500 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (593 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (473 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (2.8 ml) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 hours. Additionally, 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid (242 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (237 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (189 mg) were added to stir the mixture for 4 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate and with a mixed solvent of ethyl acetate and tetrahydrofuran. The resultant organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=97:3→4:1) to obtain N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-5-(methoxyimino)cyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (368 mg) and N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-4-(methoxyimino)-cyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (300 mg).

2) The title compound (mixture of syn and anti isomers at the methoxyimino group) from one of the above-obtained N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-5-(methoxyimino)-cyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide or N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-amino-4-(methoxyimino)cyclohexyl]-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.84-2.00(3H,m), 2.26-2.56(3H,m), 2.46(3H,s), 2.80-2.83(4H,m), 3.57(1H,q,J=15.4 Hz), 3.70(1H,q,J=15.4 Hz), 3.84,3.85(total 3H,s), 4.08-4.14(1H,m), 4.26-4.30(1H,m), 6.84(1H,s), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.27(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.46-7.48(2H,m), 7.56(1H,m), 9.42,9.55(total 1H,s).

EXAMPLE 76

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-5-hydroxycyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) or N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-4-hydroxycyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A)

1) N-((1R*,2S*)-2-amino-4-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]cyclohexyl)-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) and N-((1R*,2S*)-2-amino-5-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]cyclohexyl)-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) were obtained by subjecting the ((1R*,2S*)-form obtained in Referential Example 125 to de(tert-butoxycarbonylation) in the same manner as in the step 1) of Example 75 and reacting the formed product with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid.

2) N-((1R*,2S*)-5-[[tert-Butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) or N-((1R*,2S*)-4-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A) was obtained from the product obtained by the above reaction and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.06(9H,s), 1.55-1.61(1H,m), 1.85-1.90(1H,m), 2.18-2.25(1H,m), 2.46(3H,s), 2.51(2H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 2.72(1H,m), 3.56(1H,s), 3.57(1H,d,J=15.3 Hz), 3.72(1H,d,J=15.3 Hz), 3.71-3.81(1H,m), 3.88-3.95(1H,m), 6.78

343

(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=2.0, 8.8 Hz), 7.37-7.44(7H,m), 7.59 (1H,s), 7.65-7.68(6H,m), 9.30(1H,s).

3) The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained by the above-described reaction in the same manner as in the step 3) of Example 28.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25-1.30(2H,m), 1.45-1.64(2H,m), 1.86(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 1.98-2.03(1H,m), 2.66-2.73(3H,s), 2.69(2H,m), 2.75-2.79(2H,m), 3.54(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 3.62(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 3.96-4.02(2H,m), 4.78(1H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 7.00(1H,s), 7.14(1H,dd,J=2.0, 8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.66(1H,s), 8.20(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.54(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.69(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 77

N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-hydroxy-5-methylcyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A¹) or N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-hydroxy-4-methylcyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer A²)

The title compounds were obtained by reacting the compound obtained in Referential Example 128 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

Stereoisomer A¹:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.24(3H,s), 1.33-1.82(4H,m), 2.34(3H,s), 2.67-3.64(8H,m), 4.02-4.10(2H,m), 4.67(1H,br.s), 7.02(1H,s), 7.13(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.66(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.21-8.26(1H,br), 8.59(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.73(1H,br.s)

MS (FAB) m/z: 502(M+H)⁺.

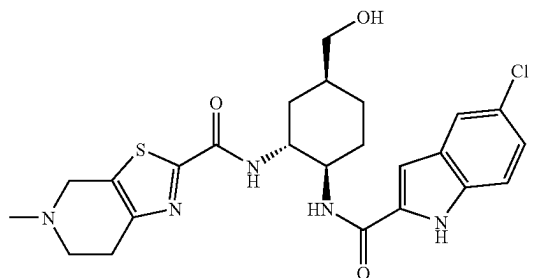
Stereoisomer A²:

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25(3H,s), 1.33-1.79(4H,m), 2.33(3H,s), 2.65-3.63(8H,m), 3.88-3.94(1H,m), 4.20-4.25(1H,m), 4.59(1H,br), 7.01(1H,s), 7.13(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.67(1H,s), 8.29(1H,br), 8.43(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 11.67(1H,br)

MS (FAB) m/z: 502(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 78

N-[(1R*,2R*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(hydroxymethyl)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 129 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 49.

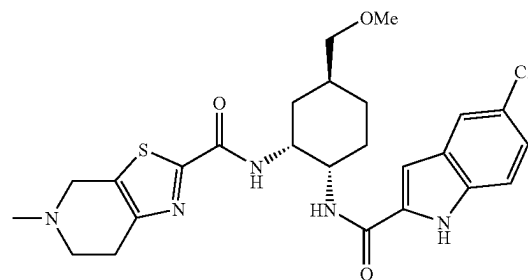
344

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.90(5H,m), 2.07-2.26(3H,m), 2.46(3H,s), 2.67-2.95(4H,m), 3.55-3.80(4H,m), 3.80-3.95(1H,m), 4.13-4.25(1H,m), 6.84(1H,br.s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.23-7.35(2H,m), 7.43(1H,d,J=7.2 Hz), 7.58 (1H,br.s), 9.29(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 502(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 79

N-[(1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-(methoxymethyl)cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

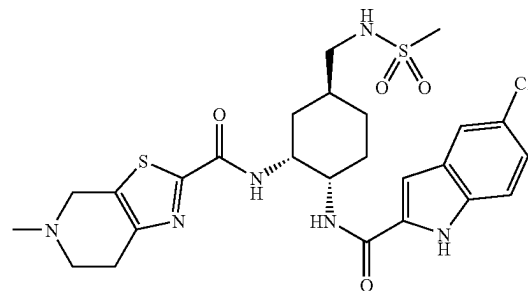


The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 135 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 49.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20-1.38(1H,m), 1.50-1.67(2H,m), 1.88-2.03(2H,m), 2.03-2.14(1H,m), 2.21-2.32(1H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.75-2.95(2H,m), 3.20-3.35(2H,m), 3.37(3H,s), 3.73(1H,d,J=16.0 Hz), 3.76(1H,d,J=16.0 Hz), 4.04-4.13(1H,m), 4.53-4.62(1H,m), 6.85(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.54(1H,d,J=7.2 Hz), 7.63(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.07(1H,d,J=5.6 Hz), 9.49(1H,br.s).

EXAMPLE 80

N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[[[(methylsulfonyl)amino]methyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



1) The compound (437 mg) obtained in Referential Example 137 was dissolved in ethanol (5 ml), and a 4N dioxane solution (5 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 13 hours. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), to which triethylamine (0.7 ml), the compound (300 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (162 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (230 mg) were added. The mixture was stirred

345

for 13 hours, and water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with chloroform. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=97:3) to obtain N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-5-(azidomethyl)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (330 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.15-2.08(7H,m), 2.33(3H,s), 2.34-2.95(6H,m), 3.64(2H,s), 4.05-4.17(1H,m), 4.36-4.47(1H,m), 7.02(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.02(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.44(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.8(1H,s).

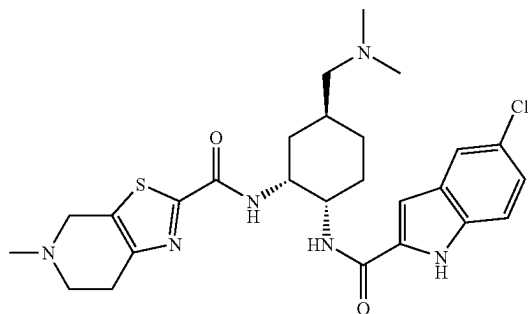
2) The compound (300 mg) obtained by the above reaction was dissolved in ethanol (8 ml), and a catalytic amount of 10% palladium on carbon was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 168 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. Insoluble matter was filtered, and the solvent was distilled off. The thus-obtained crude N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-5-(aminomethyl)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (150 mg) was dissolved in chloroform (6 ml), and triethylamine (0.2 ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (0.035 ml) were added to stir the mixture for 13 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and water was added to the residue to conduct extraction with chloroform. The resultant organic layer was washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (56 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.18-1.34(2H,m), 1.50-1.75(4H,m), 1.90-2.30(4H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.78-2.90(2H,m), 2.90-3.05(6H,m), 3.20-3.30(1H,m), 3.68-3.81(2H,m), 3.98-4.08(1H,m), 4.54-4.62(1H,m), 6.10-6.19(1H,m), 6.86(1H,s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.52(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.21(1H,d,J=5.6 Hz), 9.89(1H,s)

MS (ESI) m/z: 579(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 81

N-((1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-5-[[dimethylamino)methyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide trifluoroacetate



346

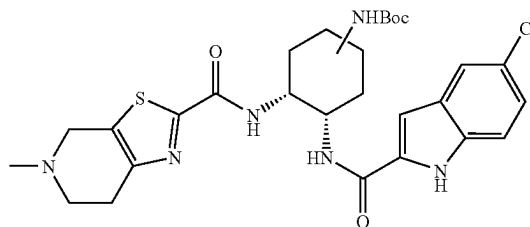
The title compound was obtained from the amine obtained in the step 2) of Example 80 in a similar manner to Example 24.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.15-2.22(7H,m), 2.40-2.65(2H,m), 2.68-2.85(6H,m), 2.92-3.08(5H,m), 3.10-3.18(2H,m), 4.08-4.20(1H,m), 4.35-4.51(2H,m), 7.04(1H,s), 7.14-7.20(1H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,s), 8.25-8.42(2H,m), 9.11(1H,br.s), 9.89(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 529(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 82

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexylcarbamate (Isomer B) and tert-butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-4-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexylcarbamate (Isomer B)



The compound (Stereoisomer B) (1.79 g) obtained in Referential Example 140 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (36 ml), and 10% palladium on carbon (0.40 g) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. After the catalyst was removed by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (36 ml), to which p-nitrophenyl 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylate (2.02 g) was added to stir the mixture for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and ethyl acetate and water were added to the residue to collect insoluble matter by filtration. The product was washed with ethyl acetate to obtain crude tert-butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexylcarbamate (or (3R*,4S*)-4-amino-3-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexylcarbamate) (Isomer B1) (1.49 g). The organic layer of the filtrate was washed with water and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=30:1→10:1) to obtain tert-butyl (3R*,4S*)-4-amino-3-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexylcarbamate (or tert-butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-amino-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}cyclohexylcarbamate) (Isomer B2) (0.37 g).

One of the title compounds was obtained from the Isomer B1 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25-1.50(1H,m), 1.37(9H,s), 1.50-1.65(1H,m), 1.75-2.20(4H,m), 2.37(3H,s), 2.70-3.00(4H,m), 3.60-3.80(3H,m), 4.13(1H,br.s), 4.43(1H,br.s), 6.92(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 7.05(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.2 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.15(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.37(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 587(M+H)⁺.

347

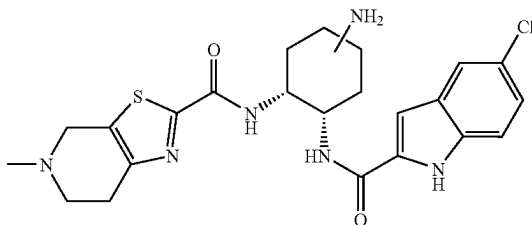
The other title compound was obtained from the Isomer B2 in the same manner.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.15-1.30(1H,m), 1.35(9H,s), 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.75(1H,m), 1.85-1.95(1H,m), 2.05-2.20(2H,m), 2.34(3H,s), 2.65-2.85(4H,m), 3.55-3.70(3H,m), 4.05-4.14(1H,m), 4.40(1H,br.s), 6.80(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 7.15-7.25(2H,m), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.73(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 8.51(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 587(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 83

N-((1R*,2S*)-5-Amino-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (or N-((1R*,2S*)-4-amino-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide) hydrochloride (Stereoisomer B)



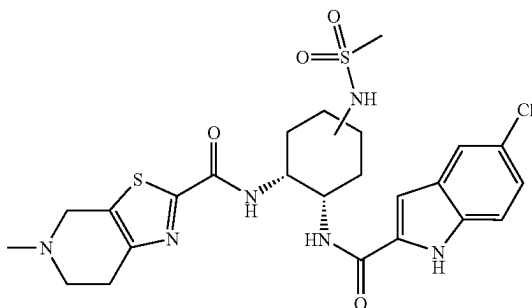
The compound (Stereoisomer B) (1.11 g) synthesized from Isomer B1 in Example 82 was suspended in methylene chloride (20 ml), and an ethanol solution (20 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by gel filtration (Sephadex LH-20, methanol) to obtain the title compound (1.05 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.55-1.65(1H,m), 1.75-1.90(2H,m), 1.95-2.20(2H,m), 2.20-2.40(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.10-3.20(1H,m), 3.20-3.50(3H,m), 3.65-3.75(1H,m), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 4.55-4.65(1H,m), 4.65-4.75(1H,m), 7.07(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.05-8.30(3H,br), 8.40-8.50(2H,m), 11.70-11.90(2H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 487(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 84

N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-5-[(methylsulfonyl)amino]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-4-[(methylsulfonyl)amino]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer B)



348

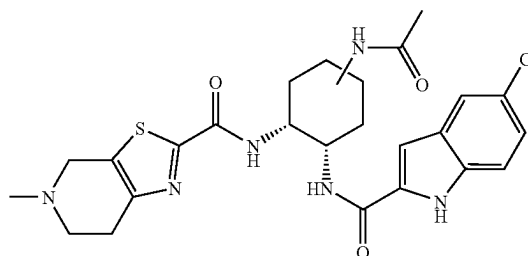
The compound (0.20 g) obtained in Example 83 was suspended in methylene chloride (7 ml), and triethylamine (0.16 ml) and methanesulfonyl chloride (28 μl) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours. After the reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, it was washed with an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=30:1→15:1) to obtain the title compound (67.9 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.65-1.85(2H,m), 1.90-2.05(2H,m), 2.15-2.25(1H,m), 2.41(3H,s), 2.75-2.95(4H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.55-3.80(3H,m), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.15-7.20(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.27(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.33(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.77(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 565 (M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 85

N-((1R*,2S*)-5-(Acetylamino)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide or N-((1R*,2S*)-4-(acetylamino)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (Stereoisomer B)



The compound (Stereoisomer B) (0.20 g) obtained in Example 83 was suspended in methylene chloride (7 ml), and triethylamine (0.16 ml) and acetic anhydride (34 μl) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours. Methylene chloride and an aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide were added to the reaction mixture to separate insoluble matter by filtration. The organic layer of the filtrate was separated and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=15:1→10:1) to obtain the title compound (0.12 g).

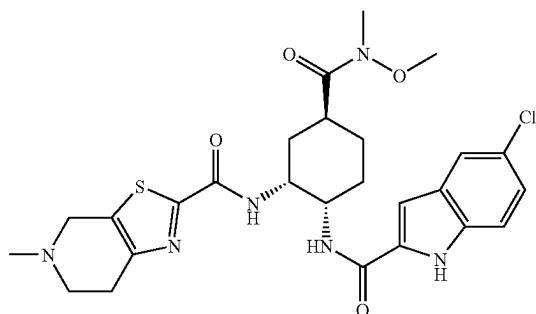
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(1H,m), 1.55-1.70(1H,m), 1.80(3H,s), 1.80-2.05(3H,m), 2.05-2.20(1H,m), 2.47(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(4H,m), 3.75-4.00(3H,m), 4.15-4.30(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 7.07(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 7.89(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.24(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.31(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.77(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 528(M+H)⁺.

349

EXAMPLE 86

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[[methoxy(methyl)amino]carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



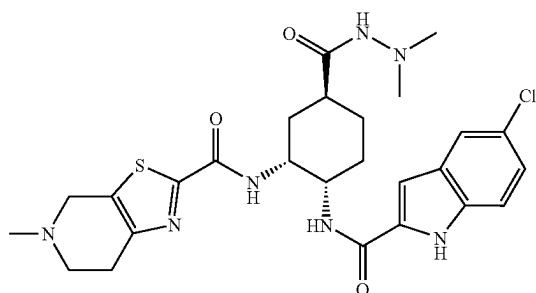
The compound (250 mg) obtained in Example 58 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine hydrochloride (142 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (111 mg), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (89 mg) and N-methylmorpholine (213 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 19 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen-carbonate was added to the residue to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. After the resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3→23:2) to obtain a colorless amorphous solid (179 mg). This product was dissolved in methanol-tetrahydrofuran, and 1N ethanol solution (960 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to obtain the title compound.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.57-1.91(4H,m), 1.96-2.00(1H,m), 2.10-2.21(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.93-3.03(2H,m), 3.08(3H,s), 3.10-3.28(2H,m), 4.16-4.19(1H,m), 4.50-4.52(1H,m), 4.69(1H,br.s), 7.06(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.5 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.33(1H,br.s), 8.41(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.81(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 559(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 87

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(2,2-dimethylhydrazino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



350

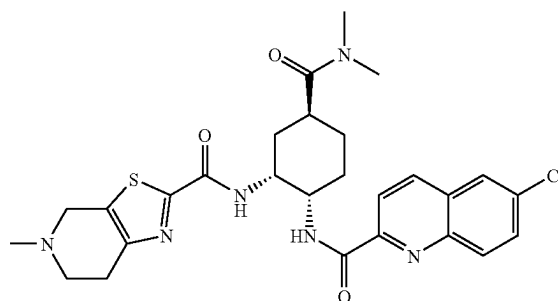
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 58 and N,N-dimethylhydrazine in a similar manner to Example 57.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.49-1.54(1H,m), 1.76-1.81(2H,m), 1.89-1.93(2H,m), 2.07-2.17(1H,m), 2.33-3.60(14H,m), 4.15-4.19(1H,m), 4.40-4.47(2H,m), 4.70-4.72(1H,m), 7.04(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.17-8.22(1H,m), 8.41-8.43(1H,m), 11.80(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 558(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 88

6-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-2-quinolinecarboxamide hydrochloride



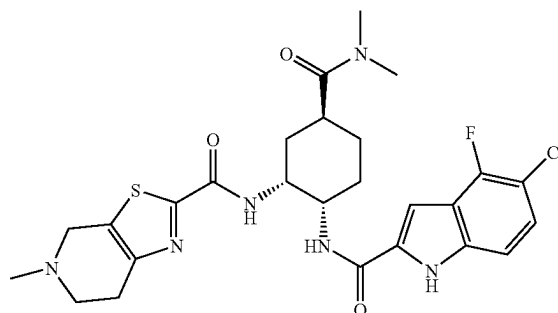
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 145 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to Example 49 and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.75-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.00(1H,m), 2.00-2.20(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.10-3.30(5H,m), 3.56(1H,br), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.40-4.70(2H,m), 7.88(2H,s), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.22(1H,s), 8.52(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.72(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.89(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 555(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 89

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloro-4-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 144 with the

351

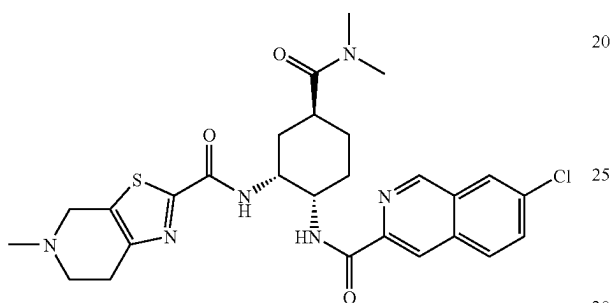
compound obtained in Referential Example 274 in a similar manner to Referential Example 91 and treating the resultant compound with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid and then with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.24-1.98(6H,m), 2.33-3.33(6H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 4.12(1H,br.s), 4.30-4.70(1H,m), 4.60(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,s), 7.27(2H,br.s), 8.37(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.43(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 12.11(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 90

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]isoquinoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



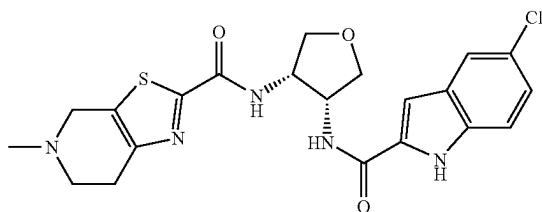
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 146 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to Example 49 and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.65(1H,m), 1.70-1.85(3H,m), 1.95-2.10(1H,m), 2.10-2.20(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 2.95-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.40(3H,m), 3.70-3.80(1H,m), 4.20-4.30(1H,m), 4.40-4.60(2H,m), 4.65-4.80(1H,m), 7.83-7.93(1H,m), 8.26(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.38(1H,s), 8.60(1H,s), 8.85-9.00(2H,m), 9.30-9.40(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 555(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 91

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (0.1 g) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (78 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.2 g) were successively added to a solution of the compound (0.12 g) obtained in Referential Example 172 in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and the mixture was

352

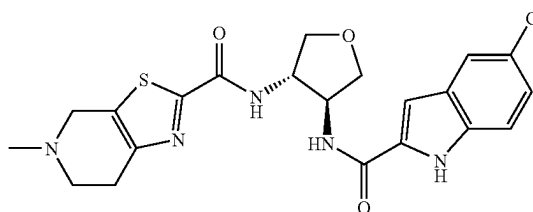
stirred at room temperature for 1 day. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was diluted with chloroform-methanol (9:1) and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=95:5) to obtain a free base of the title compound. This product was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound (0.1 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.50(3H,s), 2.70-2.90(4H,m), 3.67(1H,s), 3.70(1H,s), 3.86(1H,dd,J=9.2, 6.3 Hz), 3.97(1H,dd,J=9.7, 4.1 Hz), 4.15(1H,dd,J=9.7, 5.8 Hz), 4.24(1H,dd,J=9.2, 7.0 Hz), 4.75-4.89(1H,m), 4.92-5.03(1H,m), 6.88(1H,s), 7.20(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.35-7.43(1H,m), 7.58(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.64(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 9.38(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 460(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 92

N-((3S,4S)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



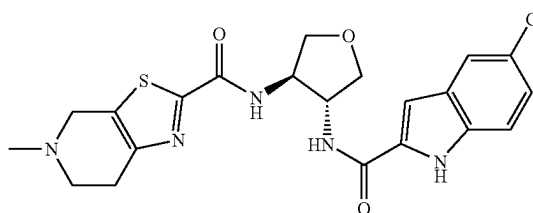
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 183 in accordance with the processes of Referential Example 172 and Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.51(3H,s), 2.83(2H,t,J=5.3 Hz), 2.93(2H,t,J=5.3 Hz), 3.72(2H,s), 3.78-3.89(2H,m), 4.31(1H,dd,J=9.2, 7.3 Hz), 4.41-4.56(2H,m), 4.63-4.75(1H,m), 6.88(1H,s), 7.22(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.35-7.46(1H,m), 7.55(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 7.60(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.38(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 460(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 93

N-((3R,4R)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



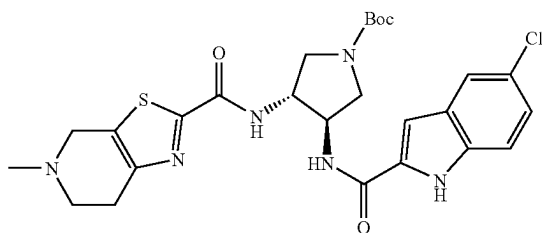
353

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 187 in accordance with the processes of Referential Example 172 and Example 91.

¹H-NMR and MS (FAB): The same as those of the enantiomer in Example 92.

EXAMPLE 94

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 193 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in accordance with the process of Example 91.

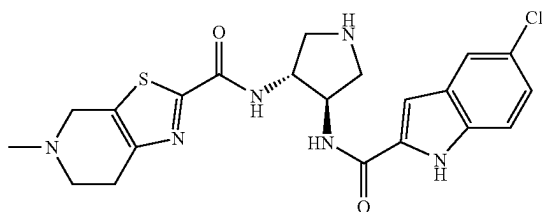
Melting point: 190-192° C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.45(9H,s), 2.46(3H,s), 2.74-2.81(4H,m), 3.24-3.37(2H,m), 3.54-3.70(2H,m), 3.96-4.00(1H,m), 4.15-4.23(1H,m), 4.50-4.65(1H,m), 4.77-4.82(1H,m), 6.79,6.87(total 1H,each s), 7.12-7.95(5H,m), 9.91,9.97(total 1H,each s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 559(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 95

N-((3R,4R)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-pyrrolidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride:



The compound (170 mg) obtained in Example 94 was dissolved in methylene chloride (3 ml), and trifluoroacetic acid (2 ml) was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 1 hour. After concentrating the reaction mixture, chloroform and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol:water=7:3:1 under layer). A methanol solution of hydrochloric acid was added

354

to the resultant intended product to obtain the title compound (90 mg) as a hydrochloride (NMR was measured in the form of a free base).

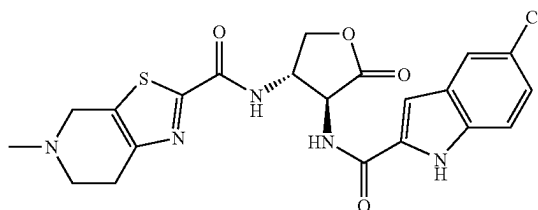
Melting point: 248-250° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.44(3H,s), 2.70-2.80(4H,m), 2.97-3.05(2H,m), 3.46-3.68(4H,m), 4.49-4.52(1H,m), 4.60-4.65(1H,m), 6.86(1H,s), 7.05-7.08(1H,m), 7.20(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.44(1H,s), 7.89(2H,br), 10.51(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 459(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 96

N-((3S,4S)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-oxotetrahydrofuran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



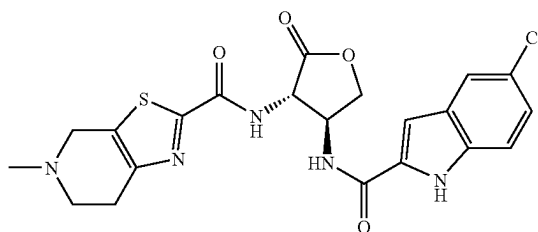
The title compound was obtained by removing the tert-butoxycarbonyl group of the compound obtained in Referential Example 196 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69 and reacting the resultant product with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.90(3H,s), 3.02-3.17(2H,m), 3.23-3.34(4H,m), 4.20(1H,t,J=8.6 Hz), 4.61(1H,t,J=8.6 Hz), 4.92-5.01(1H,m), 5.14-5.26(1H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.73(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 9.27(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.35(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 11.22-11.33(1H,m), 11.89(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 474(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 97

N-((3S,4S)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-2-oxotetrahydrofuran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by removing the tert-butoxycarbonyl group of the compound obtained in Referential Example 197 in a similar manner to Referential Example 69 and reacting the resultant product with 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91.

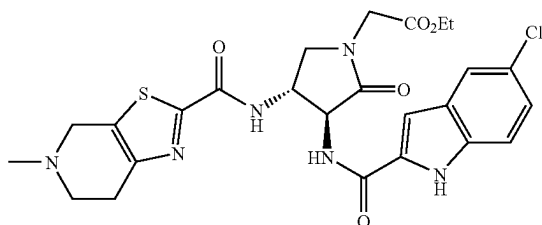
355

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.52(3H,s), 2.83(2H,t,J=5.9 Hz), 2.91-3.00(2H,m), 3.73(2H,s), 4.23(1H,t,J=8.6 Hz), 4.40-4.53(1H,m), 4.96(1H,dd,J=10.8, 5.2 Hz), 5.16(1H,dd,J=9.2, 7.3 Hz), 7.01(1H,s), 7.25(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.34(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.52(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.01(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 8.51-8.63(1H,m), 9.22(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 474(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 98

Ethyl (3S,4R)-2-(3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-2-oxopyrrolidin-1-yl]acetate hydrochloride



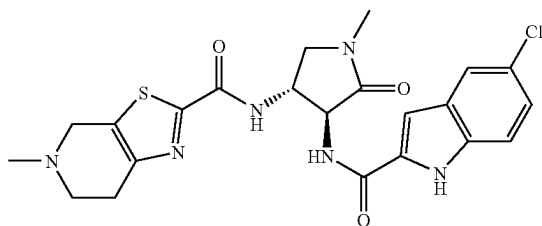
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 199 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91. NMR was measured in the form of a free base.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.19(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 2.35(3H,s), 2.71-2.84(2H,m), 2.80-2.90(2H,m), 3.40(1H,d,J=10.3 Hz), 3.61(2H,d,J=10.8 Hz), 3.84(1H,dd,J=10.3, 5.6 Hz), 4.01-4.23(4H,m), 4.80-4.94(1H,m), 5.04(1H,t,J=8.6 Hz), 7.01(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.73(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.90(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 559(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 99

N-((3R,4S)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-methyl-5-oxopyrrolidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 201 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91.

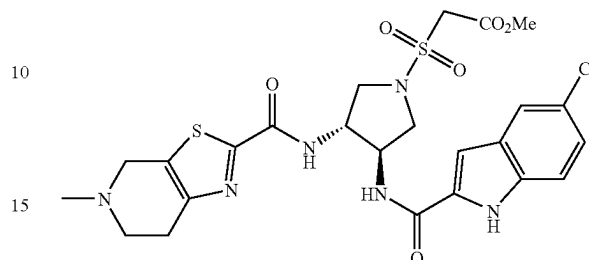
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.49(3H,s), 2.77-2.82(2H,m), 2.86-2.91(5H,m), 3.69(2H,d,J=1.2 Hz), 4.39-4.54(3H,m), 4.93-4.98(1H,m), 6.98(1H,d,J=1.2 Hz), 7.05-7.34(3H,m), 7.63(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.11(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.00(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 487(M+H⁺).

356

EXAMPLE 100

Methyl 2-[[[(3R,4R)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]pyrrolidin-1-yl]sulfonyl]acetate



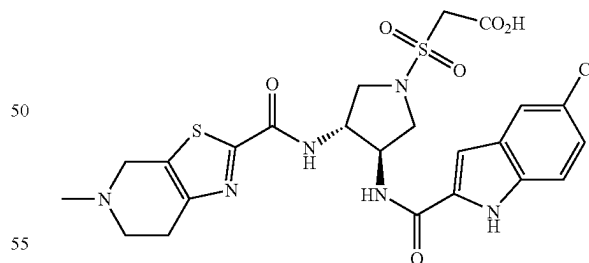
The compound (230 mg) obtained in Example 95 and triethylamine (0.10 ml) were dissolved in methylene chloride (6.9 ml), and the mixture was cooled with ice. Methoxycarbonylmethanesulfonyl chloride (Synthesis, p. 321, 1975) (105 mg) was added, and the resultant mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with chloroform, washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=20:1) and powdered with methanol-water to obtain the title compound (150 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.48(3H,s), 2.76-2.86(4H,m), 3.49-3.73(4H,m), 3.87(3H,s), 3.94-3.98(1H,m), 4.08-4.11(1H,m), 4.13(2H,s), 4.69-4.72(1H,m), 4.88-4.91(1H,m), 6.89(1H,s), 7.12-7.15(1H,m), 7.27-7.28(1H,m), 7.50(1H,s), 7.81-7.86(2H,m), 9.92(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 595(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 101

2-[[[(3R,4R)-3-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]pyrrolidin-1-yl]sulfonyl]acetic acid



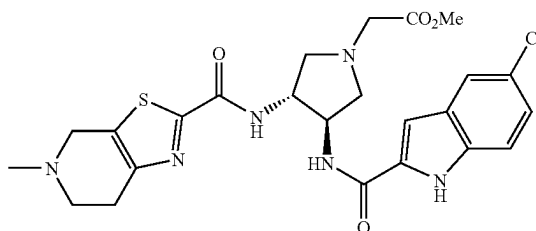
The compound (100 mg) obtained in Example 100 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (4 ml)-water (1 ml), and the mixture was cooled with ice. Lithium hydroxide monohydrate (7.8 mg) was added, and the resultant mixture was heated to room temperature and stirred for 4 hours. After the reaction mixture was neutralized with 1N hydrochloric acid, it was concentrated. Deposits were collected by filtration, washed with water and 50% ethanol and dried overnight at 50° C. under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (87 mg).

357

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.50(3H,s), 2.92(4H,s), 3.34-3.43(4H,m), 3.76-3.85(2H,m), 4.27(each 1H,AB type d,J=14.5 Hz), 4.65-4.71(1H,m), 4.78-4.84(1H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,s), 8.87(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.12(1H,d,J=8.2 Hz), 11.83(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 102

Methyl 2-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-4-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetate



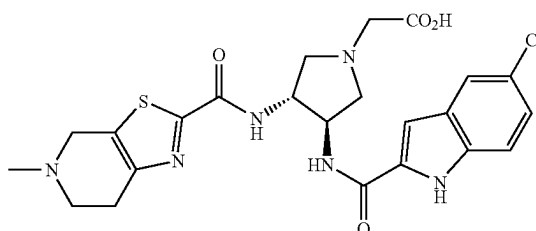
The compound (230 mg) obtained in Example 95 and potassium carbonate (90 mg) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (4.6 ml), and the mixture was cooled with ice. Methyl bromoacetate (0.062 ml) was added, and the resultant mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=10:1) and solidified with methanol-water to obtain the title compound (190 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.35(2H,s), 2.48(3H,s), 2.73-2.95(4H,m), 3.34-3.42(2H,m), 3.46(2H,q,J=6.5 Hz), 3.67(2H,q,J=6.5 Hz), 3.75(3H,s), 4.57-4.71(2H,m), 6.91(1H,s), 7.10-7.13(1H,m), 7.31(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.53(1H,s), 7.77(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.87(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 10.22(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 531(M+H⁺)

EXAMPLE 103

2-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-4-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)acetic acid



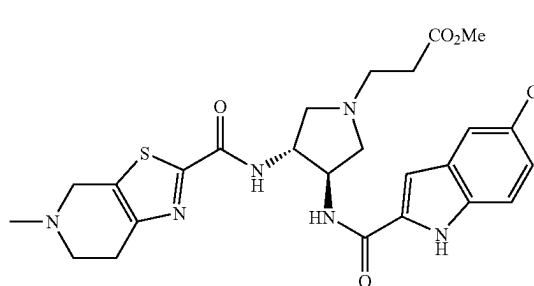
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 102 in a similar manner to Example 101.

358

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.42(3H,s), 2.69-2.87(6H,m), 3.13(1H,t,J=9.0 Hz), 3.22(1H,t,J=9.0 Hz), 3.33(each 1H,AB type d,J=6.8 Hz), 3.72(2H,s), 4.53-4.60(1H,m), 4.65-4.72(1H,m), 7.16-7.20(2H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.85(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 9.00(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.79(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 104

Methyl 3-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-4-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)propionate



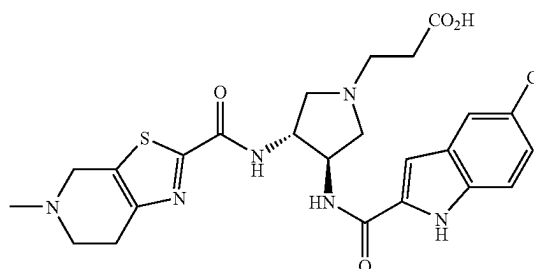
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 95 and methyl 3-bromopropionate in a similar manner to Example 102.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.96-2.20(2H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 2.61-2.96(8H,m), 3.17-3.21(2H,m), 3.62-3.72(2H,m), 3.69(3H,s), 4.46-4.49(1H,m), 4.56-4.61(1H,m), 6.87(1H,s), 7.05-7.14(1H,m), 7.32(1H,d,J=9.2 Hz), 7.53(1H,s), 7.65-7.71(2H,m), 10.02(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 545(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 105

3-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-4-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)propionic acid



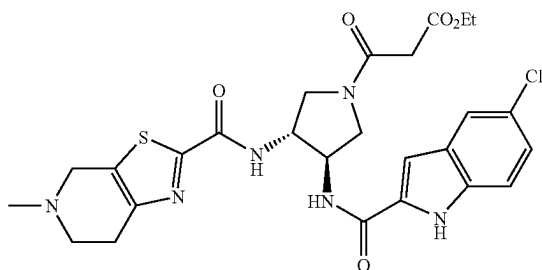
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 104 in a similar manner to Example 101.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.38(3H,s), 2.39-2.84(10H,m), 2.93(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 3.05(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 3.65(2H,s), 4.51-4.56(1H,m), 4.63-4.68(1H,m), 7.16-7.19(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.81(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.97(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.75(1H,s).

359

EXAMPLE 106

Ethyl 3-((3R,4R)-3-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-4-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-oxopropionate

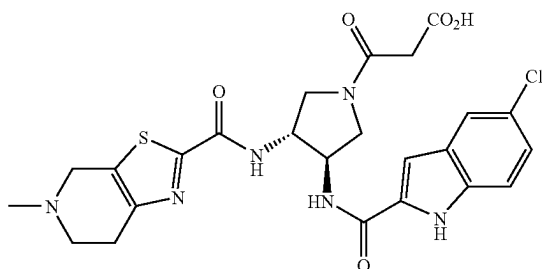


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 95 and ethylmalonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 2.37(3H,s), 2.73-2.75(2H,m), 2.82-2.84(2H,m), 3.35-3.38(2H,m), 3.64(2H,s), 3.68-3.83(2H,m), 3.91-4.00(2H,m), 4.10(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 4.61-4.84(2H,m), 7.13(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.5,2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.72(1H,s), 8.73(1H,t,J=9.0 Hz), 9.10(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 11.79(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 107

3-((3R,4R)-3-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-4-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)-3-oxopropionic acid



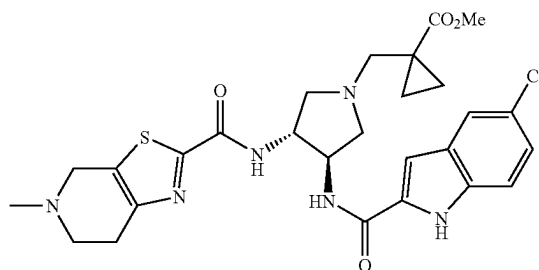
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 106 in a similar manner to Example 101.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.39(3H,s), 2.77(2H,s), 2.85(2H,s), 3.29-3.55(4H,m), 3.68(2H,s), 3.82-4.01(2H,m), 4.62-4.68(1H,m), 4.77-4.86(1H,m), 7.14(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,s), 8.75(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 9.12(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.81(1H,s).

360

EXAMPLE 108

Methyl 1-(((3R,4R)-3-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-4-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)methyl]-cyclopropanecarboxylate



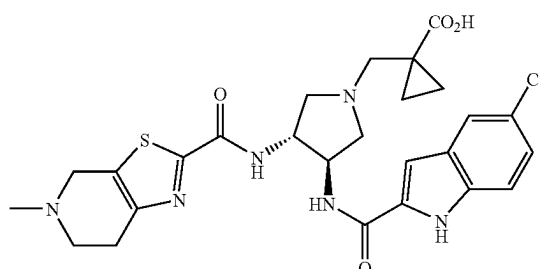
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 95 and methyl 1-(bromomethyl)-cyclopropanecarboxylate in a similar manner to Example 102.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.78-0.79(2H,m), 1.24-1.26(2H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 2.62-2.88(6H,m), 3.20-3.28(2H,m), 3.66(3H,s), 3.61-3.75(4H,m), 4.45-4.62(2H,m), 6.86(1H,s), 7.12-7.15(1H,m), 7.24-7.28(1H,m), 7.52(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.54(1H,s), 7.69(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 10.00(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 571 (M+H⁺)

EXAMPLE 109

1-(((3R,4R)-3-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-4-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)methyl]-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid



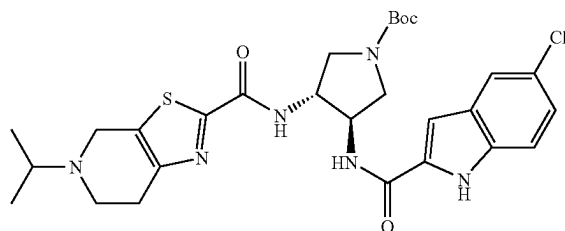
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 108 in a similar manner to Example 101.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.73-0.78(2H,m), 1.04-1.07(2H,m), 2.37(3H,s), 2.65-2.84(6H,m), 3.11-3.20(4H,m), 3.64(2H,s), 4.59-4.74(2H,m), 7.16(1H,s), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.84(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 9.12(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 11.77(1H,s).

361

EXAMPLE 110

tert-Butyl (3R,4R)-3-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-4-{[(5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate

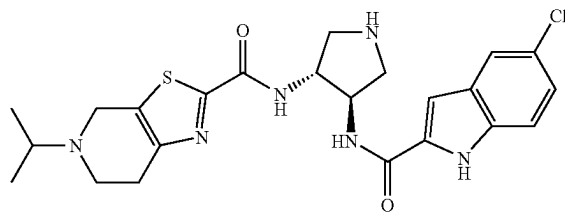


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 193 and Referential Example 148 in a similar manner to Example 91.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.12(6H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 1.47(9H,s), 2.83-2.88(4H,m), 2.94-2.99(1H,m), 3.20-3.29(1H,m), 3.31-3.42(1H,m), 3.75-3.81(2H,m), 3.98(1H,t,J=8.5 Hz), 4.15-4.35(2H,m), 4.50-4.65(1H,m), 6.85,6.91(total 1H,each s), 7.15-7.90(5H,m), 9.41,9.50(total 1H,each s).

EXAMPLE 111

N-((3R,4R)-4-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}pyrrolidin-3-yl)-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



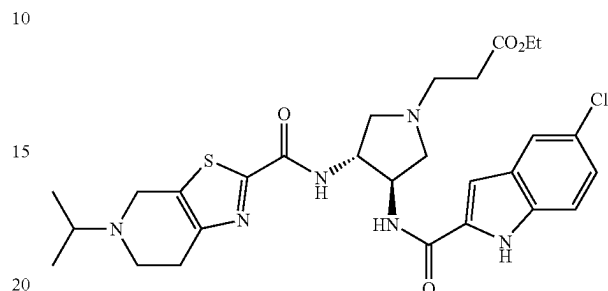
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 110 in a similar manner to Example 95.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.13(6H,d,J=6.3 Hz), 2.85(4H,br.s), 2.96-3.05(3H,m), 4.51-4.52(1H,m), 4.76-4.80(2H,m), 5.36-5.39(2H,m), 5.53-5.58(1H,m), 7.17-7.19(1H,m), 7.27-7.31(2H,m), 7.57(1H,s), 7.64(2H,br), 9.82(1H,br).

362

EXAMPLE 112

Ethyl 3-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-4-{[(5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)propionate



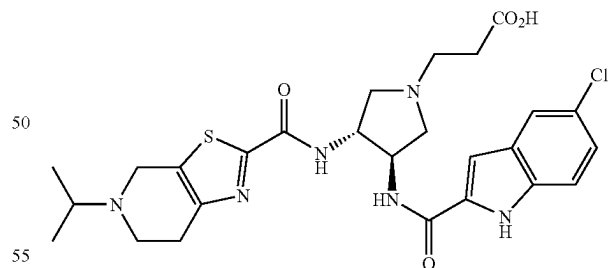
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 111 and ethyl 3-bromopropionate in a similar manner to Example 102.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.14(6H,d,J=6.5 Hz), 1.26(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 2.51(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 2.63(1H,dd,J=9.5, 6.5 Hz), 2.73-2.91(6H,m), 2.95-3.02(1H,m), 3.22(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 3.81(each 1H,AB type d,J=14.5 Hz), 4.16(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 4.40-4.45(1H,m), 4.52-4.59(1H,m), 6.88(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.17-7.19(1H,m), 7.30-7.32(2H,m), 7.59(1H,s), 7.62(1H,s), 9.56(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 587(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 113

3-((3R,4R)-3-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}-4-{[(5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}pyrrolidin-1-yl)propionic acid



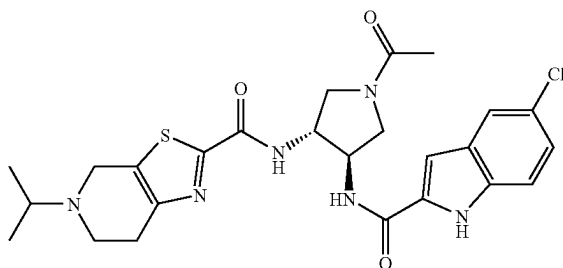
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 112 in a similar manner to Example 101.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.04(6H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 2.40(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 2.50(4H,s), 2.60-2.74(4H,m), 2.90-2.94(2H,m), 3.02-3.06(1H,m), 3.20-3.35(2H,m), 4.50-4.53(1H,m), 4.61-4.65(1H,m), 7.15-7.18(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.78(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 8.90(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 11.73(1H,s).

363

EXAMPLE 114

N-((3R,4R)-1-Acetyl-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]pyrrolidin-3-yl]-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 111 and acetic anhydride in a similar manner to Example 100.

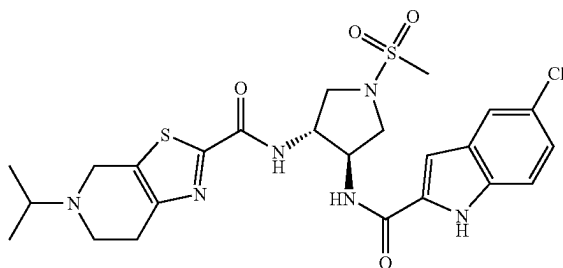
Melting point: 254-258° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.34-1.37(6H,m), 1.96(3H,s), 3.30-3.55(5H,m), 3.66-3.82(3H,m), 3.95(1H,q,J=8.3 Hz), 4.45-4.82(4H,m), 7.15(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.75-8.81(1H,m), 9.21(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 11.32(1H,br), 11.83(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 529(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 115

N-[(3R,4R)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(methylsulfonyl)pyrrolidin-3-yl]-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 111 and methanesulfonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 230-235° C. (decomposed).

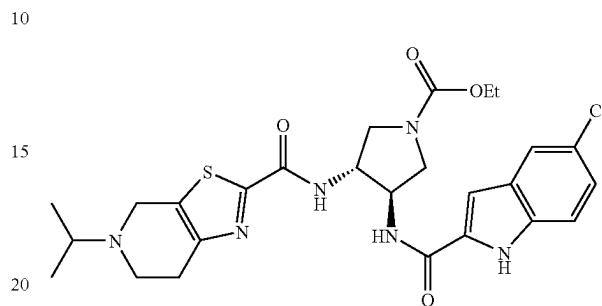
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32-1.36(6H,m), 3.32(3H,s), 3.43-3.46(5H,m), 3.68-3.75(4H,m), 4.48(1H,m), 4.62-4.72(2H,m), 4.83(1H,t,J=5.5 Hz), 7.14(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.72(1H,s), 8.82(1H,br), 9.20(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.30(1H,br), 11.86(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 565(M+H⁺).

364

EXAMPLE 116

Ethyl (3R,4R)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[[(5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 111 and ethyl chloroformate in a similar manner to Example 100.

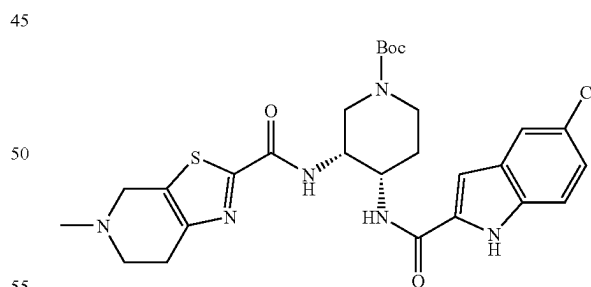
Melting point: 225-228° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20(3H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 1.31-1.37(6H,m), 3.33-3.45(5H,m), 3.66-3.75(4H,m), 4.05(2H,q,J=7.0 Hz), 4.45-4.77(4H,m), 7.15(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.77(1H,d,J=7.0 Hz), 9.20(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 11.30(1H,br), 11.83(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 559(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 117

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 207 and Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91.

Melting point: 152-154° C. (decomposed).

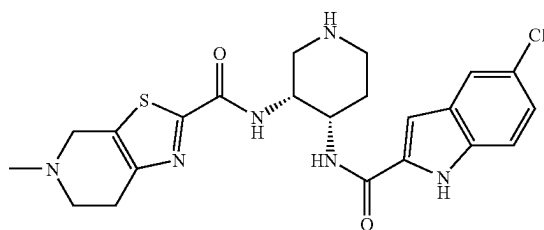
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 1.62-1.80(1H,m), 2.23-2.30(1H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.75-3.05(5H,m), 3.10-3.25(1H,m), 3.68-3.82(2H,m), 4.15-4.45(4H,m), 6.89(1H,s), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.8 Hz), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.92(1H,d,J=1.8 Hz), 7.75(1H,br,s), 8.21(1H,br,s), 9.39(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 573(M+H⁺).

365

EXAMPLE 118

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 117 in a similar manner to Example 95.

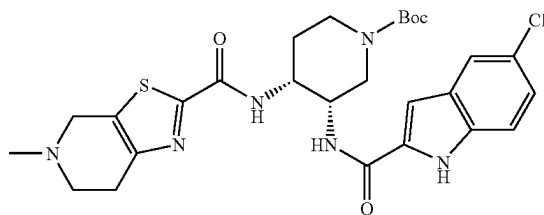
Melting point: 240-258° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.85-2.00(1H,m), 2.05-2.20(2H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.05-3.60(7H,m), 3.65-3.75(1H,m), 4.10-4.52(2H,m), 4.60-4.75(2H,m), 7.10-7.21(2H,m), 7.43(1H,d, J=8.6 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.50(1H,br,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.90-9.05(2H,m), 9.27(1H,br.s), 11.9(1H,br,d,J=13.4 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 473(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 119

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 208 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91.

Melting point: 187-189° C. (decomposed).

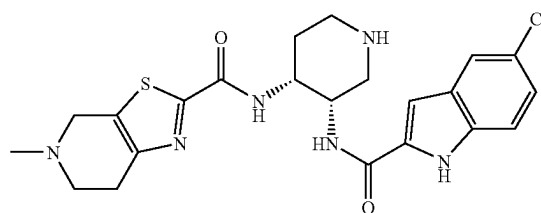
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.48(9H,s), 1.72-1.90(1H,m), 2.00(1H,br.s), 2.00-2.10(1H,m), 2.45(3H,s), 2.60-2.70(2H,m), 2.70-2.80(2H,m), 3.23(1H,t,J=10.8 Hz), 3.35-3.50(1H,m), 3.50-3.72(2H,m), 3.90-4.20(2H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 6.85(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.20-7.30(1H,m), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.58(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 10.17(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 573(M+H)⁺.

366

EXAMPLE 120

N-((3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-piperidin-4-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 119 in a similar manner to Example 95.

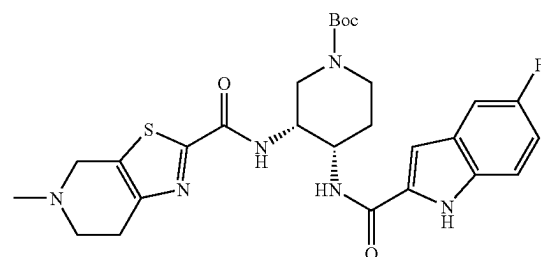
Melting point: 276-278° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.77-1.88(1H,m), 2.40-2.50(2H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 2.90-3.20(4H,m), 3.30-3.50(2H,m), 3.63(1H,br.s), 4.33-4.47(2H,m), 4.62-4.75(2H,m), 7.18(1H,dd, J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.48(1H,br.s), 7.71(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.66(1H,br.s), 8.95(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 9.20-9.30(1H,m), 9.45-9.70(1H,m), 11.61(1H,s), 11.90(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 473(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 121

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 209 and Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91.

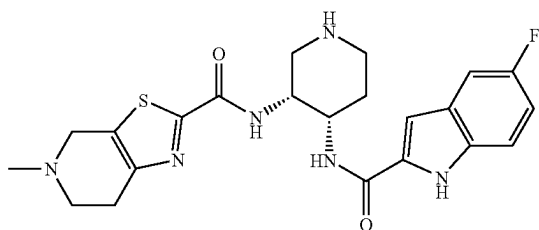
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 1.65-1.78(1H,m), 2.23-2.32(1H,br), 2.52(3H,s), 2.78-3.03(5H,m), 3.15-3.24(1H,br), 3.68-3.82(2H,br), 4.16-4.45(4H,br), 6.91(1H,s), 7.02(1H,td,J=9.0, 2.7 Hz), 7.30(1H,dd,J=9.0, 2.7 Hz), 7.34(1H,dd,J=9.0, 4.4 Hz), 7.65-7.90(1H,br), 8.10-8.40(1H,br), 9.31-9.41(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H)⁺.

367

EXAMPLE 122

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 121 in a similar manner to Example 95.

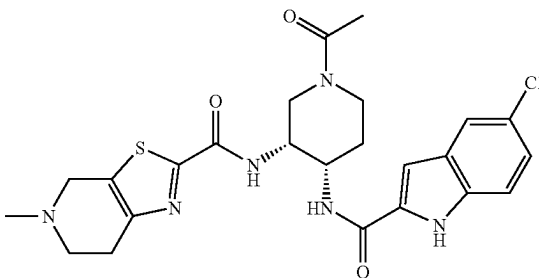
Melting point: 236-245° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.85-1.98(1H,br), 2.06-2.18(1H,br), 2.89(3H,s), 3.05-3.75(8H,s), 4.34-4.54(2H,br), 4.60-4.75(2H,br), 7.04(1H,td,J=9.3, 2.4 Hz), 7.15(1H,br.s), 7.37-7.44(2H,m), 8.46(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.88-9.00(1H,br), 9.09-9.27(2H,br), 11.55-11.75(1H,br), 11.76-11.84(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 457(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 123

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-Acetyl-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and acetic anhydride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 215-225° C. (decomposed).

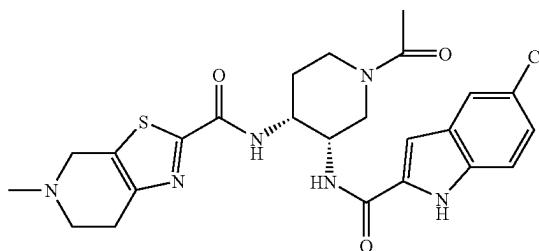
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.85(1H,m), 1.88,2.06(total 3H,each s), 1.90-2.10(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.30(2H,m), 3.30-3.55(2H,m), 3.60-3.90(3H,m), 3.98-4.50(4H,m), 4.65-4.75(1H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz),7.71(1H,s), 8.23-8.53(2H,m), 11.20-11.55(1H,m), 11.85(1H,br,d,J=5.4 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 515(M+H⁺).

368

EXAMPLE 124

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-Acetyl-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]piperidin-4-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 120 and acetic anhydride in a similar manner to Example 100.

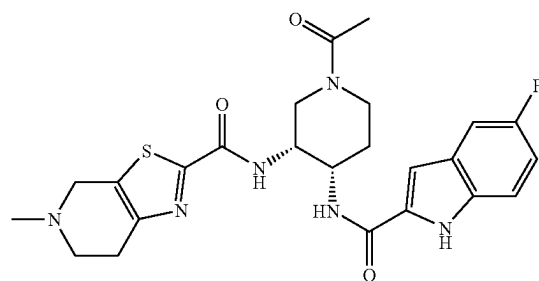
Melting point: 225-250° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.80(1H,m), 1.81,2.05(total 3H,each s), 2.00-2.20(1H,m), 2.70-2.85(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.20-3.50(2H,m), 3.64(1H,br.s), 3.78-4.30(2H,m), 4.30-4.50(3H,m), 4.55-4.75(1H,m), 7.05-7.23(2H,m), 7.38-7.48(1H,m), 7.70-7.80(1H,m), 7.79,8.12(total 1H,each d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.73,8.83(total 1H,each d,J=8.3 Hz), 11.20-11.50(1H,m), 11.89,11.92(total 1H,each s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 515(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 125

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-Acetyl-4-[[[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 122 and acetic anhydride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 202° C. (decomposed).

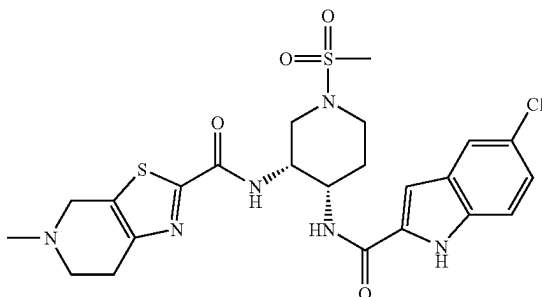
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.67-1.85(1H,m), 1.87(1.5H,s), 1.87-2.10(1H,m), 2.06(1.5H,s), 2.88-2.96(3H,br.s), 3.05-3.30(2H,m), 3.32-3.83(5H,br), 3.97-4.33(2H,m), 4.35-4.50(2H,br), 4.67-4.78(1H,br), 7.01-7.14(2H,m), 7.38-7.44(2H,m), 8.25-8.50(2H,m), 10.85-11.15(1H,br), 11.72-11.80(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 499(M+H⁺).

369

EXAMPLE 126

N-[(3R*,4S*)-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and methanesulfonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

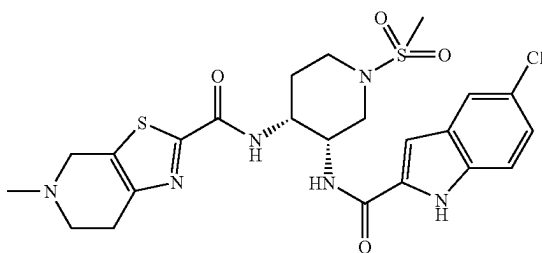
Melting point: 225-230° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.80-1.90(1H,m), 2.05-2.15(1H,m), 2.30-2.80(5H,m), 2.85-3.80(9H,m), 4.20-4.90(4H,m), 7.08(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.7, 1.7 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.77(1H,s), 8.02-8.20(1H,m), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 11.00-11.60(1H,m), 11.87(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 551(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 127

N-[(3R*,4S*)-3-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperidin-4-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 120 and methanesulfonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 228-245° C. (decomposed).

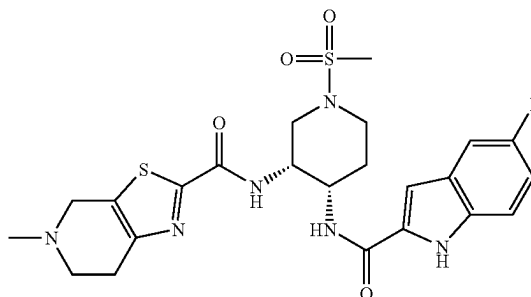
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.75-1.85(1H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 2.40-2.60(2H,m), 2.76(3H,br.s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.93-3.05(3H,m), 3.12(1H,d,J=10.6 Hz), 3.55-3.80(2H,m), 4.25-4.40(4H,m), 7.17(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.19(1H,dd,J=8.7, 2.0 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.74(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.03(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 8.78(1H,d,J=7.4 Hz), 10.90-11.20(1H,br.s), 11.89(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 551(M+H⁺).

370

EXAMPLE 128

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-{[(5-Fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(methylsulfonyl)piperazin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 122 and methanesulfonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

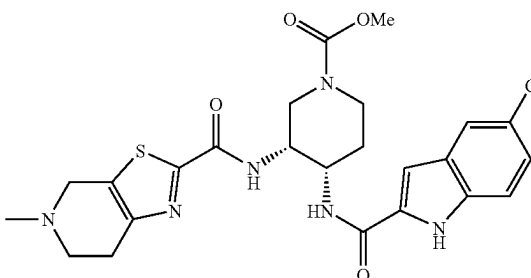
Melting point: 216-250° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.80-1.90(1H,m), 2.01-2.12(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.00-3.80(8H,m), 4.28-4.53(3H,m), 4.60-4.80(1H,br), 7.01-7.12(2H,m), 7.37-7.44(2H,m), 8.00-8.18(1H,br), 8.39-8.50(1H,br), 11.00-11.60(1H,br), 11.72-11.80(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 535(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 129

Methyl (3R*,4S*)-4-{[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-3-{[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}piperidine-1-carboxylate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and methyl chloroformate in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 248-253° C. (decomposed).

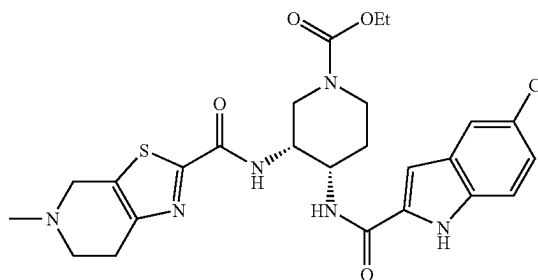
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.78(1H,m), 1.88-2.03(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.80(9H,m), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 3.95-4.08(1H,m), 4.20-4.70(4H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.8 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=1.8 Hz), 8.29(1H,br.s), 8.41(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.29(1H,br.s), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 531(M+H⁺).

371

EXAMPLE 130

Ethyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and ethyl chloroformate in a similar manner to Example 100.

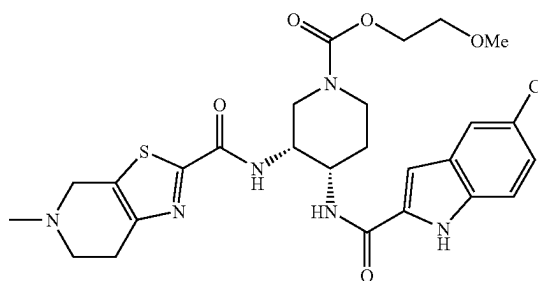
Melting point: 215-225° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.85-1.30(3H,m), 1.65-1.78(1H,m), 1.90-2.03(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.10-3.40(4H,m), 3.48(1H,br.s), 3.65(1H,br.s), 3.75-4.15(4H,m), 4.25(1H,br.s), 4.32-4.50(2H,m), 4.66(1H,br.s), 7.09(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.23(1H,br.s), 8.45(1H,br.d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.50(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 545(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 131

2-Methoxyethyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and 2-methoxyethyl chloroformate in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 224-226° C. (decomposed).

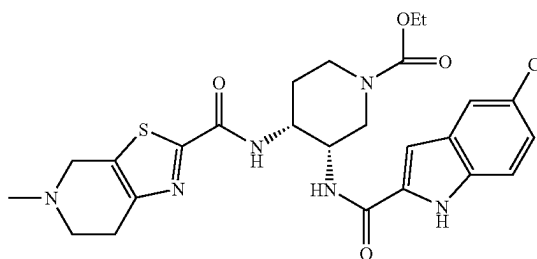
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.68-1.78(1H,m), 1.90-2.03(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-3.75(11H,m), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 3.95-4.18(3H,m), 4.20-4.70(4H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.26(1H,br.s), 8.42(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.30(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 575(M+H⁺).

372

EXAMPLE 132

Ethyl (3R*,4S*)-3-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidine-1-carboxylate hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 120 and ethyl chloroformate in a similar manner to Example 100.

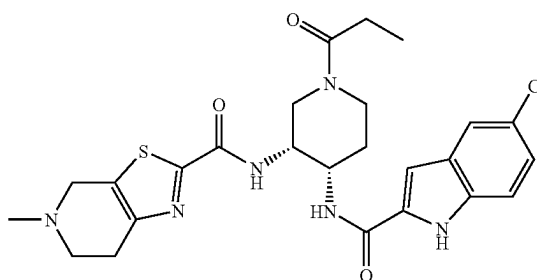
Melting point: 213-225° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.75-1.30(3H,m), 1.60-1.72(1H,m), 2.12-2.25(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 2.95-3.20(4H,m), 3.40-3.88(4H,m), 3.90-4.10(2H,m), 4.10-4.30(2H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 4.40-4.80(1H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.74(1H,s), 8.03(1H,d,J=5.6 Hz), 8.79(1H,s), 11.37(1H,s), 11.88(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 545(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 133

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-propionylpiperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and propionyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 214-228° C. (decomposed).

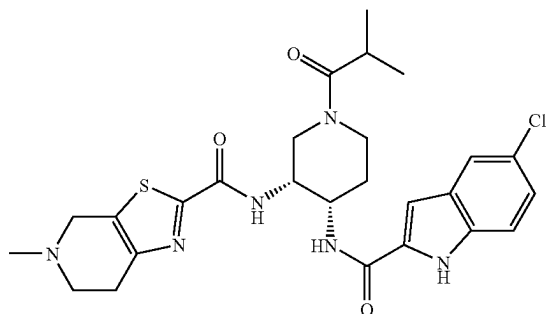
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.88-1.10(3H,m), 1.70-2.05(2H,m), 2.06-2.60(2H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.14(2H,br.s), 3.20-3.90(5H,m), 3.95-4.80(5H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=11.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd, J=8.8, 1.2 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.20-8.50(2H,m), 11.00-11.40(1H,m), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 529(M+H⁺).

373

EXAMPLE 134

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1-isobutyrylpiperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and isobutyryl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

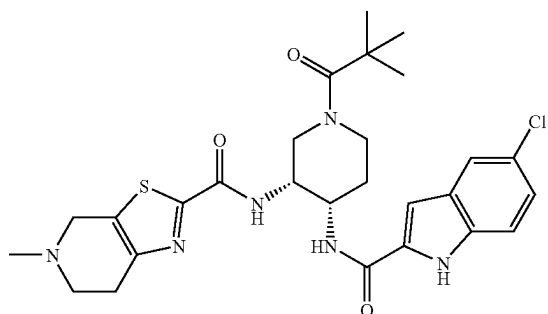
Melting point: 266-272° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.80-1.15(6H,m), 1.70-2.05(2H,m), 2.65-2.80(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 2.90-4.80(12H,m), 7.09 (1H,d,J=11.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.00-8.30(1H,m), 8.30-8.50(1H,m), 10.95-11.50(1H,m), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 543(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 135

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1-(2,2-dimethylpropanoyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and pivaloyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 250-255° C. (decomposed).

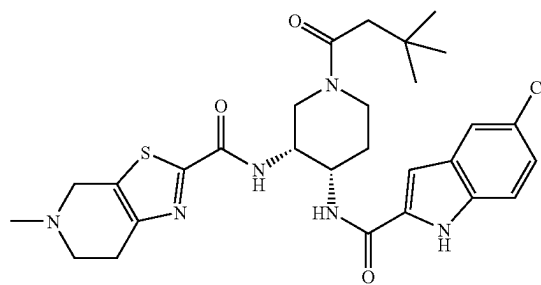
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.20(9H,s), 1.70-1.81(1H,m), 1.90-2.00(1H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.10(2H,br,s), 3.20-3.70(4H,m), 3.95-4.08(1H,m), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.25-4.35(1H,m), 4.35-4.80(3H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.06(1H,br,s), 8.38(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.31(1H,br,s), 11.84(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H⁺).

374

EXAMPLE 136

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1-(3,3-dimethylbutanoyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and tert-butylacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

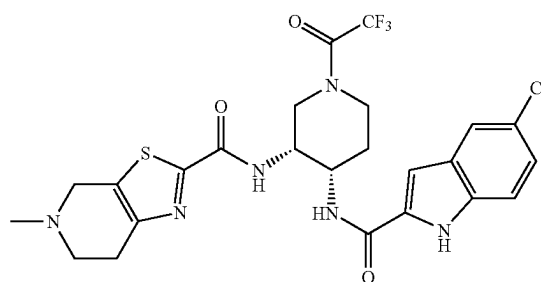
Melting point: 260-265° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.91,1.04(total 9H,each s), 1.68-1.82(1H,m), 1.93-2.40(3H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.20-4.80(10H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.7, 1.2 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 7.93-8.18 (1H,m), 8.38-8.45(1H,m), 10.95-11.30(1H,m), 11.80-11.90 (1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 571(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 137

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1-(2,2,2-trifluoroacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and trifluoroacetic anhydride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 262-267° C. (decomposed).

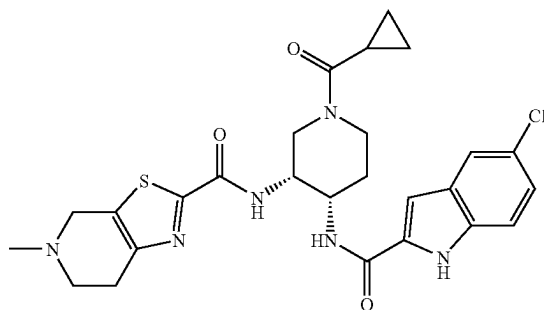
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.82-1.98(1H,m), 2.05-2.21(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.05-3.20(2H,m), 3.40-3.75(4H,m), 3.85-3.95(1H,m), 4.00-4.07(1H,m), 4.20-4.70(4H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.6, 1.9 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.72 (1H,s), 8.47(1H,dd,J=22.4, 7.9 Hz), 8.60(1H,br), 11.08(1H,br,s), 11.87(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 569(M+H⁺).

375

EXAMPLE 138

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(cyclopropylcarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and cyclopropanecarbonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

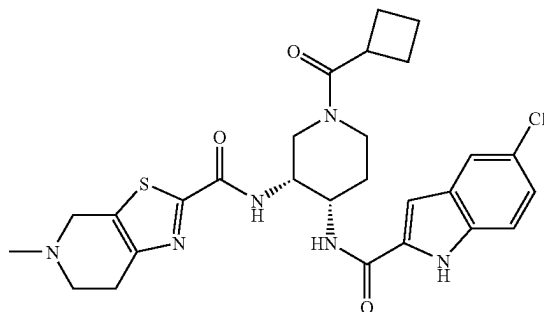
Melting point: 280-286° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.25-0.80(4H,m), 1.65-2.15(4H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 2.90-3.20(3H,m), 3.35-3.70(2H,m), 4.00-4.80(6H,m), 7.06(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.18(1H,br.s), 8.40,8.48(total 1H,each br.s), 11.11(1H,br.s), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 542(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 139

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(cyclobutylcarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and cyclobutanecarbonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 271-275° C. (decomposed).

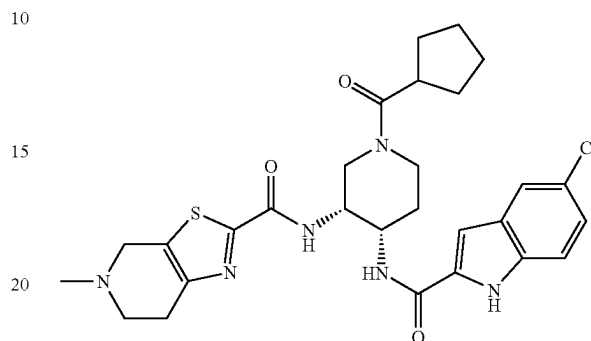
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-2.30(8H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.12(2H,br.s), 3.20-3.75(6H,m), 3.75-3.90(1H,m), 4.05-4.80(4H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.0 Hz), 7.39(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.15(1H,br.s), 8.39(1H,br), 11.19(1H,br.s), 11.84(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 555(M+H⁺).

376

EXAMPLE 140

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(cyclopentylcarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and cyclopentanecarbonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

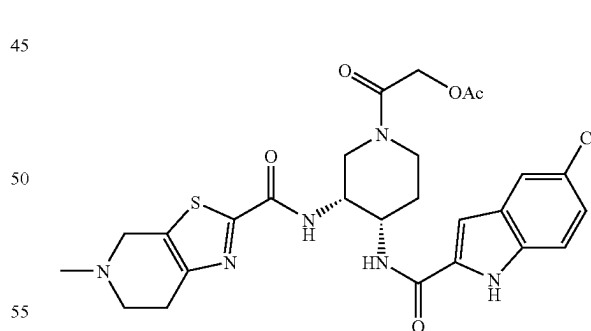
Melting point: 254-260° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-2.10(10H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.20-3.75(5H,m), 3.80-4.80(6H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.7,2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 7.95-8.30(1H,m), 8.35-8.50(1H,m), 11.23(1H,br.s), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 569(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 141

2-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidin-1-yl]-2-oxoethyl acetate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and acetoxycarbonyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

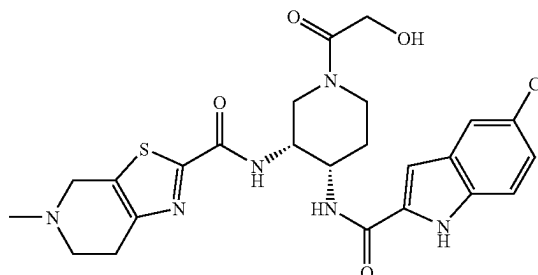
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70-2.00(1H,m), 2.05-2.48(3H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.70-3.05(4H,m), 3.05-4.10(5H,m), 4.20-4.48(1H,m), 4.50-5.10(4H,m), 6.87(1H,br.s), 7.10-7.82(4H,m), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.35(1H,br.s), 9.34,9.45(total 1H,each br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 573(M+H⁺).

377

EXAMPLE 142

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-glycoloyl]piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



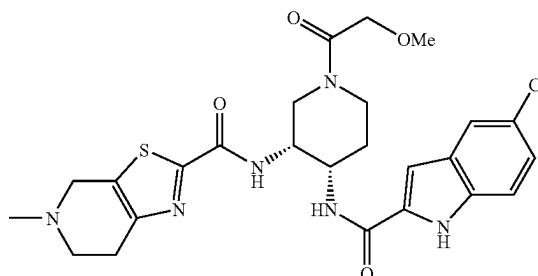
The compound (301.8 mg) obtained in Example 141 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml), and a 1N aqueous solution (0.53 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. Water was added to the reaction mixture to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layer was successively washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1-10:1), and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The thus-obtained purified product was dissolved in ethanol (3 ml) and methylene chloride (2 ml), and a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to stir the mixture for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was solidified with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (195 mg).

Melting point: 216-230° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-1.80(1H,m), 1.88-2.10(2H,m), 2.68(3H,s), 3.18(2H,s), 3.08-3.70(5H,m), 3.80-3.95(1H,m), 4.00-4.25(3H,m), 4.25-4.50(2H,m), 4.50-4.65(1H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=11.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.33(1H,br.s), 8.35-8.50(1H,m), 10.80-11.30(1H,br.s), 11.84(1H,br.s).

EXAMPLE 143

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 in a similar manner to Example 100.

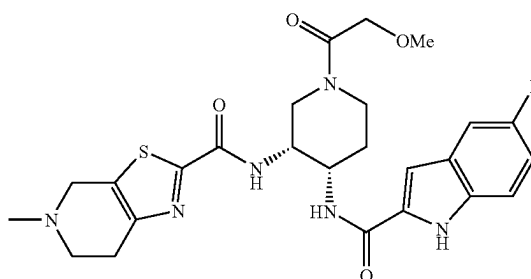
Melting point: 214-228° C. (decomposed).

378

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-1.80(1H,m), 1.85-2.05(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.16(3H,s), 3.22-3.82(7H,m), 3.88-4.80(5H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.9 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.29(1H,br.s), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 11.34(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s). MS (ESI) m/z: 545(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 144

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 122 and methoxyacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

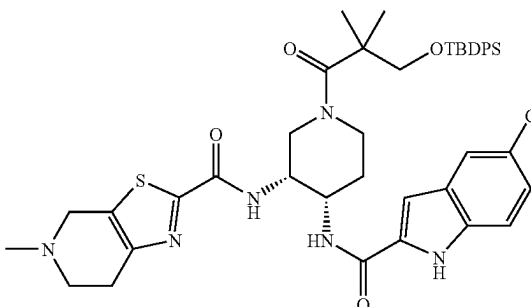
Melting point: 190-208° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-1.83(1H,br), 1.85-2.10(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.55(10H,m), 3.62-3.85(1H,m), 3.90-4.50(6H,m), 4.63-4.78(1H,br), 7.04(1H,td,J=9.4,2.4 Hz), 7.07-7.13(1H,br), 7.37-7.44(1H,m), 8.16-8.49(2H,m), 11.30-11.70(1H,br), 11.72-11.80(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 529(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 145

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-(3-{tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl}oxy)-2,2-dimethylpropanoyl)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



Thionyl chloride (3.0 ml) and a catalytic amount of dimethylformamide were added to a solution of the compound (261 mg) obtained in Referential Example 158 in

379

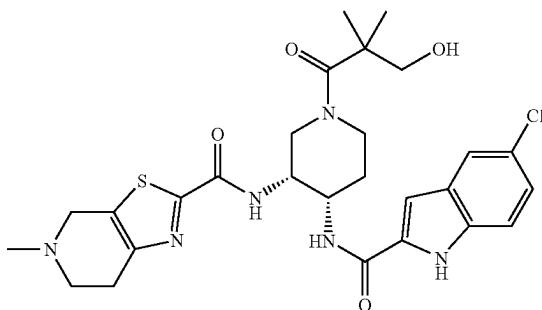
chloroform (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at 60° C. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, giving a pale yellow oil. The title compound was obtained from this product and the compound (200 mg) obtained in Example 118 in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 153° C.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.39(6H,d,J=3.9 Hz), 1.57(1H,br.s), 2.26(1H,d,J=10.7 Hz), 2.57(3H,s), 2.86(4H,s), 2.97-3.01(2H,m), 3.78(4H,s), 4.20(1H,br.s), 4.33(1H,d,J=13 Hz), 4.42(1H,br.s), 4.67(1H,d,J=13 Hz), 6.88(1H,s), 7.20-7.23(1H,m), 7.32-7.46(7H,m), 7.64-7.65(6H,m), 7.86(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.23(1H,s), 9.10(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 146

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(3-hydroxy-2,2-dimethylpropanoyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1 M tetrahydrofuran solution, 0.594 ml) was added to a solution of the compound (241 mg) obtained in Example 145 in tetrahydrofuran (30 ml) under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in methylene chloride. The solution was washed with water and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=9:1) to obtain the title compound (116 mg).

Melting point: 220° C. (decomposed).

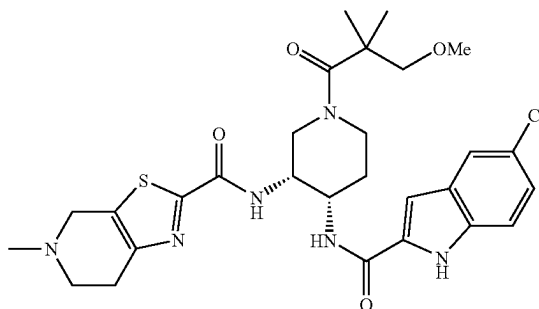
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.17(6H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 1.79(1H,br.s), 1.91-1.97(1H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 2.87(4H,s), 3.35-3.50(4H,m), 3.81(1H,br.s), 3.97(1H,m), 4.10-4.15(1H,m), 4.32(1H,br.s), 4.42(1H,br.s), 4.52(1H,t,J=5.7 Hz), 7.10(1H,s), 7.16-7.19(1H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.11(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.37(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.8(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 573(M+H⁺).

380

EXAMPLE 147

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(3-methoxy-2,2-dimethylpropanoyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 160 in a similar manner to Example 145.

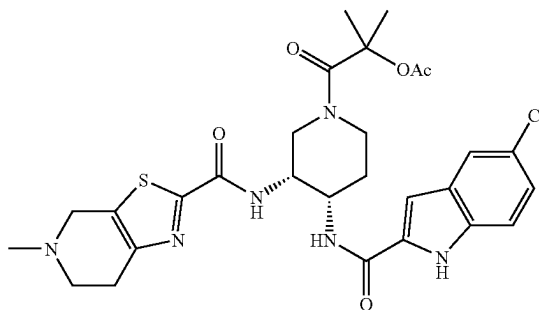
Melting point: 240° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.34(3H,s), 1.37(3H,s), 1.65-1.77(1H,m), 2.33-2.37(1H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.82-3.29(6H,m), 3.34(3H,s), 3.41(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 3.56(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 3.76(2H,d,J=5.9 Hz), 4.26(1H,m), 4.44-4.53(2H,m), 4.82(1H,d,J=13.7 Hz), 6.88(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.20-7.23(1H,m), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.64(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.90(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 8.22(1H,d,J=5.1 Hz), 9.18(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 587(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 148

2-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidin-1-yl]-1,1-dimethyl-2-oxoethyl acetate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and 2-acetoxyisobutyryl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 190° C. (decomposed).

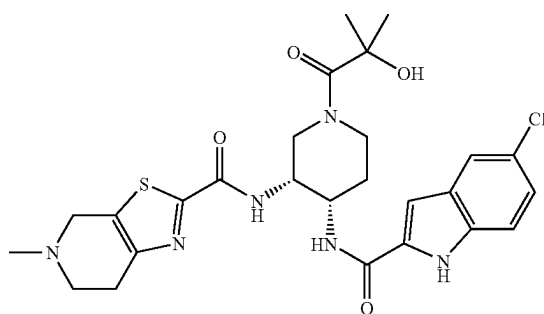
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.56-1.67(8H,m), 2.08(3H,s), 2.35(1H,d,J=10.5 Hz), 2.52(3H,s), 2.82-2.84(2H,m), 2.90-2.96(2H,m), 3.14(1H,br.s), 3.75(2H,s), 4.25(1H,br.s), 4.40-4.47(1H,m), 4.54(1H,br.s), 4.80(1H,br.s), 6.86(1H,s), 7.20-7.33(3H,m), 7.64(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.76(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.11(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 601(M+H⁺).

381

EXAMPLE 149

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropanoyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



Sodium methoxide (76.8 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (190 mg) obtained in Example 148 in methanol (50 ml), and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=9:1) to obtain the title compound (130 mg).

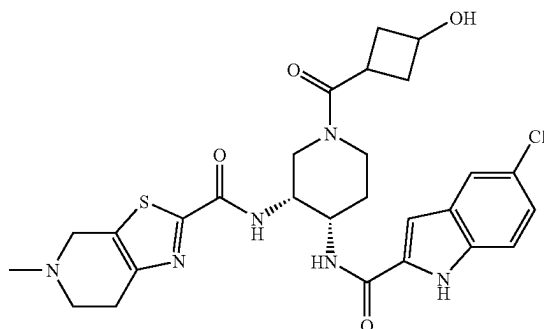
Melting point: 190° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(3H,s), 1.56-1.78(5H,m), 2.34(1H,d,J=10.5 Hz), 2.53(3H,s), 2.83-2.86(2H,m), 2.91-2.93(2H,m), 3.30(1H,d,J=12.5 Hz), 3.75(2H,s), 4.28(1H,d,J=5.6 Hz), 4.43(1H,s), 4.65(1H,d,J=13.5 Hz), 4.95(1H,d,J=13.5 Hz), 6.92(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.20-7.23(1H,m), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.43(1H,d,J=5.6 Hz), 9.14(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 559(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 150

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-[(3-hydroxycyclobutyl)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (306 mg) obtained in Example 118, n-methylmorpholine (200 μl), 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohy-

382

drate (87 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (197 mg) were added to a solution of the compound (117 mg) obtained Referential Example 152 in a mixed solvent of tetrahydrofuran (20 ml), methylene chloride (3.0 ml) and N,N-dimethylformamide (2.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to separate the mixture into two layers. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=10:1) to obtain a free base (207 mg) of the title compound. The free base was treated with a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

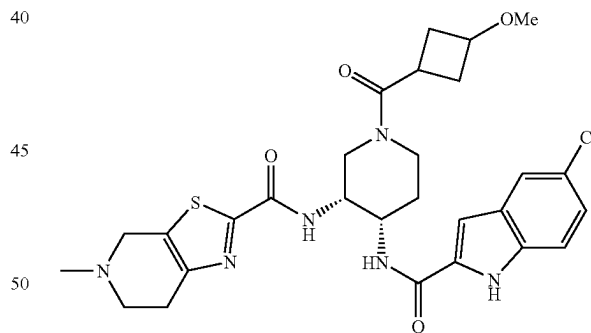
Melting point: 200° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.78-2.10(4H,m), 2.24-2.68(3H,m), 2.75-5.20(14H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 7.08(0.5H,s), 7.09(0.5H,s), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.05-8.28(1H,br), 8.38(0.5H,br,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.43(0.5H,br,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.80-11.25(1H,br), 11.84(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 571(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 151

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-[(methoxycyclobutyl)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 154 in a similar manner to Example 150.

Melting point: 191° C. (decomposed).

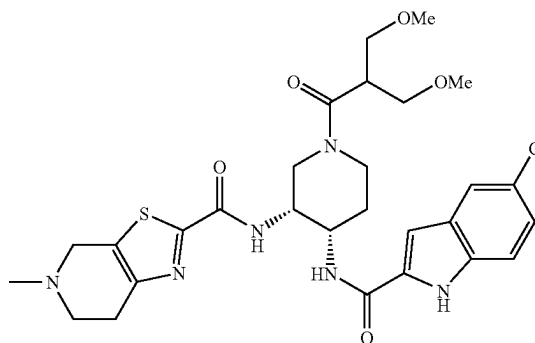
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.69-2.23(4H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 2.71-2.84(0.5H,m), 2.89-3.93(9.5H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.01(1H,s), 3.14(2H,s), 4.05-4.80(5H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.00-8.30(1H,br), 8.36-8.53(1H,m), 11.25-11.75(1H,br), 11.85(1H,br.s)

MS (ESI) m/z: 585(M+H⁺).

383

EXAMPLE 152

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-[3-methoxy-2-(methoxymethyl)propanoyl]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by condensing a carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolysis of the compound obtained in Referential Example 155 with the compound obtained in Example 118 in a similar manner to Example 150.

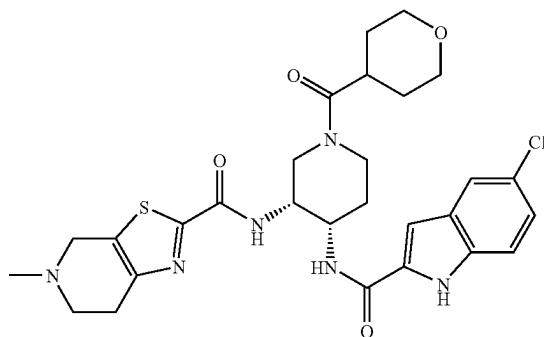
Melting point: 178-184° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.69-1.82(1H,m), 1.84-2.04(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.75(17H,m), 3.95-4.55(5H,m), 4.60-4.80(1H,m), 7.10(1H,br.s), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(0.5H,br.s), 7.71(1H,br.s), 8.18-8.28(1H,br), 8.35-8.50(1H,br), 11.83(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 603(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 153

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-4-ylcarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 156 in a similar manner to Example 150.

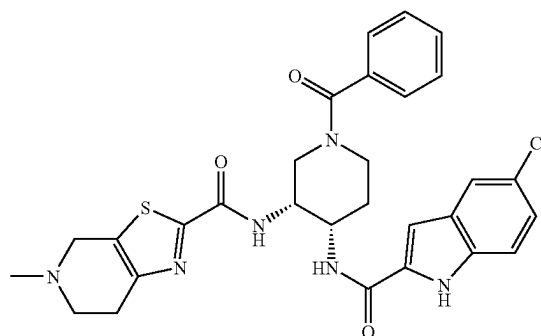
Melting point: 225-248° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.55-1.68(4H,m), 1.70-1.85(1H,m), 1.85-2.05(1H,m), 2.60-2.95(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 2.95-

384

EXAMPLE 154

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-benzoyl-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and benzoyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

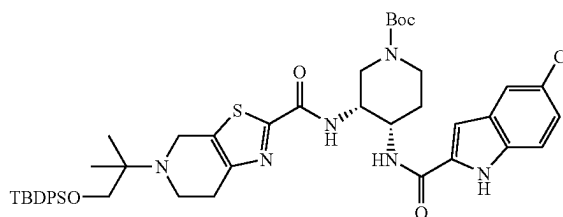
Melting point: 215-225° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.75-1.90(1H,m), 1.90-2.20(1H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.10-4.00(8H,m), 4.05-4.80(4H,m), 7.00-7.60(5H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.6 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=1.6 Hz), 8.31(1H,br.s), 8.46(1H,br.s), 11.39(1H,br.s), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 577(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 155

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-3-([5-(2-([tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy)-1,1-dimethylethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-4-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)piperidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 207 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 42 in a similar manner to Example 91.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.00(9H,s), 1.12(6H,s), 1.15-1.50(9H,m), 1.63-1.75(1H,m), 1.82-2.00(1H,m), 2.60-2.80(3H,m), 2.83-2.95(2H,m), 3.12-3.30(1H,m), 3.30(2H,s),

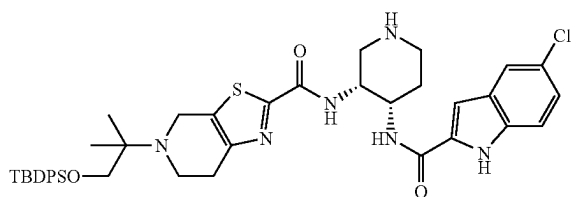
385

3.58(2H,s), 3.85-4.10(2H,m), 4.19(1H,br.s), 4.37(1H,br.s), 7.04(1H,s), 7.16(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.30-7.50(7H,m), 7.50-7.65(4H,m), 7.70(1H,s), 7.99(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.45(1H,br.s), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (ESI)m/z: 869(M+H)⁺

EXAMPLE 156

5-(2-([tert-Butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy))-1,1-dimethylethyl)-N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-piperidin-3-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



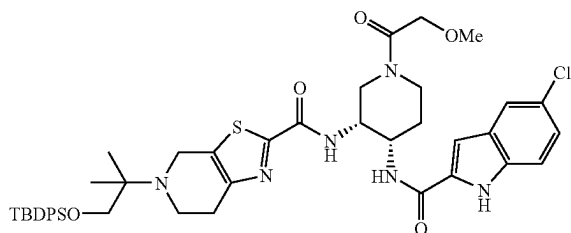
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Example 155 in a similar manner to Example 95.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.04(9H,s), 1.43, 1.48(total 6H,each s), 1.85-2.00(1H,m), 2.05-2.20(1H,m), 2.95-3.20(2H,m), 3.25-3.60(6H,m), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 4.60-4.85(3H,m), 7.10-7.20(2H,m), 7.35-7.55(7H,m), 7.55-7.75(5H,m), 8.52(1H,dd,J=14.4,7.8 Hz), 8.93(1H,br), 9.20-9.40(2H,m), 11.30-11.50(1H,m), 11.87,11.92(total 1H,each s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 769(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 157

5-(2-([tert-Butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy))-1,1-dimethylethyl)-N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 156 and methoxyacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

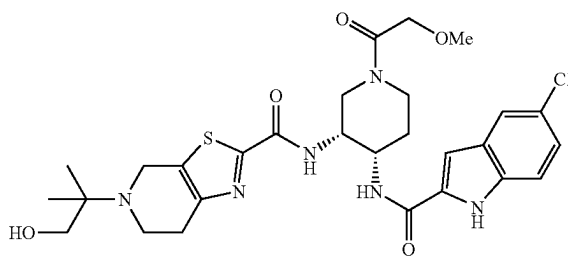
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.07(9H,s), 1.20(6H,s), 1.60-1.85(1H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 2.36(2H,s), 2.70-3.20(4H,m), 3.20-3.55(4H,m), 3.55-3.70(2H,m), 3.95-4.10(3H,m), 4.10-4.90(4H,m), 6.90(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.15-7.30(2H,m), 7.30-7.50(6H,m), 7.60-7.70(5H,m), 8.15-8.22(1H,m), 8.46(1H,d,J=5.1 Hz), 9.28(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 842(M+H)⁺.

386

EXAMPLE 158

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl)-5-(2-hydroxy-1,1-dimethylethyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 157 in a similar manner to Example 146.

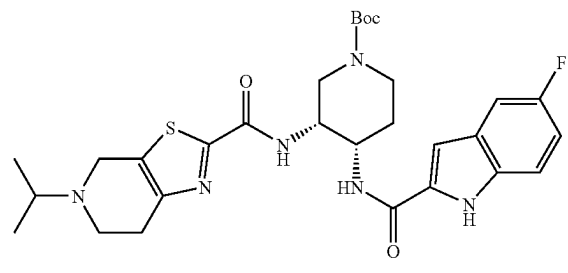
Melting point: 221-232° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32(3H,s), 1.40(3H,s), 1.70-1.85(1H,m), 1.85-2.10(1H,m), 2.60-3.35(8H,m), 3.40-3.82(3H,m), 3.85-4.05(3H,m), 4.05-4.35(2H,m), 4.50-4.60(1H,m), 4.55-4.80(2H,m), 5.75-5.85(1H,m), 7.08(1H,br.s), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.20-8.35(1H,m), 8.40-8.55(1H,m), 10.00-10.35(1H,m), 11.87(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 603(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 159

tert-Butyl (3R*,4S*)-4-[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-3-[(5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)piperidine-1-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 209 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 148 in a similar manner to Example 91.

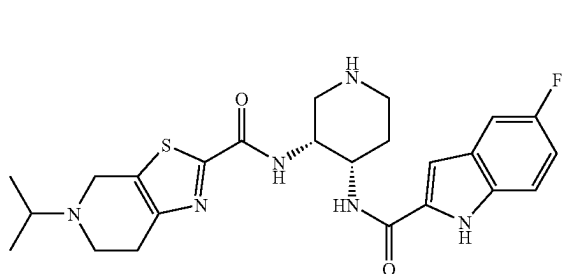
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.16(6H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 1.53(9H,s), 1.65-1.80(1H,m), 2.23-2.32(1H,m), 2.80-3.10(6H,m), 3.10-3.25(1H,m), 3.80-3.90(2H,m), 4.00-4.50(4H,m), 6.91(1H,s), 6.95-7.05(1H,m), 7.25-7.40(2H,m), 7.74(1H,br.s), 8.21(1H,br.s), 9.30(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 585(M+H)⁺.

387

EXAMPLE 160

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[[5-Fluoroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-piperidin-3-yl)-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo-[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



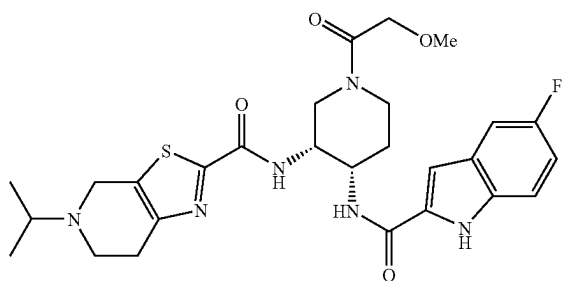
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Example 159 in a similar manner to Example 95.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.28-1.40(6H,m), 1.85-2.00(1H,m), 2.05-2.20(1H,m), 2.40-2.60(1H,m), 2.95-3.90(8H,m), 4.40-4.55(2H,m), 4.60-4.75(2H,m), 7.00-7.20(2H,m), 7.30-7.50(2H,m), 8.45-8.60(1H,m), 8.85-9.05(1H,m), 9.05-9.50(2H,m), 11.60-11.90(2H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 485(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 161

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[5-Fluoroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 160 and methoxyacetyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 214-228° C. (decomposed).

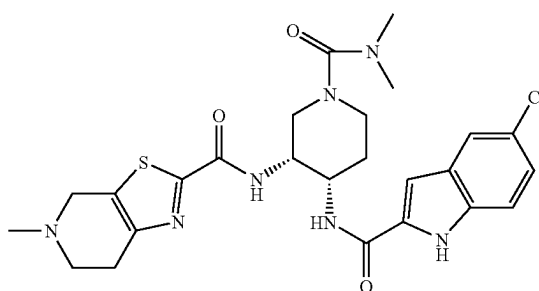
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25-1.40(6H,m), 1.68-1.82(1H,m), 1.85-2.10(1H,m), 2.90-3.60(8H,m), 3.60-3.85(2H,m), 3.85-4.40(5H,m), 4.40-4.55(2H,m), 4.60-4.75(1H,m), 7.00-7.15(2H,m), 7.35-7.50(2H,m), 8.15-8.50(2H,m), 10.80-11.30(1H,m), 11.73(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H⁺).

388

EXAMPLE 162

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-1-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl chloride in a similar manner to Example 100.

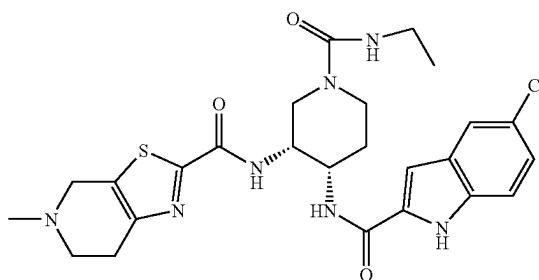
Melting point: 267-270° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.78(1H,m), 1.97-2.10(1H,m), 2.70(6H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.95-3.80(8H,m), 4.25-4.80(4H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,s), 8.31(1H,br.s), 8.40(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.15-11.60(1H,m), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 544(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 163

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-1-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and ethyl isocyanate in a similar manner to Example 100.

Melting point: 221-235° C. (decomposed).

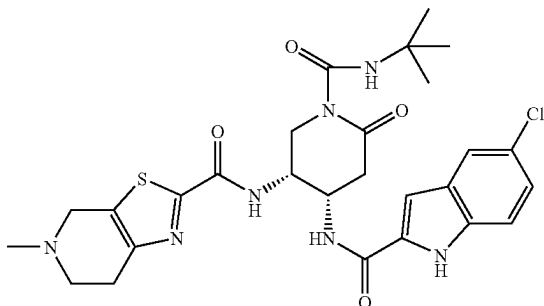
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.98(3H,t,J=7.1 Hz), 1.60-1.70(1H,m), 1.80-1.95(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 2.95-3.40(6H,m), 3.40-4.00(4H,m), 4.25-4.80(4H,m), 6.60-6.80(1H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.9 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.02(1H,br.s), 8.35(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 11.20-11.70(1H,m), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (FAB)m/z: 544(M+H⁺).

389

EXAMPLE 164

N-((3R*,4S*)-1-[(tert-Butylamino)carbonyl]-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and tert-butyl isocyanate in a similar manner to Example 100.

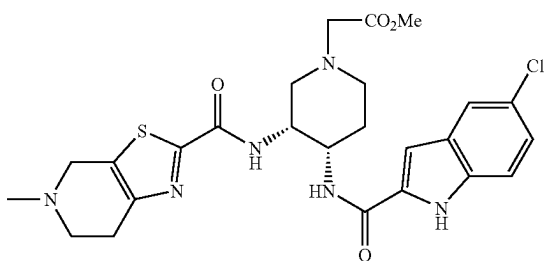
Melting point: 236-238° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.21(9H,s), 1.60-1.70(1H,m), 1.80-1.90(1H,m), 2.87(3H,s), 3.00-3.40(6H,m), 3.49(1H,br.s), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 3.90-4.00(1H,m), 4.20-4.35(2H,m), 4.47(1H,br.s), 5.90(1H,s), 7.06(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd, J=8.8,1.9 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.04(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.22(1H,br.s), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 572(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 165

Methyl 2-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino}-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}piperidin-3-yl)acetate dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and methyl bromoacetate in a similar manner to Example 102.

Melting point: 253-255° C. (decomposed).

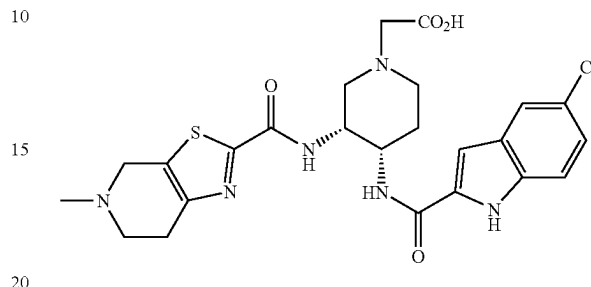
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆, 80° C.) δ: 1.95-2.10(1H,m), 2.10-2.25(1H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.00-3.73(8H,m), 3.75(3H,s), 3.97-4.15(2H,m), 4.30-4.80(4H,m), 7.08-7.20(2H,m), 7.44(1H,d, J=8.6 Hz), 7.63(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.42(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.62(1H,br.s), 11.82(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 545(M+H⁺).

390

EXAMPLE 166

2-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}piperidin-3-yl)acetic acid hydrochloride



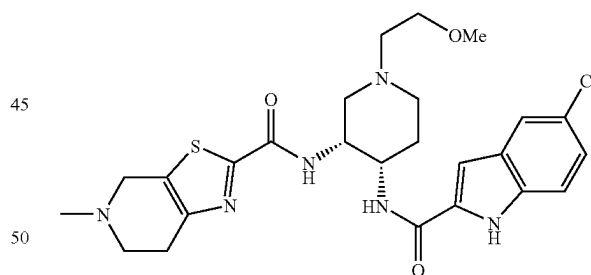
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Example 165 in a similar manner to Example 101.

Melting point: 234-240° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.75-1.95(1H,m), 2.05-2.20(1H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 2.95-3.90(10H,m), 4.20-4.70(4H,m), 7.11(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.66(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.46(1H,br.d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.65(1H,br.s), 11.60-12.70(2H,br.s), 11.91(1H,br.s).

EXAMPLE 167

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1-(2-methoxyethyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and 2-bromoethyl methyl ether in a similar manner to Example 102 (NMR was measured in the form of a free base).

Melting point: 238-242° C. (decomposed).

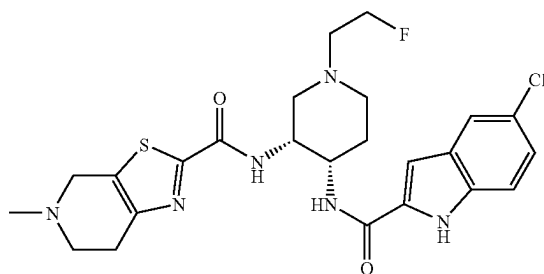
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.75-1.83(2H,m), 2.27-2.39(2H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.60-2.66(1H,m), 2.69-2.75(1H,m), 2.81-2.90(2H,m), 2.96-3.07(2H,m), 3.41(3H,s), 3.53-3.60(2H,m), 3.75(each 1H,AB type d,J=15.5 Hz), 4.02-4.05(1H,m), 4.40(1H,br), 6.88(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.18-7.21(1H,m), 7.31-7.33(1H,m), 7.63(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 8.17(1H,d,J=5.0 Hz), 8.26(1H,d,J=7.0 Hz), 9.30(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 531(M+H⁺).

391

EXAMPLE 168

N-[(3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-fluoroethyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide dihydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 118 and 2-fluoroethyl bromide in a similar manner to Example 102 (NMR was measured in the form of a free base).

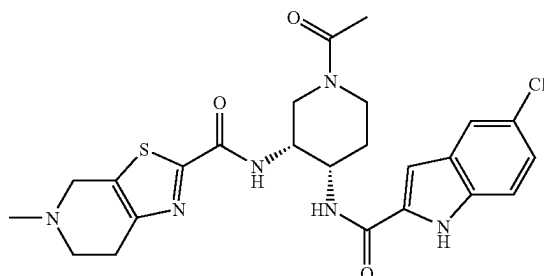
Melting point: 228-233° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.77(2H,dq,J=12.5,4.0 Hz), 2.28-2.32(1H,m), 2.41(1H,t,J=12.5 Hz), 2.52(3H,s), 2.65(1H,d,J=10.5 Hz), 2.76-2.81(1H,m), 2.83-2.86(3H,m), 2.98-3.05(3H,m), 3.75(each 1H,AB type d,J=15.5 Hz), 4.02-4.08(1H,m), 4.45(1H,br), 4.54-4.59(1H,m), 4.64-4.70(1H,m), 6.87(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.19-7.22(1H,m), 7.32(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.64(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.11(1H,d,J=5.5 Hz), 8.20(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.30(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 519(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 169

N-((3R,4S)-1-Acetyl-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



392

A 4N dioxane solution (7.0 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to a dioxane solution (15 ml) of the compound (630 mg) obtained in Referential Example 214, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The thus-obtained yellow solids (590 mg) and the compound (379 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10 were used to obtain a free base (330 mg) of the title compound in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound (NMR was measured in the form of a free base).

Melting point: 202-222° C. (decomposed).

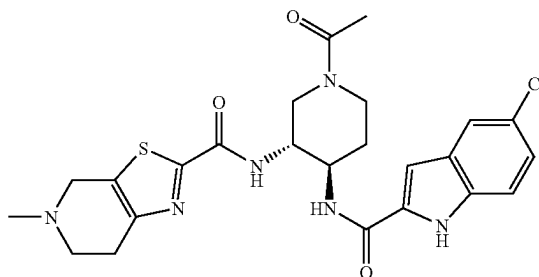
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.85(1H,m), 1.87,2.06(total 3H,each s), 1.88-2.10(1H,m), 2.37(3H,s), 2.65-2.77(2H,m), 2.79-2.89(2H,m), 2.99-3.09(0.5H,m), 3.30-3.52(2H,m), 3.64(2H,s), 3.70-3.80(0.5H,m), 3.96-4.21(2H,m), 4.27(1H,br,s), 4.35-4.48(1H,m), 7.07,7.11(total 1H,each s), 7.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,s), 8.16-8.22(1H,m), 8.37,8.46(total 1H,each d,J=7.8 Hz), 11.81,11.83(total 1H,each s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 515(M+H⁺).

[α]_D²⁵ = -56.0° (c=0.50, methanol).

EXAMPLE 170

N-((3R,4R)-1-Acetyl-4-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 219 and Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 169.

Melting point: 221-238° C.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.56(0.5H,m), 1.60-1.70(0.5H,m), 1.89-2.01(1H,m), 2.05(3H,s), 2.51-2.67(1H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.00-3.22(3H,m), 3.31-3.40(3H,m), 3.56-3.67(0.5H,m), 3.78-4.02(1.5H,m), 4.22-4.44(2H,m), 4.56-4.72(1H,m), 7.02(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.42(1H,d,J=9.8 Hz), 8.67-8.78(1H,m), 11.02-11.14(1H,m), 11.72(0.5H,s), 11.74(0.5H,s).

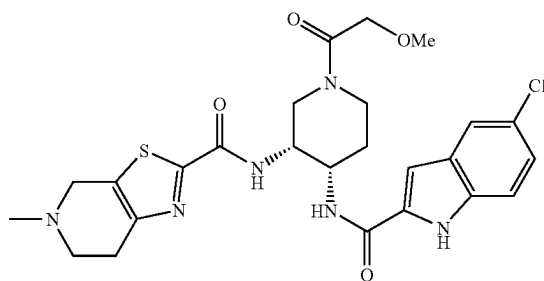
MS (FAB) m/z: 515(M+H⁺).

[α]_D²⁵ = -105.4° (c=0.58, methanol).

393

EXAMPLE 171

N-[(3R,4S)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 221 in a similar manner to Example 169.

Melting point: 207-220° C. (decomposed).

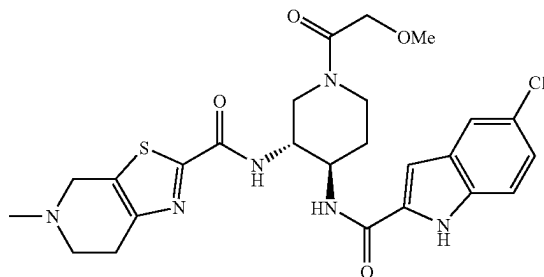
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-1.80(1H,m), 1.85-2.05(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.16(3H,s), 3.22-3.82(7H,m), 3.88-4.80(5H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8,1.9 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.29(1H,br.s), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 11.20-11.50(1H,m), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 545(M+H⁺).

[α]_D²⁵=−53.4° (c=0.52, methanol).

EXAMPLE 172

N-[(3R,4R)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 223 in a similar manner to Example 169.

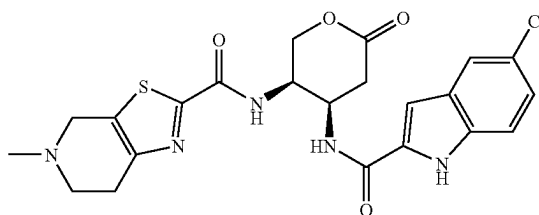
Melting point: 213-230° C.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.56(0.5H,m), 1.61-1.70(0.5H,m), 1.89-2.00(1H,m), 2.05(3H,s), 2.45-2.67(1H,m), 2.88(3H,s), 3.00-3.21(4H,m), 3.32-3.56(7H,m), 3.78-3.89(2H,m), 4.00-4.24(2H,m), 4.26-4.43(2H,m), 7.02(1H,s), 7.13(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,

394

EXAMPLE 173

N-[(3R,4R)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-6-oxotetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



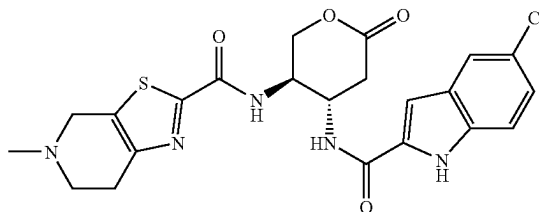
The title compound was obtained from the low-polar compound obtained in Referential Example 176 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 169.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.41-2.56(2H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.01-3.23(1H,m), 3.24-3.56(5H,m), 3.62-3.67(1H,m), 4.21-4.44(1H,m), 4.56-4.78(2H,m), 7.11(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.22(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 11.34-11.56(1H,m), 11.82(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 488(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 174

N-[(3R,4S)-4-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-6-oxotetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the high-polar compound obtained in Referential Example 176 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 169.

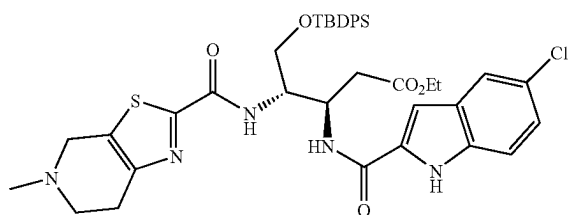
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.41-2.56(2H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.23-3.41(2H,m), 3.43-3.50(2H,m), 3.56-3.67(2H,m), 4.37(1H,dd,J=13.9,7.1 Hz), 4.40-4.50(1H,m), 4.56-4.78(2H,m), 7.12(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.44(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.42-11.53(1H,m), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 488(M+H⁺).

395

EXAMPLE 175

Ethyl (3R,4S)-5-[[tert-butyl(diphenyl)silyl]oxy]-3-
 {[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-4-[[{(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)
 carbonyl]amino}-valerate

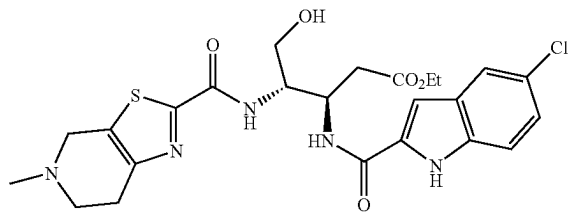


The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 225 in a similar manner to Example 169.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.09(9H,s), 1.21(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 2.49(3H,s), 2.65(1H,dd,J=15.9,5.4 Hz), 2.67-2.90(5H,m), 3.60(1H,d,J=14.9 Hz), 3.72(1H,d,J=14.9 Hz), 3.78-3.91(2H,m), 4.00-4.21(2H,m), 4.43-4.50(1H,m), 4.78-4.89(1H,m), 6.81(1H,s), 7.20(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.32-7.52(m,7H), 7.63-7.74(6H,m), 7.89-8.01(1H,m), 9.18(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 176

Ethyl (3R,4S)-3-[[{(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-5-hydroxy-4-[[{(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-valerate



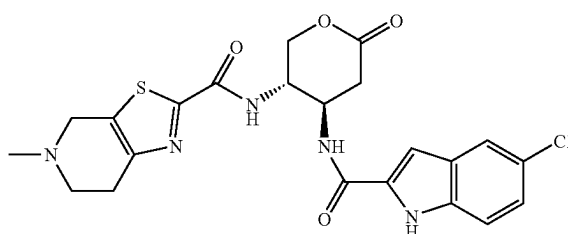
After hydrogen fluoride-pyridine (0.4 ml) was added dropwise to a mixture solution composed of the compound (0.54 g) obtained in Example 175, pyridine (4.0 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) under ice cooling, the reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours while the temperature thereof was gradually raised to room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=9:1) to obtain the title compound (0.31 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20(3H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 2.49(3H,s), 2.67-2.90(6H,m), 3.62-3.74(3H,m), 3.78-3.94(1H,m), 4.00-4.20(2H,m), 4.30-4.40(1H,m), 4.80-4.89(1H,m), 6.93(1H,s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.56(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.61(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.88(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 9.29(1H,s).

396

EXAMPLE 177

N-((3S,4R)-4-[[{(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-6-oxotetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



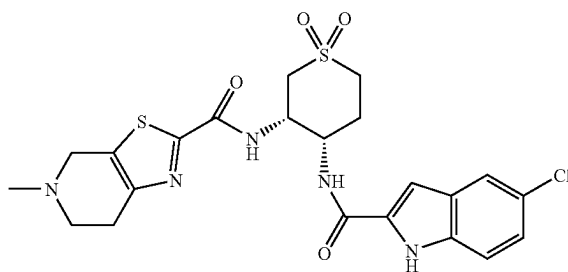
A 4N dioxane solution (20 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to the compound (0.31 g) obtained in Example 176, and the mixture was heated under reflux for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and the resultant residue was recrystallized from diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (0.23 g).

Melting point: 221-238° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR and MS (FAB): The same as those of the enantiomer in Example 174.

EXAMPLE 178

N-((3R*,4R*)-4-[[{(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 227 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

Melting point: 241-244° C.

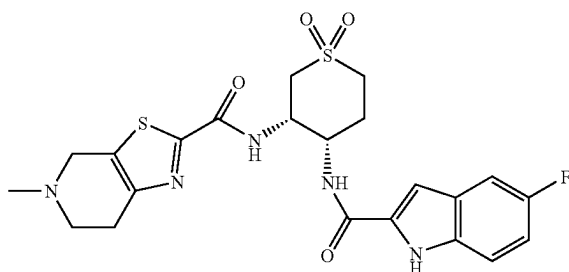
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.14(1H,br), 2.30-2.34(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.10-3.18(2H,m), 3.41(4H,br), 3.68(2H,br), 4.44(1H,br), 4.63-4.78(3H,m), 7.16-7.18(1H,m), 7.21(1H,s), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=4.6 Hz), 8.39(1H,br), 8.94(1H,br), 11.82(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 522(M+H⁺).

397

EXAMPLE 179

N-((3R*,4R*)-4-[[5-Fluoroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 227 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

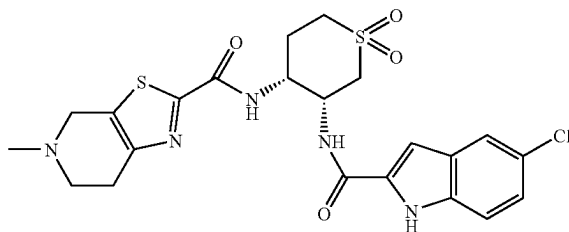
Melting point: 243-245° C.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.14(1H,br), 2.30-2.33(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.13(2H,br), 3.51(4H,br), 3.63(2H,br), 4.63(3H,br), 4.78(1H,br), 7.01-7.05(1H,m), 7.21(1H,s), 7.37-7.44(2H,m), 8.36(1H,br), 8.93(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 11.72(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 506(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 180

N-((3R*,4R*)-3-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 229 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

Melting point: 242-247° C.

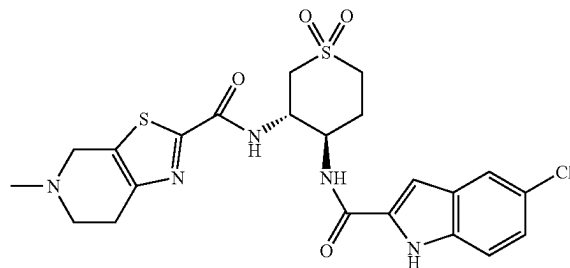
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.16(1H,br), 2.45(1H,br), 2.93(3H,s), 3.13(2H,br), 3.26(4H,br), 3.69(2H,br), 4.45(1H,br), 4.65-4.77(3H,m), 7.01(1H,s), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.7,1.4 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.35-8.40(1H,m), 9.04(1H,br), 11.86(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 522(M+H⁺).

398

EXAMPLE 181

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl] carbonyl]amino}-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 231 and 5-chloroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

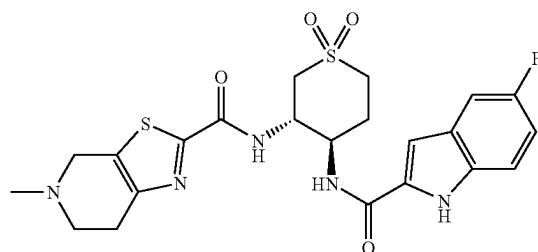
Melting point: 244-249° C.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.17-2.27(2H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.09(1H,br), 3.18-3.21(2H,m), 3.31-3.34(2H,m), 3.60-3.67(3H,m), 4.41-4.49(2H,m), 4.54-4.59(2H,m), 7.04(1H,s), 7.09-7.13(1H,m), 7.39(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.61(1H,d,J=9.9 Hz), 8.52-8.56(1H,m), 8.83-8.85(1H,m), 11.65(1H,d,J=11.9 Hz).

MS (ESI) m/z: 522(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 182

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-[[5-Fluoroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 231 and 5-fluoroindole-2-carboxylic acid in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

Melting point: 236-241° C.

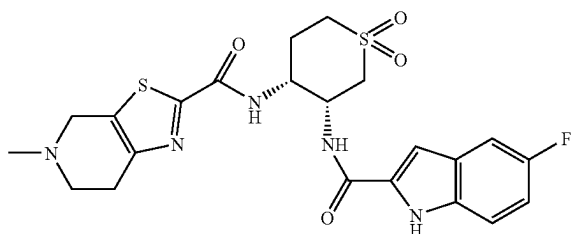
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.20-2.24(2H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.07(1H,br), 3.19-3.22(2H,m), 3.60-3.66(4H,m), 4.43-4.58(5H,m), 6.95-7.00(1H,m), 7.04(1H,s), 7.32-7.38(2H,m), 8.50(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.83(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.59(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 506(M+H⁺).

399

EXAMPLE 183

N-((3R*,4R*)-3-[[[(5-Fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1,1-dioxohexahydro-1-thiopyran-4-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



A free base of the title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 233 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 91. This free base was treated with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound.

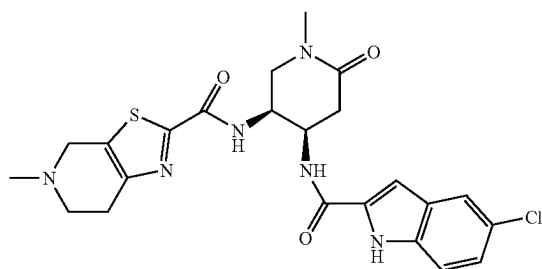
Melting point: 244-249° C.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.12-2.18(1H,m), 2.50(1H,br), 2.92(3H,s), 3.17(3H,br), 3.50-3.61(5H,m), 4.45(1H,br), 4.62-4.78(3H,m), 6.98-7.03(2H,m), 7.36-7.42(2H,m), 8.30(1H,br), 9.00(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 11.74(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 506(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 184

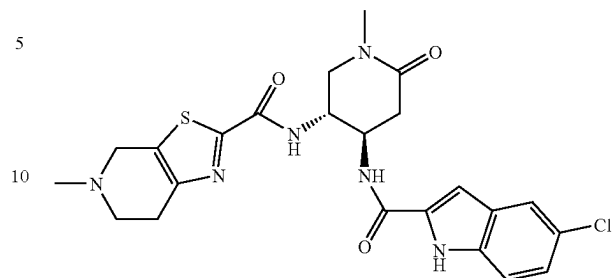
N-((3S,4R)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-methyl-6-oxopiperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (low-polar compound) and N-((3R,4R)-4-[[[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-1-methyl-6-oxopiperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide (high-polar compound)



Low-polar compound

400

-continued



High-polar compound

The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 236 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 169.

Low-polar Compound:

Melting poing: 189-203° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.52(3H,s), 2.59(1H,q,J=8.8 Hz), 2.71-2.78(2H,m), 2.89-3.00(2H,m), 3.03(3H,s), 3.12(1H,dd, J=17.6,5.4 Hz), 3.43(1H,dd,J=12.7,5.1 Hz), 3.70(1H,d, J=15.2 Hz), 3.77(1H,d,J=15.2 Hz), 3.83(1H,dd,J=12.7,3.9 Hz), 4.55-4.67(2H,m), 6.99(1H,s), 7.23(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.07(1H,d, J=5.1 Hz), 8.16(1H,d,J=5.4 Hz), 9.43(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 501(M+H⁺).

High-polar Compound:

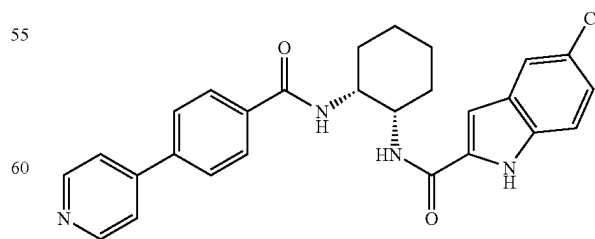
Melting point: 183-195° C. (decomposed).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 2.33(3H,s), 2.41-2.50(1H,m), 2.62-2.73(3H,m), 2.75-2.81(1H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 3.21-3.32(2H,m), 3.34-3.50(2H,m), 3.55(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.63(1H, d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.30-4.40(0.5H,m), 4.50-4.60(0.5H,m), 7.04(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.49(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.71(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 11.74(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 501(M+H⁺).

EXAMPLE 185

5-Chloro-N-((1R*,2S*)-2-[[[4-(pyridin-4-yl)benzoyl]-amino]cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound

401

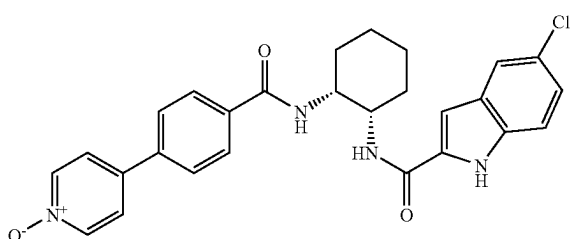
obtained in Referential Example 237 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.52(2H,m), 1.60-1.80(4H,m), 1.96-2.10(2H,m), 4.24-4.39(2H,m), 7.15(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.21(1H,s), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.64(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.06(4H,s), 8.18(1H,J=7.3 Hz), 8.34-8.42(3H,m), 8.94 (2H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 11.91(1H,s).

MS (FAB)m/z: 473(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 186

4-(4-{[[(1R*,2S*)-2-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl]amino]carbonyl}phenyl)pyridine N-oxide



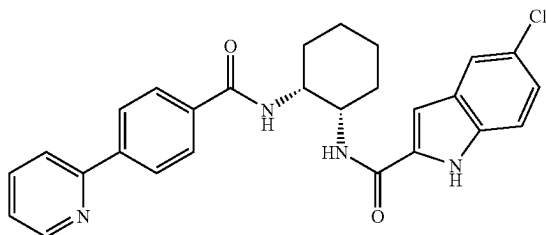
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 240 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.52(2H,m), 1.60-1.80(4H,m), 1.88-2.00(2H,m), 4.21-4.36(2H,m), 7.12-7.18(2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.66(1H,s), 7.80-7.87(4H,m), 7.91 (2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.01(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.09(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.27(2H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 489(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 187

5-Chloro-N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-{[4-(pyridin-2-yl)benzoyl]-amino}cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and 4-(2-pyridyl)benzoic acid (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2000-119253) in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39-1.51(2H,m), 1.60-1.80(4H,m), 1.89-2.00(2H,m), 4.24-4.38(2H,m), 7.12-7.16(2H,m), 7.36-7.39(1H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.66(1H,d,J=2.0

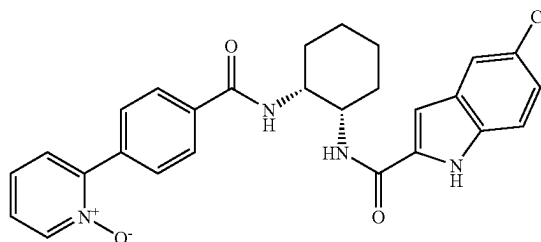
402

Hz), 7.87-7.90(1H,m), 7.92(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.98-8.11(3H,m), 8.15(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.69(1H,d,J=4.6 Hz), 11.80(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 473(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 188

2-(4-{[[(1R*,2S*)-2-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl]amino]carbonyl}phenyl)pyridine N-oxide



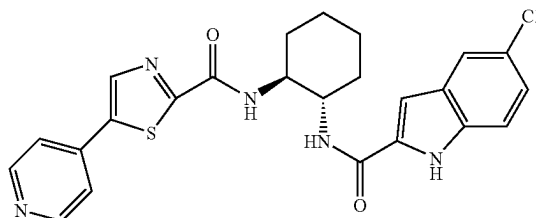
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 71 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 241 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.39-1.51(2H,m), 1.60-1.79(4H,m), 1.89-2.00(2H,m), 4.23-4.37(2H,m), 7.12-7.17(2H,m), 7.39-7.43(3H,m), 7.61-7.64(1H,m), 7.67(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.89(4H,s), 8.00-8.06(1H,m), 8.08-8.02(1H,m), 8.32-8.35 (1H,m), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 489(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 189

5-Chloro-N-[(1R*,2R*)-2-({[5-(4-pyridin-2-yl)thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl}amino)cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 69 and lithium 5-(4-pyridyl)thiazole-2-carboxylate (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2000-143623) in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

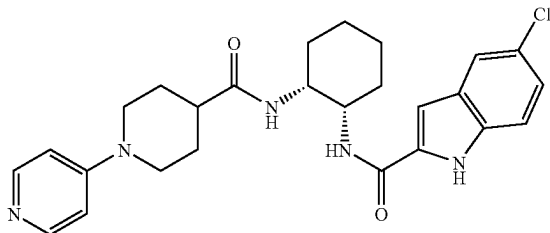
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44(2H,br.s), 1.65(4H,br.s), 1.85-2.06(2H,m), 4.23(1H,br.s), 4.30(1H,br.s), 7.14-7.23 (2H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,s), 8.04-8.13(2H,m), 8.13(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.59(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.75-8.87(3H,m), 11.83(1H,s).

MS (ESI)m/z: 480(M+H)⁺.

403

EXAMPLE 190

5-Chloro-N-[(1R*,2S*)-2-({[1-(pyridin-4-yl)piperidin-4-yl]carbonyl}amino)cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



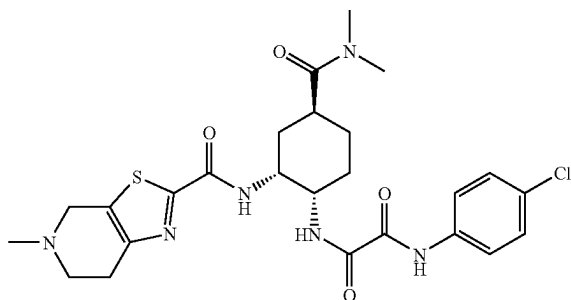
1-(4-Pyridyl)piperidine-4-carboxylic acid (Tetrahedron, 1998, Vol. 44, p.7095) (206 mg) was suspended in methylene chloride (50 ml), and thionyl chloride (144 μ l) was added under ice cooling to stir the mixture for 30 minutes. After triethylamine (969 μ l) was added to the reaction mixture, the compound (328 mg) obtained in Referential Example 71 was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, water was added to the residue, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and precipitate deposited was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (310 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.30-2.00(10H,m), 2.74(1H,br.s), 3.18(2H,q,J=12.3 Hz), 4.03(1H,br.s), 4.10-4.25(3H,m), 7.15-7.55(4H,m), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.65(1H,s), 7.91(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.20-8.35(3H,m), 11.91(1H,s), 13.47(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 480(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 191

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[{(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl}amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The compound (288 mg) obtained in Referential Example 242 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (8.0 ml), lithium hydroxide (46 mg) and water (1.0 ml) were successively added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude product (292 mg) of lithium 2-(4-chloroanilino)-2-oxoacetate as a colorless solid. This crude product and the compound obtained in

404

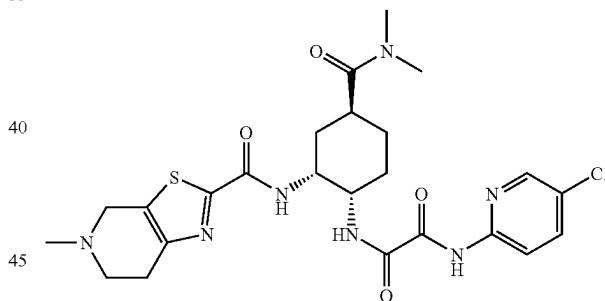
Referential Example 253 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (164 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (251 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 64.5 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (0.52 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (245 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.45-1.55(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H,m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.10-3.40(2H,m), 3.40-3.80(2H,m), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.40-4.80(3H,m), 7.40(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.83(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.75(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 9.00-9.10(1H,br), 10.81(1H,s), 11.45-11.75(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 547(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 192

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[{(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl}amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The compound (240 mg) obtained in Referential Example 243 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (8.0 ml), lithium hydroxide (41 mg) and water (1.0 ml) were successively added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain lithium 2-[(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate (249 mg).

On the other hand, 10% palladium on carbon (200 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (293 mg) obtained in Referential Example 252 in methanol (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. After removing palladium on carbon by filtration, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude product (259 mg) of N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-amino-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide.

This crude product (259 mg) and the lithium salt (249 mg) prepared above were added to N,N-dimethylformamide (15

405

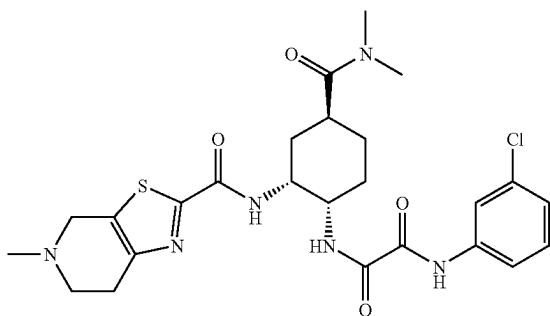
ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (166 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (235 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 63.5 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (0.855 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to the solution, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (209 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.57(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H,m), 1.95-2.13(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.10-3.40(2H,m), 3.40-3.80(2H,m), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.37-4.80(3H,m), 7.90-8.10(2H,m), 8.45(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.71(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.10-9.30(1H,br), 10.26(1H,s), 11.30-11.60(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 193

N¹-(3-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



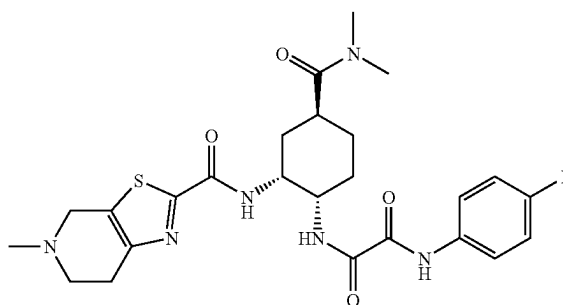
The compound (222 mg) obtained in Referential Example 270 and 3-chloroaniline (63 μl) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (68 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (144 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 40 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=30:1). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (0.50 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Diethyl ether was added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (174 mg).

406

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.62(1H,m), 1.65-1.90(3H,m), 1.98-2.20(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.88-3.10(1H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.15-3.40(2H,m), 3.40-3.90(2H,m), 3.95-4.10(1H,m), 4.40-4.80(3H,m), 7.19(1H,dd,J=9.3,2.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.2 Hz), 7.77(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.92-8.05(1H,m), 8.75(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.95-9.20(1H,br), 10.87(1H,s), 11.25-11.45(1H,br).

EXAMPLE 194

N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)-N²-(4-fluorophenyl)-ethanediamide hydrochloride



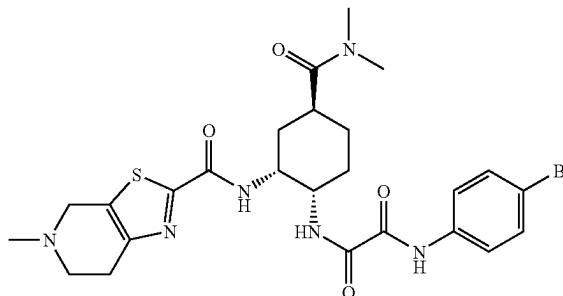
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 254, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.13(6H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 3.12-3.82(7H,m), 3.93-4.04(1H,m), 4.38-4.46(1H,m), 4.35-4.75(1H,m), 7.11-7.21(2H,m), 7.72-7.84(2H,m), 8.73(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.93-9.02(1H,m), 10.70(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 531(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 195

N¹-(4-Bromophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The compound (152 mg) obtained in Referential Example 255 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (5.0 ml), a 1N aqueous

407

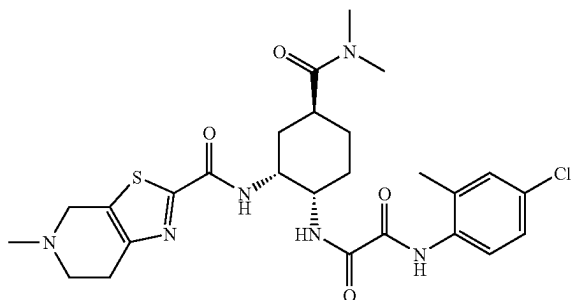
solution (1.20 ml) of sodium hydroxide and methanol (5.0 ml) were successively added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride (10 ml) and 1N hydrochloric acid (2.0 ml) were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain a crude product (280 mg) of 2-(4-bromoanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid as a colorless solid. This crude product and the compound (280 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (90 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (226 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for a night. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=97:3). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (191 μ l) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (103 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.43-1.57(1H,m), 1.59-1.80(3H,m), 1.97-2.10(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.84-2.98(7H,m), 3.18(2H,br,s), 3.39-3.72(2H,m), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.20-4.80(3H,m), 7.53(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.77(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.75(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.97-9.09(1H,m), 10.82(1H,s), 11.11(1H,br,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 591(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 196

N¹-(4-Chloro-2-methylphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 256, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.45-1.55(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H,m), 2.00-2.10(2H,m), 2.19(3H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(7H,m), 3.31(2H,br,s), 3.40-3.70(2H,br), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.35-

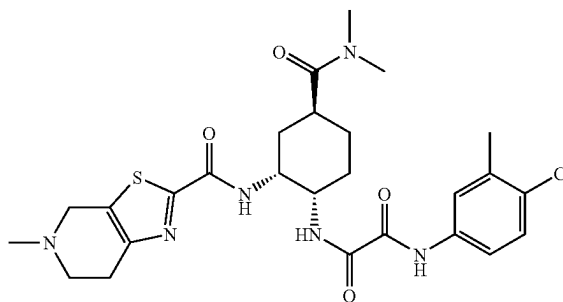
408

4.70(3H,m), 7.20-7.30(1H,m), 7.35(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 7.43(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.76(1H,d,J=6.6 Hz), 9.00-9.15(1H,br), 10.19(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 197

N¹-(4-Chloro-3-methylphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



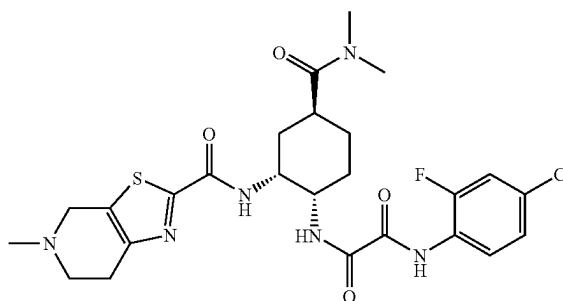
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 257, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ : 1.47-1.53(1H,m), 1.68-1.80(3H,m), 1.98-2.09(2H,m), 2.29(3H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(1H,m), 2.95(6H,s), 3.17-3.19(3H,m), 3.40-3.80(1H,m), 3.93-4.02(1H,m), 4.44-4.56(3H,m), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.74(1H,s), 8.75(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.96(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 10.69(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 198

N¹-(4-Chloro-2-fluorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 258, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential

409

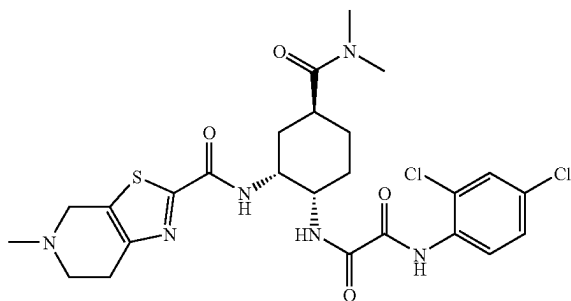
Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.58-1.80(3H,m), 1.95-2.12(2H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 3.10-3.40(2H,m), 3.40-3.80(2H,m), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.30-4.80(3H,m), 7.29(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.52(1H,dd,J=10.3,2.0 Hz), 7.61(1H,t,J=8.4 Hz), 8.72(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.00-9.20(1H,br), 10.38(1H,s), 11.20-11.45(1H,br)

MS (FAB) m/z: 565(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 199

N¹-(2,4-Dichlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The compound (300 mg) obtained in Referential Example 270 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and 2,4-dichloroaniline (165 mg), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (260 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (91 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3) to obtain a free base of the title compound. This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (108 μl) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. A small amount of methanol was added to the residue, and diethyl ether was added dropwise while irradiating with ultrasonic waves to collect precipitate formed by filtration. This product was washed with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (60 mg).

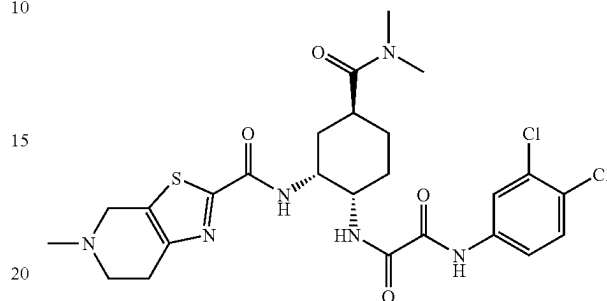
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.77(4H,m), 2.03-2.12(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92-2.96(7H,m), 3.25(2H,br.s), 3.49(1H,br.s), 3.69(1H,br.s), 3.98-4.04(1H,m), 4.40-4.43(1H,m), 4.45(1H,br.s), 4.69(1H,br.s), 7.48(1H,dd,J=8.5,2.4 Hz), 7.75(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 7.89(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.75(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.21(1H,br.s), 10.25(1H,s), 11.55(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 581(M+H)⁺.

410

EXAMPLE 200

N¹-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide



3,4-Dichloroaniline (1.62 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (20 ml), and triethylamine (1.67 ml) and methyl chlorooacetate (1.01 ml) were successively added under ice cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 21 hours. Water and methylene chloride were added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was dissolved in ethanol (50 ml), and water (25 ml) and lithium hydroxide monohydrate (629 mg) were successively added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 12.5 hours. Lithium hydroxide monohydrate (629 mg) was additionally added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 5.5 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to solidify. Water and diethyl ether were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. Hydrochloric acid was added to the resultant water layer to acidify it. Solid formed were collected by filtration to obtain a crude product (1.62 g) of 2-(3,4-dichloroanilino)-2-oxoacetic acid as a colorless solid. This crude product (191 mg) and the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (110 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (157 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 67 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and ethyl acetate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant water layer was extracted 3 times with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=95:5) to obtain the title compound (154 mg).

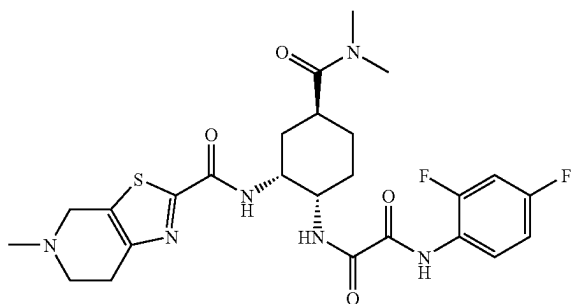
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.77-1.88(1H,m), 1.91-1.95(1H,m), 2.05-2.10(3H,m), 2.51(3H,s), 2.77-2.99(6H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 3.68(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 3.74(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 4.08-4.13(1H,m), 4.69-4.72(1H,m), 7.40(2H,s), 7.41(1H,d,J=7.7 Hz), 7.90(1H,s), 8.01(1H,d,J=7.7 Hz), 9.27(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 581(M+H)⁺.

411

EXAMPLE 201

N¹-(2,4-Difluorophenyl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide

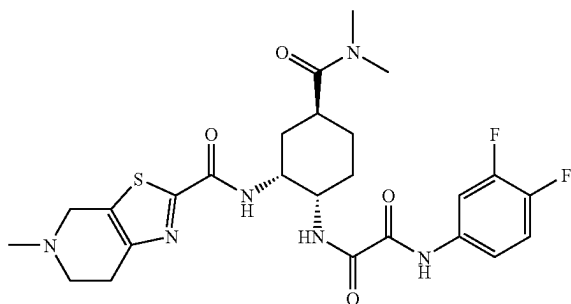


The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 259 and condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.55-1.62(1H,m), 1.67-1.98(2H,m), 2.01-2.18(4H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.77-3.00(4H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.65-3.78(2H,m), 4.06-4.15(1H,m), 4.66-4.73(1H,m), 6.85-6.94(2H,m), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.96(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.22-8.29(1H,m), 9.36(1H,br).

EXAMPLE 202

N¹-(3,4-Difluorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide



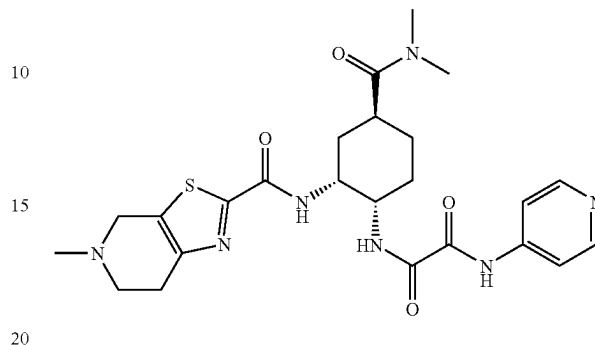
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 260 and condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.56-1.73(1H,m), 1.77-1.99(2H,m), 2.00-2.18(4H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.75-3.00(4H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.64-3.79(2H,m), 4.05-4.14(1H,m), 4.68-4.75(1H,m), 7.09-7.21(2H,m), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.72(1H,ddd,J=12.0, 7.1,2.6 Hz), 7.95(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.22(1H,br).

412

EXAMPLE 203

N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)-N²-(pyridin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



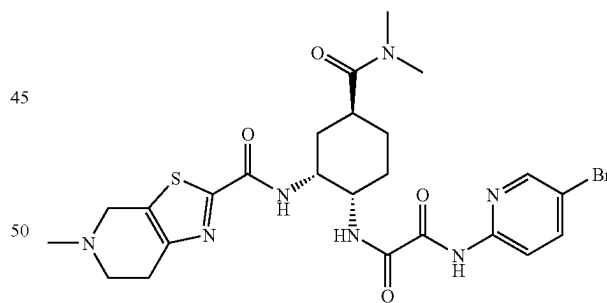
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 261, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.10(6H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.927(3H,s), 2.933(3H,s), 3.05-4.20(8H,m), 4.40-4.55(1H,m), 8.27(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.67(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.71(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.10-9.30(1H,br), 11.81(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 514(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 204

N¹-(5-Bromopyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 262, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 195.

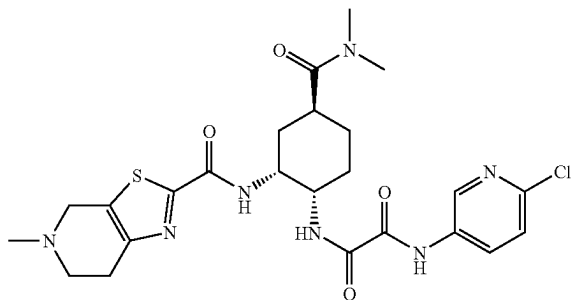
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.43-1.57(1H,m), 1.61-1.81(3H,m), 1.98-2.15(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.86(3H,s), 2.89-3.01(4H,m), 3.18(2H,br,s), 3.50(2H,br,s), 3.95-4.05(1H,m), 4.35-4.62(3H,m), 7.97(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.12(1H,dd,J=9.0,2.4 Hz), 8.52(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 8.70(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 9.18(1H,d,J=7.5 Hz), 10.25(1H,br,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 592(M+H)⁺.

413

EXAMPLE 205

N¹-(6-Chloropyridin-3-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The compound (200 mg) obtained in Referential Example 263, which was a crude product, was dissolved in methanol (10 ml) to heat the solution to 50° C., and a 1N aqueous solution (3 ml) of sodium hydroxide to stir the mixture for 5 minutes. To this mixture was added 1N hydrochloric acid to adjust the pH to a weak acidity. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure to obtain residue containing 2-[(2-chloropyridin-5-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetic acid. This residue and the compound (250 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (328 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (46 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 3 days. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=47:3) to obtain a free base of the title compound as a pale yellow solid. This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (862 µl) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. A small amount of methanol was added to the residue, and ethyl acetate and diethyl ether were added dropwise while irradiating with ultrasonic waves to collect precipitate formed by filtration. This product was washed with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (229 mg).

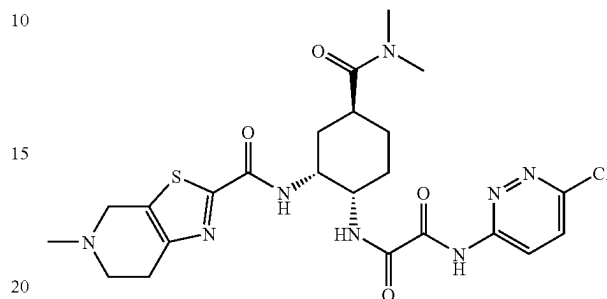
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46-1.75(4H,m), 1.99-2.09(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92-2.95(7H,m), 3.12-3.53(3H,m), 3.70(1H,br,s), 3.99-4.06(1H,m), 4.44(2H,br,s), 4.69,4.73(1H, each s), 7.53(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.23-8.25(1H,m), 8.72-8.77(1H,m), 8.85(1H,s), 9.07,9.16(1H,each d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.09(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.78(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

414

EXAMPLE 206

N¹-(6-Chloropyridazin-3-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



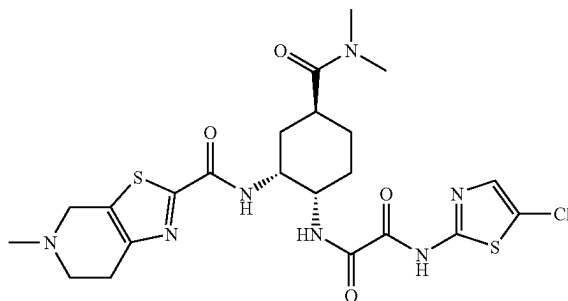
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 264, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44-1.57(1H,m), 1.62-1.80(3H,m), 2.00-2.10(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.86(3H,br.s), 2.94(3H,s), 2.95-3.01(1H,m), 3.14-3.23(2H,m), 3.45-3.63(2H,m), 3.96-4.08(1H,m), 4.40-4.60(3H,m), 7.97(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.26(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 8.69(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.20(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.06(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 549(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 207

N¹-(5-Chlorothiazol-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 265, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

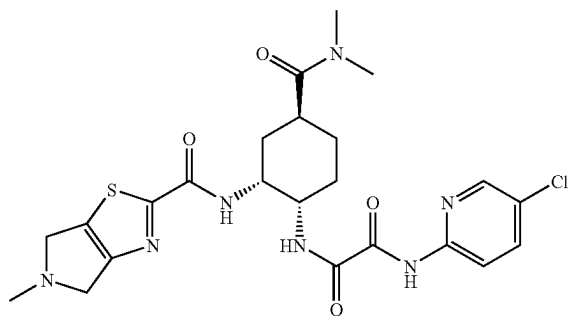
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-2.10(6H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 3.05-4.23(8H,m), 4.32-4.80(2H,m), 7.59(1H,s), 8.63(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.14(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 554(M+H)⁺.

415

EXAMPLE 208

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



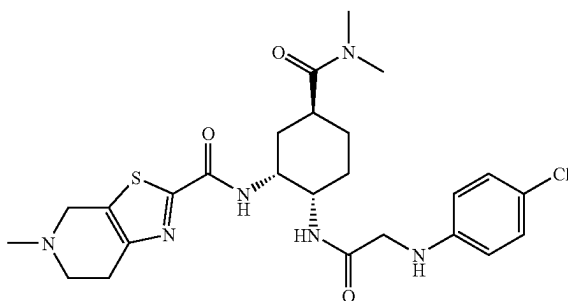
The compound (210 mg) obtained in Referential Example 266 and the compound (350 mg) obtained in Referential Example 272 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (205 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (290 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1). The thus-obtained pale yellow solids were dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (0.46 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (248 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.47-1.50(1H,m), 1.69-1.76(3H,m), 1.98-2.06(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.98-3.05(1H,m), 3.10(3H,s), 3.49-4.62(6H,m), 7.98-8.03(2H,m), 8.45(1H,s), 8.73(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.10(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 10.30(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 534(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 209

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-{[2-(4-Chloroanilino)acetyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



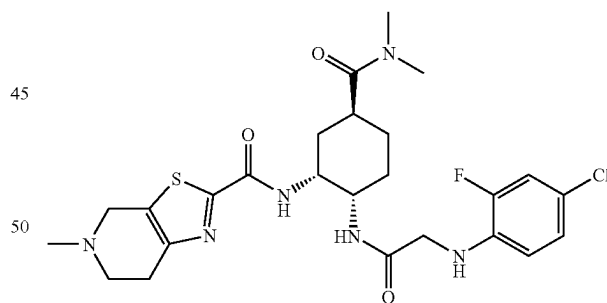
416

The compound (2.3 g) obtained in Referential Example 267 was dissolved in ethanol (10 ml), and a 1N aqueous solution (20 ml) of sodium hydroxide was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours. After 1N hydrochloric acid (20 ml) was added to the reaction mixture, the mixture was diluted with water and stirred for 30 minutes. Insoluble matter deposited was collected by filtration to obtain 2-(4-chloroanilino)acetic acid (1.05 g) as a colorless solid. This solid and the compound (0.25 g) obtained in Referential Example 253 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (0.11 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.23 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4 days. After the reaction mixture was diluted with chloroform and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride, the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=97:3). The thus-obtained pale yellow solid was dissolved in ethanol, a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (0.15 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.41(1H,m), 1.59-1.80(3H,m), 1.82-1.95(2H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 2.99-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.22(2H,m), 3.42-3.60(2H,m), 3.60-3.77(2H,m), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 4.35-4.48(2H,m), 4.68-4.80(1H,m), 6.40(1H,d,J=6.7 Hz), 6.44(1H,d,J=6.7 Hz), 6.90(1H,d,J=6.7 Hz), 7.00(1H,d,J=6.7 Hz), 7.70-7.89(1H,m), 8.35-8.42(1H,m), 11.05-11.38(1H,m).

EXAMPLE 210

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-{[2-(4-Chloro-2-fluoroanilino)acetyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



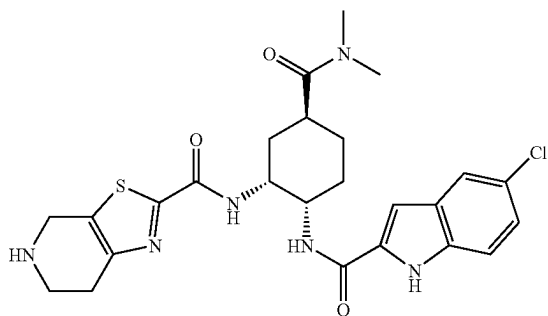
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 268, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 209.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.42(1H,m), 1.55-1.78(3H,m), 1.80-2.00(2H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 2.99-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.22(2H,m), 3.42-3.60(2H,m), 3.60-3.77(2H,m), 3.85-4.00(1H,m), 4.33-4.48(2H,m), 4.65-4.80(1H,m), 6.41(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 6.73(1H,dt,J=8.8,1.2 Hz), 7.08(1H,dd,J=11.7,1.2 Hz), 7.78-7.92(1H,m), 8.35-8.42(1H,m), 11.18-11.50(1H,m).

417

EXAMPLE 211

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



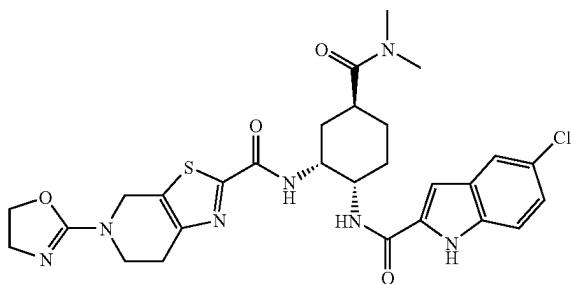
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 432 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 34 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-2.15(6H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 2.95-3.15(2H,m), 3.35-3.55(2H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.46(2H,s), 4.50-4.65(1H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.2 Hz), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.30-8.45(1H,br), 9.30-9.50(1H,br), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 529(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 212

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-[(4,5-dihydrooxazol-2-yl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide

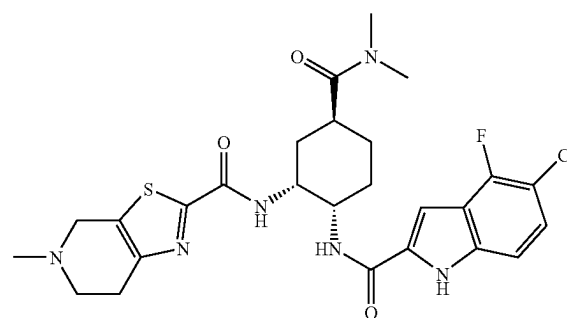


The compound (250 mg) obtained in Example 211 was suspended in methylene chloride, and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to fully stir the mixture. The resultant organic layer was separated and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Triethylamine (0.5 ml) and bromoethyl isocyanate (43 μl) were then added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 20 hours. A saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=22:3) to obtain the title compound (227 mg).

418

EXAMPLE 213

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-Chloro-4-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (140 mg) obtained in Referential Example 144 was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (10 ml), and the compound (100 mg) obtained in Referential Example 274, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (140 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (110 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned in water-ethyl acetate, and a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19), giving tert-butyl (1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-(5-chloro-4-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexylcarbamate (260 mg).

The thus-obtained powder was dissolved in methylene chloride (5 ml), and a 4N dioxane solution (1.2 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. After the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3.5 hours, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Methylene chloride (10 ml) was added to the residue, and the mixture was concentrated. After this process was repeated 3 times, the residue was dried under reduced pressure to obtain crude N-[(1S,2R,4S)-2-amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-chloro-4-fluoroindole-2-carboxamide. This product was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 ml), and the compound (150 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (140 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (110 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned in a mixed solvent of water-ethyl acetate-tetrahydrofuran, and a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of

419

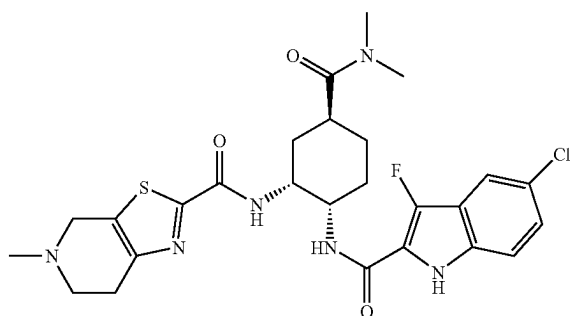
sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19) to obtain a free base of the title compound (270 mg). This product was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and a 1N ethanol solution (0.72 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. Crystals deposited were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (200 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.24-1.98(6H,m), 2.33-3.33(6H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 4.12(1H, br.s), 4.30-4.70(1H,m), 4.60(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,s), 7.27(2H,br.s), 8.37(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.43(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 12.11(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 214

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(5-Chloro-3-fluoroindol-2-yl) carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (250 mg) obtained in Referential Example 279 was dissolved in methylene chloride (60 ml), and a 4N dioxane solution (1.3 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. After the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5.5 hours, a 4N dioxane solution (0.65 ml) of hydrochloric acid was additionally added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, methylene chloride (10 ml) was added to the residue, and the mixture was concentrated. This process was repeated 3 times. The residue was dried under reduced pressure, and the thus—obtained crude product was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 ml), and the compound (160 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (150 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (120 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was partitioned in a mixed solvent of water-ethyl acetate, and a water layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified twice by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=2:23→1:9) to obtain a free base (260 mg) of the title compound. This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, and a 1N ethanol solution (0.69 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off. The residue was dissolved in

420

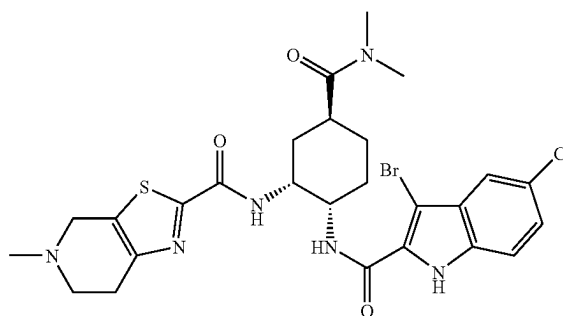
methanol, and diethyl ether and hexane were added. The thus-obtained crystals were collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (230 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.56(1H,m), 1.73-1.78(3H,m), 1.94-2.02(2H,m), 2.33-3.55(6H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 4.17(1H,br.s), 4.30-4.80(1H,br), 4.62(1H,br.s), 7.25(1H,d,J=8.8,1.7 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8,1.7 Hz), 7.65(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.72(1H,d,J=5.9 Hz), 8.74(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 10.85-11.35(1H,br), 11.71(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 215

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(3-Bromo-5-chloroindol-2-yl) carbonyl]-amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



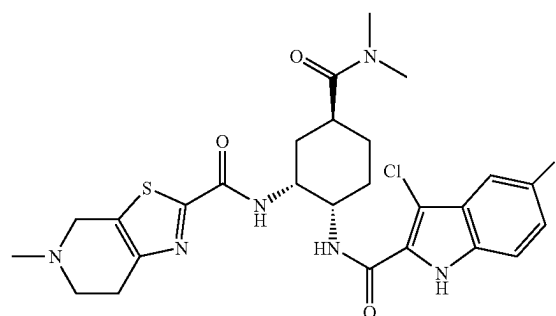
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 282 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid and condensing the— thus treated compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.51-2.01(6H,m), 2.33-3.29(7H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.88(3H,s), 3.01(3H,s), 4.20(1H,br.s), 4.48(1H,br), 4.70-4.73(1H,m), 7.29(1H,dd,J=8.9,1.8 Hz), 7.45-7.49(2H,m), 7.80(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.76(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 12.31(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 622(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 216

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(3-Chloro-5-fluoroindol-2-yl) carbonyl]-amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



421

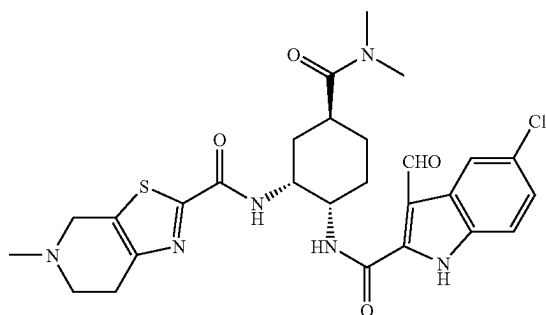
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 284 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.51(1H,m), 1.75-2.00(5H, m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.10-3.21(3H,m), 3.29-3.41(4H,m), 4.11-4.21(1H,m), 4.62-4.75(1H,m), 7.14 (1H,dt,J=8.8,2.4 Hz), 7.24(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.4 Hz), 7.45(1H, dd,J=8.8,4.4 Hz), 7.69(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 8.79(1H,d,J=2.5 Hz), 12.10(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 217

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloro-3-formylindol-2-yl) carbonyl]-amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



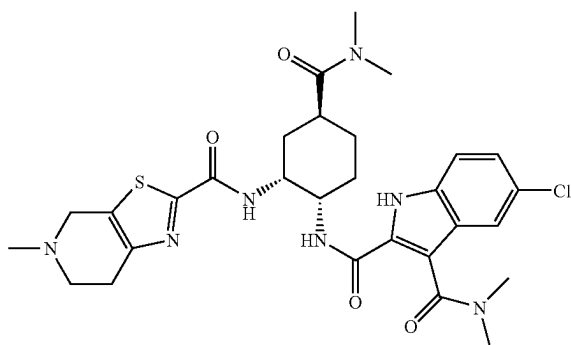
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 286 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.51(1H,m), 1.75-1.89(4H, m), 1.90-2.01(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.05-3.33(3H,m), 3.60-3.71(1H,m), 4.11-4.21(1H,m), 4.32-4.44(1H,m), 4.62-4.75(2H,m), 7.35(1H,dd,J=8.0,1.4 Hz), 7.56(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.21(1H,d,J=1.4 Hz), 8.65(1H,t,J=7.4 Hz), 9.92(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 10.15(1H,t,J=9.1 Hz), 13.00(1H, dt,J=6.4).

MS (FAB) m/z: 571(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 218

5-Chloro-N²-(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-N³,N³-dimethylindole-2,3-dicarboxamide hydrochloride



422

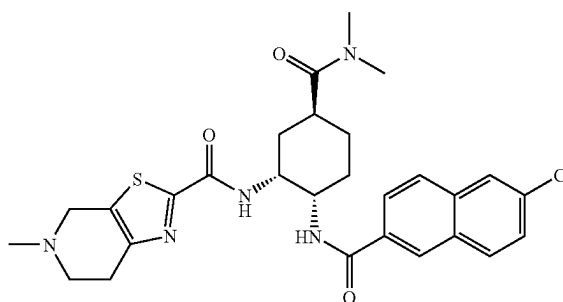
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 289 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.51(1H,m), 1.75-2.01(5H, m), 2.78(9H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 3.01(3H,s), 3.10-3.33(3H,m), 3.40-3.50(1H,m), 3.65-3.75(1H,m), 4.01-4.09(1H,m), 4.32-4.44(1H,m), 4.62-4.75(2H,m), 7.25(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 7.40-7.50(2H,m), 8.62(1H,br), 9.08(1H,br), 12.28(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 614(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 219

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(6-Chloro-2-naphthoyl)amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (270 mg) obtained in Referential Example 294 was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and a 1N ethanol solution (10 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture for 90 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (7 ml). The compound (110 mg) obtained in Referential Example 10, 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (100 mg) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (70 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 23 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and water was added to conduct extraction with ethyl acetate. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified twice by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=20:1→10:1). The thus-obtained free base was dissolved in methanol, and a 1N ethanol solution (0.30 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added. The residue was washed with ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (130 mg).

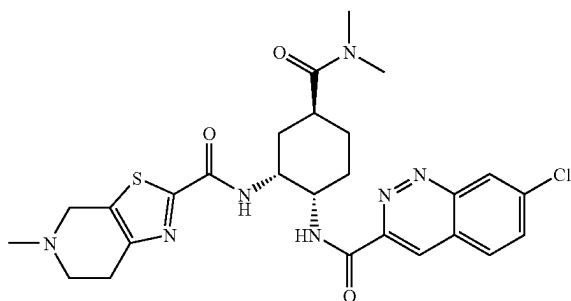
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H, m), 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.00-3.22(3H,m), 3.53(2H,br), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.30-4.70 (3H,m), 7.59(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.2 Hz), 7.87(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.96(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.02(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.10(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.33(1H,s), 8.43(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.52(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 554(M+H)⁺.

423

EXAMPLE 220

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl]cinnoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



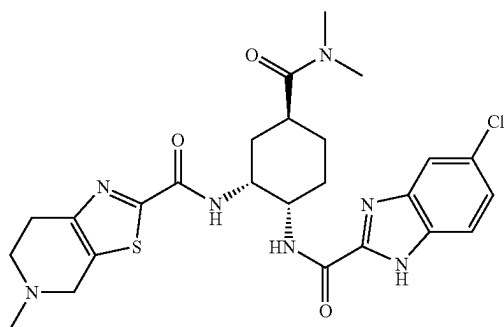
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 299 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50-1.65(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H,m), 2.05-2.15(1H,m), 2.15-2.30(1H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.85-3.05(8H,m), 3.15-3.25(2H,m), 3.40-3.80(1H,m), 4.25-4.80(4H,m), 8.02(1H,dd,J=8.8,2.0 Hz), 8.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.66(1H,s), 8.91(1H,s), 8.96(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.53(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 556(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 221

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chlorobenzimidazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 300 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

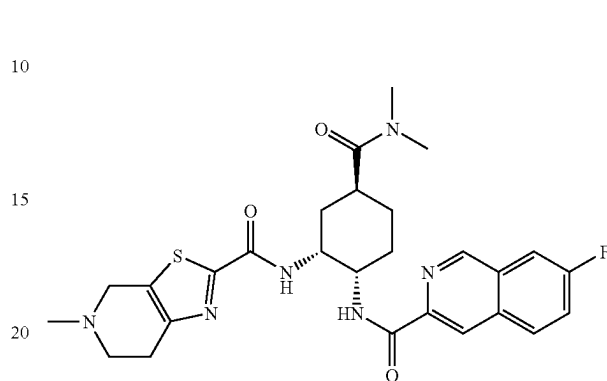
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.60-1.83(3H,m), 2.00-2.20(2H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.92(6H,s), 3.00-3.30(3H,m), 3.47(2H,br.s), 4.10-4.75(4H,m), 7.30(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.62(1H,d,J=12.5 Hz), 7.63(1H,s), 8.75-8.87(1H,m), 9.09(1H,dd,J=12.5,8.8 Hz), 11.20-11.40(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 546(M+H)⁺.

424

EXAMPLE 222

N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl]-7-fluoroisoquinoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



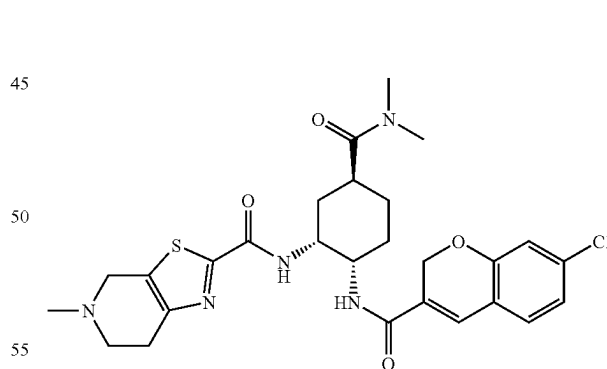
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 304 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.85(3H,m), 1.95-2.05(1H,m), 2.10-2.20(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.90-3.90(5H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 4.10-4.75(4H,m), 7.75-7.85(1H,m), 8.00-8.05(1H,m), 8.30-8.35(1H,m), 8.61(1H,s), 8.93(2H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.31(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 539(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 223

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(7-Chloro-2H-chromen-3-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (220 mg) obtained in Referential Example 252 was dissolved in methanol (10 ml), and 10% palladium on carbon (180 mg) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere. After the reaction mixture was filtered, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 ml). The compound (108 mg) obtained in Referential Example 306, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (78 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (196 mg) were added to

425

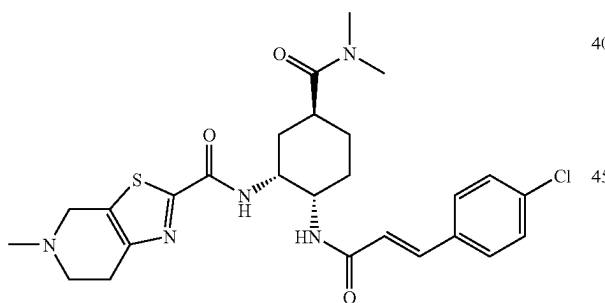
stir the mixture at room temperature for a night. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride: methanol=100:3) to obtain a pale yellow foamy substance. This foamy substance was dissolved in methylene chloride (2 ml), a 1N ethanol solution (363 μ l) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Diethyl ether was added to the residue. Precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (175 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 1.40-1.52(1H,m), 1.55-1.96(5H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 3.01-3.12(1H,m), 3.13-3.28(2H,m), 3.40-3.85(2H,m), 3.92-4.00(1H,m), 4.35-4.80(3H,m), 4.84(1H,d,J=14.5 Hz), 4.89(1H,d,J=14.5 Hz), 6.92(1H,s), 6.98(1H,dd,J=8.1,1.7 Hz), 7.08(1H,s), 7.17(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.12(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z : 558(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 224

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(E)-3-(4-Chlorophenyl)-2-propenyl]-amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 307 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

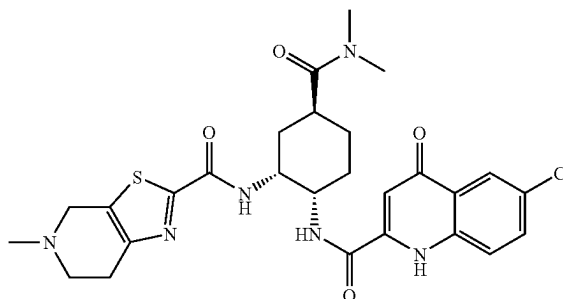
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 1.35-1.55(1H,m), 1.55-1.90(4H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.05-3.30(3H,m), 3.40-3.55(1H,m), 3.60-3.75(1H,m), 3.93-4.03(2H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 4.50-4.60(1H,m), 4.60-4.75(1H,m), 6.65(1H,d,J=15.7 Hz), 7.35(1H,d,J=15.7 Hz), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.55(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.03(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.34(1H,br.s), 11.25-11.70(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z : 530(M+H) $^+$.

426

EXAMPLE 225

6-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinoline-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



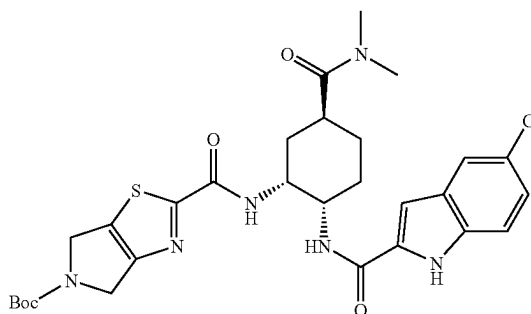
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 309 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 1.43-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-2.10(3H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.05-3.20(2H,m), 3.20-3.80(5H,m), 4.08-4.20(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 4.60-4.70(1H,m), 4.70(1H,d,J=15.6 Hz), 6.77(1H,br.s), 7.73(1H,d,J=8.9 Hz), 7.94(1H,d,J=8.9 Hz), 7.97(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.54(1H,br.s), 8.80-9.00(1H,m), 11.70-12.50(1H,br), 11.70-12.50(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z : 571(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 226

tert-Butyl 2-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-amino)carbonyl]-4,6-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-5-carboxylate



1) The compound (1.46 g) obtained in Referential Example 310 was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and an ethanol solution (10 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added at room temperature to stir the mixture for 1 hour. After completion of the reaction, the solvent was distilled off, ethanol was added, the mixture was concentrated, and diisopropyl ether was added to the residue to solidify it. The resultant solids were collected by filtration to obtain N-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-amino-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-chloroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride.

427

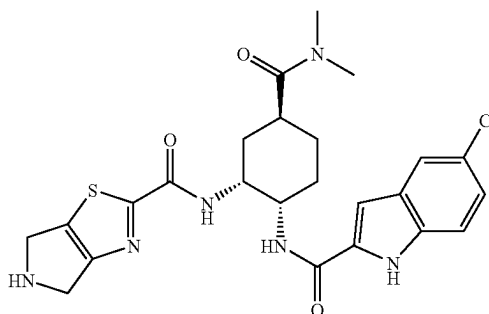
2) This product was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml), and the compound (1.31 g) obtained in Referential Example 406, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (640 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.36 g) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 3 days. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19) to obtain the title compound (1.22 g).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 1.70-2.40(6H,m), 2.80-3.20(7H,m), 4.15-4.25(1H,m), 4.55-4.80(5H,m), 6.83(1H,d, J=1.5 Hz), 7.20(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.33(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.40-7.50(1H,m), 7.61(1H,br.s), 7.72-7.80(1H,m), 9.41(1H, br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 615(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 227

5-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-2-[[[(5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]-thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (1.22 g) obtained in Referential Example 226 was dissolved in methylene chloride (5 ml), and an ethanol solution (10 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture for 1 hour. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to conduct liquid separation, and the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:9) to obtain a free base (636 mg) of the title compound as a colorless glassy solid. The free base (200 mg) was dissolved in a 1N ethanol solution (1 ml) of hydrochloric acid. After the solution was concentrated, ethyl acetate was added to solidify the residue. The thus-obtained colorless powder was collected by filtration and dried to obtain the title compound (195 mg).

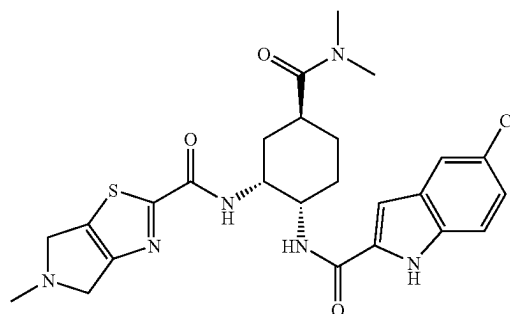
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.05(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.98-3.15(1H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.44(2H,br.s), 4.58(3H,br.s), 7.05(1H,d, J=1.5 Hz), 7.16(1H,dd, J=8.7, 1.8 Hz), 7.42(1H,d, J=8.7 Hz), 7.68(1H,d, J=1.8 Hz), 8.38(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 8.42(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 10.45-10.65(2H,br), 11.78(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 515(M+H)⁺.

428

EXAMPLE 228

5-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]indole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



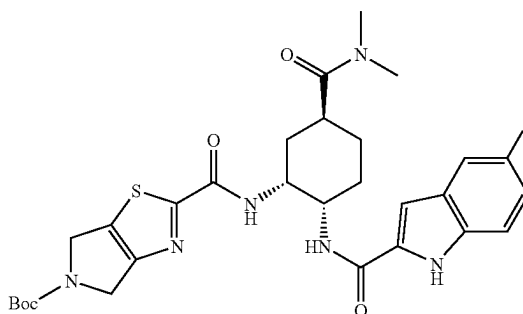
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 227 and formalin in a similar manner to the process described in Example 18.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.05(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.98-3.06(1H,m), 3.06(3H,s), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.30-5.00(5H,br.s), 7.04(1H,d, J=1.7 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.1 Hz), 7.41(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d, J=2.1 Hz), 8.36(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 8.42(1H,d, J=8.1 Hz), 11.78(1H,br.s), 12.14(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 529(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 229

tert-Butyl 2-[[[(1R,2S,5S)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-fluoroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]amino]-carbonyl]-4,6-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-5-carboxylate



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 311 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 406 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 226.

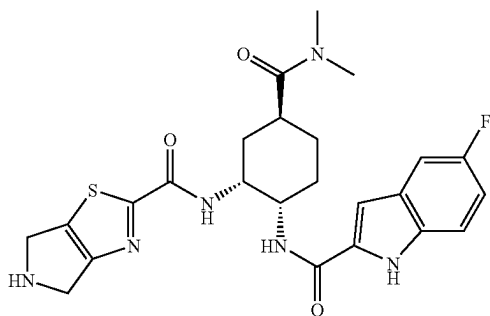
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.53(9H,s), 1.60-2.40(6H,m), 2.80-3.20(7H,m), 4.15-4.25(1H,m), 4.55-4.80(5H,m), 6.84-6.87(1H,m), 7.01(1H,dt, J=2.4, 9.1 Hz), 7.25-7.30(1H,m), 7.34(1H,dd, J=9.1, 4.3 Hz), 7.42-7.49(1H,m), 7.70-7.80(1H,m), 9.37-9.45(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 599(M+H)⁺.

429

EXAMPLE 230

N-{(1S,2R,4S)-2-[(5,6-Dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-5-fluoroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



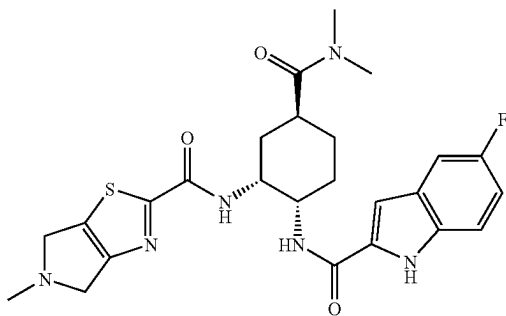
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 229 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 227.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 2.98-3.15(1H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(2H,m), 4.58(3H,br.s), 6.97-7.10(2H,m), 7.35-7.47(2H,m), 8.34(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.41(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 10.53(2H,br.s), 11.68(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 499(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 231

N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)-5-fluoroindole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 230 and formalin in a similar manner to the process described in Example 18.

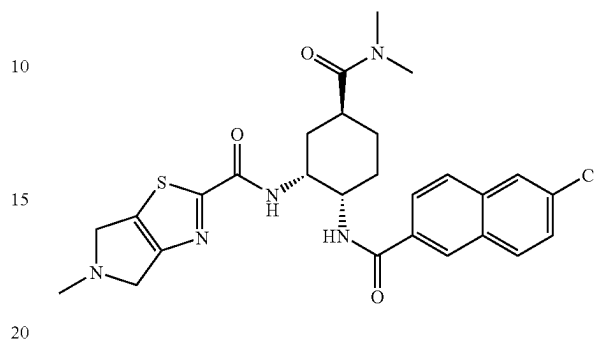
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.10(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.90-3.20(7H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,m), 4.30-5.00(5H,br.s), 6.95-7.10(2H,m), 7.35-7.50(2H,m), 8.33(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.41(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 11.67(1H,br.s), 12.37(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 513(M+H)⁺.

430

EXAMPLE 232

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(6-Chloro-2-naphthoyl)amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



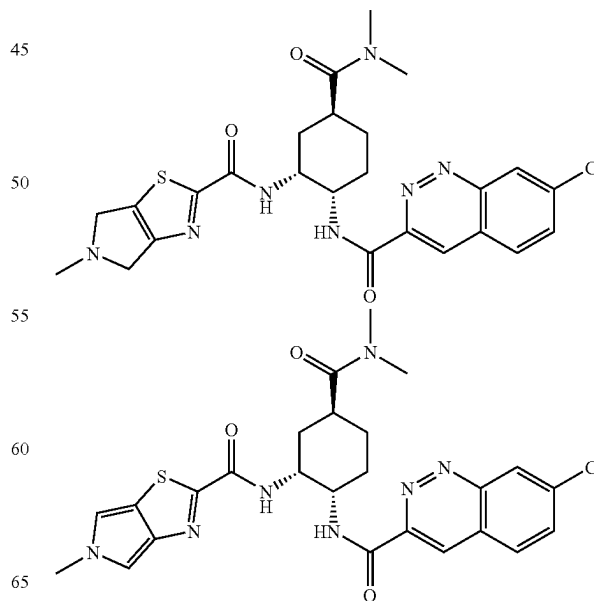
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 294 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 226.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.48-1.56(1H,m), 1.71-1.84(3H,m), 1.95-2.04(2H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 3.06-3.15(2H,m), 4.13-4.14(1H,m), 4.52-4.63(4H,m), 7.60(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.87(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.96(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.01(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.10(1H,s), 8.32(1H,s), 8.45(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.51(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 540(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 233

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)-cinnoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride and 7-chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)-cinnoline-3-carboxamide



431

A 4N dioxane solution (3.0 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to a suspension of the compound (330 mg) obtained in Referential Example 299 in a mixed solvent of dioxane (3.0 ml) and methylene chloride (3.0 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the thus-obtained white powder was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5.0 ml), and the compound (172 mg) obtained in Referential Example 293, 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (130 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (192 mg) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 15 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue. The resultant organic layer was washed with saturated saline and then dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1). A 1N ethanol solution (0.35 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to a solution of the thus-obtained high-polar compound mainly formed in ethanol (4.0 ml), and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. Ethanol and diethyl ether were added to the residue, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain 7-chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)cinnoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride (184 mg) a main product.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.50-1.65(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H,m), 2.03-2.12(1H, m), 2.15-2.30(1H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.90-3.05(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 4.28-4.37(1H, m); 4.40-4.95(5H,br), 8.02(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.66(1H,s), 8.91(1H,s), 8.97(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 9.43-9.57(1H,br), 11.75-11.95(0.5H,br), 12.35-11.55(0.5H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z : 542(M+H) $^+$.

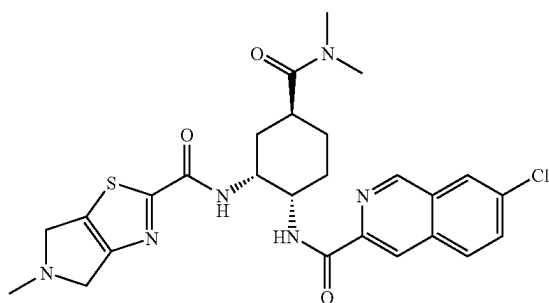
In the purification by the column chromatography on silica gel, low-polar 7-chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)cinnoline-3-carboxamide (98 mg) was also obtained as a by-product.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl $_3$) δ : 1.90-2.25 (6H,m), 2.85-3.00(1H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 3.91(3H,s), 4.43-4.54(1H,m), 4.86-4.95(1H,m), 6.70(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.19(1H,d,J=1.5 Hz), 7.59(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.76(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.95(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.53(1H,s), 8.64(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.73(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 540(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 234

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)isoquinoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



432

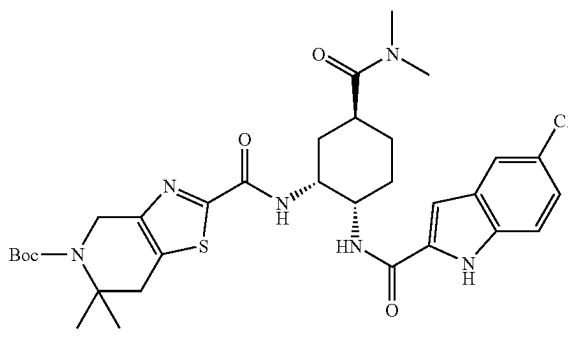
The compound (500 mg) obtained in Referential Example 146 was dissolved in an ethanol solution (5 ml) of hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (7 ml), and the compound (299 mg) obtained in Referential Example 293, 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (71 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (403 mg) were added to the solution to stir the mixture at room temperature for a night. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and methylene chloride were added to the residue to conduct liquid separation. The resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride. Organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7) to obtain a free base (260 mg) of the title compound as a pale yellow solid. This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, a 1N ethanol solution (961 μ l) of hydrochloric acid was added, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. A small amount of methanol was added to the residue, and diethyl ether was added dropwise to collect precipitate formed by filtration. This product was washed with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (260 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.47-1.56(1H,m), 1.71-1.75(3H,m), 1.95-1.99(1H,m), 2.12-2.15(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.98(1H,br,s), 3.05(3H,s), 4.19-4.22(1H,m), 4.44-4.52(3H,m), 4.74-4.88(2H,m), 7.87(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.7 Hz), 8.24(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.58(1H,s), 8.90-8.92(2H,m), 9.30(1H,s), 12.65-12.75(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z : 541(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 235

tert-Butyl 2-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(5-chloroindol-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-amino)carbonyl]-6,6-dimethyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-5(4H)-carboxylate



The compound (95.4 mg) obtained in Referential Example 316 was dissolved in diethyl ether (1 ml) in an argon atmosphere, and tert-butyllithium (1.60N pentane solution, 244 μ l) was added dropwise at -78°C . After the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at -78°C ., carbon dioxide was blown into the reaction mixture for 10 minutes. The

433

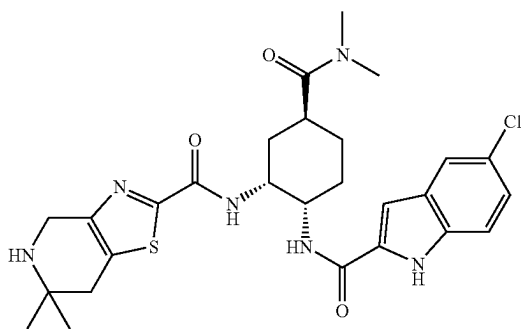
reaction mixture was heated to room temperature. After the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml). To the solution, were successively added the compound (178 mg) obtained in Referential Example 432, 1-hydroxy-benzotriazole monohydrate (48.0 mg) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (136 mg). The resultant mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated, and methylene chloride and a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate were added to the residue to separate an organic layer. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. The resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methanol:methylene chloride=1:19) to obtain the title compound (140 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50(9H,s), 1.52(3H,s), 1.54(3H,s), 1.70-2.10(4H,m), 2.15-2.45(2H,m), 2.80-3.20(9H,m), 4.10-4.25(1H,br), 4.60-4.75(3H,m), 6.85(1H,br.s), 7.21(1H,dd, J=8.8, 1.8 Hz), 7.34(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.48(1H,d, J=7.3 Hz), 7.61-7.63(1H,m), 7.89(1H,br.s), 9.27(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 657(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 236

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-6,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 235 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 227.

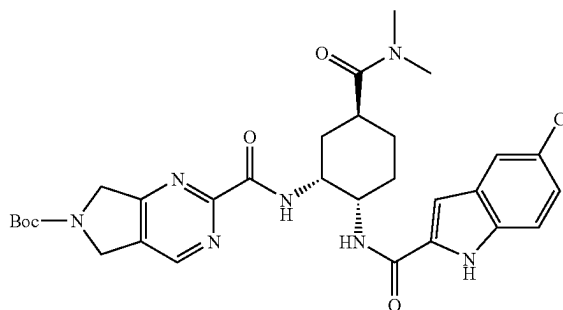
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40(6H,s), 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-2.05(5H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.95-3.15(6H,m), 4.05-4.20(1H,br), 4.25-4.45(2H,m), 4.55-4.65(1H,m), 7.06(1H,d, J=1.7 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d, J=2.0 Hz), 8.34-8.39(2H,m), 9.77(1H,br.s), 9.84(1H,br.s), 11.79(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H)⁺.

434

EXAMPLE 237

tert-Butyl 2-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-6,6-dimethyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[4,5-c]pyrimidine-6-carboxylate



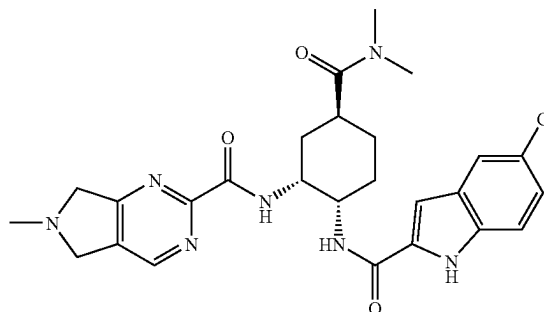
The compound (1.27 g) obtained in Referential Example 50 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (48 ml), and lithium hydroxide (117 mg) and water (6.0 ml) were added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 4.5 hours. The reaction mixture was dried to solid under reduced pressure to obtain a crude carboxylic acid lithium salt (1.24 g). This product was condensed with the compound obtained in Referential Example 432 in a similar manner to the process described in the step 2) of Example 226 to obtain the title compound.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.50-1.70(1H,m), 1.54(9H,s), 1.80-2.10(3H,m), 2.25-2.50(2H,m), 2.85-2.95(1H,m), 2.99(3H,s), 3.14(3H,s), 4.15-4.25(1H,m), 4.65-4.75(1H,m), 4.80-4.90(4H,m), 6.97(1H,s), 7.15-7.25(1H,m), 7.30-7.40(1H,m), 7.60-7.65(1H,m), 8.15-8.25(1H,m), 8.40-8.45(1H,m), 8.75-8.85(1H,m), 9.40-9.45(1H,m).

MS (ESI) m/z: 611(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 238

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-6-methyl-6,7-dihydro-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]pyrimidine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The compound (367 mg) obtained in Example 237 was dissolved in methylene chloride (10 ml), and trifluoroacetic acid (10 ml) was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was dried to solid under reduced pressure. The title compound was obtained

435

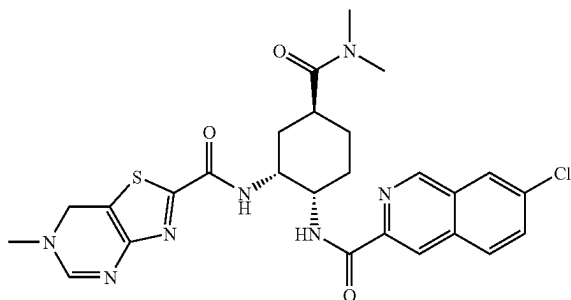
from the thus-obtained crude product and formalin in a similar manner to the process described in Example 18.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-2.10(5H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.90-3.00(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 4.10-4.20(1H,m), 4.55-4.65(1H,m), 4.65-4.90(4H,br), 7.06(1H,s), 7.15(1H,dd, J=8.7, 2.1 Hz), 7.41(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.66(1H,d, J=1.7 Hz), 8.35-8.45(1H,m), 8.57(1H,d, J=8.1 Hz), 9.00(1H,s), 11.80(1H,s), 11.90-12.20(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 524(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 239

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(6-methyl-6,7-dihydrothiazolo[4,5-d]pyrimidin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]isoquinoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



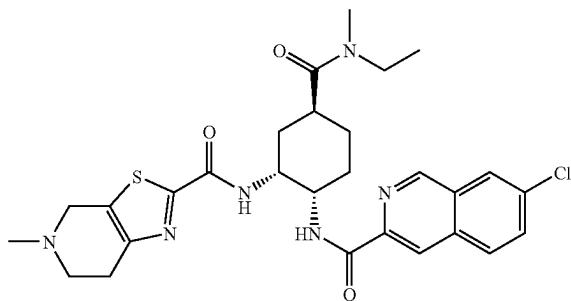
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 146 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 322 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 49.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.15(2H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.90-3.05(1H,m), 3.26(3H,s), 4.20-4.55(2H,m), 5.00(2H,s), 7.91(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.27(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.37(1H,s), 8.54(1H,s), 8.62(1H,s), 8.79(1H,d, J=8.3 Hz), 8.94(1H,d, J=8.1 Hz), 9.32(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 554(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 240

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]isoquinoline-3-carboxamide hydrochloride



436

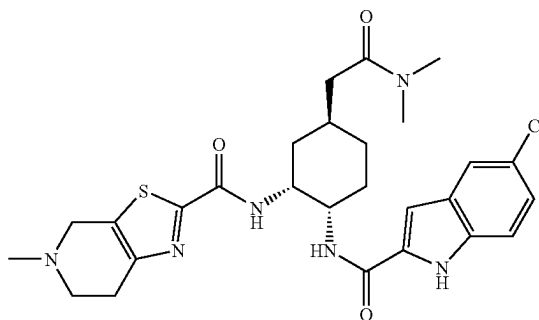
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 325 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.98, 1.04(3H,each t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.52-1.60(1H,m), 1.74-1.77(3H,m), 1.96-2.05(1H,m), 2.15-2.18(1H,m), 2.77-2.93(8H,m), 3.17-3.32(3H,m), 3.49(1H, br.s), 4.22(1H, br.s), 4.41-4.45(1H,m), 4.51(1H, br.s), 4.69-4.72(1H,m), 7.89(1H,d, J=8.7 Hz), 8.26(1H,d, J=8.7 Hz), 8.37(1H,s), 8.60(1H,s), 8.91-8.98(2H,m), 9.32(1H,d, J=6.6 Hz), 11.39, 11.53(1H,each m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 569(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 241

N-{(1R*,2S*,5S*)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[2-(dimethylamino)-2-oxoethyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



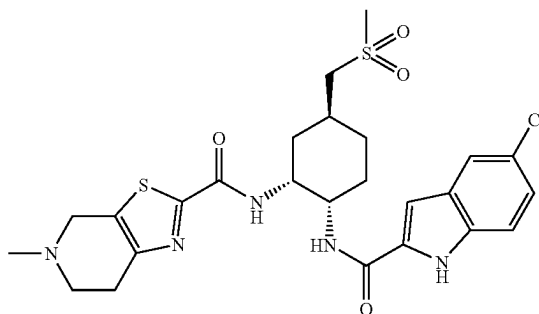
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 336 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.13-1.22(1H,m), 1.40-1.46(1H,m), 1.68-1.99(5H,m), 2.18-2.29(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.22(2H, br.s), 3.49(1H, br.s), 3.70(1H, br.s), 4.09-4.16(1H,m), 4.42-4.46(2H,m), 4.67(1H, br.s), 7.03(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd, J=8.5, 1.5 Hz), 7.42(1H,d, J=8.5 Hz), 7.67(1H,s), 8.01(1H,d, J=8.5 Hz), 8.40(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 11.35-11.58(1H,m), 11.76(1H, br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 557(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 242

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(methylsulfonyl)methyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



437

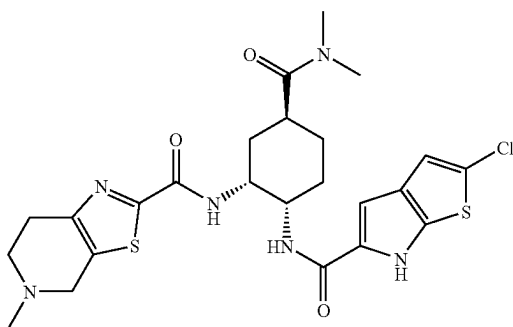
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 340 with an ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.40(1H,m), 1.55-1.62(1H,m), 1.70-1.76(1H,m), 1.88-1.94(1H,m), 2.03-2.07(1H,m), 2.13-2.17(1H,m), 2.30-2.33(1H,m), 2.43-3.48(10H,m), 3.60-3.73(2H,m), 4.11-4.16(1H,m), 4.40-4.42(2H,m), 4.68-4.73(1H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd, J=2.0, 8.8 Hz), 7.41(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,s), 8.26(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 8.39(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 11.78(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 564(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 243

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[(2-Chloro-6H-thieno[2,3-b]pyrrol-5-yl)carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



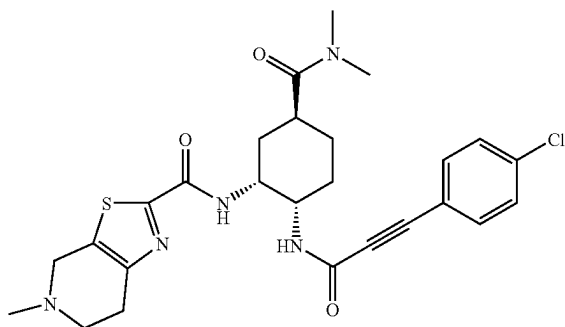
The title compound was obtained by hydrogenation of the compound obtained in Referential Example 252 and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 345 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 223.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.56-1.66(1H,m), 1.76-1.93(2H,m), 2.02-2.06(1H,m), 2.19-2.26(1H,m), 2.30-2.34(1H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.79-2.88(3H,m), 2.91-2.94(2H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.09(3H,s), 3.69-3.77(2H,m), 4.13-4.19(1H,m), 4.58-4.61(1H,m), 6.72(1H,s), 6.84(1H,s), 7.50(1H,d, J=7.3 Hz), 7.60(1H,d, J=5.8 Hz), 10.54(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 549(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 244

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[3-(4-Chlorophenyl)-2-propynoyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



438

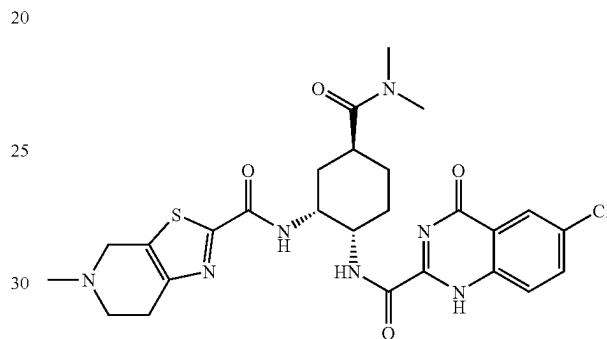
The title compound was obtained by hydrogenation of the compound obtained in Referential Example 252 and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 347 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 223.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.50(1H,m), 1.58-1.92(4H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 3.01-3.24(3H,m), 3.26-3.80(2H,m), 3.90-3.98(1H,m), 4.30-4.78(3H,m), 7.51(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.57(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.34(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.83(1H,d, J=7.8 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 528(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 245

6-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]-4-oxo-1,4-dihydroquinazoline-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



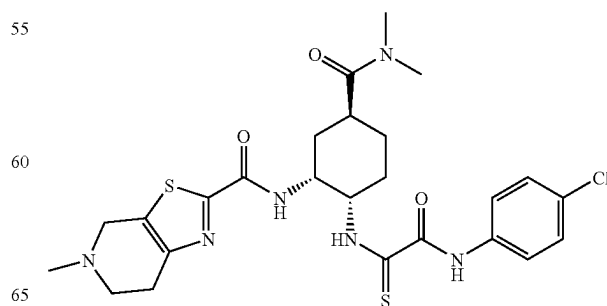
The title compound was obtained by hydrogenation of the compound obtained in Referential Example 252 and then condensing it with the compound obtained in Referential Example 349 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 223.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.70-1.90(3H,m), 1.90-2.20(3H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 2.98-3.80(4H,m), 4.05-4.20(2H,m), 4.35-4.80(3H,m), 7.63(1H,d, J=8.3 Hz), 7.90(1H,d, J=7.3 Hz), 8.75-9.00(2H,m), 11.00-11.50(1H,br), 12.53(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 573(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 246

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-oxoethane-thiyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



439

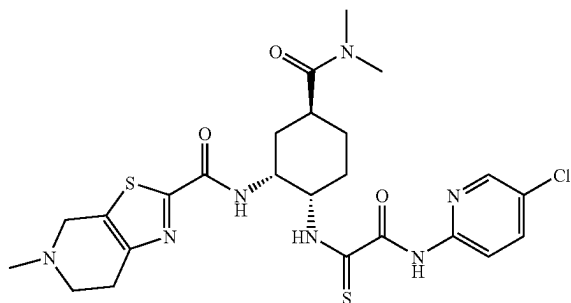
The compound (184 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound (150 mg) obtained in Referential Example 351 were dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol (1 ml)-methylene chloride (4 ml), the solution was heated and stirred at 150° C., and the heating was continued for 5 minutes after distilling off the solvent. After the reaction mixture was allowed to cool, the formed product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (59 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65-1.90(2H,m), 1.90-2.00(1H,m), 2.00-2.15(2H,m), 2.20-2.30(1H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.75-2.95(5H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.07(3H,s), 3.68(1H,d,J=15.2 Hz), 3.75(1H,d,J=15.7 Hz), 4.45-4.60(1H,m), 4.80-4.85(1H,m), 7.31(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.44(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.60(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 9.99(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 10.15(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 563(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 247

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide



The compound (184 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 and the compound (150 mg) obtained in Referential Example 353 were dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol (0.3 ml)-methylene chloride (0.3 ml), the solution was heated and stirred at 150° C., and the heating was continued for 5 minutes after distilling off the solvent reaction mixture was allowed to cool, the formed product was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=24:1) to obtain the title compound (52 mg).

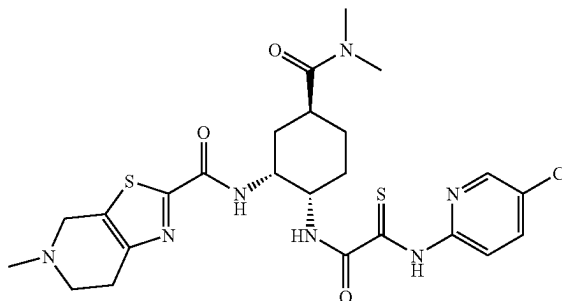
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.60-2.00(3H,m), 2.00-2.20(2H,m), 2.25-2.40(1H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.80-2.95(5H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.08(3H,s), 3.70(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.75(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.45-4.60(1H,m), 4.75-4.85(1H,m), 7.45(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.67(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.5 Hz), 8.18(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.31(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 10.06(1H,d,J=6.3 Hz), 10.56(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 564(M+H)⁺.

440

EXAMPLE 248

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-thioxoacetyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridine-2-carboxamide



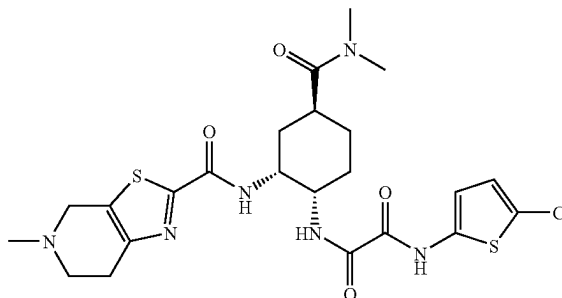
The compound (72 mg) obtained in Referential Example 355 and 2-amino-5-chloropyridine (100 mg) were dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol (0.2 ml)-methylene chloride (0.2 ml), the solution was heated and stirred at 150° C., and the heating was continued for 8 minutes after distilling off the solvent. After the reaction mixture was allowed to cool, the formed product was purified by preparative thin-layer chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=23:2) to obtain the title compound (4 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.60-2.00(3H,m), 2.00-2.20(3H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.75-3.00(5H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.05(3H,s), 3.65-3.80(2H,m), 4.05-4.15(1H,m), 4.70-4.80(1H,m), 7.28(1H,d), 7.43(1H,d,J=9.3 Hz), 7.75(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.7 Hz), 8.41(1H,d,J=2.7 Hz), 9.05(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.56(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 564(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 249

N¹-(5-Chloro-2-thienyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 356, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.60-1.85(3H,m), 1.90-2.15(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.90-3.15(1H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 3.15-3.30(2H,m), 3.50-3.80(2H,m), 3.95-4.05

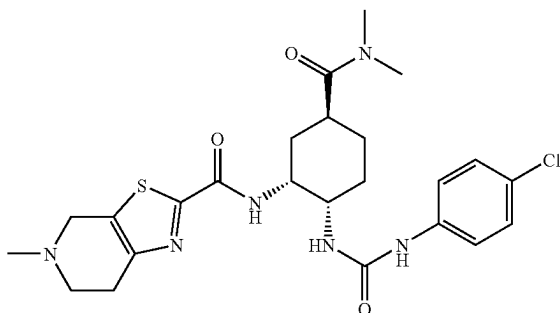
441

(1H,m), 4.35-4.90(3H,m), 6.90(1H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 6.94(1H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 8.72(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.13(1H,br.s), 11.21(1H,br.s), 12.32(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 553(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 250

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(4-Chloroanilino)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



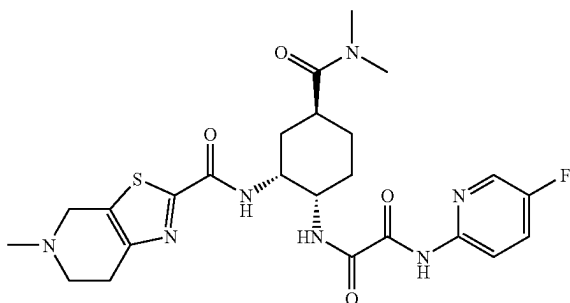
4-Chlorophenyl isocyanate (76.8 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (183 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 in methylene chloride (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1→10:1) to distil off the solvent. The residue was dissolved in ethanol (2 ml) and methylene chloride (2 ml), a 1N ethanol solution (0.4 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was solidified with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (160 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.50(1H,m), 1.60-1.90(5H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 3.00(3H,s), 3.10-3.60(4H,m), 3.60-3.90(2H,m), 4.35-4.80(3H,m), 6.26(1H,br.s), 7.23(-2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.37(2H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.53(1H,br.s), 8.72(1H,br.s), 11.35, 11.67(total 1H, each s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 519(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 251

N¹-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl]-N²-(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 357, condensing

442

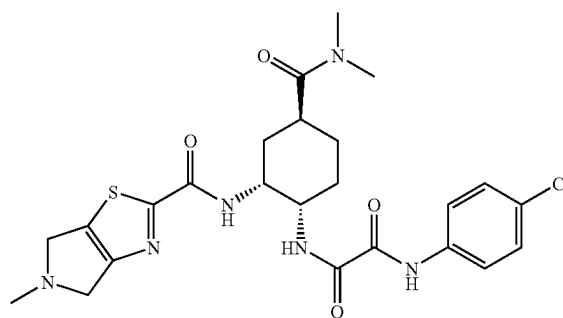
the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.47-1.53(1H,m), 1.68-1.75(3H,m), 1.99-2.10(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.80-3.00(1H,m), 2.95(6H,s), 3.18-3.21(2H,m), 3.40-3.80(2H,m), 3.87-4.82(4H,m), 7.82-7.85(1H,m), 8.01-8.05(1H,m), 8.40(1H,d,J=2.9 Hz), 8.71(1H,d,J=7.7 Hz), 9.13(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 10.27(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 532(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 252

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



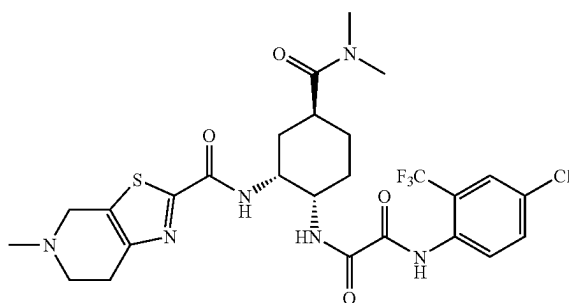
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 242 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 272 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.47-1.51(1H,m), 1.69-1.75(3H,m), 1.98-2.05(2H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.98-3.04(1H,m), 3.10(3H,s), 3.40-4.61(6H,m), 7.41(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.81(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.76(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.95(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 533(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 253

N¹-[4-Chloro-2-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



443

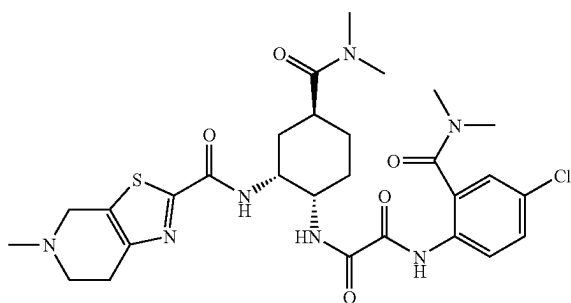
Thionyl chloride (1 ml) was added to a chloroform solution (10 ml) of the compound (269 mg) obtained in Referential Example 359, and the mixture was stirred at 75° C. for 30 minutes. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was dried. To the residue were added a methylene chloride solution (7 ml) of the compound (286 mg) obtained in Referential Example 253 and pyridine (3 ml) under ice cooling. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours while the temperature of the system was raised to room temperature. A saturated aqueous solution (10 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the reaction mixture to conduct liquid separation. The resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=20:1) and column chromatography on LH-20 (molecular sieve, methanol) to obtain a free base (90 mg) of the title compound as a pale yellow amorphous solid. Methylene chloride (5 ml), ethanol (5 ml) and a 1N ethanol solution (1 ml) of hydrochloric acid were added to this product, and distilling-off and drying were conducted under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.41-1.55(1H,m), 1.59-1.80(3H,m), 1.98-2.13(2H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.91(6H,s), 3.12-3.26(2H,m), 3.30-3.58(2H,m), 3.60-3.78(1H,m), 3.94-4.04(1H,m), 4.35-4.63(2H,m), 4.64-4.80(1H,m), 7.73-7.82(2H,m), 7.85(1H,s), 8.68-8.73(1H,m), 9.18(1H,br,s), 10.31(1H,s).

MS (ESI)m/z: 615(M+H).

EXAMPLE 254

N¹-{4-Chloro-2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]phenyl}-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino}-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 362, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

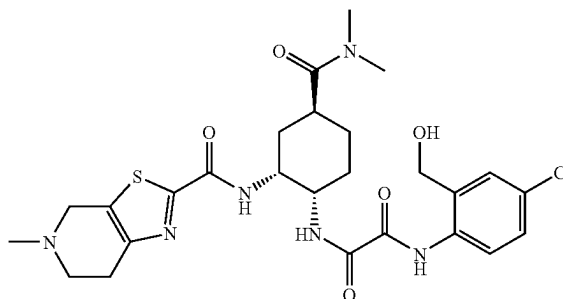
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.56(1H,m), 1.59-1.82(3H,m), 1.98-2.14(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 3.10-3.30(4H,m), 3.62-3.79(1H,m), 3.92-4.01(1H,m), 4.34-4.50(2H,m), 4.66-4.79(1H,m), 7.52(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 7.55(1H,dd,J=2.4, 8.5 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.75(1H,br), 9.10-9.24(1H,m), 10.52(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 618(M+H)⁺.

444

EXAMPLE 255

N¹-[4-Chloro-2-(hydroxymethyl)phenyl]-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



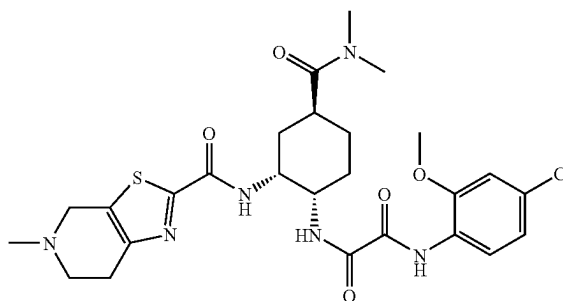
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 270 with 4-chloro-2-hydroxymethylaniline and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 199.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.57(1H,m), 1.58-1.81(3H,m), 1.98-2.14(2H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.93(6H,s), 3.12-3.58(4H,m), 3.67-3.80(1H,m), 3.94-4.04(1H,m), 4.37-4.50(1.5H,m), 4.55(2H,s), 4.67-4.80(1H,m), 5.77-5.92(0.5H,m), 7.37(1H,dd,J=2.4, 8.6 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 7.91(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.74-8.81(1H,m), 9.03-9.19(1H,m), 10.79(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 577(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 256

N¹-(4-Chloro-2-methoxyphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 364, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.55(1H,m), 1.58-1.79(3H,m), 1.94-2.11(2H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.92(6H,s), 3.05-3.55(4H,m), 3.65-3.75(1H,br), 3.90(3H,s), 3.91-4.00(1H,m), 4.36-4.47

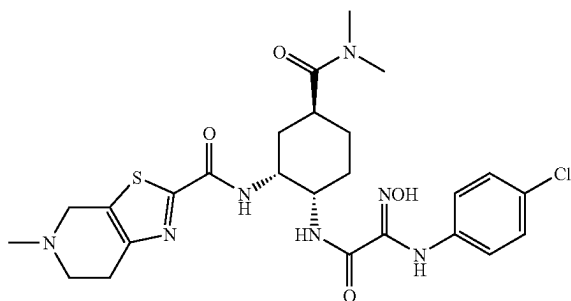
445

(2H,br), 4.65-4.77(1H,br), 7.04(1H,dd,J=8.5, 2.0 Hz), 7.20(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.06(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.65-8.80(1H,br), 9.10-9.25(1H,br), 9.74(1H,s), 11.10-11.35(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 577(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 257

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-(hydroxyimino)acetyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



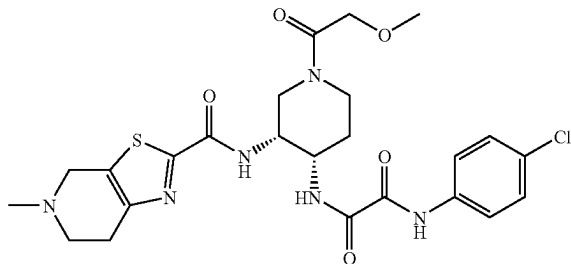
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 366 by hydrochloric acid treatment, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.41-1.53(1H,m), 1.57-1.77(3H,m), 1.88-2.04(2H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.91(6H,s), 3.00-3.60(4H,m), 3.65-3.74(1H,br), 3.87-3.96(1H,m), 4.37-4.48(2H,m), 4.66-4.76(1H,m), 6.70(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.04(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.10(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.40-8.53(2H,m), 8.57-8.66(1H,m), 10.30-10.47(1H,br), 10.66-10.76(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 562(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 258

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)-carbonyl]amino]piperidin-4-yl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 367 by hydrochloric acid treatment, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example

446

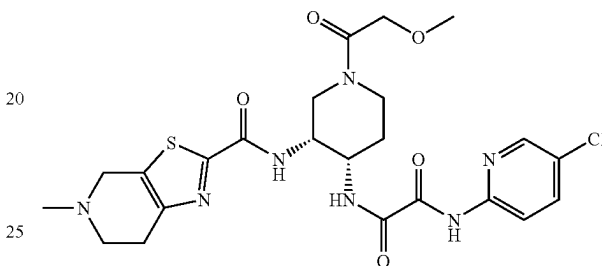
10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.72(1H,m), 1.99-2.22(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.03-4.80(17H,m), 7.40(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.83(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.56-8.73(1H,br), 9.14-9.33(1H,br), 10.83(1H,s), 11.20-11.55(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 549(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 259

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidin-4-yl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



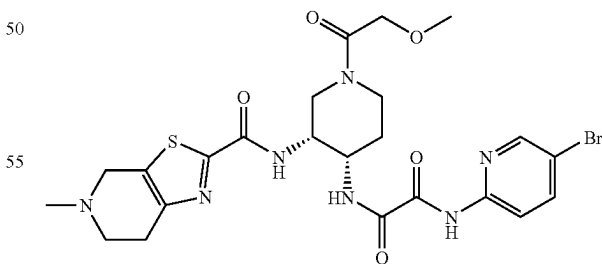
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 368 by hydrochloric acid treatment, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.72(1H,m), 1.98-2.20(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-4.77(17H,m), 7.20-7.35(0.8H,br), 7.48-7.56(0.2H,br), 7.94-8.07(1H,br), 8.40-8.70(1H,br), 8.48-8.70(1H,br), 9.23-9.45(1H,br), 10.21-10.35(1H,br), 11.30-11.70(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 550(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 260

N¹-(5-Bromopyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidin-4-yl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 369 by hydrochloric acid treatment, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

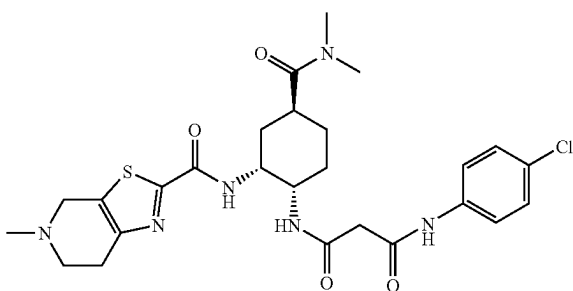
447

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.73(1H,m), 1.97-2.20(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.03-3.52(7H,m), 3.64-4.07(5H,m), 4.10-4.50(4H,m), 4.65-4.78(1H,m), 7.28-7.35(0.2H,m), 7.97(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.11(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.2 Hz), 8.51(1H,d, J=2.2 Hz), 8.55-8.67(1H,m), 9.22-9.41(1H,m), 10.20-10.31(0.8H,m), 11.25-11.70(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 594(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 261

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N³-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)malonamide hydrochloride



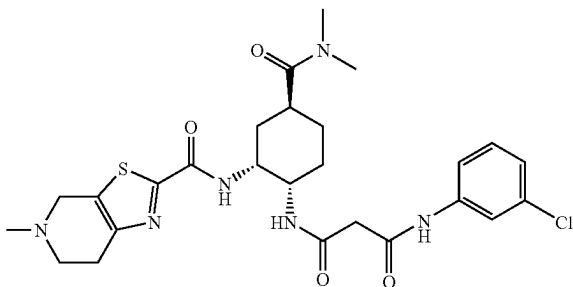
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 371 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32-1.50(1H,m), 1.55-1.87(5H,m), 2.78(3H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.99-3.00(1H,m), 3.05-3.50(5H,m), 3.65-3.75(1H,m), 3.80-3.92(1H,m), 4.35-4.45(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 4.65-4.80(1H,m), 7.34(2H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.58(2H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.00-8.10(1H,m), 8.30-8.40(1H,m), 10.29(1H,d, J=12.5 Hz), 12.40(1H,br.s)

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 262

N¹-(3-Chlorophenyl)-N³-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]-pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)malonamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 373 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then

448

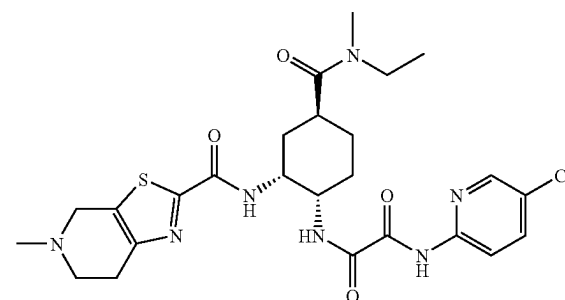
treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 5.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32-1.50(1H,m), 1.55-1.90(5H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.99-3.00(1H,m), 3.05-3.50(5H,m), 3.65-3.80(1H,m), 3.80-3.90(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 4.50-4.60(1H,m), 4.65-4.80(1H,m), 7.09(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.31(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.38(1H,t, J=8.8 Hz), 7.79(1H,s), 8.00-8.10(1H,m), 8.30-8.40(1H,m), 10.28(1H,d, J=12.5 Hz), 11.67(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 263

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N-2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



10% Palladium on carbon (0.3 g) was added to a solution of the compound (0.33 g) obtained in Referential Example 404 in ethanol (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. After removing insoluble matter by filtration through Celite pad, the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant residue (0.37 g) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml), and the compound (0.3 g) obtained in Referential Example 266, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (0.2 g) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.37 g) were successively added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was diluted with a mixed solvent of chloroform-methanol (9:1) and washed with a saturated aqueous solution of sodium hydrogencarbonate and saturated aqueous solution of sodium chloride. After the resultant organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (chloroform:methanol=95:5) to concentrate the intended fraction. A 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid was added to form a hydrochloride. This salt was recrystallized from a mixed solvent of methanol and diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (0.28 g).

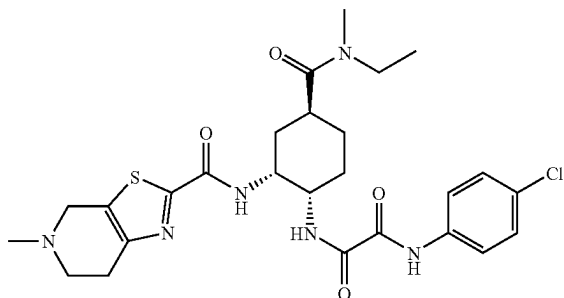
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.95(1.5H,t, J=6.9 Hz), 1.42(1.5H,t, J=6.9 Hz), 1.40-1.52(1H,m), 1.60-1.78(3H,m), 1.92-2.11(2H,m), 2.74(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 3.10-3.38(5H,m), 3.40-3.52(1H,m), 3.68-3.70(1H,m), 3.96-4.05(1H,m), 4.41(2H,s), 4.70(1H,d, J=15.9 Hz), 8.00-8.01(2H,m), 8.44(1H,s), 8.71(1H,dd, J=10.1, 2.2 Hz), 9.14(0.5H,d, J=7.8 Hz), 9.22(0.5H,d, J=8.3 Hz), 10.24(0.5H,s), 10.28(0.5H,s), 11.48(1H,br.s), 11.61(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 562(M+H)⁺.

449

EXAMPLE 264

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[[ethyl(methylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



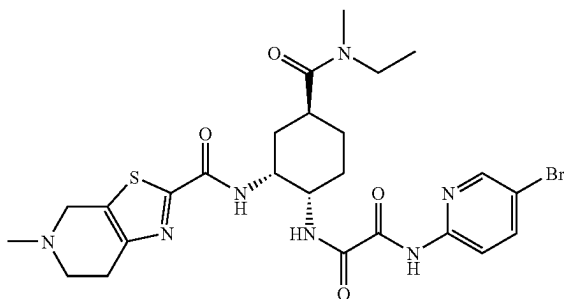
The title compound was obtained by converting the compound obtained in Referential Example 404 into an amine, condensing the amine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 374 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 263.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.97(1.5H,t,J=6.9 Hz), 1.04(1.5H,t,J=6.9 Hz), 1.40-1.60(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H,m), 1.92-2.11(2H,m), 2.74(3H,s), 2.89(3H,s), 3.10-3.32(5H,m), 3.40-3.52(1H,m), 3.65-3.80(1H,m), 3.90-4.05(1H,m), 4.40(2H,s), 4.70(1H,d,J=15.9 Hz), 7.39(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.82(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.75(1H,dd,J=10.1, 2.2 Hz), 9.00(0.5H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.08(0.5H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.81(1H,d,J=4.9 Hz), 11.45(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 561(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 265

N¹-(5-Bromopyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[[ethyl(methylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by converting the compound obtained in Referential Example 404 into an amine, condensing the amine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 375 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 263.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.02(1.5H,t,J=6.9 Hz), 1.08(1.5H,t,J=6.9 Hz), 1.49-1.60(1H,m), 1.60-1.86(3H,m), 2.00-2.20(2H,m), 2.81(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 3.15-3.42(6H,m), 3.50-3.60(1H,m), 3.70-3.82(1H,m), 4.48(2H,s), 4.77(1H,d,J=15.9 Hz), 8.04(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.17(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.58(1H,s),

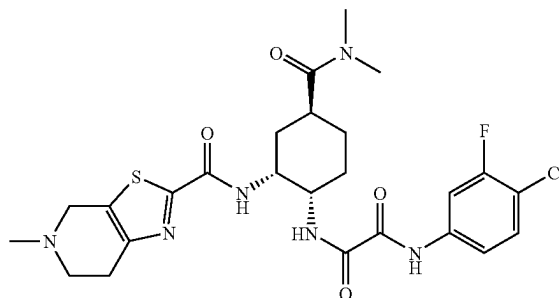
450

8.78(1H,dd,J=10.1, 2.2 Hz), 9.21(0.5H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.29(0.5H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.29(0.5H,s), 10.33(0.5H,s), 11.53(0.5H,br.s), 11.65(0.5H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 607(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 266

N¹-(4-Chloro-3-fluorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[[dimethylamino]carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



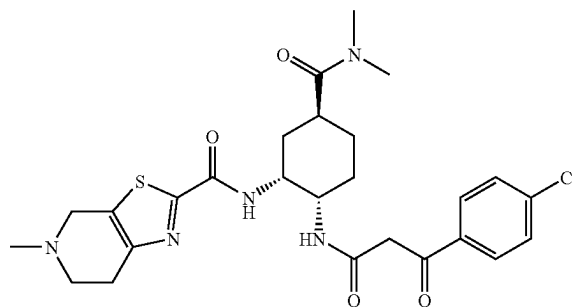
The title compound was obtained by converting the compound obtained in Referential Example 252 into an amine, condensing the amine with the compound obtained in Referential Example 378 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 263.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44-1.52(1H,m), 1.65-1.76(3H,m), 2.01-2.07(2H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.93(6H,s), 2.94-3.00(1H,m), 3.10-3.38(3H,m), 3.68-3.70(1H,m), 3.96-4.05(1H,m), 4.42(2H,s), 4.70(1H,d,J=15.9 Hz), 7.56(1H,t,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.90(1H,dd,J=11.7, 1.5 Hz), 8.73(1H,dd,J=12.5, 7.3 Hz), 9.06(1H,dd,J=12.5, 8.1 Hz), 11.01(1H,d,J=5.8 Hz), 11.30-11.42(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 565(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 267

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[3-(4-Chlorophenyl)-3-oxopropanoyl]amino]-5-[[dimethylamino]carbonyl]-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide



The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 383 by hydrochloric acid treatment, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

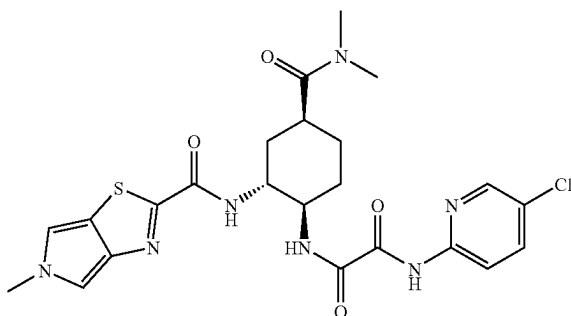
451

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) (free base) δ: 1.22-1.32(1H,m), 1.49-1.92(3H,m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 2.53(3H,s), 2.70-2.79(1H,m), 2.80-2.90(2H,m), 2.93(6H,s), 2.95-3.09(2H,m), 3.72(2H,s), 3.87(2H,s), 4.05-4.19(1H,m), 4.60-4.70(1H,m), 7.20-7.40(2H,m), 7.42(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 7.87(2H,d,J=8.3 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 546(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 268

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide



The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 386 by hydrochloric acid treatment, and condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 214.

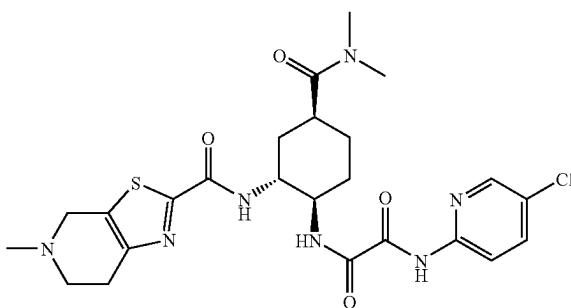
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.00-2.35(7H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.04(3H,s), 3.85-3.95(1H,m), 3.88(3H,s), 4.60-4.75(1H,m), 6.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 7.20-7.32(1H,m), 7.67(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.8 Hz), 7.99(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 8.21(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.25(1H,d,J=2.8 Hz), 9.64(1H,s).

HRMS (FAB) m/z: 532.1520(M+H)⁺.

(Calculated; C₂₃H₂₇ClN₇O₄S: 532.1534).

EXAMPLE 269

N¹-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl) amino]-N²-((1R,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



452

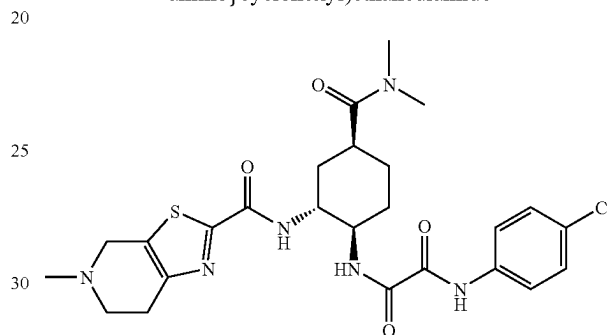
The title compound was obtained by reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 387 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 253, and condensing the reduction product with the compound obtained in Referential Example 266 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 208.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.98(6H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.86-3.92(7H,m), 4.30-4.81(2H,m), 7.92-8.09(2H,m), 8.39-8.47(1H,m), 8.56-8.72(2H,m), 10.17(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 270

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1R,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide



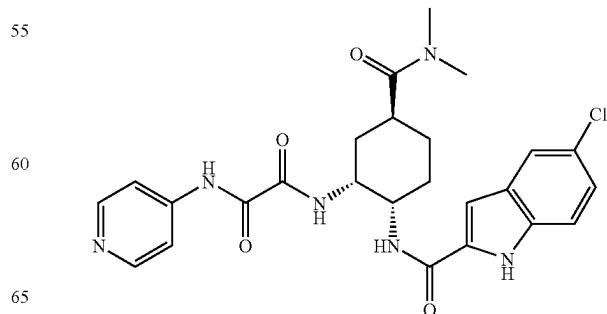
The title compound was obtained by reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 387 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 253, and condensing the reduction product with the lithium salt obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 242 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.97(6H,m), 2.82(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.83-3.88(7H,m), 4.30-4.79(2H,m), 7.37(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.89(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 8.63(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 10.72(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 547(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 271

N¹-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-N²-(pyridin-4-yl)-ethanediamide hydrochloride



453

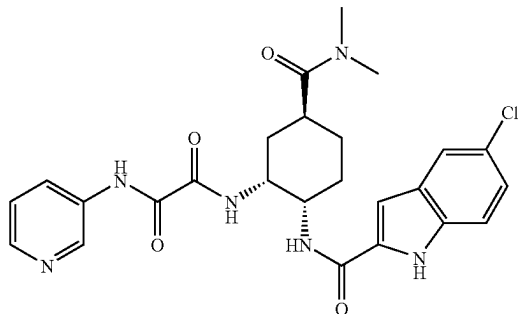
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 310 by hydrochloric acid treatment, and condensing the deprotected compound with lithium 2-[(pyridin-4-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 261 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.01(6H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 3.01(3H,s), 3.00-3.18(1H,m), 4.02-4.19(1H,m), 4.45-4.55(1H,m), 7.09(1H,s), 7.13-7.22(1H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.64(1H,br.s), 8.28(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 8.36(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.62(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.72(2H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 11.74(1H,s), 11.83(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 511(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 272

N¹-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-N²-(pyridin-3-yl)-ethanediamide hydrochloride



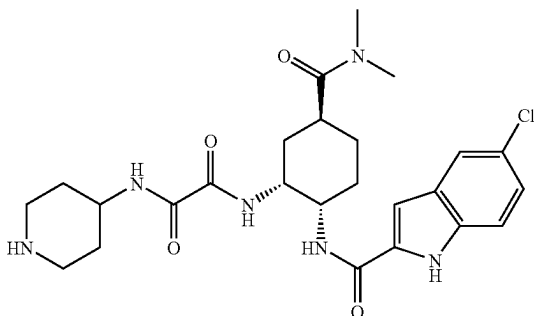
The title compound was obtained by using methyl 2-[(pyridin-3-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetate obtained by condensing 3-aminopyridine with methyl 2-chloro-2-oxoacetate in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 242, and the compound obtained in Referential Example 310 as raw materials in a similar manner to the process described in Example 271.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.05(6H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 2.92-3.15(1H,m), 4.02-4.17(1H,m), 4.42-4.58(1H,m), 7.10(1H,s), 7.12-7.19(1H,m), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 7.62-7.87(2H,m), 8.36-8.64(4H,m), 9.18(1H,s), 11.39(1H,s), 11.79(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 511(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 273

N¹-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-N²-(piperidin-4-yl)-ethanediamide hydrochloride



454

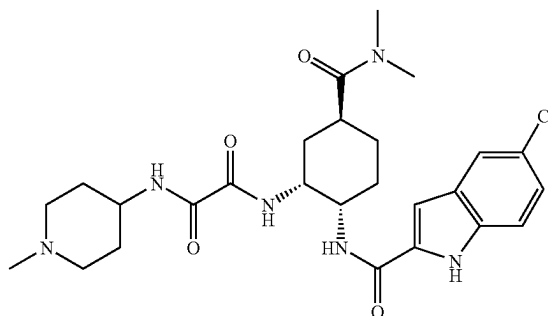
A 4N dioxane solution (8.0 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to a solution of the compound (400 mg) obtained in Referential Example 389 in ethanol (5.0 ml) at room temperature and the mixture was stirred the same temperature for 5 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, the residue was washed with methylene chloride, and insoluble matter was filtered and washed to obtain the title compound (320 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-1.92(10H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 2.82-3.35(6H,m), 3.88-4.10(2H,m), 4.34-4.43(1H,m), 7.05(1H,s), 7.11-7.17(1H,m), 7.38(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.65(1H,s), 8.25(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz), 8.34(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.89(1H,d,J=8.4 Hz), 11.75(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 517(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 274

N¹-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[5-Chloroindol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-N²-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



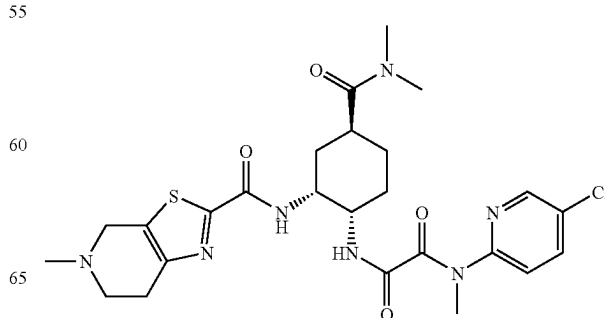
The title compound was obtained by methylating the compound obtained in Example 273 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 9 and treating it with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-2.01(11H,m), 2.67(3H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.98(3H,s), 2.85-4.48(7H,m), 7.07(1H,s), 7.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.0 Hz), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.68(1H,d,J=2.0 Hz), 8.25-8.35(1H,m), 8.37(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.90-9.02(1H,m), 9.82(1H,br.s), 11.78(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 531(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 275

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-N¹-methylethanedi- amide hydrochloride



455

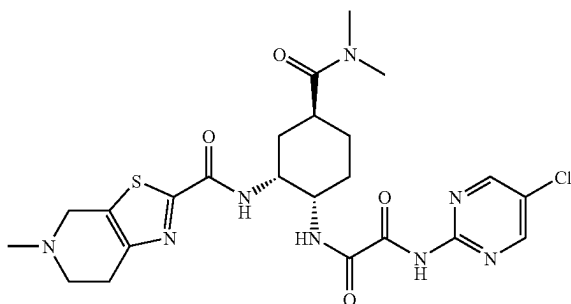
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 390, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.32-1.97(6H,m), 2.42-2.51(1H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 3.27(3H,s), 3.00-4.80(8H,m), 7.45(1H,br.s), 7.88-7.97(1H,m), 8.25-8.41(2H,m), 8.78-8.91(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 562(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 276

N¹-(5-Chloropyrimidin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



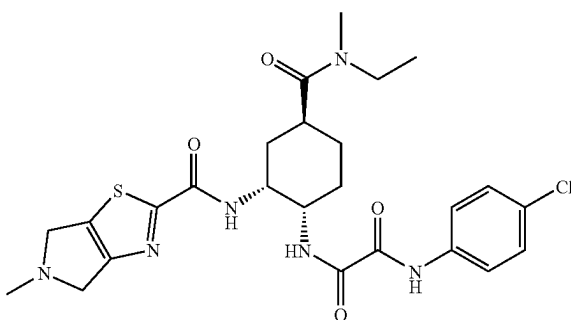
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 391, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.38-2.10(7H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 3.04-4.80(8H,m), 8.60-8.70(2H,m), 8.82(2H,s), 9.08(1H,br.s), 10.64(1H,s), 11.57(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 549(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 277

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[ethyl(methyl)amino]-carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 392 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 253,

456

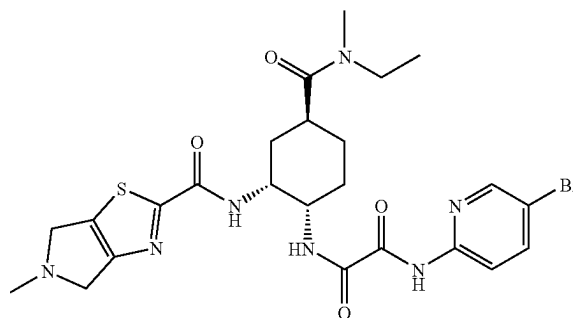
and condensing the reduction product with the carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 242 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 195.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.96, 1.02(3H,each t, J=7.0 Hz), 1.47-1.58(1H,m), 1.65-1.77(3H,m), 1.98-2.08(2H,m), 2.76-2.91(4H,m), 3.07(3H,s), 3.19-3.41(2H,m), 3.98-4.04(1H,m), 4.42(1H,br.s), 4.46-4.94(4H,m), 7.41(2H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 7.83(2H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.74-8.80(1H,m), 9.02(1H,d, J=7.3 Hz), 10.82(1H,s), 12.41(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 547(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 278

N¹-(5-Bromopyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



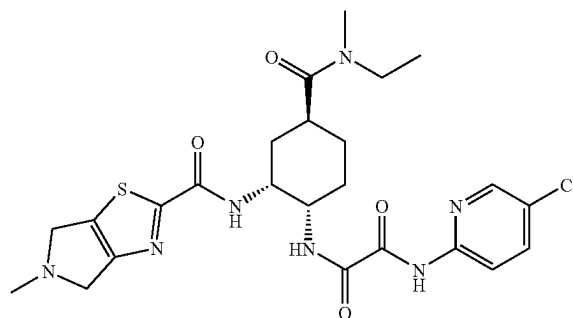
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 392 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 262 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 277.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.90-1.08(3H,m), 1.40-2.13(6H,m), 2.70-3.53(13H,m), 3.92-4.08(1H,m), 4.35-4.47(1H,m), 7.95(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.10(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.50-8.55(1H,m), 8.68-8.78(1H,m), 9.12-9.18(1H,m), 10.26(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 592(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 279

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[ethyl(methyl)amino]carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



457

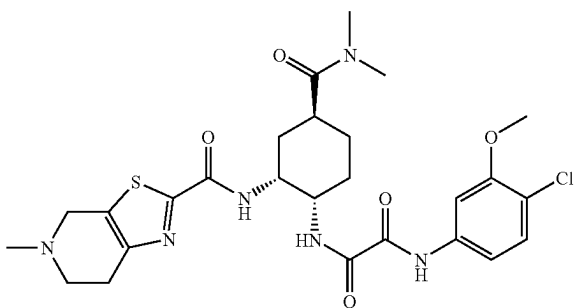
The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 392 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 243 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 277.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: [0.95(t, J=7.0 Hz), 1.01(t, J=6.8 Hz), 3H], 1.45-1.72(4H, m), 1.96-2.07(2H, m), 2.74-2.90(4H, m), 3.06(3H, s), 3.18-3.40(2H, m), 3.95-4.02(1H, m), 4.41(1H, br. s), 4.54-4.90(4H, m), 8.00(2H, br. s), 8.45(1H, s), 8.70-8.75(1H, m), 9.15(1H, br. s), 10.27(1H, br. s), 12.29(1H, br. s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 280

N¹-(4-Chloro-3-methoxyphenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethyl-amino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



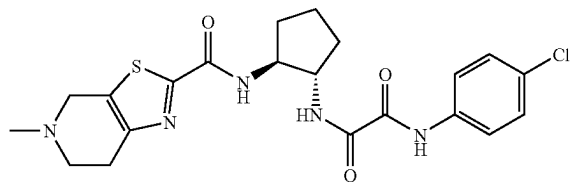
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 395 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46-1.54(1H, m), 1.67-1.77(3H, m), 2.01-2.10(2H, m), 2.79(3H, s), 2.92-2.98(7H, m), 3.21(2H, br. s), 3.49(1H, br. s), 3.69(1H, br. s), 3.80(3H, s), 3.98-4.03(1H, m), 4.42-4.50(2H, m), 4.69(1H, br. s), 7.37(1H, d, J=8.7 Hz), 7.48(1H, dd, J=8.7, 2.2 Hz), 7.72(1H, d, J=2.2 Hz), 8.75(1H, d, J=7.3 Hz), 9.06(1H, br. s), 10.77(1H, s), 11.44(1H, br. s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 577(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 281

N¹-(4-Chlorophenyl)-N²-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclopentyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 242, condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential

458

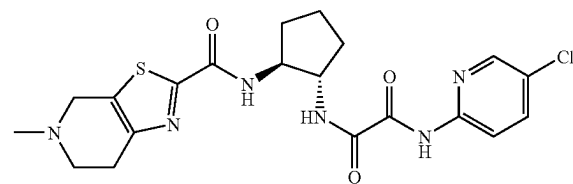
Example 62 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 195.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.65-1.73(4H, m), 1.91-1.96(2H, m), 2.91(3H, s), 3.15(2H, br. s), 3.49(1H, br. s), 3.66(1H, br. s), 4.32-4.42(3H, m), 4.66(1H, br. s), 7.40(2H, d, J=8.9 Hz), 7.84(2H, d, J=8.9 Hz), 8.92(1H, d, J=8.5 Hz), 9.03(1H, d, J=8.3 Hz), 10.76(1H, s), 11.32(1H, br. s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 462(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 282

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1R*,2R*)-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclopentyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



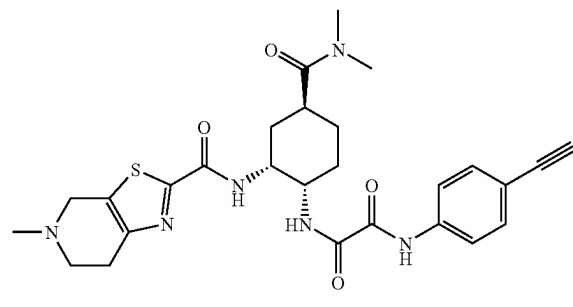
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 62 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 266 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 208.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.71(4H, br. s), 1.96(2H, br. s), 2.90(3H, s), 3.14(1H, br. s), 3.21(1H, br. s), 3.47(1H, br. s), 3.68(1H, br. s), 4.34-4.45(3H, m), 4.66(1H, br. s), 7.99-8.06(2H, m), 8.43-8.44(1H, m), 8.94(1H, d, J=8.3 Hz), 9.20(1H, d, J=8.5 Hz), 10.20(1H, br. s), 11.78(1H, br. s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 463(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 283

N¹-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)-N²-(4-ethynylphenyl)ethanediamide



The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 252 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 397 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 263.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.67-2.16(6H, m), 2.51(3H, s), 2.76-2.91(5H, m), 2.94(3H, s), 3.04(3H, s), 3.07(1H, s), [3.65(1H, d,

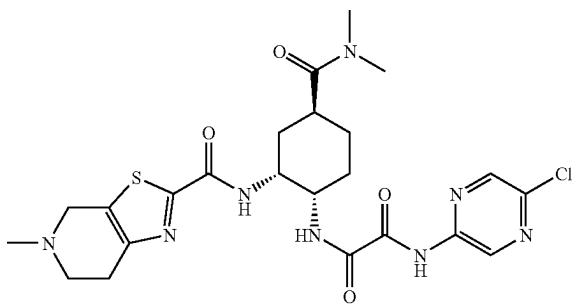
459

J=15.5 Hz), 3.73(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz)AB pattern],4.09-4.16 (1H,m),4.72-4.75(1H,m),7.42-7.46(3H,m),7.58(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.02(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz),9.36(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 537(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 284

N¹-(5-Chloropyrazin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



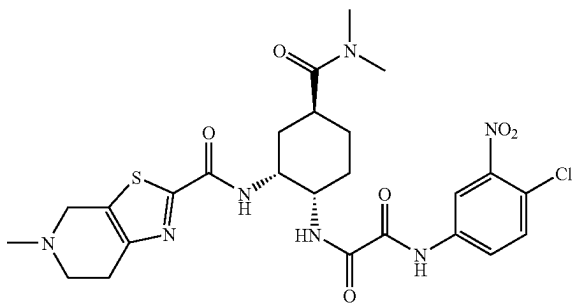
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 399 in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 97 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44-1.52(1H,m),1.65-1.77(3H,m), 2.00-2.10(2H,m),2.77(3H,s),2.91-2.97(7H,m),3.20(2H,br.s), 3.48(1H,br.s),3.68(1H,br.s),3.97-4.02(1H,m),4.40-4.46(2H,m), 4.68(1H,br.s),8.64(1H,d,J=1.2 Hz),8.70(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 9.02(1H,s),9.21(1H,br.s), 10.91(1H,br.s),11.50(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 549(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 285

N¹-(4-Chloro-3-nitrophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 400 in a similar

460

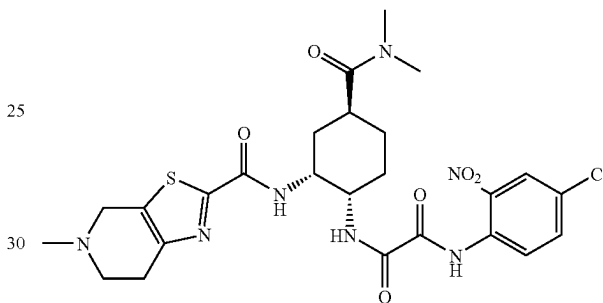
manner to the process described in Referential Example 97 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44-1.53(1H,m),1.66-1.73(3H,m), 1.97-2.07(2H,m),2.77(3H,s),2.89-3.05(7H,m),3.20(2H,br.s), 3.55(2H,br.s),4.00(1H,br.s),4.44(1H,br.s),4.52(2H,br.s), 7.75(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz),8.08(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz),8.59(1H,s), 8.71(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz),9.07(1H,d,J=8.0 Hz),11.24(1H,s), 11.58(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 592(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 286

N¹-(4-Chloro-2-nitrophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



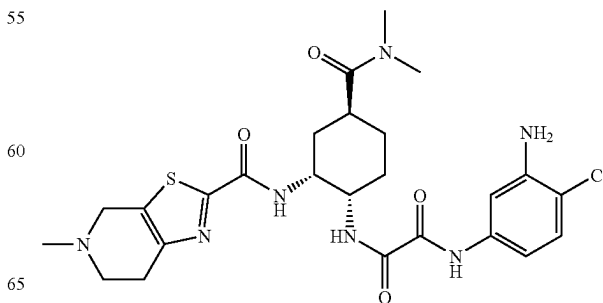
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 253 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 401 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 208.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.46-1.54(1H,m), 1.66-1.77(3H,m), 2.03-2.10(2H,m),2.79(3H,s),2.90-2.93(7H,m),3.17-3.28(2H,m), 3.49(1H,br.s),3.68(1H,br.s),3.99-4.04(1H,m),4.41(1H,br.s), 4.46(1H,br.s),4.68(1H,br.s),7.89(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 8.20-8.21(2H,m), 8.73(1H,d,J=6.4 Hz),9.28(1H,br.s), 11.49(1H,br.s), 11.56(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 592(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 287

N¹-(3-Amino-4-chlorophenyl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



461

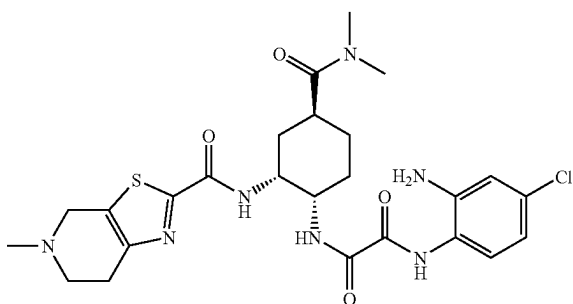
The compound (236 mg) obtained in Example 285 was dissolved in ethanol (25 ml), and a catalytic amount of Raney nickel was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 17 hours under a hydrogen atmosphere. Thereafter, a catalytic amount of Raney nickel was additionally added to stir the mixture for additional 7 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=23:2) to obtain a pale yellow solid (101 mg). This product was dissolved in methylene chloride, and a 1N ethanol solution (360 μ l) of hydrochloric acid. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, a small amount of methanol was added to the residue, and diethyl ether was added dropwise while irradiating with ultrasonic waves to collect precipitate formed. This product was washed with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (95 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.45-1.53(1H,m), 1.66-1.73(3H,m), 1.97-2.10(2H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.91-2.94(7H,br.s), 3.11-3.19(1H,m), 3.29(1H,br.s), 3.48(1H,br.s), 3.69(1H,br.s), 3.95-4.02(1H,m), 4.44(2H,br.s), 4.68, 4.72(1H,each br.s), 4.86(2.5H,br.s), 6.98(1H,dd, $J=8.5$, 1.9 Hz), 7.14(1H,d, $J=8.5$ Hz), 7.35, 7.38(1H,each br.s), 8.72-8.77(1H,m), [8.91(d, $J=7.8$ Hz), 8.99(d, $J=8.5$ Hz), 1H], 10.45, 10.47(1H,each br.s), 11.74(1H, br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 562(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 288

N^1 -(2-Amino-4-chlorophenyl)- N^2 -((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Example 286 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 287.

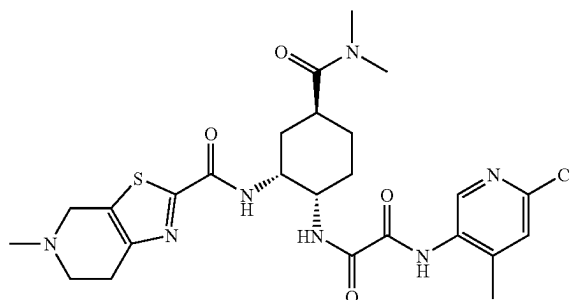
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.45-1.77(4H,m), 2.06-2.09(2H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.92(7H,br.s), 3.12-3.19(1H,m), 3.26-3.28(1H,m), 3.48(1H,br.s), 3.70(1H,br.s), 4.00-4.44(5.7H,m), 4.70, 4.74(1H,each br.s), 6.63-6.66(1H,m), 6.85(1H,br.s), 7.18-7.21(1H,m), 8.77-8.81(1H,m), [8.97(d, $J=7.8$ Hz), 9.06(d, $J=8.1$ Hz), 1H], 9.98(1H,s), 11.60(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 562(M+H) $^+$.

462

EXAMPLE 289

N^1 -(6-Chloro-4-methylpyridin-3-yl)- N^2 -((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



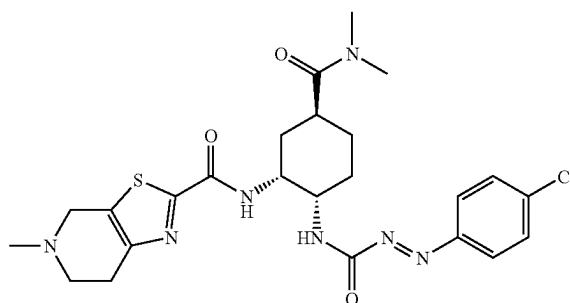
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 270 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 402 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described Example 199.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.45-1.54(1H,m), 1.65-1.77(3H,m), 2.02-2.08(2H,m), 2.22(3H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.89-2.93(7H,m), 3.19(2H,br.s), 3.54(2H,br.s), 3.99-4.04(1H,m), 4.40-4.42(1H,m), 4.50(2H,br.s), 7.49(1H,s), 8.32(1H,s), 8.75(1H,d, $J=7.1$ Hz), 9.09(1H,d, $J=7.3$ Hz), 10.48(1H,s), 11.40(0.9H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 562(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 290

N -{(1R,2S,5S)-2-({[(E)-2-(4-Chlorophenyl)diaz-enyl]-carbonyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



After 10% Palladium on carbon (200 mg) was added to a solution of the compound (700 mg) obtained in Referential Example 252 in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 days under a hydrogen atmosphere, the reaction mixture was filtered, and the compound obtained in Referential Example 405 (470 mg) was added to a solution of an amine obtained by concentrating the filtrate in formamide (5.0 ml) to stir the mixture at 95 $^{\circ}$ C. for 18 hours. After the reaction mixture was concentrated, and a saturated aqueous solution (50 ml) of sodium hydrogencarbonate, water (50 ml) and methylene chloride (30 ml) were added to conduct liquid separation, the resultant water layer was extracted with methylene chloride (2 \times 20 ml). Organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous

463

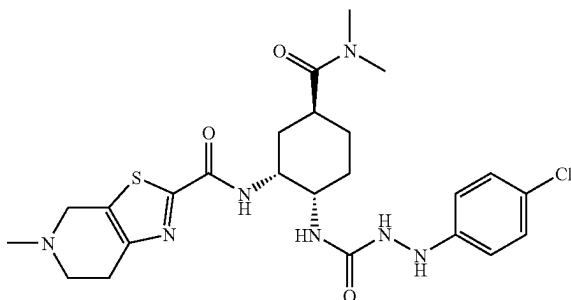
sodium sulfate, concentrated and purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=12:1). This purified product was treated with a 1N ethanol solution of hydrochloric acid to obtain the title compound (100 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-2.05(5H, m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.20-3.32(1H,m), 3.43(1H,br.s), 3.69(1H,br.s), 3.95(1H,br.s), 4.45(1H,br.s), 4.60-4.80(2H,m), 7.68(2H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 7.83(2H,d,J=8.7 Hz), 8.41(1H,br.s), 8.68(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.40-11.80(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 532(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 291

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-([2-(4-Chlorophenyl)hydrazino]-carbonyl)amino}-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



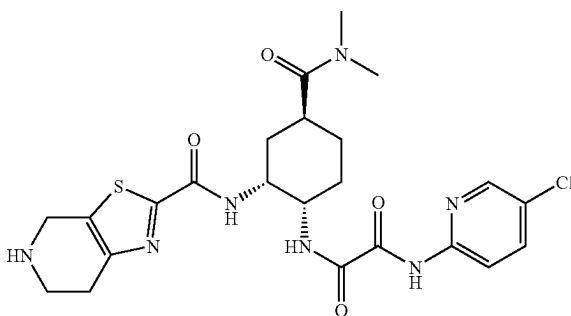
The title compound was obtained by changing the reaction conditions in the reaction described in Example 290 to conditions that stirring was conducted at 40° C. for 3 days.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-1.50(1H,m), 1.50-1.80(3H, m), 1.80-1.97(2H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.80-3.05(2H,m), 2.91(6H, s), 3.05-3.30(2H,m), 3.47(2H,br.s), 4.30-4.50(2H,m), 4.72(1H,t,J=12.8 Hz), 6.40-6.60(2H,m), 6.55-6.70(2H,m), 6.95-7.20(2H,m), 7.88(1H,d,J=11.3 Hz), 8.48-8.65(1H,m), 11.48-11.80(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 534(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 292

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-{[(4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]-amino}cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 34 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 420 and then

464

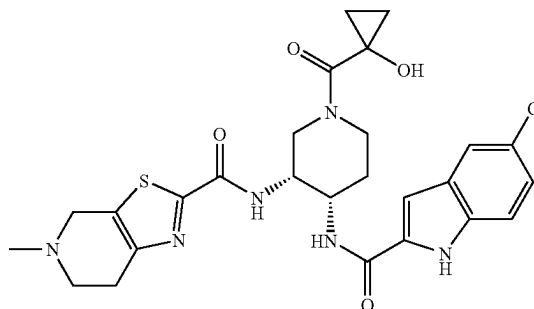
treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described Example 17.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.55(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H, m), 1.95-2.10(2H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.85-3.00(4H,m), 3.11(2H, br s), 3.40-3.55(2H,m), 3.95-4.07(1H,m), 4.37-4.45(1H,m), 4.48(2H,br s), 8.00-8.01(2H,m), 8.10(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 8.43-8.47(1H,m), 9.16(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.43(2H,br s), 10.27(1H, s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 534(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 293

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-[(1-hydroxycyclopropyl)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



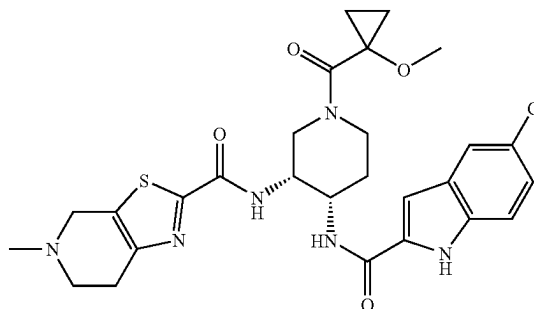
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Example 118 with 1-hydroxy-1-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described Example 150.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.60-0.90(3H,br), 0.92-1.03(1H, m), 1.71-1.84(1H,m), 1.85-2.03(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.80(7H,m), 4.05-4.80(5H,m), 6.28-6.42(1H,br), 7.09(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.5 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H, d,J=1.5 Hz), 8.14-8.29(1H,br), 8.41(1H,br d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.83(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 294

N-((3R*,4S*)-4-{[(5-Chloroindol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino}-1-[(1-methoxycyclopropyl)carbonyl]piperidin-3-yl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



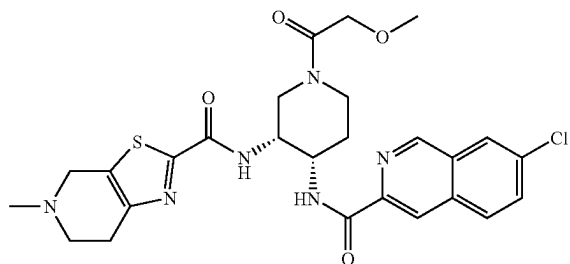
465

The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Example 118 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 409 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described Example 150.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 0.65-1.05(4H,m), 1.74-1.88(1H, m), 1.92-2.10(1H,m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.80(10H,m), 4.05-4.83(6H,m), 7.08(1H,s), 7.18(1H,dd, J=8.6, 2.0 Hz), 7.42(1H, d, J=8.6 Hz), 7.71(1H,d, J=2.0 Hz), 8.08-8.30(1H,br), 8.41(1H,br d, J=7.8 Hz), 10.60-10.80(0.5H,br), 10.85-11.05(0.5H,br), 11.84(1H,s).

EXAMPLE 295

7-Chloro-N-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)piperidin-4-yl)-3-isoquinolinecarboxamide hydrochloride



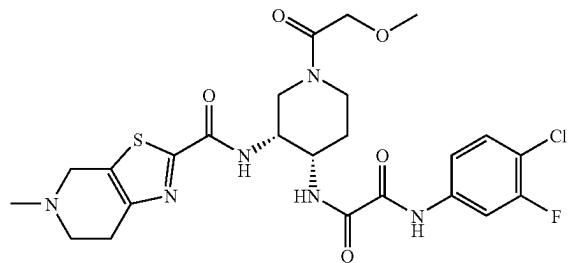
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 410 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.80(1H,m), 2.13-2.38(1H, m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.87(10H,m), 3.89-4.10(2H,m), 4.15-4.58(4H,m), 4.60-4.78(1H,m), 7.89(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.25(1H,d, J=8.8 Hz), 8.37(1H,s), 8.61(1H,s), 8.70-8.95(1H,m), 9.05-9.29(1H,m), 9.36(1H,s), 11.20-11.40(0.5H,br), 11.45-11.65(0.5H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 557(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 296

N¹-(4-chloro-3-fluorophenyl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 411 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, con-

466

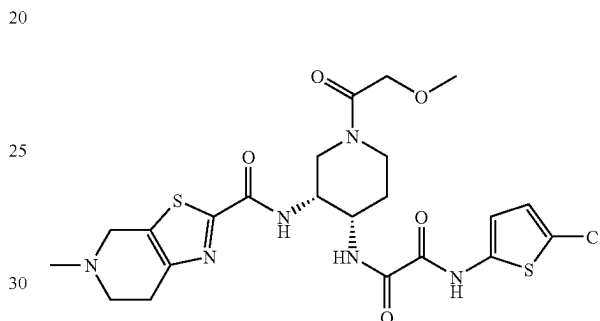
densing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.72(1H,m), 1.98-2.21(1H, m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.00-3.52(9H,m), 3.56-4.05(3H,m), 4.08-4.50(4H,m), 4.60-4.78(1H,br), 7.56(1H,t, J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d, J=9.0 Hz), 7.91(1H,dd, J=8.8, 2.3 Hz), 8.50-8.72(1H,m), 9.15-9.35(1H,m), 11.02(1H,s), 11.15-11.33(0.5H,br), 11.35-11.50(0.5H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 567(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 297

N¹-(5-chloro-2-thienyl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



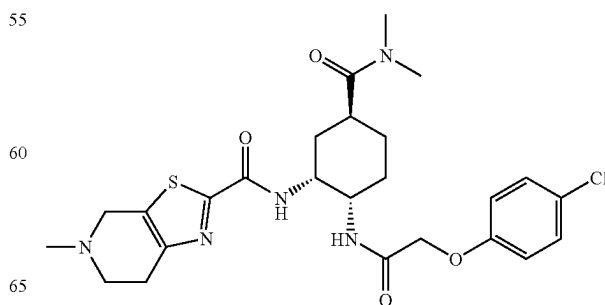
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 412 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.60-1.73(1H,m), 1.96-2.19(1H, m), 2.91(3H,s), 3.04-3.54(9H,m), 3.60-4.05(3H,m), 4.07-4.34(3H,m), 4.35-4.54(1H,br), 4.60-4.80(1H,br), 6.89(1H,d, J=4.2 Hz), 6.93(1H,d, J=4.2 Hz), 8.48-8.70(1H,m), 9.18-9.40(1H, m), 12.31(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 555(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 298

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-chlorophenoxy)acetyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



467

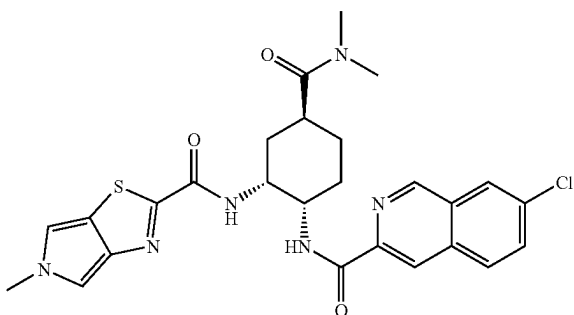
The title compound was obtained by reducing the compound obtained in Referential Example 252, condensing the reduction product with p-chlorophenoxyacetic acid and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 223.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.35-1.47(1H,m), 1.55-1.90(5H,m), 2.77(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 2.98-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.80(3H,m), 3.85-3.95(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(4H,m), 4.50-4.80(1H,br), 6.85(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.15-7.35(1H,br), 7.88-8.03(1H,br), 8.46(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 11.30-11.65(1H,br).

MS (FAB) m/z: 534(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 299

7-Chloro-N-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazol-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-3-isoquinolinecarboxamide hydrochloride



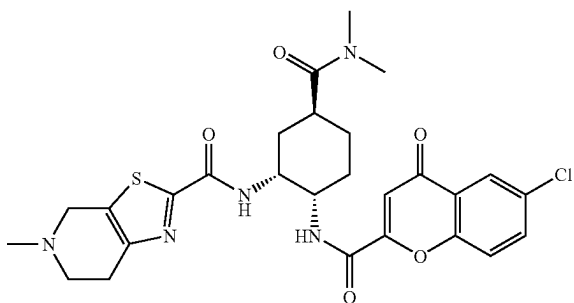
The title compound was obtained by condensing the lithium salt of the carboxylic acid obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 413 with a compound obtained by deprotecting the the compound obtained in Referential Example 146 by an acid treatment and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.00-1.11(2H,m), 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.85(1H,m), 1.95-2.06(1H,m), 2.10-2.24(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.87-3.02(1H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.88(3H,s), 4.16-4.27(1H,m), 4.45-4.56(1H,m), 7.03(1H,s), 7.55(1H,s), 7.87(1H,br d,J=8.3 Hz), 8.24(1H,br d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.33(1H,s), 8.59(1H,s), 8.85(1H,br d,J=7.6 Hz), 9.01(1H,br d,J=7.8 Hz), 9.28(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 539(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 300

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[[(6-Chloro-4-oxo-4H-chromen-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



468

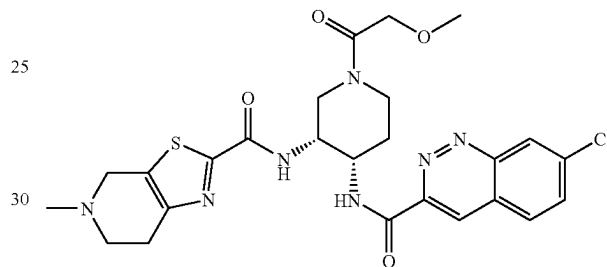
The title compound was obtained by condensing a compound obtained by treating the compound in Referential Example 417 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.40-1.53(1H,m), 1.67-2.04(5H,m), 2.40-2.53(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.92(3H,s), 3.01(3H,s), 3.09-3.22(3H,m), 3.66-3.77(1H,m), 4.01-4.10(1H,m), 4.34-4.49(1H,m), 4.58-4.76(2H,m), 6.80(1H,d,J=4.9 Hz), 7.59-7.70(1H,m), 7.90-8.00(1H,m), 7.96(1H,s), 8.52-8.60(1H,m), 8.80-8.90(1H,m), 11.10-11.25(0.5H,br), 11.40-11.55(0.5H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 572(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 301

7-Chloro-N-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]piperidin-4-yl]-3-cinnolinecarboxamide hydrochloride



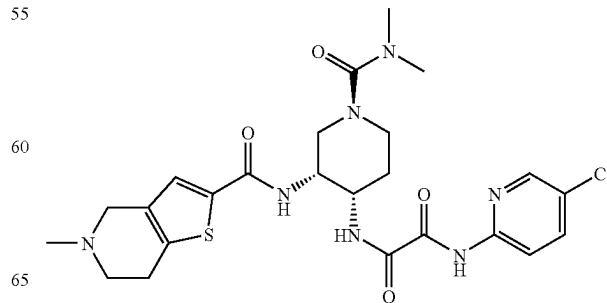
The title compound was obtained by condensing a compound obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 418 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.70-1.80(1H,m), 1.85-2.05(1H,m), 2.90(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.16(3H,s), 3.22-3.82(7H,m), 3.88-4.80(5H,m), 7.09(1H,d,J=9.0 Hz), 7.17(1H,dd,J=8.8, 1.9 Hz), 7.42(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.70(1H,d,J=1.9 Hz), 8.29(1H,br s), 8.40-8.50(1H,m), 11.20-11.50(1H,br m), 11.85(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 558(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 302

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothieno[3,2-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



469

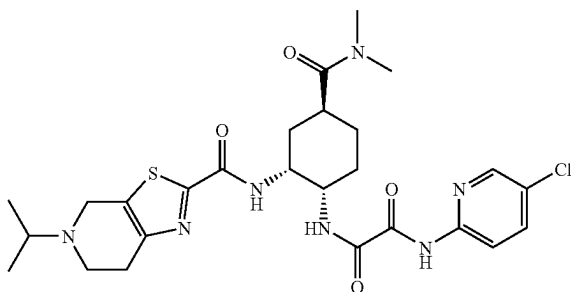
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 421 with hydrochloric acid, methylating the deprotected compound in a similar manner to the process described in Example 18 and treating it with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.58(1H,m), 1.59-1.80(3H,m), 1.83-1.95(1H,m), 1.97-2.10(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.89(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.00-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.20(2H,m), 3.45-3.80(1H,m), 3.90-4.00(2H,m), 4.00-4.50(3H,m), 7.77(1H,s), 7.95-8.05(3H,m), 8.44(1H,t, J=1.6 Hz), 8.90(1H,d, J=8.6 Hz), 10.25(1H,s), 11.12(1H,br s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 547(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 303

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-isopropyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



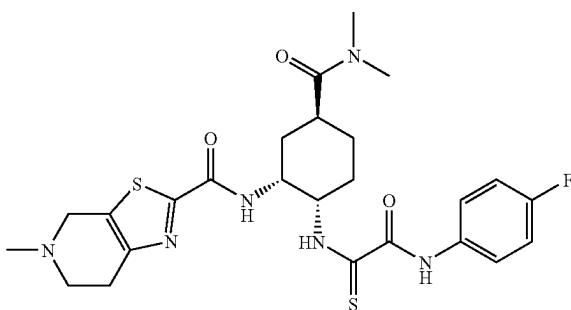
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 418 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 420 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.30-1.40(6H,m), 1.38-1.58(1H,m), 1.59-1.82(3H,m), 1.95-2.13(2H,m), 2.40-2.65(1H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 2.87-3.55(4H,m), 2.49(3H,s), 3.60-3.82(2H,m), 3.93-4.04(1H,m), 4.37-4.55(2H,m), 4.55-4.72(1H,m), 7.94-8.10(2H,m), 8.43(1H,s), 8.64-8.77(1H,m), 9.12(1/2H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 9.24(1/2H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 10.22(1/2H,s), 10.26(1/2H,s), 11.25(1/2H,br s), 11.44(1/2H,br s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 578(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 304

N-((1R,2S,5S)-5-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[2-(4-fluoroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino]cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



470

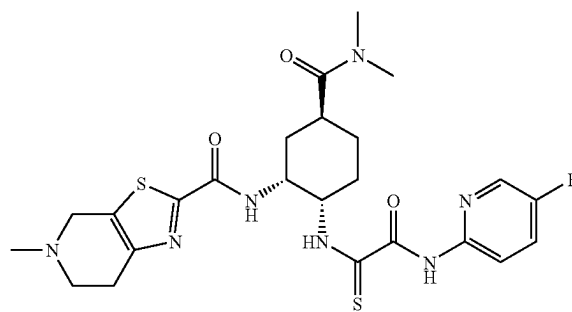
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 424 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.60-1.80(3H,m), 2.00-2.10(1H,m), 2.20-2.35(1H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.93(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.95-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.30(2H,m), 3.40-3.60(1H,m), 3.60-3.80(1H,m), 4.35-4.50(1H,m), 4.50-4.60(1H,m), 4.60-4.80(2H,m), 7.20(2H,t, J=8.8 Hz), 7.77(2H,dd, J=9.0, 5.1 Hz), 8.80(1H,br), 10.42(1H,s), 10.93(1H,br), 11.28(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 547(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 305

N-[(1R,2S,5S)-5-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[2-[(5-fluoropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino]-cyclohexyl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 427 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

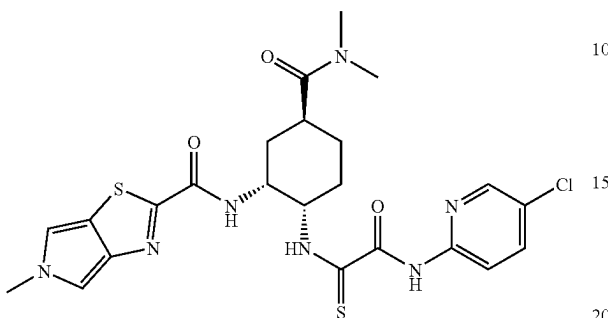
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.43-1.57(1H,m), 1.64-1.87(3H,m), 2.00(1H,br s), 2.17-2.34(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.95-3.10(1H,m), 3.10-3.30(2H,m), 3.40-3.60(1H,m), 3.68(1H,br s), 4.44(1H,br s), 4.45-4.56(1H,m), 4.60-4.73(2H,m), 7.80-7.90(1H,m), 8.08(1H,dd, J=9.1, 3.9 Hz), 8.41(1H,d, J=2.9 Hz), 8.79(1H,d, J=6.6 Hz), 10.49(1H,s), 11.07(1H,br s), 11.69(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

471

EXAMPLE 306

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-5H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxamide



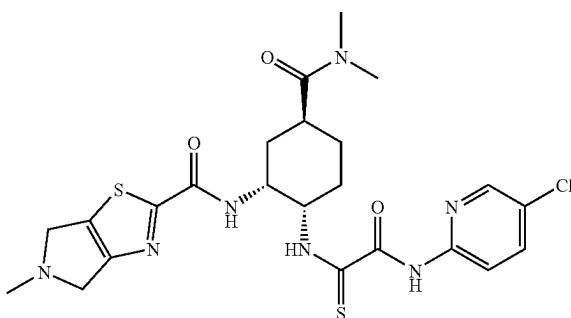
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 428 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it and then condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.58(1H,m), 1.63-1.73(2H,m), 1.73-1.87(2H,m), 2.00-2.10(1H,m), 2.20-2.35(1H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.96-3.10(1H,m), 3.89(3H,s), 4.48-4.58(1H,m), 4.60-4.70(1H,m), 7.05(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 7.55(1H,d,J=1.7 Hz), 8.00(1H,dd,J=8.9, 2.4 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=8.9 Hz), 8.44(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 8.71(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 10.57(1H,s), 11.13(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz).

MS (FAB) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 307

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-({2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoethanethioyl}amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-pyrrolo[3,4-d]thiazole-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



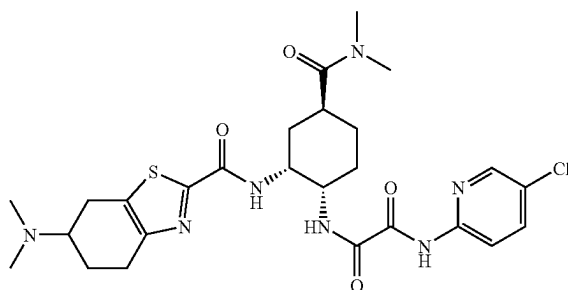
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 428 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 293 under an argon atmosphere and then subjecting the condensation product to a hydrochloric acid treatment again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.58(1H,m), 1.65-1.87(3H,m), 1.97-2.10(1H,m), 2.17-2.30(1H,m), 2.80(3H,s), 2.96(3H,

472

EXAMPLE 308

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-({[6-(dimethylamino)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzothiazol-2-yl]carbonyl}amino)cyclohexyl]-ethanediamide



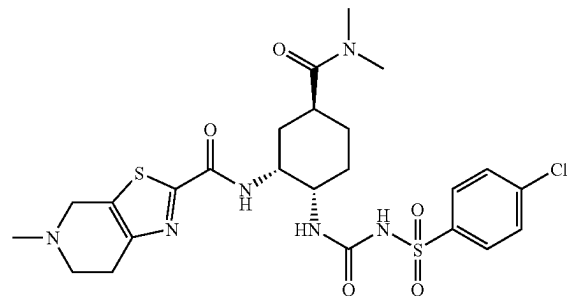
The title compound was obtained by deprotecting the compound obtained in Referential Example 431 with hydrochloric acid, methylating the deprotected compound in a similar manner to the process described in Example 18 and treating it with hydrochloric acid.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42-1.58(1H,m), 1.59-1.80(3H,m), 1.90-2.12(3H,m), 2.30-2.45(1H,m), 2.70-3.00(11H,m), 2.92(3H,s), 3.00-3.20(2H,m), 3.25-3.45(1H,m), 3.63-3.80(1H,m), 3.88-4.02(1H,m), 4.35-4.47(1H,m), 8.02(1H,s), 8.42-8.55(1H,m), 8.60-8.68(1H,m), 8.93(1H,dd,J=14.5, 8.2 Hz), 9.19(1H,dd,J=17.7, 8.2 Hz), 10.28(1H,s), 10.91(1H,br s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 576(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 309

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-([[(4-Chlorophenyl)sulfonyl]amino]-carbonyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridine-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



4-Chlorophenylsulfonyl isocyanate (148 μl) was added to a solution of the compound (328.0 mg) obtained in Refer-

473

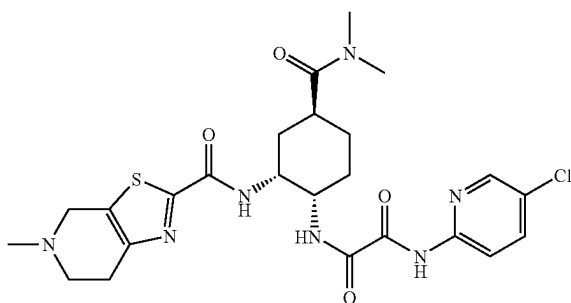
ential Example 253 in methylene chloride (10 ml), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and residue was purified by preparative thin-layer column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=9:1). The thus-obtained product was dissolved in ethanol (2 ml) and methylene chloride (2 ml), and a 1N ethanol solution (0.25 ml) of hydrochloric acid was added to stir the mixture at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was solidified with diethyl ether to obtain the title compound (104.3 mg).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.25-1.45(1H,m), 1.45-1.80(5H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.94(3H,s), 2.97(3H,s), 3.00-3.80(6H,m), 4.35-4.85(3H,m), 6.53(1H,brs), 7.66(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.86(2H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.50-8.82(1H,m), 10.64(1H,br s), 11.10-11.80(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 583(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 310

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide



The title compound was obtained from the compound obtained in Referential Example 435 and the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 in a similar manner to Example 2.

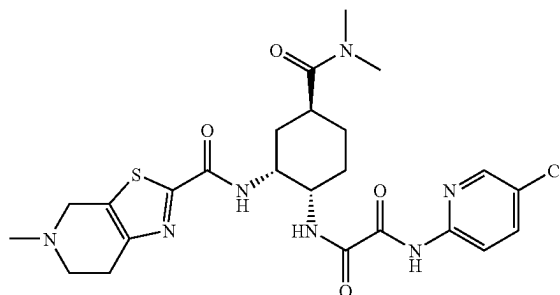
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.60-1.98(3H,m), 2.00-2.16(3H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.78-2.90(3H,m), 2.92-2.98(2H,m), 2.95(3H,s), 3.06(3H,s), 3.69(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.75(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.07-4.15(1H,m), 4.66-4.72(1H,m), 7.40(1H,d,J=8.8, 0.6 Hz), 7.68(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.03(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 8.16(1H,dd,J=8.8, 0.6 Hz), 8.30(1H,dd,J=2.4, 0.6 Hz), 9.72(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

474

EXAMPLE 311

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide p-toluenesulfonate monohydrate



The compound (6.2 g) obtained in Example 310 is dissolved in methylene chloride (120 ml), a 1 mol/L ethanol solution (11.28 ml) of p-toluenesulfonic acid was added to the solution, and the solvent was distilled off. Ethanol (95 ml) containing 15% water was added to the residue, and the mixture was stirred at 60° C. to dissolve it. The solution was then cooled to room temperature and stirred for a day. Crystals deposited were collected by filtration, washed with ethanol and dried at room temperature for 2 hours under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (7.4 g).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.54(1H,m), 1.66-1.78(3H,m), 2.03-2.10(2H,m), 2.28(3H,s), 2.79(3H,s), 2.91-3.02(1H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.13-3.24(2H,m), 3.46-3.82(2H,m), 3.98-4.04(1H,m), 4.43-4.80(3H,m), 7.11(2H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 7.46(2H,d,J=8.2 Hz), 8.01(2H,d,J=1.8 Hz), 8.46(1H,t,J=1.8 Hz), 8.75(1H,d,J=6.9 Hz), 9.10-9.28(1H,br), 10.18(1H,br), 10.29(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 548(M+H)⁺.

Elemental analysis: C₂₄H₃₀ClN₇O₄S·C₇H₈O₃S·H₂O.

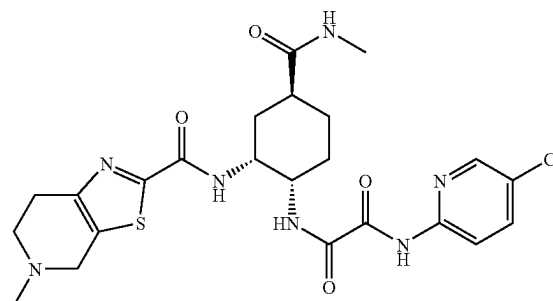
Calculated: C;50.43,H;5.46,N;13.28,Cl;4.80,S;8.69.

Found: C;50.25,H;5.36,N;13.32,Cl;4.93,S;8.79.

mp(decomposed): 245~248° C.

EXAMPLE 312

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(methylamino)-carbonyl]-2-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



475

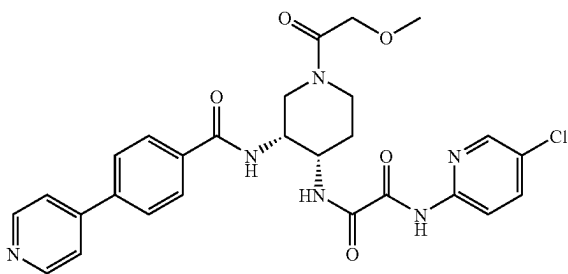
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 437 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.48-1.61(1H,m), 1.61-1.74(2H,m), 1.74-1.82(1H,m), 1.98-2.12(2H,m), 2.29-2.38(1H,m), 2.53(3H,d,J=4.2 Hz), 2.92(3H,s), 3.10-3.40(4H,br), 3.40-3.80(1H,br), 3.97-4.05(1H,m), 4.28-4.34(1H,m), 4.34-4.80(1H,br), 7.70-7.78(1H,m), 7.97-8.07(2H,m), 8.43-8.50(1H,m), 8.49(1H,br.s), 9.27(1H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 10.26(1H,br.s), 11.48(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 534[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 535[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 313

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)-3-{[4-(pyridin-4-yl)benzoyl]amino}piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



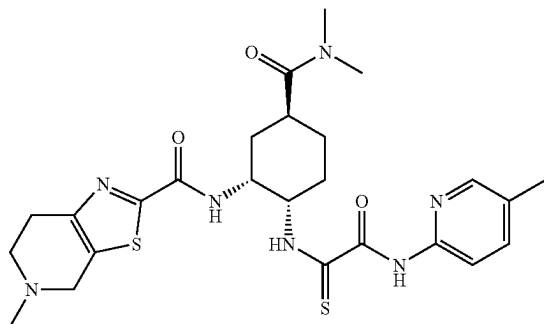
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 368 with a 4N dioxane solution of hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 237 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.62-1.75(1H,m), 2.00-2.20(1H,m), 2.80-4.40(11H,m), 7.90-8.00(4H,m), 8.05-8.13(2H,m), 8.14-8.43(3H,m), 8.40-8.45(1H,m), 8.87-9.04(3H,m), 10.20-10.50(2H,br)

MS (FAB) m/z: 551[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 553[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷]

EXAMPLE 314

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-5-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(2-(5-methylpyridin-2-yl)amino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]amino}-cyclohexyl-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



476

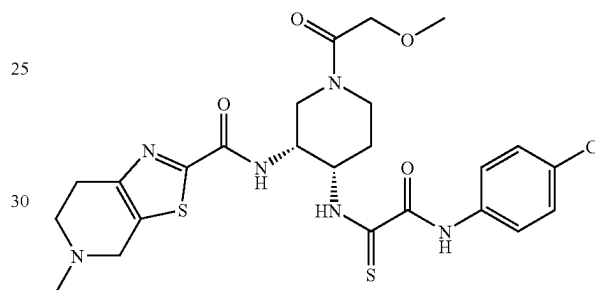
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 440 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.45-1.60(1H,m), 1.65-1.90(3H,m), 2.00-2.10(1H,m), 2.20-2.40(1H,m), 2.28(3H,s), 2.80(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.95-3.10(1H,m), 2.96(3H,s), 3.15-3.30(1H,m), 3.32(2H,s), 3.50-3.80(1H,m), 4.45-4.60(2H,m), 4.60-4.80(2H,m), 7.72(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 7.97(1H,d,J=8.5 Hz), 8.23(1H,s), 8.83(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 10.38(1H,s), 11.06(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.49(1H,br.s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 544(M+H)⁺.

EXAMPLE 315

N-[(3R,4S)-4-{[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-2-oxoethanethioyl]-amino}-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-3-yl]-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



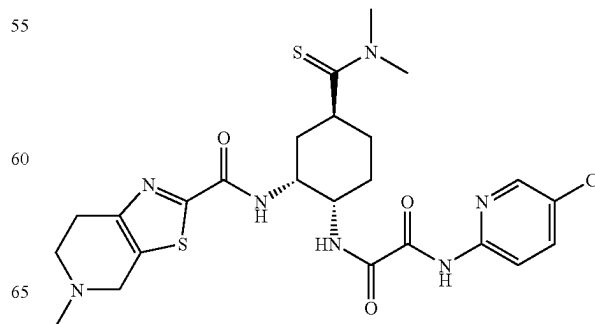
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 441 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.71-1.82(1H,m), 2.18-2.44(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 3.00-4.85(17H,m), 7.41(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.77(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.48-8.73(1H,m), 10.48(1H,br.s), 10.90-11.06(1H,m), 11.45-11.90(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 565[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁵], 567[(M+H)⁺, Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 316

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((1S, 2R, 4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbothioyl]-2-[(5-methyl-4, 5, 6, 7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl) carbonyl]amino}-cyclohexyl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



477

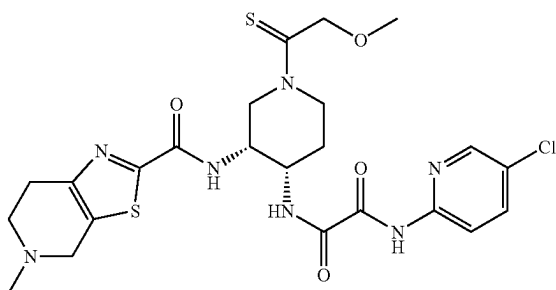
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 445 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 3.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.66-2.15(6H,m), 2.93(3H,s), 3.15-3.40(9H,m), 3.49(1H,br.s), 3.71(1H,br.s), 3.97-4.01(1H,m), 4.42(2H,br.s), 4.70(1H,br.s), 8.01(2H,br.s), 8.46(1H,br.s), 8.78(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.24(1H,br.s), 10.28(1H,s), 11.29(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 564[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 566[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 317

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-((3R,4S)-1-(2-methoxyethanethioyl)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-piperidin-4-yl)ethanediamide hydrochloride



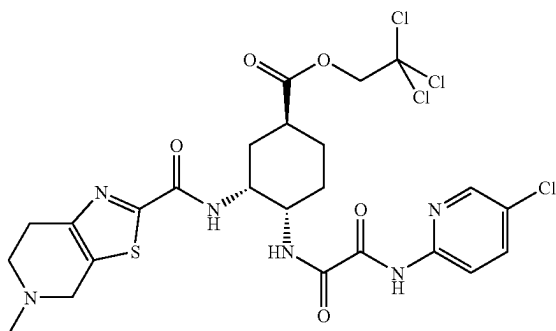
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 448 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.74-1.85(1H,m), 2.13-2.35(1H,m), 2.89(3H,s), 2.95-3.98(9H,m), 4.05-5.33(8H,m), 7.95-8.06(2H,m), 8.43(1H,s), 8.48-8.73(1H,br), 9.29-9.45(1H,br), 10.21-10.34(1H,br), 11.45-11.90(1H,br).

MS (ESI) m/z: 566[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 568 [(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 318

2,2,2-Trichloroethyl (1S,3R,4S)-4-({2-[(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)amino]-2-oxoacetyl}amino)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexanecarboxylate



478

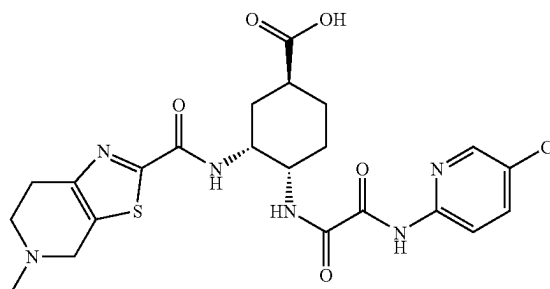
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 453 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it, condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid again in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.60-1.87(2H,m), 2.04-2.15(2H,m), 2.21-2.32(2H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.73-2.89(3H,m), 2.92-2.98(2H,m), 3.71(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 3.73(1H,d,J=15.4 Hz), 4.08-4.16(1H,m), 4.66-4.71(1H,m), 4.72(1H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 4.82(1H,d,J=12.0 Hz), 7.37(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.69(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.4 Hz), 8.05(1H,d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.16(1H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.30(1H,d,J=2.4 Hz), 9.69(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 651[(M+H)⁺,3×Cl³⁵], 653[(M+H)⁺,2×Cl³⁵,Cl³⁷], 655[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵,2×Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 319

(1S,3R,4S)-4-((2-[5-Chloropyridin-2-yl]amino)-2-oxoacetyl)amino)-3-[[[(5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl)carbonyl]amino]-cyclohexane carboxylic acid



The compound (475 mg) obtained in Example 318 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml), zinc (2.85 g) and acetic acid (5.7 ml) were successively added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. Celite 545 (2.85 g) was added to the reaction mixture to remove insoluble matter by filtration. After the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, methylene chloride was added to the resultant residue, and a 1N aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide was added with stirring to adjust the pH of the reaction mixture to 7. After an organic layer was separated, saturated saline (50 ml) was added to a water layer to conduct extraction with methylene chloride. The resultant organic layers were combined and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. The solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the resultant residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=95:5→9:1→4:1) to obtain the title compound (140 mg).

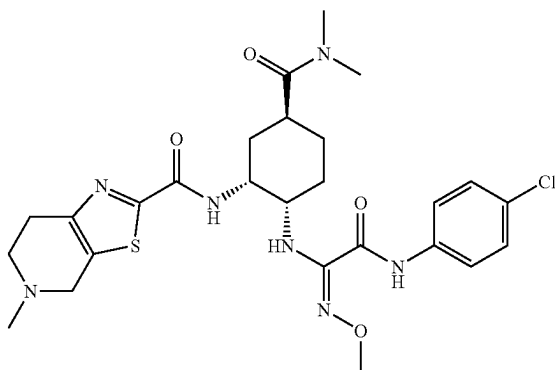
¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.50-1.80(3H,m), 1.84-1.95(1H,m), 1.95-2.10(1H,m), 2.15-2.30(1H,m), 2.38(3H,s), 2.40-2.50(1H,m), 2.67-2.80(2H,m), 2.80-2.95(2H,m), 3.66(2H,m), 4.03(1H,br.s), 4.33(1H,br.s), 7.97-8.10(2H,m), 8.45(1H,s), 8.53(1H,d,J=6.8 Hz), 9.19(1H,d,J=8.3 Hz), 10.27(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 521[(M+H)⁺,³⁵Cl], 523[(M+H)⁺,³⁷Cl].

479

EXAMPLE 320

N-{(1R,2S,5S)-2-[[2-(4-Chloroanilino)-1-methoxyimino-2-oxoethyl]amino]-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]cyclohexyl}-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



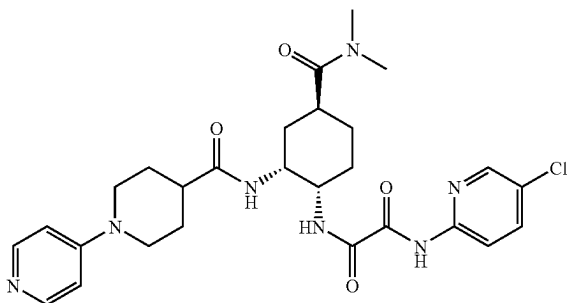
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing an ester of the compound obtained in Referential Example 454 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 142, condensing the hydrolyzate with 4-chloroaniline in a similar manner to the process described in Referential Example 143 and then treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.30-1.17(1H,m), 1.50-1.62(1H,m), 1.62-1.75(2H,m), 1.85-2.00(2H,m), 2.76(3H,s), 2.93(6H,br.s), 3.00-3.10(1H,m), 3.18(1H,br.s), 3.27(1H,br.s), 3.49(1H,br.s), 3.71(1H,br.s), 3.76(3H,s), 3.93(1H,br.s), 4.35-4.50(2H,m), 4.66-4.77(1H,m), 6.09(0.5H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 6.19(0.5H,d,J=7.8 Hz), 7.38(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 7.71(2H,d,J=8.8 Hz), 8.70-8.79(1H,m), 10.28(1H,d,J=11.0 Hz), 11.53(0.5H,br.s), 11.45(0.5H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z : 576[(M+H) $^+$, ^{35}Cl], 578[(M+H) $^+$, ^{37}Cl].

EXAMPLE 321

N 1 -(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2 -[(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[1-(pyridin-4-yl)piperidin-4-yl]carbonyl]amino]cyclohexyl]ethanediamide hydrochloride



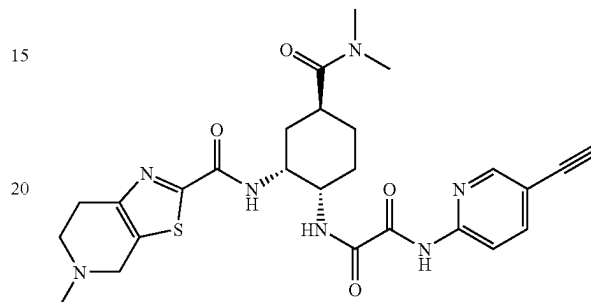
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 420 with 1-(pyridin-4-yl)piperidine-4-carboxylic acid (w096/10022) and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.35-1.49(1H,m), 1.49-1.78(6H,m), 1.78-1.98(3H,m), 2.75-2.90(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 3.02(3H,s), 3.03-3.14(1H,m), 3.14-3.28(2H,m), 3.74-3.85(1H,

480

EXAMPLE 322

N 1 -((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(Dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-yl]carbonyl]-amino)cyclohexyl)-N 2 -(5-ethynylpyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide



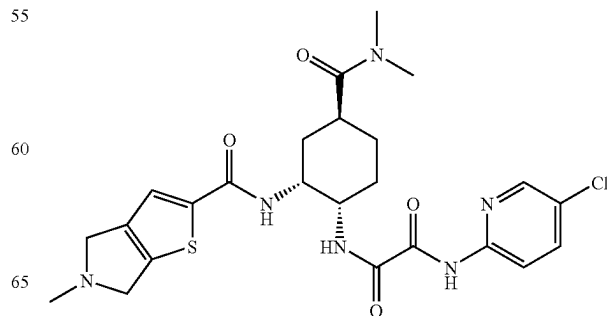
The compound (348 mg) obtained in Referential Example 455 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (14 ml), tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1N tetrahydrofuran solution, 628 μl) was added to the solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was decolored with activated carbon (about 1 g) and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. After filtration, the solvent was distilled off under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (methylene chloride:methanol=93:7) and then dissolved in methylene chloride (about 1 ml). Hexane (about 10 ml) was added to the solution, and precipitate formed was collected by filtration to obtain the title compound (116 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl $_3$) δ : 1.62-2.14(8H,m), 2.52(3H,s), 2.79-2.95(6H,m), 3.05(3H,s), 3.19(1H,s), [AB pattern 3.71(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz), 3.74(1H,d,J=15.5 Hz)], 4.08-4.14(1H,m), 4.66-4.69(1H,m), 7.41(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 7.80(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.2 Hz), 8.03(1H,d,J=7.6 Hz), 8.15(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.46(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 9.75(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z : 538(M+H) $^+$.

EXAMPLE 323

N 1 -(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N 2-((1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[[5-methyl-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[2,3-c]pyrrol-2-yl]carbonyl]amino)cyclohexyl)-ethanediamide



481

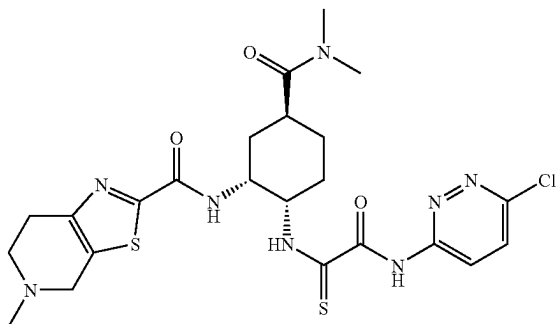
The title compound was obtained by hydrolyzing the compound obtained in Referential Example 456 and condensing the hydrolyzate with the compound obtained in Referential Example 420 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 191.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.80-2.15(6H,m), 2.64(3H,s), 2.76-2.79(1H,m), 2.94(3H,s), 3.03(3H,s), 3.84-3.86(2H,m), 3.94-3.99(3H,m), 4.58-4.59(1H,m), 6.70(1H,d,J=6.3 Hz), 7.31(1H,s), 7.70(1H,dd,J=8.8, 2.3 Hz), 8.15-8.18(2H,m), 8.30(1H,d,J=2.3 Hz), 9.72(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 533[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 535[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 324

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-((2-[6-Chloropyridazin-3-yl]amino)-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



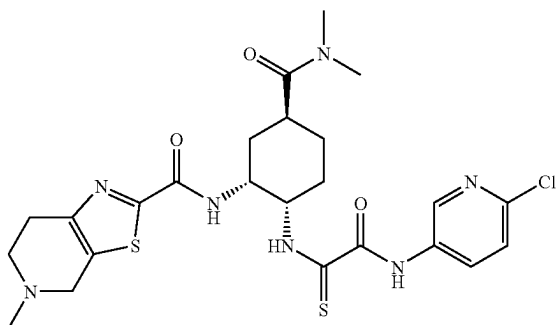
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 460 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 3.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.48-1.51(1H,m), 1.71-1.79(3H,m), 2.00(1H,br.s), 2.20-2.23(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.90(3H,s), 2.96(3H,s), 3.05(1H,br.s), 3.16-3.47(3H,m), 3.69(1H,br.s), 4.43(1H,br.s), 4.53(1H,br.s), 4.69(2H,br.s), 7.97(1H,d,J=9.6 Hz), 8.32(1H,d,J=9.6 Hz), 8.73(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 11.08(2H,br.s), 11.61-11.75(1H,m).

MS (FAB) m/z: 565[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 567[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 325

N-((1R,2S,5S)-2-((2-[(6-Chloropyridin-3-yl]amino)-2-oxoethanethioyl)amino)-5-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-cyclohexyl)-5-methyl-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrothiazolo[5,4-c]pyridin-2-carboxamide hydrochloride



482

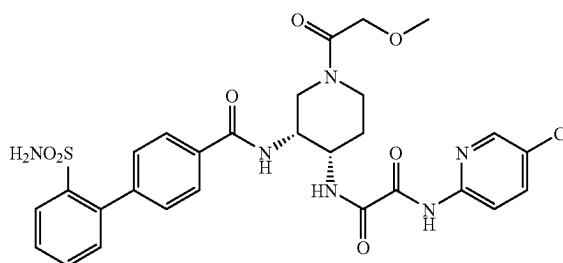
The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 464 with the compound obtained in Referential Example 10 and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 3.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.47-1.55(1H,m), 1.66-1.78(3H,m), 2.02-2.05(1H,m), 2.21-2.33(1H,m), 2.79(3H,s), 2.91(3H,s), 2.95(3H,s), 2.99-3.04(1H,m), 3.21(2H,br.s), 3.45-3.75(2H,br), 4.40-4.75(4H,m), 7.53(1H,d,J=8.6 Hz), 8.20(1H,dd,J=8.6, 2.6 Hz), 8.77(1H,d,J=7.3 Hz), 8.80(1H,d,J=2.6 Hz), 10.73(1H,s), 10.94(1H,br.d,J=7.6 Hz), 11.37(1H,br.s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 564[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 566[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 326

N¹-[(3R,4S)-3-({[2'-(Aminosulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-carbonyl}amino)-1-(2-methoxyacetyl)piperidin-4-yl]-N²-(5-chloropyridin-2-yl)ethanediamide



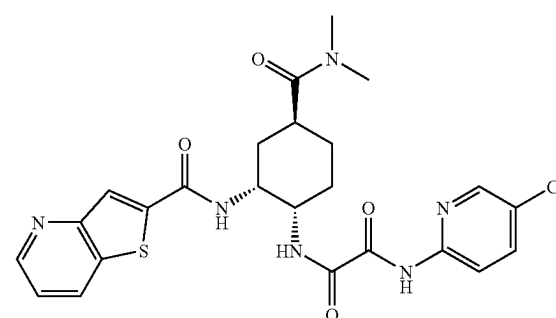
The title compound was obtained by treating the compound obtained in Referential Example 368 with hydrochloric acid to deprotect it and then condensing the deprotected compound with the compound obtained in Referential Example 465 in a similar manner to the process described in Example 219.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.59-1.85(1H,m), 2.09-2.23(1H,m), 2.88-3.13(1H,m), 3.29-3.51(4H,m), 4.06-4.20(4H,m), 4.51-4.78(4H,m), 7.09(0.25H,br.s), 7.30(1H,d,J=7.1 Hz), 7.51-7.54(3.75H,m), 7.60(1H,t,J=7.0 Hz), 7.69(1H,dd,J=8.9, 2.2 Hz), 7.94-7.96(2H,m), 8.13-8.22(2H,m), 8.30(1H,d,J=2.2 Hz), 8.91(0.75H,br.d,J=5.9 Hz), 9.18(0.25H,br.s), 9.70(1H,s).

MS (FAB) m/z: 629[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 631[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

EXAMPLE 327

N¹-(5-Chloropyridin-2-yl)-N²-{(1S,2R,4S)-4-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-2-[(thieno[3,2-b]pyridin-2-yl-carbonyl)amino]cyclohexyl}ethanediamide hydrochloride



483

The title compound was obtained by condensing the compound obtained in Referential Example 420 with lithium thieno[3,2-b]pyridin-2-ylcarboxylate (Japanese Patent Application Laid-Open No. 2001-294572) and treating the condensation product with hydrochloric acid in a similar manner to the process described in Example 2.

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.44-1.57(1H,m), 1.62-1.84(3H,m), 1.86-1.98(1H,m), 2.04-2.19(1H,m), 2.78(3H,s), 2.99(3H,s), 3.11-3.25(1H,m), 3.85-4.10(1H,br), 4.44-4.55(1H,br), 7.51-7.62(1H,m), 7.98(2H,br.s), 8.43(2H,br.s), 8.60(1H,s), 8.66(1H,br.d,J=8.1 Hz), 8.81(1H,br.d,J=4.2 Hz), 9.05(1H,br.d,J=7.8 Hz), 10.24(1H,s).

MS (ESI) m/z: 529[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁵], 531[(M+H)⁺,Cl³⁷].

TEST EXAMPLE 1

Determination of Human FXa-inhibiting Effect
(IC₅₀ Value)

5% DMSO solutions (10 μl) of each test compound, the concentrations of which were suitably set stepwise, Tris buffer (100 mM Tris, 200 mM potassium chloride, 0.2% BSA, pH 7.4) (40 μl) and 0.0625 U/ml human FXa (Enzyme Research Laboratories, Inc., dissolved and diluted with Tris buffer) (10 μl) were respectively put in wells of a 96-well microplate, and a 750 μM aqueous solution (40 μl) of S-2222 (Chromogenix Co.) was added. Absorbance at 405 nm was measured for 10 minutes at room temperature to determine an increase in absorbance (ΔOD/min). As a control, Tris buffer was used in place of the test compound.

The percent inhibition (%) calculated using the following equation at the final concentration of the test compound and the final concentration of the test compound were plotted on the axis of ordinate and the axis of abscissa of logarithmic normal probability paper, respectively, to determine the 50% inhibition dose (IC₅₀ value).

Percent inhibition (%) =

$$[1 - (\Delta OD/\text{min of test compound}) \div (\Delta OD/\text{min of control})] \times 100$$

(Result)

In Table 1, it is demonstrated that the compounds according to the present invention have a potent FXa-inhibiting effect.

TABLE 1

Compound	Human FXa-inhibiting effect (IC ₅₀): nM
Ex. 3	86
Ex. 7	83
Ex. 11	92
Ex. 54	4.2
Ex. 62	3.5
Ex. 63	2.5
Ex. 74	1.4
Ex. 101	26
Ex. 130	4.5
Ex. 138	4.4
Ex. 143	5.8
Ex. 164	4.8
Ex. 191	1.2
Ex. 192	2.0
Ex. 194	5.0
Ex. 204	1.5
Ex. 246	3.1

484

TABLE 1-continued

Compound	Human FXa-inhibiting effect (IC ₅₀): nM
Ex. 247	1.9
Ex. 248	5.4

TEST EXAMPLE 2

Determination of Anti-FXa Activity in Rat Plasma
After Oral Administration

(A) Administration and Blood Collection:

A drug solution (1 mg/ml) obtained by dissolving or suspending a test compound (10 mg) in 0.5% methyl cellulose (MC) was orally administered to rats (10 ml/kg). After 0.5, 1, 2 and 4 hours from the drug administration, the blood (0.5 ml) was collected through the jugular vein using a syringe which is containing a 3.13% (w/v) aqueous solution (50 μl) of trisodium citrate dihydrate (amount of blood collected: 0.45 ml). For rats of a control group, the same blood collection was conducted after a 0.5% MC solution was administered. Each blood sample was centrifuged at 1500×g for 10 minutes at 4° C. to separate plasma, and the plasma was preserved at -40° C. until it was used in the following determination of anti-FXa activity in plasma.

(B) Determination of FXa-inhibiting Activity in Plasma:

In the determination of anti-FXa activity in plasma, S-2222 was used as a substrate. Tris buffer (100 mM Tris, 200 mM potassium chloride, 0.2% BSA, pH 7.4) (5456 μl), human FXa (2.5 U/ml, 44 μl) and water (550 μl) were mixed. The resultant human FXa solution was used in the following test.

Rat plasma (5 μl) obtained in accordance with the procedure (A) described above was put in wells of a 96-well microplate, and the above-described human FXa solution (55 μl) and a 750 μM aqueous solution (40 μl) of S-2222 were sequentially added. Immediately after that, absorbance at 405 nm was measured at room temperature by means of a spectrophotometer SPECTRAMax 340 or 190 (Molecular Devices Co., U.S.A.), thereby determining a rate of reaction (ΔOD/min).

The anti-FXa activity, i.e., percent inhibition (%) was calculated in accordance with the following equation:

$$\text{Percent inhibition (\%)} = [1 - (\Delta OD/\text{min of sample}) \div$$

$$(\text{average value of } \Delta OD/\text{min of the control group})] \times 100$$

(Result)

The compounds described in Examples 63, 191, 192, 194 and 204 exhibited a potent FXa-inhibiting activity of 62 to 96% at an oral dose of 10 mg/kg.

INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

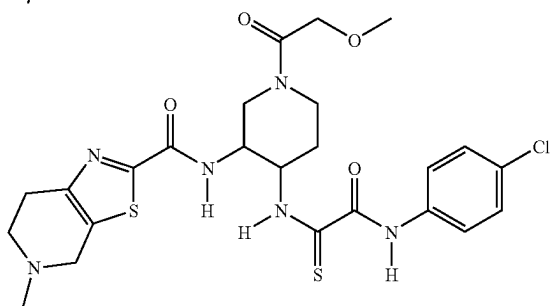
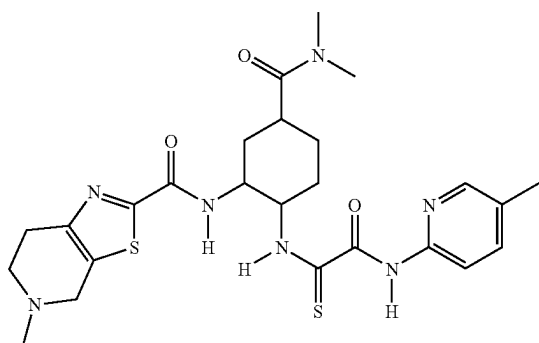
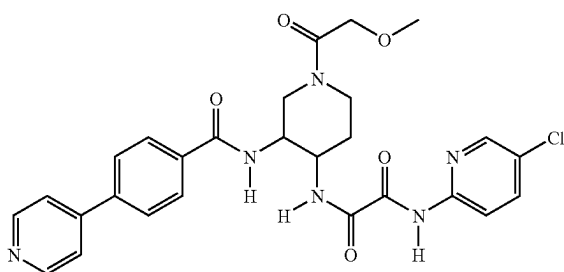
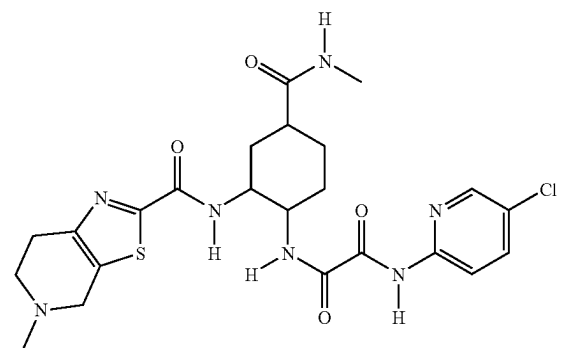
The cyclicdiamine derivatives according to the present invention exhibit a potent inhibitory effect on activated blood coagulation factor X and are useful as medicines, activated blood coagulation factor X inhibitors, anticoagulants, agents for preventing and/or treating thrombosis or embolism, agents for preventing and/or treating thrombotic

485

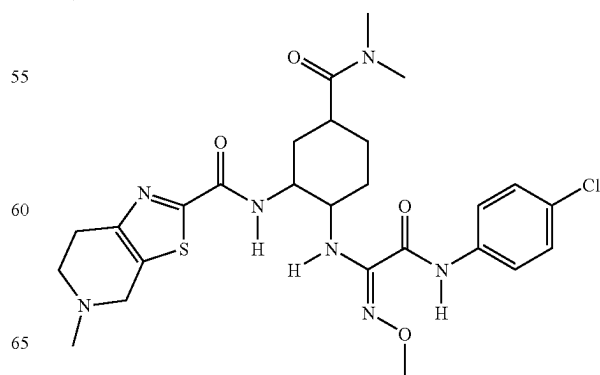
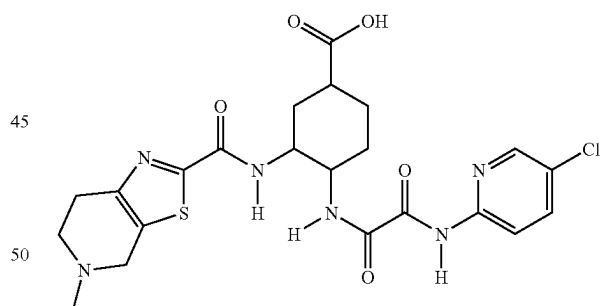
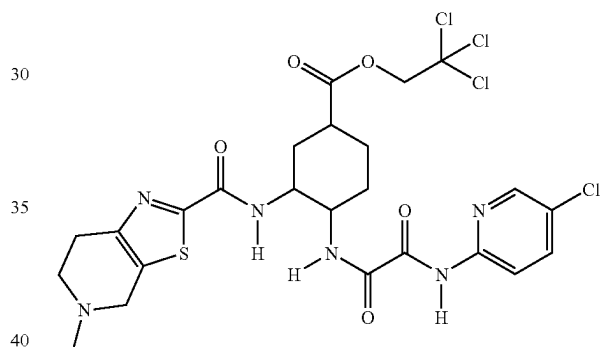
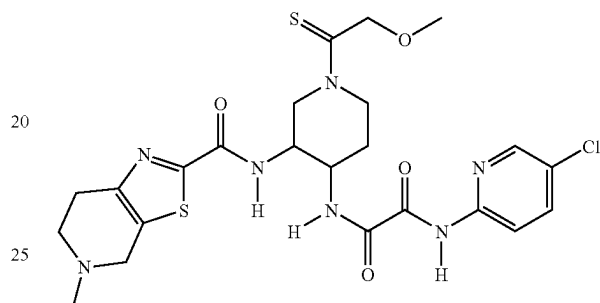
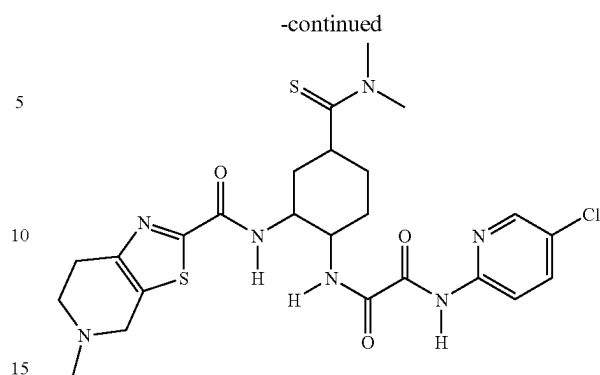
disease and agents for preventing and/or treating cerebral infarction, cerebral embolism, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, pulmonary infarction, pulmonary embolism, Buerger's disease, deep venous thrombosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation syndrome, thrombus formation after valve or joint replacement, thrombus formation and reocclusion after angioplasty, systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), thrombus formation during extracorporeal circulation, or blood clotting upon blood drawing.

The invention claimed is:

1. A compound having a structural formula, including a salt thereof, selected from the group consisting of:

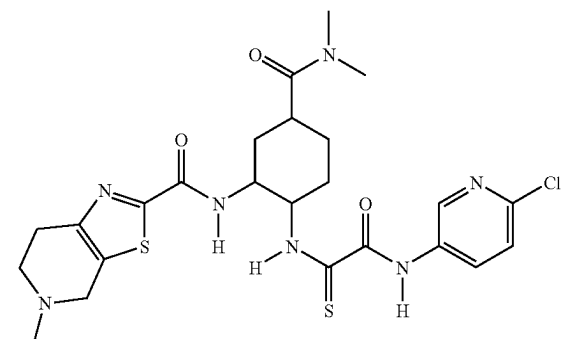
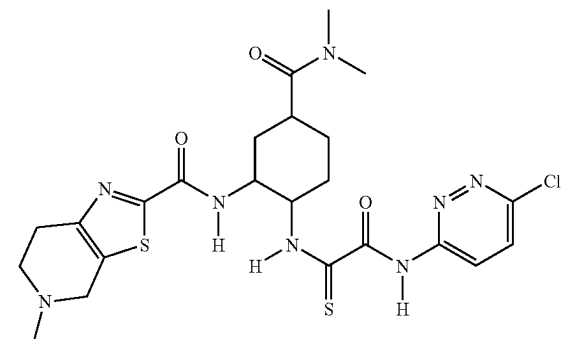
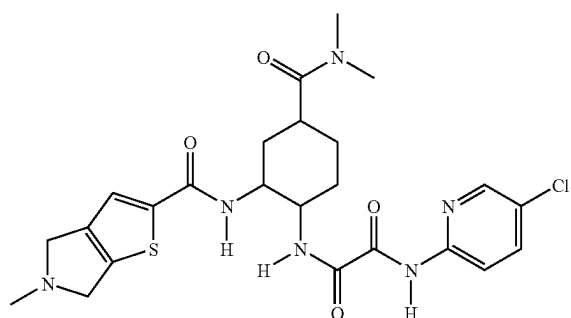
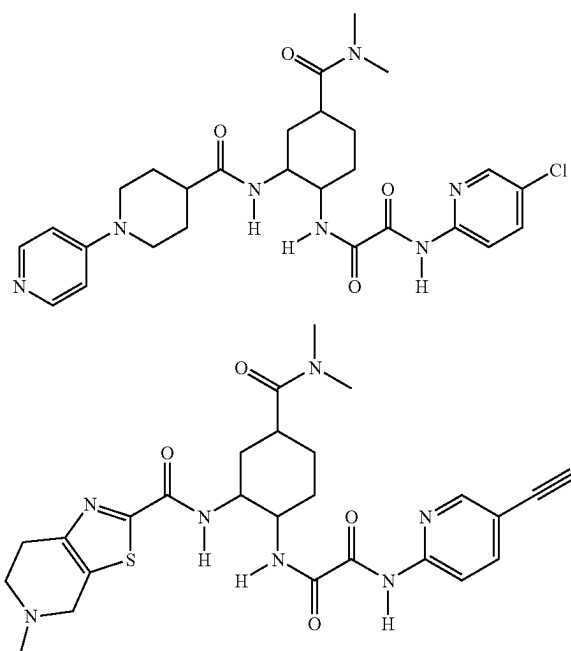
**486**

-continued



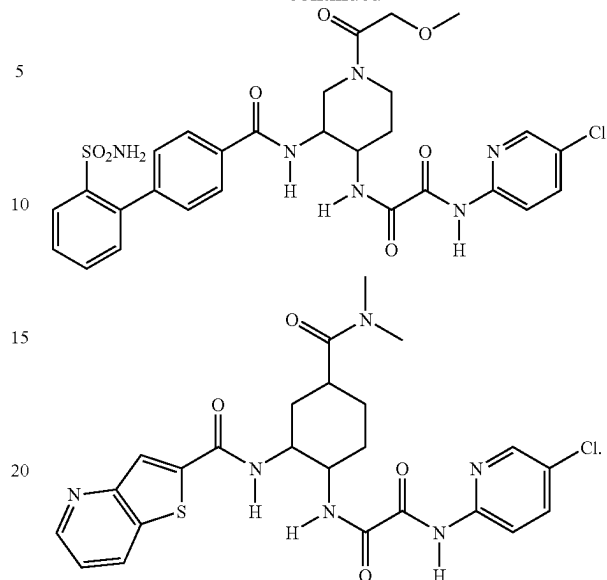
487

-continued



488

-continued



2. A composition comprising at least one compound according to claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

3. The composition according to claim 2, wherein said composition further comprises at least one pharmaceutically acceptable additive selected from the group consisting of fillers, extenders, binders, disintegrating agents, dissolution aids/accelerators, suspending agents, emulsifying agents, wetting agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

4. The composition according to claim 2, wherein said composition is in the form of a tablet, a granule, a capsule, a powder, a solution, a suspension, an emulsion, an oil, a syrup, an elixir, an ointment, a gel, a cream, a lotion, a spray, or a plaster.

5. The composition according to claim 2, wherein said composition is suitable for oral, topical, or injection administration.

6. A process for preparing a composition comprising combining at least one compound according to claim 1 with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

7. The process according to claim 6, wherein said process further comprises combining with said at least one compound and said pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, at least one pharmaceutically acceptable additive selected from the group consisting of fillers, extenders, binders, disintegrating agents, dissolution aids/accelerators, suspending agents, emulsifying agents, wetting agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

8. A method of inhibiting activated blood coagulation factor X comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof a effective amount of the composition according to claim 2.

9. The method according to claim 8, wherein said effective amount ranges from 1 mg to 1000 mg per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

10. The method according to claim 8, wherein said effective amount ranges from 0.1 mg to 200 mg per kg of body weight of said mammal per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

489

11. The method according to claim 8, wherein the administration of said composition ranges from one to four times per day.

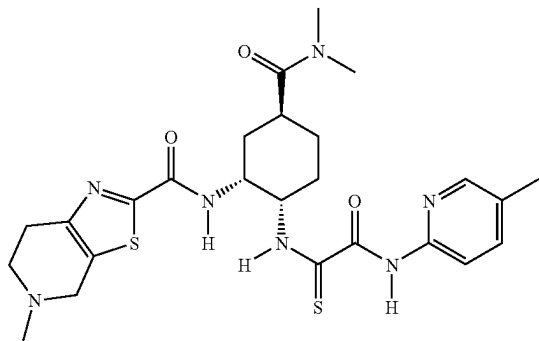
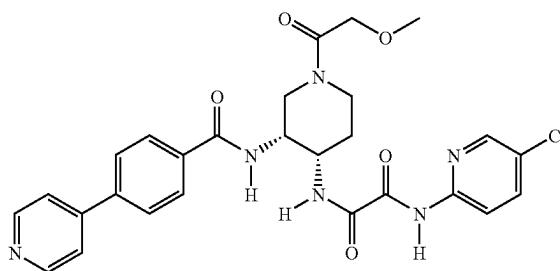
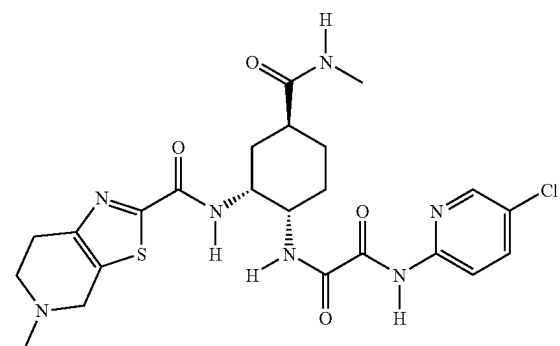
12. A method of treating thrombosis or embolism comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof a effective amount of the composition according to claim 2.

13. The method according to claim 12, wherein said effective amount ranges from 1 mg to 1000 mg per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

14. The method according to claim 12, wherein said effective amount ranges from 0.1 mg to 200 mg per kg of body weight of said mammal per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

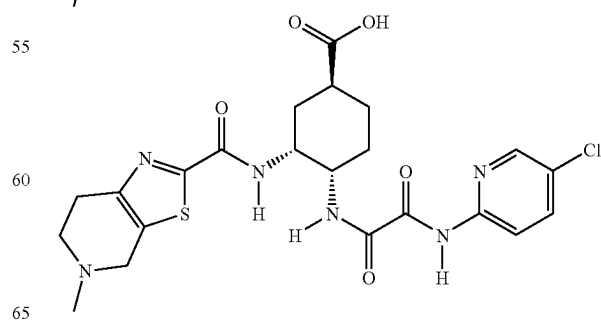
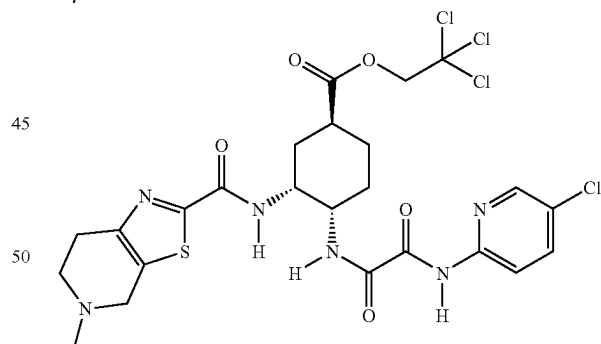
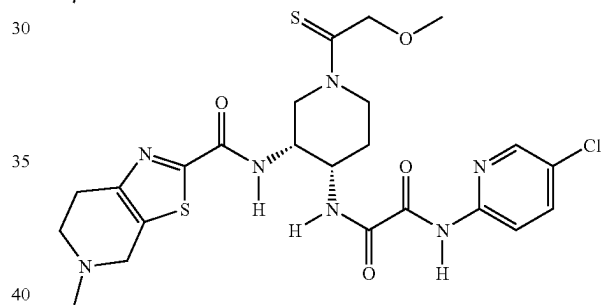
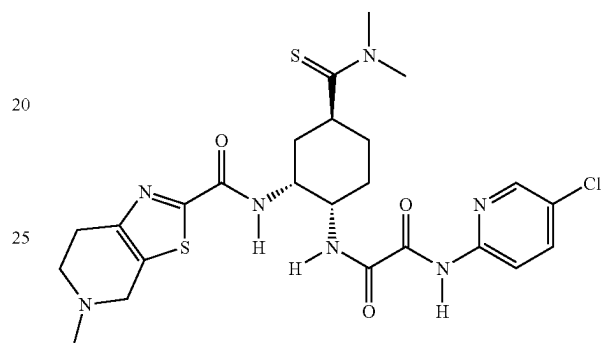
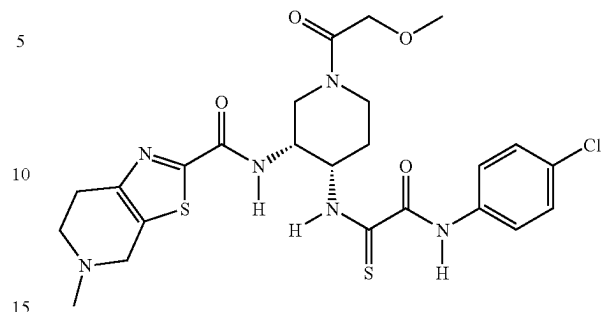
15. The method according to claim 12, wherein the administration of said composition ranges from one to four times per day.

16. A compound having a stereochemical structural formula, including a salt thereof, selected from the group consisting of:



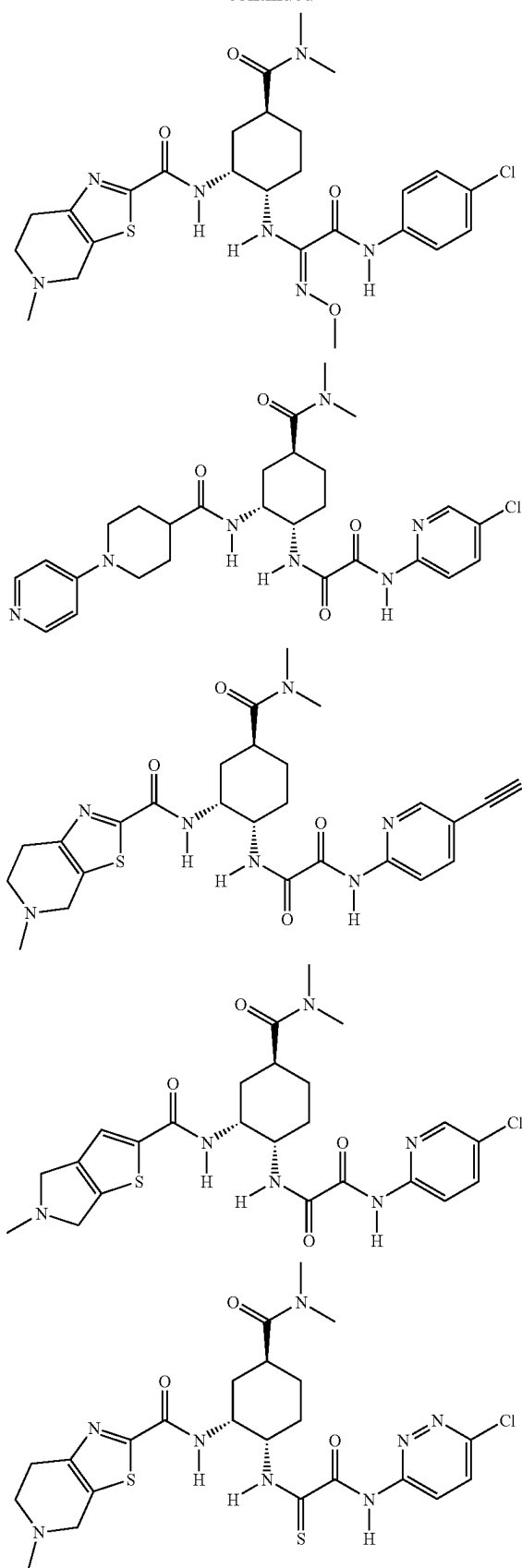
490

-continued



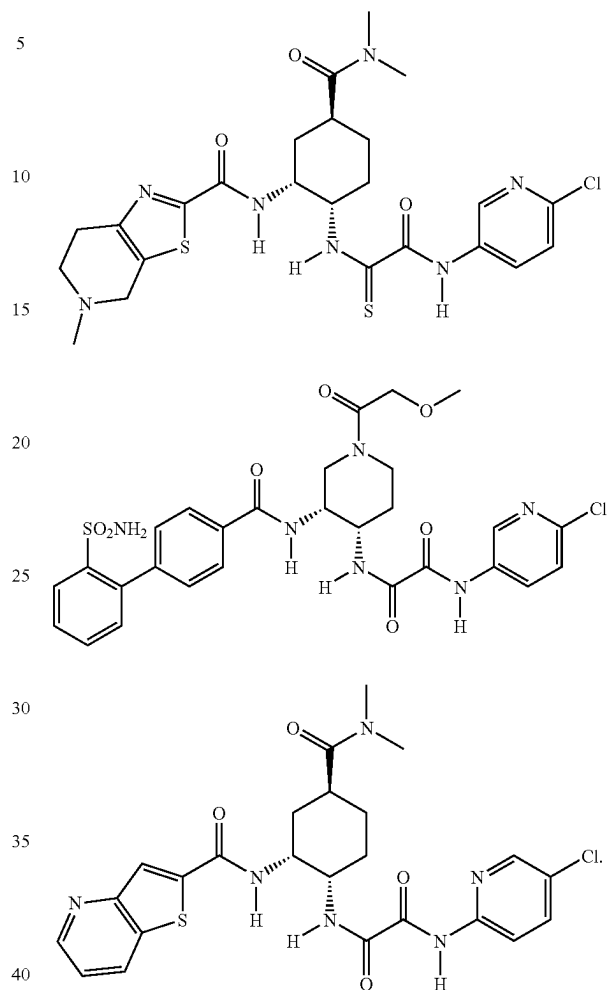
491

-continued



492

-continued



17. A composition comprising at least one compound according to claim 16 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

18. The composition according to claim 17, wherein said composition further comprises at least one pharmaceutically acceptable additive selected from the group consisting of fillers, extenders, binders, disintegrating agents, dissolution aids/accelerators, suspending agents, emulsifying agents, wetting agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

19. The composition according to claim 17, wherein said composition is in the form of a tablet, a granule, a capsule, a powder, a solution, a suspension, an emulsion, an oil, a syrup, an elixir, an ointment, a gel, a cream, a lotion, a spray, or a plaster.

20. The composition according to claim 17, wherein said composition is suitable for oral, topical, or injection administration.

21. A process for preparing a composition comprising combining at least one compound according to claim 16 with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

22. The process according to claim 21, wherein said process further comprises combining with said at least one compound and said pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, at least one pharmaceutically acceptable additive selected from the group consisting of fillers, extenders, binders, disinte-

493

grating agents, dissolution aids/accelerators, suspending agents, emulsifying agents, wetting agents, stabilizers, and preservatives.

23. A method of inhibiting activated blood coagulation factor X comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof a effective amount of the composition according to claim 17. 5

24. The method according to claim 23, wherein said effective amount ranges from 1 mg to 1000 mg per day of said at least one compound present within said composition. 10

25. The method according to claim 23, wherein said effective amount ranges from 0.1 mg to 200 mg per kg of body weight of said mammal per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

26. The method according to claim 23, wherein the administration of said composition ranges from one to four times per day. 15

494

27. A method of treating thrombosis or embolism comprising administering to a mammal in need thereof a effective amount of the composition according to claim 17.

28. The method according to claim 27, wherein said effective amount ranges from 1 mg to 1000 mg per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

29. The method according to claim 27, wherein said effective amount ranges from 0.1 mg to 200 mg per kg of body weight of said mammal per day of said at least one compound present within said composition.

30. The method according to claim 27, wherein the administration of said composition ranges from one to four times per day.

* * * * *

Exhibit B

591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257
(Cite as: **591 F.3d 1364**)

H

United States Court of Appeals,
Federal Circuit.
WYETH and Elan Pharma International Limited,
Plaintiffs-Appellees,
v.
David J. **KAPPOS**, Under Secretary of Commerce
for Intellectual Property and Director of the United
States Patent and Trademark Office, Defendant-Appellant.
No. 2009-1120.
Jan. 7, 2010.

Background: Owners of patents related to treatment of Alzheimer's disease filed suit, pursuant to American Inventors Protection Act (AIPA), challenging method used by Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) to calculate adjustments for patent terms due to delay in prosecuting patent applications. The United States District Court for the District of Columbia, James Robertson, J., 580 F.Supp.2d 138, granted patent owners summary judgment. Appeal was taken.

Holding: The Court of Appeals, Rader, Circuit Judge, held that owners were entitled to extended patent term adjustments.

Affirmed.

West Headnotes

[1] Federal Courts 170B 🔑766

170B Federal Courts
170BVIII Courts of Appeals
170BVIII(K) Scope, Standards, and Extent
170BVIII(K)1 In General
170Bk763 Extent of Review Dependent on Nature of Decision Appealed from
170Bk766 k. Summary judgment.
Most Cited Cases
Court of Appeals reviews a grant of summary judgment

without deference. Fed.Rules Civ.Proc.Rule 56(c), 28 U.S.C.A.

[2] Federal Courts 170B 🔑763.1

170B Federal Courts
170BVIII Courts of Appeals
170BVIII(K) Scope, Standards, and Extent
170BVIII(K)1 In General
170Bk763 Extent of Review Dependent on Nature of Decision Appealed from
170Bk763.1 k. In general. Most

Cited Cases

Court of Appeals determines a question of statutory interpretation independently, without deference to the trial court's interpretation.

[3] Statutes 361 🔑188

361 Statutes
361VI Construction and Operation
361VI(A) General Rules of Construction
361k187 Meaning of Language
361k188 k. In general. Most Cited Cases

As always, the starting point in every case involving construction of a statute is the language itself.

[4] Statutes 361 🔑190

361 Statutes
361VI Construction and Operation
361VI(A) General Rules of Construction
361k187 Meaning of Language
361k190 k. Existence of ambiguity.

Most Cited Cases

When the terms of a statute are unambiguous, judicial inquiry is complete, except in rare and exceptional circumstances.

[5] Statutes 361 🔑188

361 Statutes
361VI Construction and Operation

591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257

(Cite as: 591 F.3d 1364)

361VI(A) General Rules of Construction

361k187 Meaning of Language

361k188 k. In general. Most Cited

Cases

Absent a clearly expressed legislative intention to the contrary, a statute's plain language must ordinarily be regarded as conclusive.

[6] Patents 291 ↪133

291 Patents

291VI Term

291k133 k. Extension. Most Cited Cases

Owners of patents related to treatment of Alzheimer's disease were entitled to patent term adjustments, under American Inventors Protection Act (AIPA) guarantees regarding delay during prosecution caused by Patent and Trademark Office (PTO), with respect to meeting examination deadlines and no more than three-year application pendency, based on PTO's "periods of delay," within meaning of statute restricting adjustments when periods of delay overlapped, that did not start until three years after application's filing date, and thus, only possible "overlap" was any delay occurring after three-year mark caused by PTO's failure to meet examination deadlines during prosecution. 35 U.S.C.A. § 154(b)(1)(A, B), (b)(2)(A); 37 C.F.R. § 1.703(b, f) (2000).

[7] Patents 291 ↪133

291 Patents

291VI Term

291k133 k. Extension. Most Cited Cases

Under American Inventors Protection Act (AIPA), guaranteeing prompt Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) responses to patent applications, by affording patent term adjustment for delays caused by PTO in meeting examination deadlines during prosecution, the "periods of delay," within meaning of statute restricting period of adjustment when any periods of delay overlap, run from the date the PTO misses the specified deadline to the date past the deadline of response to the underlying action. 35 U.S.C.A. § 154(b)(1)(A), (b)(2)(A).

[8] Patents 291 ↪133

291 Patents

291VI Term

291k133 k. Extension. Most Cited Cases

Under American Inventors Protection Act (AIPA), guaranteeing no more than three-year patent application pendency, by affording patent term adjustment for delay during prosecution caused by Patent and Trademark Office (PTO), the "periods of delay," within meaning of statute restricting period of adjustment when any periods of delay overlap, run from the three-year mark after filing until the application issues. 35 U.S.C.A. § 154(b)(1)(B), (b)(2)(A).

[9] Statutes 361 ↪188

361 Statutes

361VI Construction and Operation

361VI(A) General Rules of Construction

361k187 Meaning of Language

361k188 k. In general. Most Cited

Cases

Only a most extraordinary showing of contrary intentions by Congress justifies a departure from the plain language of a statute.

Patents 291 ↪328(2)

291 Patents

291XIII Decisions on the Validity, Construction, and Infringement of Particular Patents

291k328 Patents Enumerated

291k328(2) k. Original utility. Most Cited

Cases

7,179,892, 7,189,819. Cited.

***1366** Patricia A. Carson, Kaye Scholer LLP, of New York, NY, argued for plaintiffs-appellees. With her on the brief were Richard G. Greco; and David O. Bickart, of Washington, DC. of counsel were Thomas E. Malone, Elan Pharmaceuticals, of South San Francisco, CA, and Reem F. Jishi, Wyeth, of Madison, NJ.

Christine N. Kohl, Attorney, Appellate Staff, Civil

591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257
(Cite as: 591 F.3d 1364)

Division, United States Department of Justice, of Washington, DC, argued for defendant-appellant. On the brief were Tony West, Assistant Attorney General, Channing D. Phillips, Acting United States Attorney, and Scott R. McIntosh and Abby C. Wright, Attorneys. Of counsel on the brief were James A. Toupin, General Counsel, and Raymond T. Chen, Deputy General Counsel and Solicitor, United States Patent and Trademark Office, of Arlington, VI.

William G. James, II, Kenyon & Kenyon LLP, of Washington, DC, for amicus curiae Hospira, Inc. With him on the brief was Richard W. Ward.

Jeffrey B. Elikan, Covington & Burling LLP, of Washington, DC, for amicus curiae Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America, et al. With him on the brief were E. Edward Bruce and James P. Sullivan.

Before RADER, PLAGER, and MOORE, Circuit Judges.

RADER, Circuit Judge.

I.

On summary judgment, the United States District Court for the District of Columbia held that plaintiffs Wyeth and Elan Pharma International Ltd. (collectively, “Wyeth”) were entitled to extended patent term adjustments under 35 U.S.C. § 154(b) due to the Patent and Trademark Office’s (the “PTO’s”) delay in prosecuting their patent applications. Because section 154(b) expressly permits this legal relief, this court *affirms*.

II.

In 1994, the law changed the effective term of a patent from seventeen years commencing from issuance to twenty years from filing. *See* Pub.L. No. 103-465, § 532, 108 Stat. 4809, 4984 (1994). With the change came new ways of compensating pat-

entees for PTO-caused delays during prosecution. Under the previous seventeen-year regime, PTO-caused delays could not affect patent terms because the term commenced upon issuance after any delays during patent acquisition. Under the twenty-year term, however, those delays consumed the effective term of a patent.

In 1999, the American Inventors Protection Act amended 35 U.S.C. § 154(b) to address this new problem. The new Act promised patent applicants a full patent term adjustment for any delay during prosecution caused by the PTO. This promise took the form of three distinct “guarantees” in 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1):

(A) Guarantee of prompt Patent and Trademark Office responses.-Subject to the limitations under paragraph (2), if the issue of an original patent is delayed due to the failure of the Patent and Trademark Office to [meet deadlines specified in clauses (i)-(iv)] ...

the term of the patent shall be extended 1 day for each day after the end of the period specified in clause (i), (ii), (iii), or (iv), as the case may be, until the action described in such clause is taken.

(B) Guarantee of no more than 3-year application pendency.-Subject to the limitations under paragraph (2), if the issue of an original patent is delayed due to the failure of the United States Patent and Trademark Office to issue a patent within 3 years after the actual *1367 filing date of the application in the United States ...

the term of the patent shall be extended 1 day for each day after the end of that 3-year period until the patent is issued.

(C) Guarantee or adjustments for delays due to interferences, secrecy orders, and appeals.-Subject to the limitations under paragraph (2) ... the term of the patent shall be extended 1 day for each day of the pendency of the proceeding, order, or review, as the case may be.

(emphases added). To summarize, paragraph A (the “A guarantee” or “A clause”) promises “prompt [PTO] responses” by extending the term of the patent one day for each day the PTO does not meet certain examination deadlines in subdivisions (i)-(iv). *Id.* § 154(b)(1)(A). One of these deadlines, for instance, requires a first response to a filed application within fourteen months. *See id.* § 154(b)(1)(A)(i). Paragraph B (the “B guarantee” or “B clause”) extends the term of the patent one day for each day issuance is delayed due to the PTO’s failure “to issue a patent within 3 years after the actual filing date of the application in the United States.” *Id.* § 154(b)(1)(B). Last, paragraph C allows for adjustments relating to delays resulting from interference proceedings, secrecy orders, and appeals. *Id.* § 154(b)(1)(C). At issue in this case are the A and B guarantees.

Both the A and B clauses are expressly subject to paragraph 2’s “In general” limitation:

In general. To the extent that *periods of delay attributable to grounds specified in paragraph (1) overlap*, the period of any adjustment granted under this subsection shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed.

Id. § 154(b)(2)(A) (emphasis added). In other words, this limitation restricts the period of adjustment when any of the “periods of delay” “overlap.” This case asks this court to interpret and enforce the guarantees in the face of an “overlap” and “periods of delay” under section 154(b)(2)(A).

Section 154(b)(3) of the statute directs the PTO to “prescribe regulations establishing *procedures* for the application for and determination of patent term adjustments under this subsection.” *Id.* § 154(b)(3) (emphasis added). Under the guise of that authority, the PTO promulgated 37 C.F.R. § 1.703(f) in 2000: “To the extent that *periods of adjustment* attributable to the [guarantees] overlap, the period of adjustment granted under this section shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent

was delayed.” (emphasis added). Other than adding the term “periods of adjustment,” this language repeated the text of section 154(b)(2)(A). The regulations later defined “periods of adjustment” as “the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the day after the date that is three years after the date on which the application was filed....” 37 C.F.R. § 1.703(b) (2000). The regulation supplied no explanation about implementation or application of these rules.

In 2004, the PTO amended the regulation to replace “periods of adjustment” with “periods of delay.” 69 Fed.Reg. 21706 (2004). The PTO contended that this substitution clarified the regulation:

The language of former § 1.703(f) misled applicants into believing that [periods of A-delay] and [periods of B-delay] were overlapping only if the [period of A-delay] occurred more than three years after the actual filing date of the application. If an application is entitled to a[B-]adjustment ... *the entire period during which the application was pending before the [PTO] ...*, and not just the period beginning three years after *1368 the actual filing date of the application; is the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) in determining whether periods of delay overlap under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A).

Id. (emphasis added). Thus, the “period of delay,” according to the PTO’s new definition, caused the B guarantee to start with the filing of the application, not three years later. Under that interpretation, “overlap” between A adjustments and B adjustments can arise and begin during the pendency of the patent application. For example, if a patent entitled to twenty days of A adjustments issues twenty days after the three year mark, then it is only entitled to a total of twenty days of adjustment. In other words, the entire period of A delay “overlaps” with the entire period of B delay. Using this framework, the PTO uses either the greater of the A delay or B delay to determine the appropriate adjustment but never combines the two.

591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257
(Cite as: 591 F.3d 1364)

Wyeth and Elan Pharma are the owners of U.S. Patent Nos. 7,179,892 (the “892 patent”) and 7,189,819 (the “819 patent”)-inventions that treat Alzheimer's disease. During the prosecution of each of their respective applications, the PTO undisputedly caused delays that gave the applicants entitlement to both A and B guarantees.

For the '892 patent, the PTO calculated 610 days of A delay and 345 days of B delay. Of the 610 days of A delay, 51 occurred more than three years after the application was filed. During the prosecution, the applicant caused 148 days of delay. Thus, under section 154(b)(2)(C), any adjustment must be reduced by that amount. *See* 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(C). Under its greater-of-A-or-B rubric, the PTO calculated the total adjustment at 462 days-i.e., 610 (the greater of A or B)-148 (applicant delay). According to Wyeth, however, the “period of delay” for purposes of the B clause could not have started until three years after the application's filing date. For that reason, the only possible “overlap” was any A delay occurring after the three-year mark. Because only 51 days of A delay occurred after the three year mark for the '892 patent, the adjustment, according to Wyeth, should have been 756 days-i.e., 610 (A delay) + 345 (B delay)-51 (“overlap”)-148 (applicant delay).

For the '819 patent, the PTO calculated 336 days of A delay and 827 days of B delay. Of the 336 days of A delay, 106 occurred after the three-year mark. In this case, the applicant caused 335 days of delay. The greater-of-A-or-B rubric yields an adjustment period of 492 days-i.e., 827 (the greater of A or B)-335 (applicant delay). Wyeth contends the adjustment period should have been 722 days-i.e., 336 (A delay) + 827 (B delay)-106 (“overlap”)-335 (applicant delay).

After filing petitions for reconsideration of the adjustments with the PTO, Wyeth filed the instant action in the District Court for the District of Columbia seeking an order directing the PTO to grant an adjustment per Wyeth's interpretation. Both parties filed motions for summary judgment.

Citing section 154(b)(3) as evidence of a delegation of authority to draft regulations, the PTO sought *Chevron* deference for its interpretation. *See Chevron U.S.A., Inc. v. Natural Resources Def. Council, Inc.*, 467 U.S. 837, 104 S.Ct. 2778, 81 L.Ed.2d 694 (1984).

The district court sided with Wyeth, finding first that the PTO “does not have the authority to issue substantive rules, only procedural regulations regarding the conduct of proceedings before the agency.” *Wyeth v. Dudas*, 580 F.Supp.2d 138, 141 (D.D.C.2008) (citing *Merck & Co. v. Kessler*, 80 F.3d 1543, 1549-50 (Fed.Cir.1996)). The district court further found that even if *Chevron* was applicable, it would have *1369 rejected the PTO's interpretation as contrary to the plain language of the statute. As the district court put it: “The problem with the PTO's interpretation is that it considers the application *delayed* under [the B guarantee] during the period *before it has been delayed*.” *Id.* at 142 (emphasis in original).

III.

[1][2] This court reviews a grant of summary judgment without deference. *Johns Hopkins Univ. v. CellPro, Inc.*, 152 F.3d 1342, 1353 (Fed.Cir.1998). Summary judgment is only appropriate if the court determines that there “is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to a judgment as a matter of law.” Fed.R.Civ.P. 56(c). Because both parties in the instant case perceive no genuine issues of material fact, this court need only decide the question of law decided by the district court. “That question is one of statutory interpretation, one that an appellate court can independently determine without deference to the trial court's interpretation.” *Glaxo Operations UK Limited v. Quigg*, 894 F.2d 392, 395 (Fed.Cir.1990) (citing *Madison Galleries, Ltd. v. United States*, 870 F.2d 627, 629 (Fed.Cir.1989)).

[3][4][5] “As always, the ‘starting point in every case involving construction of a statute is the lan-

guage itself.’ ” *United States v. Hohri*, 482 U.S. 64, 68, 107 S.Ct. 2246, 96 L.Ed.2d 51 (1987) (quoting *Kelly v. Robinson*, 479 U.S. 36, 43, 107 S.Ct. 353, 93 L.Ed.2d 216 (1986)). When the terms of a statute are unambiguous, “judicial inquiry is complete, except ‘in rare and exceptional circumstances.’ ” *Rubin v. United States*, 449 U.S. 424, 430, 101 S.Ct. 698, 66 L.Ed.2d 633 (1981) (quoting *TVA v. Hill*, 437 U.S. 153, 187 n. 33, 98 S.Ct. 2279, 57 L.Ed.2d 117 (1978)). “Absent a clearly expressed legislative intention to the contrary, [the statute’s plain] language must ordinarily be regarded as conclusive.” *Consumer Prod. Safety Comm’n v. GTE Sylvania, Inc.*, 447 U.S. 102, 108, 100 S.Ct. 2051, 64 L.Ed.2d 766 (1980).

[6] This court detects no ambiguity in the terms “periods of delay” and “overlap.” Each term has an evident meaning within the context of section 154(b). The limitation in section 154(b) only arises when “periods of delay” resulting from violations of the three guarantees “overlap.” 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(A). Significantly, the A and B guarantees expressly designate when and for what period they each respectively apply. Thus, this court can easily detect any overlap by examining the delay periods covered by the A and B guarantees.

[7] A violation of the A guarantee—delays in meeting examination deadlines—begins with a “failure of the [PTO]” to meet one of the deadlines specified in subparagraphs (i)–(iv). *Id.* § 154(b)(1)(A). It ends when “the action described ... is taken.” *Id.* The “period of delay” for purposes of the A clause therefore runs from the date the PTO misses the specified deadline to the date (past the deadline) of response to the underlying action.

[8] Correspondingly, a violation of the B guarantee—the one at the heart of the issue in this case—begins when the PTO fails “to issue a patent within 3 years after the actual filing date of the application in the United States....” *Id.* § 154(b)(1)(B). It ends when “the patent is issued.” *Id.* The “period of delay” under the express language of the B clause therefore runs from the three-year mark after filing until the

application issues.

Reading this framework into section 154(b)’s limitation provision makes it clear that no “overlap” happens unless the violations occur at the same time. Each “period of delay” has its own discrete time span *1370 whose boundaries are defined in section 154(b)(1). That is, each has a start and an end. Before the three-year mark, no “overlap” can transpire between the A delay and the B delay because the B delay has yet to begin or take any effect. If an A delay occurs on one day and a B delay occurs on a different day, those two days do not “overlap” under section 154(b)(2).

Under the PTO’s strained interpretation, B delay can occur *anytime* after the application is filed. To the contrary, the language of section 154(b) does not even permit B delay to start running until three years *after* the application is filed. The PTO’s position cannot be reconciled with the language of the statute. Thus, returning to the district court’s decision, this time with affirming approval: “The problem with the PTO’s interpretation is that it considers the application *delayed* under [the B guarantee] during the period *before it has delayed*.” *Wyeth*, 580 F.Supp.2d at 142 (emphasis in original).

The PTO defends its interpretation by arguing that A delays during the first three years of prosecution ultimately lead to B delays after the three-year mark from filing. Put differently, it would be double counting if A and B delays were both used to adjust because A delays “cause” B delays. In that vein, the PTO highlights various scenarios where a hypothetical patentee appears to receive some type of windfall adjustment under the statute despite being in a similar position as other applicants who receive no similar adjustment. Indeed, the statute requires as much. Nonetheless, this court perceives potential perverse results as well under the PTO’s suggested interpretations. Under certain scenarios, both the PTO’s interpretation and the statute itself result in some imbalanced treatment of similarly-situated patentees.

For example, the language of section 154(b) presents a slight imbalance in the following hypothetical: suppose Applicant 1 receives a patent 3 years and 30 days after filing an application. In prosecuting the application, Applicant 1 incurred 30 days of A delay before the three-year mark. In the same hypothetical situation, suppose Applicant 2 also receives a patent 3 years and 30 days after filing an application but incurred no A delay during prosecution. Notably, both patents issued the same amount of time from filing—3 years and 30 days. Nonetheless, Applicant 1 would receive a 60 day adjustment whereas Applicant 2 would only receive a 30 day adjustment meaning Applicant 1's effective term would be 30 days longer than Applicant 2.

By the same token, under the PTO's counter-statutory interpretation, suppose Applicant 1 incurs 400 days of A delay before the three-year mark with the application issuing exactly three years after filing. Suppose Applicant 2 also incurs 400 days of A delay before the three-year mark, but in addition incurs a one-year delay by the PTO after the three-year mark. Despite the fact each applicant incurred the same A delay, under the PTO's interpretation, Applicant 1's effective term would be a full year greater than Applicant 2's effective term. Simply put, the additional B delay incurred by Applicant 2 produces a shorter effective term.

Regardless of the potential of the statute to produce slightly different consequences for applicants in similar situations, this court does not take upon itself the role of correcting all statutory inequities, even if it could. In the end, the law has put a policy in effect that this court must enforce, not criticize or correct. See *Harbison v. Bell*, --- U.S. ---, --- S.Ct. 1481, 1493-94, 173 L.Ed.2d 347 (2009) (Thomas, J., concurring) (quoting *Eldred v. Ashcroft*, 537 U.S. 186, 222, 123 S.Ct. 769, 154 L.Ed.2d 683 (2003) (“Even if *1371 the proper interpretation of a statute upholds a ‘very bad policy,’ it ‘is not within our province to second-guess’ the ‘wisdom of Congress’ action’ by picking and choosing our preferred interpretation from among a range

of potentially plausible, but likely inaccurate, interpretations of a statute.”)).

The PTO also passingly refers to the second clause of section 154(b)(2)(A) for support: “the period of any adjustment granted under this subsection shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed.” 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(2)(A). While the PTO's argument on this point is unclear, that language does not provide any support for its interpretation. Significantly, the second clause of section 154(b)(2)(A) only takes effect upon satisfaction of the first clause. See *id.* § 154(b)(2)(A) (“To the extent that periods of delay attributable to grounds specified in paragraph (1) overlap”) (emphasis added). Viewed in this light, a “delay” must refer consistently to the violation of either the A or B guarantees. “[T]he actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed” therefore refers to each day covered by a “period of delay” in the first clause with no such day counted twice.

[9] This court has also examined the legislative history of the 1999 Act but finds nothing to rescue the PTO's cause. In the first place, only a “most extraordinary showing of contrary intentions” by Congress justifies a departure from the plain language of a statute. *Garcia v. United States*, 469 U.S. 70, 75, 105 S.Ct. 479, 83 L.Ed.2d 472 (1984). Far from intentions contrary to the meaning of section 154(b), the legislative history generally supports the interpretation required by the statutory language itself. The AIPA's section-by-section analysis states:

Accordingly, subtitle D removes the 10-year caps from the existing provisions, adds a new provision to compensate applicants fully for USPTO-caused administrative delays, and, for good measure, includes a new provision guaranteeing diligent applicants at least a 17-year term by extending the term of any patent not granted within three years of filing. Thus, no patent applicant diligently seeking to obtain a patent will receive a term of *less than the 17 years* as provided under

the pre-GATT standard; *in fact, most will receive considerably more.*

H.R.Rep. No. 106-464, at 125 (1994) (emphases added). From this, it is apparent that the statutory language should provide a *minimum* seventeen-year term for most patents. The outcome suggested by the language itself effectuates this goal by ensuring such a minimum term unless the applicant caused delays.

The PTO urges this court to read that passage in view of the 25-month average patent pendency at that time—that is, most patents received more than a seventeen-year term because of the shorter prosecution periods. Even taking that context into account, this court notes that the PTO's interpretation effectively creates a seventeen-year term *cap* where B delays are greater than A delays. In other words, any A delay before the three-year mark causes PTO delays in issuance beyond the three-year mark—thereby violating the B guarantee. Together, these effects, under the PTO's desire to aggregate A and B delays, reduce the effective term of the patent towards seventeen years. The passage from the House report does not expressly preclude that type of effective cap, but the context suggests a very different goal of supplying adequate protection that will often be “considerably more” than the PTO's effective cap. In any event, the House report does not produce any “extraordinary showing of contrary intentions.” Moreover, if the Act *1372 intended to create a seventeen-year cap, it could have easily done so with just a few words.

The PTO next highlights the belated addition of the B guarantee into section 154(b) for support. Before enactment of AIPA, section 154(b) only provided extensions for the category that now fall under C adjustments. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 154(b)(1)-(2) (1996). The earlier versions of AIPA added only A delays. *See* S. 507, 105th Cong., 143 Cong. Rec. S2678, S2696-97 (Mar. 20, 1997). Not long afterwards, B adjustments appeared in drafts of section 154(b). *See* H.R. 400, 105th Cong., 143 Cong. Rec. H1629, H1651 (April 17, 1997). According to the PTO, this

legislative history suggests that Congress did not intend to give patentees already eligible for A adjustments additional compensation where the A delay occurred during the first three years of prosecution. Even if these ambiguous timing observations suggested some kind of substantive difference in the meaning of section 154(b), they would be wholly irrelevant to interpretation of the law itself. Such opaque timing observations hardly amount to a “most extraordinary showing of contrary intentions,” especially when the language of the statute trumpets its meaning by itself. *See Harbison*, 129 S.Ct. at 1494 (Thomas, J., concurring) (“And Congress' silence certainly does not empower us to go even farther and incorporate such an assumption into the text of these provisions.”). In sum, legislative history—always a very dull instrument for extracting the essence of statutory meaning—provides no reason to depart from the language of section 154(b).

Last, the PTO contends that its interpretation is entitled to deference under either *Chevron U.S.A., Inc. v. Natural Resources Defense Council, Inc.*, 467 U.S. 837, 104 S.Ct. 2778, 81 L.Ed.2d 694 (1984) or *Skidmore v. Swift & Co.*, 323 U.S. 134, 65 S.Ct. 161, 89 L.Ed. 124 (1944). Because the language of the statute itself controls this case and sets an unambiguous rule for overlapping extensions, this court detects no reason to afford special deference to the PTO's interpretation. *See Smith v. City of Jackson, Miss.*, 544 U.S. 228, 267, 125 S.Ct. 1536, 161 L.Ed.2d 410 (2005) (quoting *Pub. Employees Ret. Sys. of Ohio v. Betts*, 492 U.S. 158, 171, 109 S.Ct. 2854, 106 L.Ed.2d 134 (1989)) (“Of course, it is elementary that ‘no deference is due to agency interpretations at odds with the plain language of the statute itself.’”).

IV.

This court therefore affirms the judgment of the district court. Section 154(b)'s language is clear, unambiguous, and intolerant of the PTO's suggested interpretation. For that reason, this court accords no deference to the PTO's greater-of-A-or-B rubric.

591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257
(Cite as: **591 F.3d 1364**)

AFFIRMED

C.A.Fed. (Dist.Col.),2010.
Wyeth v. Kappos
591 F.3d 1364, 93 U.S.P.Q.2d 1257

END OF DOCUMENT

Exhibit C

inform applicants of the requirement to demonstrate compliance prior to proposal preparation instead of prior to award, thereby giving potential applicants advance notice of these requirements. Additionally, the methods for demonstrating compliance with certifications, disclosures, and assurances are clarified. The first method provides for each individual certification, disclosure, and assurance to be signed by the Authorizing Institutional Representative. The second method currently provides that "Signature by the Authorizing Institutional Representative on the proposal Cover Page may confirm that all necessary certifications and assurances are met." This statement is only accurate when the Cover Page includes a notice that lists each certification and assurance, and states that signature by the Authorizing Institutional Representative confirms that these specific certifications and assurances are met. To clarify this requirement, the Handbook will be revised to state: "Signature by the Authorizing Organizational Representative on the proposal Cover Page may confirm that all necessary certifications and assurances are met, provided that the Cover Page includes a notice to that effect." An administrative change is made to change the term "Authorizing Institutional Representative" to "Authorizing Organizational Representative" because the latter term is more commonly used by NASA recipients. Finally, this final rule corrects the list of NASA implementing regulations in paragraph (c) of the Provision at § 1260.32, "Nondiscrimination" by adding "14 CFR 1253".

This is not a significant regulatory action and, therefore, was not subject to review under section 6(b) of Executive Order 12866, Regulatory Planning and Review, dated September 30, 1993. This rule is not a major rule under 5 U.S.C. 804.

B. Regulatory Flexibility Act

NASA certifies that this final rule will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities within the meaning of the Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 601 *et seq.*, because the changes do not impose additional requirements. The changes only modify the timing of existing requirements.

C. Paperwork Reduction Act

The Paperwork Reduction Act does not apply because this final rule does not impose any new recordkeeping or information collection requirements, or

collection of information from offerors, contractors, or members of the public that require the approval of the Office of Management and Budget under 44 U.S.C. 3501, *et seq.*

List of Subjects in 14 CFR Part 1260

Grant Programs—Science and Technology.

Tom Luedtke,

Assistant Administrator for Procurement.

■ Accordingly, 14 CFR part 1260 is amended as follows:

■ 1. The authority citation for 14 CFR part 1260 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 42 U.S.C. 2473(c)(1), Pub. L. 97–258, 96 Stat. 1003 (31 U.S.C. 6301, *et seq.*)

PART 1260—GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS

■ 2. Revise paragraph (c) in § 1260.10 to read as follows:

§ 1260.10 Proposals.

* * * * *

(c)(1) All announcements for grant and cooperative agreement funding opportunities shall require the applicant to submit all required certifications, disclosures, and assurances as part of the proposal. The following certifications and assurance are required to be submitted as part of all proposals:

(i) A certification for debarment and suspension under the requirements of 14 CFR 1265.510.

(ii) A certification, and a disclosure form (SF LLL) if required, on Lobbying under the requirements of 14 CFR 1271.110 for awards exceeding \$100,000.

(iii) An assurance of Compliance with NASA Regulations Concerning Nondiscrimination as required by 14 CFR parts 1250 through 1253 or incorporation by reference of a signed NASA Form 1206 that is on file, current, and accurate.

(2) Compliance with certifications, disclosures, and assurances must be demonstrated by one of the following two methods:

(i) Each individual certification, disclosure, and assurance may be signed by the Authorizing Organizational Representative; or

(ii) Signature by the Authorizing Organizational Representative on the proposal Cover Page may confirm that all necessary certifications and assurances are met, provided that the Cover Page includes a notice to that effect.

* * * * *

■ 3. Revise the undesignated headings and paragraph (c) in § 1260.32 to read as follows:

§ 1260.32 Nondiscrimination.

Nondiscrimination

April 2004.

* * * * *

(c) Work on NASA grants is subject to the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (Pub. L. 88–352; 42 U.S.C. 2000d–1), Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 (20 U.S.C. 1680 *et seq.*), section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 U.S.C. 794), the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 (42 U.S.C. 6101 *et seq.*), and the NASA implementing regulations (14 CFR parts 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1253).

* * * * *

[FR Doc. 04–9015 Filed 4–21–04; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 7510–01–P

DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Patent and Trademark Office

37 CFR Part 1

[Docket No.: 2003–P–029]

RIN 0651–AB71

Revision of Patent Term Extension and Patent Term Adjustment Provisions

AGENCY: Patent and Trademark Office, Commerce.

ACTION: Final rule.

SUMMARY: The patent term extension provisions of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act (URAA) and the patent term adjustment provisions of the American Inventors Protection Act of 1999 (AIPA) each provide for the possibility of patent term extension or adjustment if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences (BPAI) or by a Federal court and the patent was issued pursuant to or under a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability. The United States Patent and Trademark Office (Office) is revising the rules of practice in patent cases to indicate that under certain circumstances a panel remand by the BPAI shall be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for purposes of patent term extension or patent term adjustment. The Office is also adopting other miscellaneous changes to the patent term adjustment provisions of the rules of practice.

DATES: *Effective Date:* May 24, 2004.

Any request for reconsideration of the patent term extension or adjustment indicated on a patent resulting from an application in which the notice of

allowance was mailed before May 24, 2004 on the basis of the changes to 37 CFR 1.701 or 1.702 in this final rule must be filed no later than July 21, 2004.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Kery A. Fries, Legal Advisor, Office of Patent Legal Administration, by telephone at (703) 305-1383, by mail addressed to: Box Comments—Patents, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, or by facsimile to (703) 746-3240, marked to the attention of Kery A. Fries.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: Section 532(a) of the URAA (Pub. L. 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809 (1994)) amended 35 U.S.C. 154 to provide that the term of a patent ends on the date that is twenty years from the filing date of the application, or the earliest filing date for which a benefit is claimed under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, or 365(c). Public Law 103-465 also contained provisions, codified at 35 U.S.C. 154(b), for patent term extension due to certain examination delays. The Office implemented the patent term extension provisions of the URAA in a final rule published in April of 1995. *See Changes to Implement 20-Year Patent Term and Provisional Applications*, 60 FR 20195 (Apr. 25, 1995), 1174 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 15 (May 2, 1995) (final rule).

The AIPA (Pub. L. 106-113, 113 Stat. 1501, 1501A-552 through 1501A-591 (1999)) further amended 35 U.S.C. 154(b) to include additional bases for patent term extension (characterized as “patent term adjustment” in the AIPA). Original utility and plant patents issuing from applications filed on or after May 29, 2000, may be eligible for patent term adjustment if issuance of the patent is delayed due to one or more of the enumerated administrative delays listed in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1). The Office implemented the patent term adjustment provisions of the AIPA in a final rule published in September of 2000. *See Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR 56365 (Sept. 18, 2000), 1239 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 14 (Oct. 3, 2000) (final rule). The patent term adjustment provisions of the AIPA apply to original (*i.e.*, non-reissue) utility and plant applications filed on or after May 29, 2000. *See Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56367, 1239 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* at 14-15. The patent term extension provisions of the URAA (for delays due to secrecy order, interference or successful appellate review) continue to apply to original utility and plant applications filed on or after June 8, 1995, and before May 29, 2000. *See id.*

The Office is amending the rules of practice in patent cases to indicate that certain remands by the BPAI shall be considered “a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability” for patent term adjustment and patent term extension purposes. Specifically, if an application is remanded by a panel of the BPAI and the remand is the last action by a BPAI panel prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the remand shall be considered a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term adjustment and patent term extension purposes. However, a panel remand shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

The term “panel” of the BPAI means a panel comprised of members of the BPAI as defined in 35 U.S.C. 6(a). The phrase “remanded by a panel” of the BPAI does not pertain to a remand or order returning an appeal to the examiner issued by a BPAI administrator. *See e.g., Revised Docketing Procedures for Appeals Arriving at the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences*, 1260 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 18 (July 2, 2002). The phrase “remanded by a panel” of the BPAI also does not pertain to a remand or order returning an appeal to the examiner that is issued by a BPAI administrator subsequent to the issuance of a docketing notice.

The Office initially took the position that a remand by a BPAI panel was not a “decision” within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A)(iii), much less “a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability” as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii). *See Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56369, 1239 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* at 16. The Office has subsequently determined that there are a number of BPAI panel remands that convey the weakness in the examiner’s adverse patentability determination in a manner tantamount to a decision reversing the adverse patentability determination. Such a BPAI panel remand generally results in the examiner allowing the application (either with or without further action by applicant) without returning the application with a response to the issues raised in the

remand to the BPAI for a decision on the appeal. The changes in this final rule address the situation in which an examiner responds to a remand by a BPAI panel by allowing the application (either with or without further action by applicant), rather than returning the application with a response to the issues raised in the remand to the BPAI for a decision on the appeal. In this situation, the BPAI panel remand shall be considered “a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability” for patent term extension and patent term adjustment purposes. The changes in this final rule, however, will not apply if, after the BPAI panel remand, there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

If the patent issues after a remand that is considered “a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability,” the BPAI panel remand is deemed by the Office to be the “final decision in favor of the applicant” for purposes of a patent term extension or adjustment calculation under § 1.701(c)(3) or § 1.703(e) (as applicable). The period of extension or adjustment calculated under § 1.701(c)(3) or § 1.703(e) (as applicable) would equal the number of days in the period beginning on the date on which a notice of appeal to the BPAI was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and § 1.191 and ending on the mailing date of the BPAI panel remand.

The Office also proposed changes to §§ 1.704 and 1.705 in a rule making to implement portions of the Office’s 21st Century Strategic Plan. *See Changes to Support Implementation of the United States Patent and Trademark Office 21st Century Strategic Plan*, 68 FR 53816, 53843, 53857-58 (Sept. 12, 2003), 1275 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 23, 45-46, 60 (Oct. 7, 2003) (proposed rule) (hereinafter “21st Century Strategic Plan notice of proposed rule making”). The Office is adopting changes to §§ 1.704 and 1.705 proposed in the 21st Century Strategic Plan notice of proposed rule making in this final rule so that all changes to the patent term adjustment provisions of the rule of practice currently under consideration will be adopted in the same final rule.

Discussion of Specific Rules

Section 1.701: Section 1.701(a)(3) is amended by adding the following sentence: If an application is remanded by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and the

remand is the last action by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the remand shall be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2) as amended by section 532(a) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Public Law 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809, 4983-85 (1994), and a final decision in favor of the applicant under § 1.701(c)(3). Section 1.701(a)(3) is also amended to provide that a panel remand shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as provided in § 1.701(a)(3) if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151. Section 1.701(a)(3) is also amended to change “decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability” to “decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability” for consistency with 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2) as amended by section 532(a) of the URAA.

Section 1.702: Section 1.702(e) is amended by adding the following sentence: If an application is remanded by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and the remand is the last action by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the remand shall be considered a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A)(iii), a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii), and a final decision in favor of the applicant under § 1.703(e). Section 1.702(e) is also amended to provide that a panel remand shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as provided in § 1.702(e) if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151. Section 1.702(e) is also amended to change “decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability” to “decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of

patentability” for consistency with 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii).

Section 1.703: Section 1.703(f) is amended to change “[t]o the extent that periods of adjustment attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap” to “[t]o the extent that periods of delay attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap” for consistency with 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A). The language of former § 1.703(f) misled applicants into believing that delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) (§§ 1.702(a) and 1.703(a)) and delays under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) (§§ 1.702(b) and 1.703(b)) were overlapping only if the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) occurred more than three years after the actual filing date of the application. If an application is entitled to an adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B), the entire period during which the application was pending before the Office (except for periods excluded under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B)(i)-(iii)), and not just the period beginning three years after the actual filing date of the application, is the period of delay under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B) in determining whether periods of delay overlap under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A).

Section 1.704: Section 1.704(d) is amended to change “cited in a communication” to “first cited in any communication” in order to clarify that the item must have been first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application instead of merely being cited in such a communication. An applicant who fails to cite an item, within thirty days of receipt by an individual designated in § 1.56(c) of a first communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application citing the item, and instead files an information disclosure statement, within thirty days of a subsequent communication citing the item, cannot be considered to have acted with reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution of the application. The change to require that this thirty-day time period run from a first communication parallels the corresponding language in § 1.97(e)(1). The provisions of § 1.704(d) do not apply if the applicant does not submit the information disclosure statement within thirty days of a first communication including a citation of an item to a party designated in § 1.56(c). In such situations, the submission of an information disclosure statement may be considered a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution (processing or examination) of the application under § 1.704(c)(6), (c)(8), (c)(9), or (c)(10).

Section 1.705: Section 1.705(d) is amended to provide that a patentee may request reconsideration of the patent term adjustment within two months of the date the patent issued if the patent indicates a revised patent term adjustment relative to the patent term adjustment indicated on the notice of allowance. The Office currently includes the patent term adjustment information that will be printed on the face of the patent on the Issue Notification. *See Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56388, 1239 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office at 33 (response to comment 49). The Office plans to discontinue the practice of including patent term adjustment information on the Issue Notification, but is changing the period for filing a request for reconsideration under § 1.705(d) of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent from thirty days to two months. This two-month period in § 1.705(d) is non-extendable. *See* § 1.705(e).

The Patent Application Locating and Monitoring (PALM) system maintains computerized contents records of all patent applications and reexaminations. The Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system provides public access to PALM for patents and applications that have been published (*i.e.*, applications no longer being maintained in confidence), which can be accessed over the Internet at <http://pair.uspto.gov>. The PAIR system also has a private side (<http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>) which may be used by an applicant to access confidential information about his or her pending application. *See Clarification of 37 CFR 1.704(c)(10)—Reduction of Patent Term Adjustment for Certain Types of Papers Filed After a Notice of Allowance has been Mailed*, 1247 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office 111, 112 (June 26, 2001). While the Office plans to discontinue the practice of including patent term adjustment information on the Issue Notification, applicants can check PAIR to see the Office's current patent term adjustment determination upon receipt of the Issue Notification to ascertain whether the patent term adjustment determination has been revised since the mailing of the notice of allowance.

Section 1.705(d) is also amended to permit a patentee to file the request for reconsideration if the patent indicates or should have indicated a revised patent term adjustment of a revision to patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance. Section 1.705(d) formerly provided that a request for reconsideration under § 1.705(d) was limited to the situation where the patent issues on a date other than the projected

date of issue. There are a number of papers which if submitted by an applicant after the mailing of the notice of allowance will result in a reduction of any patent term adjustment, such as: (1) Request for refunds; (2) status letter; (3) amendments under § 1.312; (4) late priority claims; (5) a certified copy of a priority document; (6) drawings; (7) letters related to biological deposits; and (8) oaths or declarations. See § 1.704(c)(10). In addition, receipt of the payment of the issue fee more than three months after mailing of the notice of allowance will also result in a reduction of any patent term adjustment. See § 1.704(b) and § 1.703(f) (“[t]he date indicated on any certificate of mailing or transmission under § 1.8 shall not be taken into account in this calculation”). There are also Office delays that may occur after the mailing of the notice of allowance which may result in an increase in the amount of patent term adjustment, such as the failure to issue the patent within four months after the date the issue fee was paid under 35 U.S.C. 151 and all outstanding requirements were satisfied, or the failure to issue the patent within three years after the date on which an application was filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a). See § 1.702(a)(4) and § 1.702(b).

Section 1.705(d) is also amended to provide that any request for reconsideration under § 1.705(d) that raises issues that were raised, or could have been raised, in an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.704(b) shall be dismissed as untimely as to those issues. The purpose of § 1.705(d) is to provide patentees with an avenue to obtain reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent when the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent differs or should have differed from the patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance due to events occurring after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Section 1.705(d) is not an avenue for patentees to seek review of issues that were raised, or could have been raised, in an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.704(b). Any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent on the basis of issues that were raised, or could have been raised, in an application for patent term adjustment under § 1.704(b) is considered untimely if not filed within the period specified in § 1.705(b).

Requests for reconsideration of patent term adjustment determinations indicated in notice of allowances and patents under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and §§ 1.702 through 1.704 are provided for in § 1.705. Petitions under § 1.182 or

1.183, or requests for a certificate of correction under either 35 U.S.C. 254 and § 1.323 or 35 U.S.C. 255 and § 1.324, are not substitute *fora* to obtain reconsideration of a patent term adjustment determination indicated in a notice of allowance if an applicant fails to submit a request for reconsideration within the time period specified in § 1.705(b), or to obtain reconsideration of a patent term adjustment determination indicated in a patent if a patentee fails to submit a request for reconsideration within the time period specified in § 1.705(d).

Response to comments: The Office published a notice proposing changes to the rules of practice to provide that under certain circumstances a panel remand by the BPAI shall be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for purposes of patent term extension or patent term adjustment. See *Revision of Patent Term Extension and Patent Term Adjustment Provisions Related to Decisions by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences* 68 FR 67818 (Dec. 4, 2003), 1277 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 227 (Dec. 30, 2003) (proposed rule). The Office received seven written comments (from an intellectual property organization, a law firm, a business, and patent practitioners) in response to this notice of proposed rule making. The Office also received five written comments concerning §§ 1.704 and 1.705 in response to the *21st Century Strategic Plan* notice of proposed rule making. Comments generally in support of a change are not discussed. The comments and the Office's responses to those comments follow:

Comment 1: One comment questioned whether the Office has the authority to interpret a remand from the BPAI as a decision by the BPAI reversing an adverse determination of patentability. The comment suggested that the Office should amend the rules of practice to permit the BPAI to designate a remand as a decision by the BPAI reversing an adverse determination of patentability.

Response: 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2) provides that the Office may establish regulations, not inconsistent with law, which shall govern the conduct of proceedings in the Office, 35 U.S.C. 3(a)(2)(A) provides that the Director is responsible for providing policy direction and management supervision for the Office, and 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3)(A) provides that the Director shall prescribe regulations establishing procedures for the application for and determination of patent term adjustments under 35 U.S.C. 154(b). Therefore, the Office has sufficient rule making authority to promulgate

regulations to avoid situations in which an applicant is deprived of patent term extension or adjustment because a BPAI panel designates a decision as a remand rather than as a reversal coupled with a remand.

Comment 2: One comment suggested that the Office should amend the rules of practice to permit the BPAI to designate a remand as a decision by the BPAI reversing an adverse determination of patentability.

Response: It is unnecessary to amend the rules of practice to provide that a BPAI panel may designate a remand as a decision by the BPAI reversing an adverse determination of patentability. First, a BPAI panel may do so in essence by designating the decision as a reversal coupled with a remand. Second, a BPAI panel remand will be considered a “decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability” under § 1.701(a)(3) or § 1.702(e) as amended in this final rule if the remand is the last action by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application (except if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.).

Comment 3: One comment suggested that the Office should treat a remand by a BPAI administrator the same as a remand by a BPAI panel in determining whether the remand is considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension and adjustment purposes.

Response: The Office cannot treat a remand or other order by an administrator as a “decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability” for patent term extension or adjustment purposes because an administrator is not a member of the BPAI as defined in 35 U.S.C. 6(a) and because 35 U.S.C. 6(b) requires that appeals be heard by at least three members of the BPAI. While the Office has proposed to define BPAI as including a BPAI member or employee acting with the authority of the BPAI for certain purposes (proposed § 41.2(2)), the Office has cautioned that this definition of “BPAI” is not applicable in a situation in which action by a BPAI panel is required by statute, and has also proposed to define BPAI member as a member of the BPAI as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 6(a) (proposed § 41.2(3)). See *Rules of Practice Before the Board of Patent Appeals and*

Interferences, 68 FR 66647, 66649 (Nov. 26, 2003), 1277 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* 157, 159 (Dec. 23, 2003) (proposed rule).

Comment 4: Several comments suggested that the filing of an information disclosure statement or certain amendments should not preclude a remand from being considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension or adjustment purposes. The comments provided the following examples of amendments that should not preclude a remand from being considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension or adjustment purposes: (1) Amendments which only correct formal matters (e.g., update the address of a depository such as the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC)); (2) amendments which improve the clarity of the claims; (3) amendments which rejoin claims that were withdrawn pending the allowance of a product claim; (4) amendments which only define the claims over newly cited prior art; (5) an examiner's amendment or examiner requested amendment; (6) amendments that do not address the merits of the claims; (7) amendments that change the title or abstracts to correspond to all of the allowed claims; (8) inconsistencies between reference characters used in the specification and those used in the drawings; (9) inconsistent case use of pronouns; (10) resubmission of documents that were lost by the Office; (11) amendments which incorporate limitations from a dependent claim into an independent claim; and (12) any amendment so long as at least one previously rejected claim is allowed in unamended form. One comment suggested that if an information disclosure statement contains a certification under § 1.704(d), the information disclosure statement should not preclude a remand from being considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension or adjustment purposes. One comment suggested that a remand should be treated as a decision by the BPAI reversing an adverse determination of patentability any time the examiner *sua sponte* withdraws all of the rejections against any one claim. Finally, one comment suggested that if the Office drops any issue raised upon appeal after the remand, the examiner's dropping of an issue raised upon appeal should be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability.

Response: The suggestions are adopted in part as follows. If an application is remanded by a panel of the BPAI and the remand is the last action of a BPAI panel prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the Office will consider that remand to be a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability. Therefore, if the examiner allows the application (patent term extension or adjustment is not relevant if the application is not ultimately allowed) without returning the application to the BPAI for decision (and thus the BPAI panel remand is the last action by a BPAI panel in the application), the Office will consider that remand to be a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability. A panel remand, however, shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) (§ 1.114) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

Comment 5: One comment also suggested that the Office should permit applicant to petition under § 1.705 for a case-by-case determination of whether the BPAI remand should be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension or adjustment purposes.

Response: The statutory scheme of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) provides that patent term adjustment and reductions to patent term adjustment are determined by objective criteria rather than on the basis of *ad hoc* determinations. That is, 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1) specifies certain objective conditions under which (subject to certain conditions and limitations) an applicant is entitled to patent term adjustment, and 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(C) requires the Office to specify (by regulations) the conditions under which there will be a reduction of patent term adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1). Thus, it is more in line with the statutory scheme set forth in 35 U.S.C. 154(b) for the Office to specify objective criteria under which a BPAI panel remand will be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for patent term extension or adjustment purposes, than it would be to leave this to case-by-case determinations.

In addition, as discussed in the final rule to implement the patent term adjustment provisions of the AIPA: "the Office must make its patent term

adjustment determinations by a computer program that uses the information recorded in the Office's automated patent application information system (the Patent Application Location and Monitoring system or PALM system). Thus, the Office must determine whether the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences (or court) decision was of a nature such that 'the patent was issued under a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability' under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii) from information concerning the decision susceptible of being recorded in the PALM system (rather than by a case-by-case review of each decision)." *See Changes To Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56370, 1239 *Off. Gaz. Pat. Office* at 17 (quoting 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii)).

Comment 6: One comment suggests that the rule be automatically retroactively applied or alternately set up a petition procedure where patentees would be allowed to petition for recalculation of the patent term extension or adjustment determination based upon the amended rule.

Response: The Office cannot "automatically" apply revised §§ 1.701(a)(3) and 1.702(e) retroactively in applications in which the notice of allowance was mailed before May 24, 2004. However, a patentee who believes that the patent term extension or adjustment indicated on his or her patent would have been calculated differently under § 1.701(a)(3) or § 1.702(e) as amended in this final rule may file a request for reconsideration of the patent term extension or adjustment indicated on the patent. Any such request for reconsideration must be filed no later than July 21, 2004.

For applications in which the notice of allowance is mailed on or after May 24, 2004, any applicant who believes that the URAA patent term extension (§ 1.701) or AIPA patent term adjustment (§§ 1.702 through 1.705) indicated in the notice of allowance was not calculated correctly in view of the changes to § 1.701(a)(3) or § 1.702(e) in this final rule must file a timely petition under § 1.181 or timely request for reconsideration under § 1.705(b) (respectively) to have the patent term extension or adjustment determination corrected. Any applicant who believes that the URAA patent term extension (§ 1.701) or AIPA patent term adjustment (§§ 1.702 through 1.705) indicated in the notice of allowance was not calculated correctly on any basis other than the changes to § 1.701(a)(3) or § 1.702(e) in this final rule must file a

timely petition under § 1.181 or timely request for reconsideration under § 1.705(b) (respectively) to have the patent term extension or adjustment determination corrected.

Comment 7: One comment suggests that the period of adjustment for administrative delay should end on the date of the mailing of the notice of allowance, not on the mailing date of the remand.

Response: The suggestion is not adopted. If an application is allowed after a panel remand by the BPAI, the period of appellate review ended with the decision (remand) by the BPAI.

Comment 8: Several comments indicated that events such as the filing of a request for refund or the filing of a status letter are caused by an Office error or delay, and should not result in a reduction of patent term adjustment under § 1.704(c)(10).

Response: The patent term adjustment provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) provide that “[t]he Director shall prescribe regulations establishing the circumstances that constitute a failure of an applicant to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of an application.” See 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(C)(iii). Section 1.704(c)(10) provides that circumstances that constitute a failure of the applicant to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of an application also include “[s]ubmission of an amendment under § 1.312 or other paper after a notice of allowance has been given or mailed, in which case the period of adjustment set forth in § 1.703 shall be reduced by the lesser of: (i) [t]he number of days, if any, beginning on the date the amendment under § 1.312 or other paper was filed and ending on the mailing date of the Office action or notice in response to the amendment under § 1.312 or such other paper; or (ii) [f]our months.” The Office did not propose any change to the provisions of § 1.704(c). The *21st Century Strategic Plan* notice of proposed rule making, however, did include a previously published clarification of the provisions of § 1.704(c)(10). See *Clarification of 37 CFR 1.704(c)(10)—Reduction of Patent Term Adjustment for Certain Types of Papers Filed After a Notice of Allowance Has Been Mailed*, 1247 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office at 111–12.

The filing of certain papers, such as a request for refund or a status letter, after a notice of allowance has been mailed causes substantial interference with the patent issue process. See *id.* Therefore, pursuant to the authority to 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(C)(iii), the Office has prescribed a regulation (§ 1.704(c)(1))

establishing the filing of such papers after a notice of allowance has been mailed as a failure of an applicant to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude processing or examination of an application.

Section 1.26(b) provides a lengthy (two-year) period for filing any request for refund. Thus, applicants may avoid a reduction of any patent term adjustment by not filing a request for refund during the period between the mailing of a notice of allowance and the date the patent is issued. Applicants who choose to file a request for refund at a time when the filing of such a paper causes interference with the patent issue process must accept the negative impact on patent term adjustment that will result from such a course of action.

As discussed above, the PAIR system provides public access to PALM for patents and applications that have been published which can be accessed over the Internet (at <http://pair.uspto.gov>), and has a private side (<http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>) which may be used by an applicant to access confidential information about his or her pending application. See *id.* Thus, applicants who choose to file status letters rather than check the status of their applications via the PAIR system must accept the negative impact on patent term adjustment that will result from such a course of action.

Comment 9: Several comments indicated that the thirty-day period provided in § 1.704(d) was too short and should be changed to three months for consistency with § 1.97(e).

Response: Section 1.704(d) was adopted to permit applicants to submit information cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart application to the Office without a reduction in patent term adjustment if an information disclosure statement is promptly (within thirty days of receipt of the communication) submitted to the Office.

See *Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56373, 56385, 1239 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office at 20, 30–31. The Office did not propose to change the thirty-day period provided in § 1.704(d).

Section 1.704(d) does not provide that an information disclosure statement must be submitted within its thirty-day period to avoid a reduction of patent term adjustment (or to be considered by the Office), but rather provides a “safe-harbor” against reductions to patent term adjustment under §§ 1.704(c)(6), (c)(8), (c)(9), or (c)(10) that may result from the filing of an information disclosure statement. The filing of an

information disclosure statement during any of the periods set forth in §§ 1.704(c)(6), (c)(8), (c)(9), or (c)(10) will interfere with the patent examination or printing process. Therefore, the Office must limit the time period in § 1.704(d) to thirty days to avoid substantial interference with the Office’s ability to meet the time frames specified in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1). See *Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR at 56385, 1239 Off. Gaz. Pat. Office at 30.

Rule Making Considerations

Administrative Procedure Act

The change to § 1.703 in this final rule simply amends its provisions for consistency with 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A), and the change to § 1.705 concerns only the procedures for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination printed on the patent. Therefore, these rule changes involve interpretive rules, or rules of agency practice and procedure under 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(A), and prior notice and an opportunity for public comment were not required pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(A) (or any other law). See *Bachow Communications Inc. v. FCC*, 237 F.3d 683, 690 (D.C. Cir. 2001) (rules governing an application process are “rules of agency organization, procedure, or practice” and exempt from the Administrative Procedure Act’s notice and comment requirement).

Regulatory Flexibility Act

As discussed previously, the changes to §§ 1.703 and 1.705 involve interpretive rules, or rules of agency practice and procedure under 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(A), for which prior notice and an opportunity for public comment were not required pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 553(b)(A) (or any other law).

The Deputy General Counsel for General Law of the United States Patent and Trademark Office has certified to the Chief Counsel for Advocacy of the Small Business Administration that changes in this final rule will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities (Regulatory Flexibility Act, 5 U.S.C. 605(b)). The provisions of the Regulatory Flexibility Act relating to the preparation of a flexibility analysis are not applicable to this rule making because the changes in this final rule will not have a significant economic impact on a substantial number of small entities.

The primary change in this final rule (§§ 1.701 and 1.702) is to set forth the circumstances under which the Office

will consider a remand by the BPAI to be a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for purposes of patent term extension and patent term adjustment. Of the 3,843 decisions in *ex parte* appeals in fiscal year 2003, 454 of these decisions remanded the application without affirming or reversing any of the rejections on appeal. Since approximately 25% of the patents granted in fiscal year 2003 were to small entities, the Office estimates that approximately 114 small entity applicants may be affected by the change to §§ 1.701 and 1.702 in this final rule. Since the Office received over 350,000 nonprovisional applications in fiscal year 2003, the change to §§ 1.701 and 1.702 in this final rule would impact relatively few (fewer than 0.1% of) patent applicants.

The change to § 1.704 merely clarifies that the thirty-day time period in § 1.704(d) runs from the first citation of the information by a foreign patent office, and that a subsequent citation of the same information by another foreign patent office would not start a new thirty-day period. Thus, the change to § 1.704 in this final rule will not have a significant economic impact on any entity.

In any event, the changes in this final rule merely concern the Office's manner of calculating patent term extension or patent term adjustment determination in certain situations, and revise the time period (from thirty days to two months) for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment determination printed on the patent. The changes in this final rule would not impose any additional fees or requirements on any patent applicant. The Office published a notice of proposed rule making and certified that an initial Regulatory Act Analysis was not required. No comment on the changes being adopted in this final rule made reference to any impact of the changes on small entities.

Executive Order 13132

This rule making does not contain policies with federalism implications sufficient to warrant preparation of a Federalism Assessment under Executive Order 13132 (Aug. 4, 1999).

Executive Order 12866

This rule making has been determined to be not significant for purposes of Executive Order 12866 (Sept. 30, 1993).

Paperwork Reduction Act

This final rule involves information collection requirements which are subject to review by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) under

the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.*). The collection of information involved in this final rule has been reviewed and previously approved by OMB under OMB control number 0651-0020. The United States Patent and Trademark Office is not resubmitting an information collection package to OMB for its review and approval because the changes in this final rule do not affect the information collection requirements associated with the information collection under OMB control number 0651-0020.

The title, description and respondent description of this information collection is shown below with an estimate of the annual reporting burdens. Included in the estimate is the time for reviewing instructions, gathering and maintaining the data needed, and completing and reviewing the collection of information. The primary change in this final rule is to set forth the circumstances under which the Office will consider a remand by the BPAI to be a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability for purposes of patent term extension and patent term adjustment.

OMB Number: 0651-0020.

Title: Patent Term Extension.

Form Numbers: None.

Type of Review: Approved through October of 2004.

Affected Public: Individuals or households, business or other for-profit institutions, not-for-profit institutions, farms, Federal Government and State, Local and Tribal Governments.

Estimated Number of Respondents: 26,859.

Estimated Time Per Response: Between 1 and 25 hours.

Estimated Total Annual Burden Hours: 30,905 hours.

Needs and Uses: The information supplied to the United States Patent and Trademark Office by an applicant requesting reconsideration of a patent term adjustment determination under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) (§ 1.702 *et seq.*) is used by the United States Patent and Trademark Office to determine whether its determination of patent term adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) is correct, and whether the applicant is entitled to reinstatement of reduced patent term adjustment. The information supplied to the United States Patent and Trademark Office by an applicant seeking a patent term extension under 35 U.S.C. 156 (§ 1.710 *et seq.*) is used by the United States Patent and Trademark Office, the Department of Health and Human Services, and the Department of Agriculture to determine the eligibility of a patent for extension and to determine the period of any such

extension. The applicant can apply for patent term and interim extensions, petition the Office to review final eligibility decisions, withdraw patent term applications, and declare his or her eligibility to apply for a patent term extension.

Comments are invited on: (1) whether the collection of information is necessary for proper performance of the functions of the agency; (2) the accuracy of the agency's estimate of the burden; (3) ways to enhance the quality, utility, and clarity of the information to be collected; and (4) ways to minimize the burden of the collection of information to respondents.

Interested persons are requested to send comments regarding these information collections, including suggestions for reducing this burden, to Robert J. Spar, Director, Office of Patent Legal Administration, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, or to the Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs, Office of Management and Budget, New Executive Office Building, Room 10235, 725 17th Street, NW., Washington, DC 20503, Attention: Desk Officer for the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, no person is required to respond to nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a currently valid OMB control number.

List of Subjects in 37 CFR Part 1

Administrative practice and procedure, Courts, Freedom of Information, Inventions and patents, Reporting and record keeping requirements, Small Businesses.

■ For the reasons set forth in the preamble, 37 CFR Part 1 is amended as follows:

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

■ 1. The authority citation for 37 CFR Part 1 continues to read as follows:

Authority: 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2).

■ 2. Section 1.701 is amended by revising paragraph (a)(3) to read as follows:

§ 1.701 Extension of patent term due to examination delay under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act (original applications, other than designs, filed on or after June 8, 1995, and before May 29, 2000).

(a) * * *

(3) Appellate review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued pursuant to a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability and if the patent is not subject to a terminal disclaimer due to the issuance of another patent claiming subject matter that is not patentably distinct from that under appellate review. If an application is remanded by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and the remand is the last action by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the remand shall be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2) as amended by section 532(a) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Public Law 103-465, 108 Stat. 4809, 4983-85 (1994), and a final decision in favor of the applicant under paragraph (c)(3) of this section. A remand by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as provided in this paragraph if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

* * * * *

■ 3. Section 1.702 is amended by revising paragraph (e) to read as follows:

§ 1.702 Grounds for adjustment of patent term due to examination delay under the Patent Term Guarantee Act of 1999 (original applications, other than designs, filed on or after May 29, 2000).

* * * * *

(e) *Delays caused by successful appellate review.* Subject to the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) and this subpart, the term of an original patent shall be adjusted if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences under 35 U.S.C. 134 or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued under a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability. If an application is remanded by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and the remand is the last action by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151 in the application, the remand shall be considered a decision

by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A)(iii), a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as that phrase is used in 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)(iii), and a final decision in favor of the applicant under § 1.703(e). A remand by a panel of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall not be considered a decision in the review reversing an adverse determination of patentability as provided in this paragraph if there is filed a request for continued examination under 35 U.S.C. 132(b) that was not first preceded by the mailing, after such remand, of at least one of an action under 35 U.S.C. 132 or a notice of allowance under 35 U.S.C. 151.

* * * * *

■ 4. Section 1.703 is amended by revising paragraph (f) to read as follows.

§ 1.703 Period of adjustment of patent term due to examination delay.

* * * * *

(f) The adjustment will run from the expiration date of the patent as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 154(a)(2). To the extent that periods of delay attributable to the grounds specified in § 1.702 overlap, the period of adjustment granted under this section shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed. The term of a patent entitled to adjustment under § 1.702 and this section shall be adjusted for the sum of the periods calculated under paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, to the extent that such periods are not overlapping, less the sum of the periods calculated under § 1.704. The date indicated on any certificate of mailing or transmission under § 1.8 shall not be taken into account in this calculation.

* * * * *

■ 5. Section 1.704 is amended by revising paragraph (d) to read as follows.

§ 1.704 Reduction of period of adjustment of patent term.

* * * * *

(d) A paper containing only an information disclosure statement in compliance with §§ 1.97 and 1.98 will not be considered a failure to engage in reasonable efforts to conclude prosecution (processing or examination) of the application under paragraphs (c)(6), (c)(8), (c)(9), or (c)(10) of this section if it is accompanied by a statement that each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent

office in a counterpart application and that this communication was not received by any individual designated in § 1.56(c) more than thirty days prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. This thirty-day period is not extendable.

* * * * *

■ 6. Section 1.705 is amended by revising paragraph (d) to read as follows:

§ 1.705 Patent term adjustment determination.

* * * * *

(d) If there is a revision to the patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance, the patent will indicate the revised patent term adjustment. If the patent indicates or should have indicated a revised patent term adjustment, any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent must be filed within two months of the date the patent issued and must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section. Any request for reconsideration under this section that raises issues that were raised, or could have been raised, in an application for patent term adjustment under paragraph (b) of this section shall be dismissed as untimely as to those issues.

* * * * *

Dated: April 16, 2004.

Jon W. Dudas,

Acting Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Acting Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

[FR Doc. 04-9144 Filed 4-21-04; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3510-16-P

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

40 CFR Part 52

[AZ 126-0074b; FRL-7650-3]

Interim Final Determination That State Has Corrected a Deficiency in the Arizona State Implementation Plan, Arizona Department of Environmental Quality

AGENCY: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

ACTION: Interim final determination.

SUMMARY: EPA is making an interim final determination to stay and/or defer imposition of sanctions based on a proposed approval of revisions to the Arizona Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ) portion of the Arizona

Exhibit D

countervailing duty proceedings at the Department.

This notice of initiation is being published in accordance with section 751(c) of the Act and 19 CFR 351.218 (c).

Dated: January 22, 2010.

John M. Andersen,

*Acting Deputy Assistant Secretary for
Antidumping and Countervailing Duty
Operations.*

[FR Doc. 2010-2063 Filed 1-29-10; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3510-DS-S

DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Patent and Trademark Office

[Docket No.: PTO-P-2010-0006]

Interim Procedure for Patentees To Request a Recalculation of the Patent Term Adjustment To Comply with the Federal Circuit Decision in *Wyeth v. Kappos* Regarding the Overlapping Delay Provision of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A)

AGENCY: United States Patent and
Trademark Office, Commerce.

ACTION: Notice.

SUMMARY: The United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) is modifying the computer program it uses to calculate patent term adjustments in light of *Wyeth v. Kappos*, No. 2009-1120 (Fed. Cir., Jan. 7, 2010). The USPTO expects to complete this software modification by March 2, 2010. In the meantime, the USPTO is providing patentees with the ability to request a recalculation of their patent term adjustment without a fee as an alternative to the petition and fee required by 37 CFR 1.705(d). In order to qualify, a form requesting a recalculation of the patent term adjustment must be submitted no later than 180 days after the patent has issued and the patent must be issued prior to March 2, 2010. In addition, this procedure is only available for alleged errors that are specifically identified in *Wyeth*. The USPTO is deciding pending petitions under 37 CFR 1.705 in accordance with the *Wyeth* decision. This notice also provides information concerning the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) screen that displays the patent term adjustment calculation.

DATES: *Effective Date:* The procedure set forth in this notice is effective on February 1, 2010.

Applicability Date: The procedure set forth in this notice is applicable only to patents issued prior to March 2, 2010,

in which a request for recalculation of patent term adjustment in view of *Wyeth* is filed within 180 days of the day the patent was granted.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: The Office of Patent Legal Administration by telephone at (571) 272-7702, or by mail addressed to: Mail Stop Comments-Patents, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION: Under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1), an applicant is entitled (subject to certain conditions and limitations) to patent term adjustment for the following reason: (1) If the USPTO fails to take certain actions during the examination and issue process within specified time frames (35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A)), which are known as the "A" delays; (2) if the USPTO fails to issue a patent within three years of the actual filing date of the application (35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B)), which are known as the "B" delays; and (3) for delays due to interference, secrecy order, or successful appellate review (35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(C)), which are known as the "C" delays. 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) provides that "[t]o the extent that periods of delay attributable to grounds specified in [35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)] overlap, the period of any adjustment granted under this subsection shall not exceed the actual number of days the issuance of the patent was delayed." The USPTO interpreted this provision as covering situations in which a delay by the USPTO contributes to multiple bases for adjustment (the "pre-*Wyeth*" interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A)). See *Explanation of 37 CFR 1.703(f) and of the United States Patent and Trademark Office Interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A)*, 69 FR 34283 (June 21, 2004). The United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, however, recently held in *Wyeth* that the USPTO's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) was too strict, and that periods of delay overlap under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) only if the periods which measure the amount of adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1) occur on the same calendar day.

The USPTO makes patent term adjustment determinations by a computer program that uses the information recorded in the USPTO's Patent Application Locating and Monitoring (PALM) system, except when an applicant requests reconsideration pursuant to 37 CFR 1.705. See *Changes to Implement Patent Term Adjustment Under Twenty-Year Patent Term*, 65 FR 56365, 56370, 56380-81 (Sept. 18, 2000) (final rule). The USPTO is in the process of revising the computer program it uses to

calculate patent term adjustment to calculate overlapping delays consistent with the Federal Circuit's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) in *Wyeth*. The USPTO expects the revisions to the patent term adjustment computer program to be in place for use on the patents issuing on March 2, 2010.

Patentees should note that the patent term adjustment provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b) are complex, there are numerous types of communications that are exchanged between applicants and the USPTO during the patent application process, the PALM system was not originally designed for the purpose of calculating patent term adjustment as provided in 35 U.S.C. 154(b), and one or more of the time frames specified in of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(A) and (B) are not met presently in a high percentage of the patents. In addition, revisions to the patent term adjustment computer program necessary to calculate overlapping delays consistent with the Federal Circuit's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) in *Wyeth* significantly increases the complexity of the patent term adjustment computer program. Thus, for patents issuing on or after March 2, 2010, a patentee who believes that the patent term adjustment calculation for his or her patent is not correct must file a request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705(d) that complies with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.705(b)(1) and (b)(2) within two months of the date the patent issued. The USPTO is modifying and will continue to modify the patent term adjustment computer program as it becomes aware of situations in the patent term adjustment computer program where it is not correctly calculating the applicable patent term adjustment.

Requests for Reconsideration of the Patent Term Adjustment indicated in the Patent: 37 CFR 1.705(d) provides, in part, that any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent must be filed within two months of the date the patent issued and must comply with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.705(b)(1) and (b)(2). 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(4) provides that an applicant dissatisfied with a determination made by the Director under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3) shall have remedy by a civil action against the Director filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia within 180 days after the grant of the patent.

The USPTO is providing an optional procedure under which patentees seeking a revised patent term adjustment in a patent issued prior to March 2, 2010, may request that the

USPTO recalculate the patent term adjustment without a request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705(d) (or fee), provided that the patentee's sole basis for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment in the patent is the USPTO's pre-*Wyeth* interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) and such a request is filed within 180 days of the day the patent was granted. The USPTO is providing a Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) for use in making such a request. The Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) is available on the USPTO Web site at <http://www.uspto.gov/forms/index.jsp>. This procedure and Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) are applicable only for patents that issue prior to March 2, 2010. The USPTO will deny as untimely any request for recalculation of patent term adjustment indicated on a patent that is not filed within 180 days of the day the patent was granted. Patentees are reminded that this is an optional procedure, and that any patentee who wishes to preserve his or her right to review in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia of the USPTO's patent term adjustment determination must ensure that he or she also takes the steps required under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3) and (b)(4) and 37 CFR 1.705 in a timely manner.

The fee specified in 37 CFR 1.18(e) is required for a request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705 (37 CFR 1.705(b)(1)), and the USPTO may only refund fees paid by mistake or in excess of that required (35 U.S.C. 42(d)). Therefore, the procedure set forth in this notice is not a basis for requesting a refund of the fee specified in 37 CFR 1.18(e) for any request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705, including any previously filed request that was solely based on the USPTO's pre-*Wyeth* interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A).

The procedure set forth in this notice and the Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) may not be used to request a reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the notice of allowance in an application that has not yet issued as a patent. If the application issues as a patent prior to March 2, 2010, the optional procedure set forth in this notice and the Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) may be used to request recalculation of the patent term

adjustment provided on the patent. It is expected that for applications issuing as patents on or after March 2, 2010, the patent term adjustment calculation will be consistent with the Federal Circuit's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) in *Wyeth*.

The USPTO is deciding any currently pending request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent under 37 CFR 1.705(d) that was filed within two months of the date the patent issued consistent with the Federal Circuit's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) in *Wyeth*. Patentees who received a decision on a request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent under 37 CFR 1.705(d) under the USPTO's pre-*Wyeth* interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) may file a request for reconsideration of that decision if such a request for reconsideration is filed within two months of the date of the decision on a request for reconsideration (37 CFR 1.181(f)). If the patentee's sole basis for requesting reconsideration of the decision is the USPTO's pre-*Wyeth* interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A), the request for reconsideration need only state that reconsideration is being requested in view of the Federal Circuit's decision in *Wyeth* (the Request for Recalculation of Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) may also be used for this purpose).

Patentees seeking a revised patent term adjustment in a patent issued on or after March 2, 2010, must file a request for reconsideration under 37 CFR 1.705(d) that complies with the requirements of 37 CFR 1.705(b)(1) and (b)(2) within two months of the date the patent issued.

To the extent that the procedures adopted under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2) and 154(b)(3) require that any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent must be filed within two months of the date the patent issued and include the information required by 37 CFR 1.705(b)(2) and the fee required by 37 CFR 1.18(e), these requirements are hereby *sua sponte* waived for patents that meet all of the following criteria: (1) The patent must be issued prior to March 2, 2010; (2) the patentee's sole basis for requesting reconsideration of the patent term adjustment in the patent is the USPTO's pre-*Wyeth* interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A); and (3) the Request for Recalculation of the Patent Term Adjustment in View of *Wyeth* form (PTO/SB/131) is filed within 180 days of the day the patent was granted. See 37 CFR 1.183. This waiver does not apply to patents issued on or after

March 2, 2010, to requests that the USPTO recalculate the patent term adjustment for alleged errors other than that identified in *Wyeth*, or to any request for reconsideration of the patent term adjustment indicated in the patent filed later than 180 days after the patent was granted.

Paperwork Reduction Act: This notice involves information collection requirements which are subject to review by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 (44 U.S.C. 3501 *et seq.*). The collection of information involved in this notice is covered by OMB control number 0651-0020.

Patent Term Adjustment Information Displayed in PAIR: The USPTO provides a patent term adjustment calculation screen that is viewable through PAIR. The patent term adjustment screen has been displaying the following information at the right hand column: (1) USPTO delay days (the number of days of "A" and "C" delay); (2) Three Year Delay days (the number of days of "B" delay); (3) Applicant Delay days (the number of days by which the USPTO delay days will be reduced); and (4) the Total Patent Term Adjustment. Patentees who use the PAIR patent term adjustment calculation screen should note that it does not display the periods of delay which overlap and thus is not adequate for calculating the patent term under the Federal Circuit's interpretation of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(2)(A) in *Wyeth*. The USPTO plans to revise this screen to show: (1) the number of days of "A" delay; (2) the number of days of "B" delay; (3) the number of days of "C" delay; (4) the number of days of "A" delay that overlap with a day of "B" delay plus the number of days of "A" delay that overlap with a day of "C" delay (the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(1)(B)(ii) prevent a "B" delay period and "C" delay period from overlapping); (5) the number of days of non-overlapping USPTO delay; (6) the number of days of applicant delay; and (7) the total patent term adjustment. The revised PAIR patent term adjustment screen, however, will not be ready by March 2, 2010. The USPTO expects the revised PAIR patent term adjustment screen to be ready by July of 2010.

Nothing in this notice shall be construed as a waiver of the requirement of 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(4) that any civil action by an applicant dissatisfied with a determination made by the Director under 35 U.S.C. 154(b)(3) be filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia within 180 days after the grant of the patent.

Dated: January 26, 2010.

David J. Kappos,

Under Secretary of Commerce for Intellectual Property and Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

[FR Doc. 2010-2041 Filed 1-29-10; 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 3510-16-P

DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

RIN 0648-XS20

Takes of Marine Mammals Incidental to Specified Activities; Taking Marine Mammals Incidental to Conducting Air-to-Surface Gunnery Missions in the Gulf of Mexico

AGENCY: National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), Commerce.

ACTION: Notice; issuance of an incidental harassment authorization.

SUMMARY: In accordance with the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA) regulations, notification is hereby given that NMFS has issued an Incidental Harassment Authorization (IHA) to the U.S. Air Force (USAF), Eglin Air Force Base (Eglin AFB), to take marine mammals, by harassment, incidental to conducting air-to-surface (A-S) gunnery missions in the Gulf of Mexico (GOM). The USAF's activities are considered military readiness activities.

DATES: Effective January 27, 2010, through January 26, 2011.

ADDRESSES: A copy of the authorization, the application containing a list of the references used in this document, and NMFS' 2008 Environmental Assessment (EA) and Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) may be obtained by writing to Michael Payne, Chief, Permits, Conservation and Education Division, Office of Protected Resources, National Marine Fisheries Service, 1315 East-West Highway, Silver Spring, MD 20910-3225, telephoning the contact listed below (see **FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT**), or visiting the internet at: <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/permits/incidental.htm>. Documents cited in this notice may also be viewed, by appointment, during regular business hours, at the aforementioned address.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Candace Nachman, Office of Protected Resources, NMFS, (301) 713-2289, ext 156.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

Background

Sections 101(a)(5)(A) and (D) of the MMPA (16 U.S.C. 1361 *et seq.*) direct the Secretary of Commerce to allow, upon request, the incidental, but not intentional, taking of small numbers of marine mammals by U.S. citizens who engage in a specified activity (other than commercial fishing) within a specified geographical region if certain findings are made and either regulations are issued or, if the taking is limited to harassment, a notice of a proposed authorization is provided to the public for review.

Authorization for incidental takings shall be granted if NMFS finds that the taking will have a negligible impact on the species or stock(s), will not have an unmitigable adverse impact on the availability of the species or stock(s) for subsistence uses (where relevant), and if the permissible methods of taking and requirements pertaining to the mitigation, monitoring and reporting of such takings are set forth. NMFS has defined "negligible impact" in 50 CFR 216.103 as "...an impact resulting from the specified activity that cannot be reasonably expected to, and is not reasonably likely to, adversely affect the species or stock through effects on annual rates of recruitment or survival."

Section 101(a)(5)(D) of the MMPA established an expedited process by which citizens of the U.S. can apply for an authorization to incidentally take small numbers of marine mammals by harassment. Section 101(a)(5)(D) establishes a 45-day time limit for NMFS review of an application followed by a 30-day public notice and comment period on any proposed authorizations for the incidental harassment of marine mammals. Within 45 days of the close of the comment period, NMFS must either issue or deny the authorization.

The National Defense Authorization Act (NDAA) (Public Law 108-136) removed the "small numbers" and "specified geographical region" provisions and amended the definition of "harassment" as it applies to a "military readiness activity" to read as follows (Section 3(18)(B) of the MMPA):

(i) Any act that injures or has the significant potential to injure a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild [Level A Harassment]; or (ii) Any act that disturbs or is likely to disturb a marine mammal or marine mammal stock in the wild by causing disruption of natural behavioral patterns, including, but not limited to, migration, surfacing, nursing, breeding, feeding, or sheltering, to a point where such behavioral patterns are abandoned or significantly altered [Level B Harassment].

Summary of Request

NMFS originally received an application on February 13, 2003, from Eglin AFB for the taking, by harassment, of marine mammals incidental to programmatic mission activities within the Eglin Gulf Test and Training Range (EGTTR). The EGTTR is described as the airspace over the GOM that is controlled by Eglin AFB. A notice of receipt of Eglin AFB's application and Notice of Proposed IHA and request for 30-day public comment published on January 23, 2006 (71 FR 3474). A 1-year IHA was subsequently issued to Eglin AFB for this activity on May 3, 2006 (71 FR 27695, May 12, 2006).

On January 29, 2007, NMFS received a request from Eglin AFB for a renewal of its IHA, which expired on May 2, 2007. This application addendum requested revisions to three components of the IHA requirements: protected species surveys; ramp-up procedures; and sea state restrictions. A Notice of Proposed IHA and request for 30-day public comment published on May 30, 2007 (72 FR 29974). A 1-year IHA was subsequently issued to Eglin AFB for this activity on December 11, 2008 (73 FR 78318, December 22, 2008).

On February 17, 2009, NMFS received a request from Eglin AFB for a renewal of its IHA, which expired on December 10, 2009. No modifications to the activity location, the mission activities, or the mitigation and monitoring measures required under the 2008-2009 IHA were requested by Eglin AFB. Therefore, these activities are identical to what has been described previously (73 FR 78318, December 22, 2008). A-S gunnery operations may potentially impact marine mammals at or near the water surface. Marine mammals could potentially be harassed, injured, or killed by exploding and non-exploding projectiles, and falling debris (USAF, 2002). However, based on analyses provided in the USAF's 2002 Final Programmatic EA (PEA), Eglin's Supplemental Information Request (2003), and NMFS' 2008 EA, as well as for reasons discussed in the Notice of Proposed IHA (74 FR 53474, October 19, 2009) and later in this document, NMFS concurs with Eglin AFB that gunnery exercises are not likely to result in any injury or mortality to marine mammals. Potential impacts resulting from A-S test operations include direct physical impacts (DPI) resulting from ordnance. Sixteen marine mammal species or stocks are authorized for taking by Level B harassment incidental to Eglin AFB's A-S activities and include: Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*); sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*); dwarf